

Manual for FOMA® D703i '07.1



Quick Search/
Contents/Cautions

Before Using D703i

Calls/Videophone Calls

Phonebook

Sounds/Displays/Lights
Settings

Safety Settings

Camera

i-mode/i-motion/i-channel

Mail

i-appli

Full Browser

Displaying/Editing/Managing Data

Music Playing

Other Convenient Functions

Network Services

Data Communication

Character Entry

Appendix/Data Interchange/
Troubleshooting

**INDEX/
Quick Reference Manual**

DoCoMo W-CDMA System

Thank you for selecting the FOMA D703i.

Carefully read this manual and other manuals delivered with devices such as the battery pack, before using your FOMA D703i, and consult the corresponding manuals while using the phone so that you are able to use it correctly and effectively. If you are unclear as to any point indicated in any of these manuals, contact the DoCoMo Information Center that is listed on the back of this manual.

Your FOMA D703i is a valuable asset. Handle it with care and it will be your trusted partner for years to come.

Before using your FOMA terminal

The FOMA terminal is cordless so you may not be able to use it in certain locations where signals cannot penetrate, such as in tunnels, underground, in some buildings or outdoors if the signal is weak or you are outside the service area. You also may not be able to use your FOMA terminal on the upper floors of some highrise building, even though there is nothing around you that interferes with the signal. Please note that your call may be disconnected even when the signal is strong (when the signal strength indication shows three bars) and you are not moving. When using the FOMA terminal in public, busy or quiet places, be careful not to disturb others. Since the FOMA terminal relies on radio transmission, it is theoretically possible for third parties to intercept a call; however, because the W-CDMA system automatically employs a secrecy function for all calls, a third party will pick up nothing but signal noise. Since the FOMA terminal operates by the wireless transmission of voices converted to digital signals, if you are in a location where the signal is weak, the original voice may not be accurately reproduced from the received digital signal, therefore, the voice you hear may differ from the original sound of the speaker's voice.

DoCoMo asks that you keep a separate record (e.g. written copy) of all information you store in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any loss that occurs should the contents of the FOMA terminal's memory be lost or altered.

The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any such damage or loss.

Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust, GeoTrust Japan, inc., RSA Security Japan Ltd., Secom Trust Systems Co.,Ltd.

The FOMA terminal can be used in the FOMA Plus-Area.

The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

For first time user of the FOMA terminal

If this is your first FOMA terminal, read this manual in the following order. You can understand the preparations for using the FOMA terminal and its basic operations.

1. Install the battery pack and charge it. ●P35, P36
2. Turn the power on, make initial settings, and then confirm your phone number. ●P40, P42
3. Understand the functions of keys on the terminal. ●P24
4. Understand the meaning of icons displayed on the screen. ●P25
5. Understand how to use the menus. ●P28
6. Understand how to make and receive calls. ●P45, P59

The latest information about this manual can be downloaded from the DoCoMo website.

User's Manual Download

(<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html>)

Note: The URL and site contents are subject to change without prior notice.

How to use and refer to this manual

You can look for functions or operation procedures that you want to know using various searching ways.

Search on INDEX

P390

Search for a function name or service name. [See the next page for details.](#)

Use Quick Search

P4

Search for frequently-used or useful functions using easy-to-understand words. [See the next page for details.](#)

Use Front Cover Indexes

Front Cover

Search by turning over the pages on this manual using the front cover indexes.

[See the next page for details.](#)

Use Contents

P6

Refer to the contents classified into chapters on an objective basis.

Refer to Features and Functions

P8

Search for the features or new functions of D703i.

Use Menu List

P340

Search using the menu of D703i.

Use Quick Reference Manual

P396

Quick Reference Manual describes how to operate frequently-used functions. Use it by separating from this instruction manual.

In the manual for FOMA D703i, the FOMA D703i is usually referred to as "FOMA terminal". The design of screen displays has been initialized according to the color of FOMA terminal from the combinations preset in FOMA terminal (Style Theme). ◀P120
In this manual, the procedure is explained mainly in case that Style Theme is set to *BarCode*.
Unauthorized copying of a part or all of the contents of this manual is prohibited.
The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

How to use and refer to this manual

Shown below is an example when you search for the page where “My Picture” is described.

Searching on INDEX

Use INDEX if you have already known a function or service name.

 My Picture  1 My Picture 2 Music 3 Motion 4 Melody 5 My Document 6 Chara-den 7 Machi-chara	g Ring Alert 101 133 267 to mail 267 ng 272 105 g 269 g 267	My Menu 163 My Picture 252 Deleting 272 Sort 272 Use album 268 N
---	--	---

Using Quick Search

You can easily search for frequently-used or useful functions.

Advanced
functions for
camera



- Change the size of image to shoot 150 [Image size](#)
- Display the shot images 252 [My Picture](#)

Using Front Cover Indexes

You can find a target page by proceeding from the front cover to the cover of a chapter (the first page of the chapter) and the page where a function is described.

Full Browser

Displaying/Editing/Managing Data

Music Playing

Other Convenient Functions

Network Services

Data Communication

Displaying/Editing/ Managing Data

Making full use of images

Displaying images [My Picture](#) 252
 Editing still images 254
 Setting the operating conditions of images [Settings](#) 257
 Saving the still image in the Data Center [Data Security Service](#) 258

Making full use of video/i-motion

Playing video/i-motion [i-motion](#) 258
 Editing video/i-motion 260
 Setting the operating conditions of video/i-motion [Settings](#) 263

The displays or illustrations provided in this manual are for information purposes only and may be different from the actual products.

In this manual, the keys are simplified.

Actual key	Description in this manual
	

• The typestyle of key characters is different depending on the color of the terminal. (Example:  )

In this manual, the operation procedures are described as follows:

Description	Meaning
    Enter the terminal security code	Press   on the standby display and then press  . Continuously, enter the terminal security code and press  .

Displaying images Menu 51

My Picture

You can display images saved in *My Picture* in Data Box in FOMA terminal.

- Select a folder**
Each folder contains specific images:
 - Camera** : Still images shot by the camera or Chara-den and still images captured from video/i-motion or PDF data
 - i-mode** : Images acquired with i-mode, Full Browser, i-mode Mail and i-ppli
 - Deco-mail picture** : Preinstalled images for Deco-mail and images downloaded from sites or received via i-mode mails
 - Deco-mail pict** : Deco-mail pictograms preinstalled, downloaded from sites or received via i-mode mails
 - Item** : Frame images preinstalled by default and frame images/stamp images downloaded from sites
 - Preinstalled** : Images preinstalled by default
 - Data transfer** : Images read by Bar Code Reader and images received via data communications
 - Album** : Images moved from other folders
 - Not displayed by default. To create an Album folder \blacktriangleleft P268
- Highlight an image**
Thumbnail display Title display

Thumbnail display

Title display

Image list

- 1 Originated**
 - Camera
 - i-mode
 - Preinstalled
 - Item
 - Data transfer
 - Chara-den

Shortcut operation
 \blacktriangleleft P29

Title & function name:
Function names are listed on INDEX.

Functional overview and notes for operation

Default setting when ON mode (\blacktriangleleft P100) is active

Operation procedure

INFORMATION:
In this manual, information items are categorized as follows:

- Setting guide** : Alternative operation procedures
- Type** : General notes
- Counter** : Detailed description of the function
- Indicator** : Useful information

Column:
Useful information

The page shown here is an example. It may differ from the actual page.

Sorting data Sort

You can change the order of data of the list screen.

- To sort music data in *Music* \blacktriangleleft P289

Default By: Saved date & time
Order: Descending

Example Sorting data in *My Picture*

- Select a folder**
- Menu**
- Select each item to set** \blacktriangleright Press

By : Sets the sorting method.
Order : Sets the sorting order of data.

INFORMATION

In the video/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list, Chara-den list, Machi-chara list or document list of *Other*, press and select *Sort*.
If one-byte and two-byte characters are mixed in the display name, the sorted result may not correspond to Japanese syllabary.

Reading the recording screen

- Setting guide**
Use to change settings for recording. \blacktriangleleft P279
- Type**
Indicates to record sound.
- Counter**
-<During standby for recording>
Indicates the approximate maximum recording time of sounds that can be saved with the current settings.
-<During recording/pauses>
Indicates the approximate elapsed/remaining time (duration until the recording stops).
- Indicator**
-<During standby for recording>
Indicates the usage rate of the storage area.

252 [Displaying/Editing/Managing Data](#)

Supplement to the operation **Chapter title**

If there is especially no notice, the operation procedures from the standby display are mentioned. The operation procedure is mainly explained in shortcut operations using the normal menu (except the simple menu).

When there are two or more possible procedures, the simplest one is mentioned.

In this manual, to place the cursor at an item with (Easy Selector Plus) is referred to as "highlight". In addition, to select an item by placing the cursor with (Easy Selector Plus) and pressing (Enter key) is referred to as "select".

The step of pressing which is required after entering characters in the entry field is omitted in description.

In this manual, the words and phrases displayed on the screen are written in italic characters.

Some screens do not support the bilingual function and items or keys may be displayed in Japanese. In this manual, these Japanese words are written by both in Japanese and English only for the first time in a chapter or a section.

Quick Search

Use this Quick Search to search for a function using easy-to-understand words.

Useful functions for phone calls



- Notify/not notify your phone number..... 42 [Caller ID Notification](#)
- Put the current call on hold..... 47 [On-hold](#)
- Switch to videophone call during voice call 49 [Switch to videophone](#)
- Adjust the volume of the other party's voice..... 62 [Listen Volume](#)

When unable to answer an incoming call



- Put the incoming call on hold..... 64 [Response and Hold](#)
- Inform the caller that you should not use the phone
..... 66 [Public mode\(Driving mode\)](#)
..... 67 [Public mode\(power off\)](#)
- Record caller's messages 68 [Answer Machine](#)

How to change melodies or lighting patterns



- Adjust the volume of ring alerts 62 [Adjust Volume](#)
- Use a personal ring alert for each caller..... 83 [Alert by Contact](#)
- Use your favorite ring alerts..... 101 [Sound Setting](#)
- Mute the sound heard when pressing keypad..... 104 [Keypad Sound](#)
- Use the vibrator for incoming calls 105 [Vibrator Setting](#)
- Turn Silent Mode on 107 [Silent Mode](#)
- Customize the incoming lighting pattern..... 121 [Light Alert Setting](#)

How to change the screen displays



- Learn the meaning of icons on the screen 25 [Reading display](#)
- Change the menu display format..... 28 [Selecting menu](#)
- Customize the standby display (wallpaper) 108 [Standby Display Setting](#)
- Show a calendar on the standby display 111 [Calendar](#)
- Change the size of characters..... 122 [Font Size Setting](#)

Advanced functions for mail



- Send your original Deco-mail 190 [Deco-mail](#)
- Send images with mail..... 194 [Attachment](#)
- Sort and save mail automatically..... 214 [Sort Criteria](#)

Advanced functions for camera



- Change the size of image to shoot..... 150 [Image size](#)
- Display the shot images 252 [My Picture](#)

Settings for your phone safety



- Keep your phonebook data secret.....95 [Secret Attribute](#)
- Lock your phone remotely when it is lost, etc.... 131 [Omakase Lock](#)
- Reject calls without caller ID..... 139 [Anonymous Caller](#)
- Reject callers not registered in the phonebook... 141 [Reject Unregistered Caller](#)
- Save the phonebook and other data to prevent data loss 141 [Data Security Service*1](#)

*1 This is a pay service and requires a subscription.

Other useful functions



- Increase the life of the battery 116 [Display Light Setting](#)
- Read a QR code or barcode 156 [Bar Code Reader](#)
- Send/receive data via infrared communication....273 [Infrared communication](#)
- Listen to music 286 [Playing music](#)
- Use your phone as an alarm clock..... 296 [Alarm Clock](#)
- Use your phone as a calculator..... 310 [Calculator](#)
- Update software 374 [Software Update](#)
- Update the security 378 [Virus Scan Function](#)

Contents

Before using your FOMA terminal	Inside front cover
For first time user of the FOMA terminal ...	Inside front cover
How to use and refer to this manual	1
Quick Search.....	4
Features and functions of FOMA D703i.....	8
Making full use of D703i.....	10
SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (Always follow these directions).....	12
Handling instructions.....	18
About intellectual property rights.....	20
Basic package and optional accessories	22

Before Using D703i

23

Names and functions of parts Reading the display Selecting the menu
Using the UIM (FOMA card) Attaching/removing the battery pack Charging Battery Level
Power ON/OFF Select Language Date and Time Setting Caller ID Notification
Own Number

Calls/Videophone Calls

43

Making calls Redial/Received Calls Chaku-moji 186/184 Call WORLD CALL
Receiving calls Any Key Answer Listen Volume Adjust Volume Response and Hold
Public mode (Driving mode/power off) Answer Machine Using Chara-den
Setting images being sent Customizing screen during videophone call
Videophone Settings etc.

Phonebook

79

Phonebook New Entry Group Setting Phonebook Search Edit Phonebook
Delete Phonebook Secret Attribute Quick Dial etc.

Sounds/Displays/Lights Settings

99

Mode Select Sound Setting Vibrator Setting Silent Mode Standby Display Setting
Call Image Mail Image Display Light Setting Menu Setting Style Theme
Machi-chara Setting Light Alert Setting Indicator Light Clock Display Format etc.

Safety Settings

125

Security code Change Security Code PIN code All Lock Omakase Lock
Self Mode PIM Lock Keypad Dial Lock Privacy Mode Setting Key Lock Secret Mode
Data Security Service etc.

Camera

143

Still Camera Movie Camera Settings during shooting Bar Code Reader etc.

i-mode/i-motion/i-channel

159

What's i-mode? Displaying sites Change i-mode Password Internet Connection
Bookmark Screen Memo Downloading images and melodies i-mode Setting
Message R/F Certificate i-motion Downloading i-motion i-motion Setting i-channel
Channel List i-Channel Ticker etc.

Mail	185
Composing and sending i-mode Mail Deco-mail Attachment Save Mail Receiving i-mode Mail Check i-mode Message Display/Play/Save Attachment Using mail box Received Msg. Log/Sent Msg. Log Mail Setting Composing and sending chat mail Composing and sending SMS etc.	
i- ppli	229
i- ppli Downloading Starting i- ppli i- ppli To i- ppli Standby Display etc.	
Full Browser	243
Full Browser Browser Setting	
Displaying/Editing/Managing Data	251
Displaying/editing images Playing/editing video/i-motion Chara-den Machi-chara Playing melodies Managing data Infrared communication Sound Recorder PDF Viewer Document Viewer etc.	
Music Playing	285
How to play music Downloading Music Player etc.	
Other Convenient Functions	293
Multiaccess Multitask Auto Power ON/OFF Timer Alarm Clock Scheduler Custom Menu Own Number Voice Memo/Video Memo Call Duration/Call Cost Reset Call Cost Call Cost Limit Calculator Notepad Electronic dictionaries Earphone/Microphone with Switch Quick Start-up Reset Delete All Data etc.	
Network Services	317
Voice Mail Call Waiting Call Forwarding Nuisance Call Blocking Caller ID Request Dual Network English Guidance Service Dialing Number Remote Control Multi Number etc.	
Data Communication	325
Data communication Flow of setup AT command etc.	
Character Entry	329
Entering characters 5-touch Input Method Save Phrase Copy Character KUTEN Code Input Save Word Downloaded Dictionary Slot Input Method Input Method Setting	
Appendix/Data Interchange/Troubleshooting	339
Menu list Data set by default List of character assignments Options and related devices Troubleshooting Error Message Warranty and After-Sales Service Software Update Virus Scan Function Main specification etc.	
INDEX/Quick Reference Manual	389
INDEX Quick Reference Manual	

Features and functions of FOMA D703i

FOMA is the name of a set of services provided by DoCoMo based on W-CDMA, which is recognized as one of the systems compliant to the global standard for third generation mobile communications (IMT-2000).

It's amazing because it's i-mode!

i-mode is an online service used with i-mode terminals. This service supports connection to i-mode sites (programs) or i-mode compatible websites that provide a variety of useful information and allows you to exchange i-mode Mail.

i-mode Mail/Deco-mail pictogram P189

In addition to the message text, data of up to 2 Mbytes or up to 10 files (JPEG, PDF data, etc.) can be attached to a mail. P194

Deco-mail/Deco-mail pictograms allow you to change the character color, size or background color of the message. You can enjoy composing and sending expressive mails. P190

Chaku-Uta Full® P286

You can download an entire full-length song of your choice. Downloaded song can be set as the ring alert. P290

- “Chaku-Uta Full” is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

Mega i- ppli/i- ppli DX P230

Downloading i- ppli from sites allows you to enjoy various games and automatically update stock prices and weather information on your phone. High-capacity mega i- ppli is supported, which allows you to enjoy high-definition 3D games and full-length RPG games.

i- ppli DX provides better uses in conjunction with i-mode terminal information such as the phonebook and mail.

Safety settings

Omakase Lock P131

You can lock your FOMA terminal in case it is lost and also cancel the lock, by informing DoCoMo. For contact information, refer to the back of this manual.

- Note that FOMA terminal is locked when a request is made by the subscriber even if the subscriber is not the user of FOMA terminal.

Data Security Service

Allows you to back up the phonebook data, still images and mails stored in FOMA terminal to the Data Center. When your FOMA terminal is lost, etc., you can restore the backup data to the new FOMA terminal. In addition, you can edit and manage the backup data in the Data Center from your PC, and save the edited data to your FOMA terminal. P141

For important notes on using Data Security Service and detail information about how to use the service, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”. For contact information, refer to the back of this manual.

- This is a pay service and requires a subscription.

Wide array of network services

- Voice Mail Service (charged)*1 P318
- Call Forwarding Service (free of charge)*1 P320
- SMS (Short Message) (free of charge) P224
- Call Waiting Service (charged)*1 P319
- Dual Network Service (charged)*1 P321

*1 A separate subscription is required.

Useful functions

Mode Select

☛P100

You can change the display and sound settings to suit your mood or occasion. For example, you can set the clock to appear on the standby display in ON mode and your family or personal photo to appear in OFF mode. Switching between ON mode and OFF mode changes those settings at once.

Illumination

☛P121

The keys light up in various patterns when there is an incoming call, etc.

High-definition large display

The large TFT LCD of about 2.4 inches (240 x 320 dots) is provided for the display. It clearly displays fine images and characters on the large screen.

Built-in camera

☛P144

You can shoot a still image of up to SXGA (960 x 1280). In addition to a maximum 10x zoom, various modes are available for shooting including close-up, framed shooting and continuous shooting.

- Effective pixels: Approx. 1.3M (Max record pixels: Approx. 1.2M)

Machi-chara

☛P120

A character, moving around the screen, can be displayed on the standby display, etc. You can download Machi-chara from compatible sites.

☛P170

Electronic dictionaries

☛P313

Handy Japanese, English-Japanese, and Japanese-English dictionaries are preloaded on FOMA terminal.

Usable mail functions

- You can block other people from peeping your mail messages by a simple key operation (Only View). ☛P218
- When you move from outside the service area to inside the service area, unsent mail set to auto-send is sent automatically. ☛P197
- If the text of reply mail is registered beforehand, you can reply mail easily (Quick Reply). ☛P218
- You can search mail from the phonebook or the calendar easily. ☛P86, P302
- The characters can be converted efficiently with ATOK and APOT (AI presumption conversion) provided.

Full Browser

☛P244

Allows you to view websites for PC on FOMA terminal. Horizontal display is available on the Full Browser screen.

Document Viewer

☛P283

Word, Excel and PowerPoint files can be viewed on FOMA terminal.

Simple menu

☛P117

In addition to the normal menu, you can use another menu to display frequently-used functions such as でんわ(phone), メール(mail), カメラ(camera) and iモード(i-mode) in large size of characters. Characters in the phonebook or mails are displayed larger in this menu.

Making full use of D703i

A variety of functions of D703i visual communications are explained here.

Videophone

You can talk while seeing the image taken by a party in the distance. As your image, a Chara-den image appears on the screen of the other party's terminal. You can also send a surrounding scenery image by switching to the camera image.

Your terminal

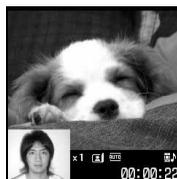


© Disney

Other party's terminal



Other party's terminal



Talk while seeing the other party's image. ◀P45, P59
A Chara-den image is displayed on the other party's terminal. The image you send can be changed between Chara-den and still image. ▶P76

Image of your surroundings is displayed. ▶P72

Chaku-moji

When you make a call, you can set a message (Chaku-moji) to be displayed on the other party's incoming screen. The other party can see the message (Chaku-moji) and know in advance what the matter is and how you are feeling. ▶P52

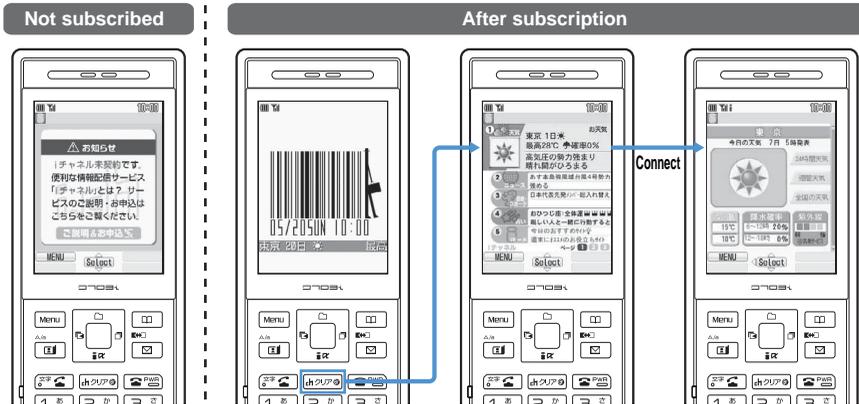
Other party's terminal



Chaku-moji

i-channel

You can receive a variety of information on a regular basis without additional operations. In addition, press the i-channel compatible key (**シリア**) to display the channel list so that you can get more richly detailed information. ◀P181



Playing music

FOMA terminal supports Chaku-Uta Full[®] that allows you to download an entire full-length song. Downloaded music can be played on Music Player. You can create a playlist to play music in your favorite order. ◀P286

Music Player



SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (Always follow these directions)

Read the following SAFETY PRECAUTIONS to ensure that the phone is used correctly. Also, store this manual in a convenient location for future reference.

It is essential that these precautions be observed to prevent injury to the user and third parties as well as damage to property.

The following symbols are used to indicate the degree of danger or damage that may result from failing to follow the specified precautions.

	DANGER
Indicates an imminently hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.	
	WARNING
Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.	
	CAUTION
Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, may result in injury or property damage.	

The following symbols are used to highlight instructions that are very important and that must be strictly followed.

	This indicates the action is prohibited.
	This indicates disassembly is prohibited.
	This indicates that handling with wet hands is prohibited.
	This indicates the part must not be exposed to water.
	This indicates an action that must be performed in accordance with the directions.
	This indicates you must remove the plug from the power outlet.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS is separated into six categories.

Handling the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (and charger) and the UIM (general information)P13

Handling the FOMA terminalP14

Handling the battery packP15

Handling optional devices (AC adapter/DC adapter/Desktop Holder/In-Car Holder)P16

Handling the UIM (FOMA card).....P17

Handling the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of medical devices.....P17



DANGER



Use only DoCoMo-certified battery packs and adapters (and chargers) with the FOMA terminal.

Use of non-specified items could cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack or other devices to leak, overheat, rupture, catch fire or malfunction.

Battery Pack D08

Desktop Holder D11

FOMA AC Adapter 01

FOMA DC Adapter 01

FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01

FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01

FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use

- For additional items related to the compatible products, contact the nearest DoCoMo Shop.



Do not attempt to disassemble or remodel. In addition, do not attempt to solder.

Attempting to do so will lead to an accident, such as a fire, injury, or electrical shock and damage the equipment. Doing so may also cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture, or ignite.



Do not use or leave in a place near fire or heaters. Also avoid a high-temperature place exposed to direct sunlight or a car under the scorching sun.

Otherwise, the equipment will get deformed or troubled. The battery pack may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and a reduction in performance and life may result. Sometimes, the casing will partly get heated, resulting in an extremely high temperature to get you burnt.



Do not expose to water.

The equipment may overheat, cause electric shock, fire, damage or injury if exposed to water, pet urine or other liquids. Do not use the equipment in locations where it could get wet.



WARNING



Do not use in environments exposed to combustible or explosive materials, such as a gas station.

Using the equipment in locations exposed to flammable gases or liquids such as propane or gasoline could cause fire or explosion.



Do not place the battery pack, FOMA terminal, adapter (and charger) or UIM in the microwave oven, high-pressure cooker or other cooking appliances.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and could damage the circuitry of the FOMA terminal and adapter (and charger), causing overheat, smoke or fire.



Do not expose to strong shocks by dropping or throwing.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and damage the equipment, resulting in fire.



Do not let the recharging terminal and external device terminal touch any conductive material, such as a piece of metal or lead. Also do not put any conductive material into the recharging terminal and external device terminal.

The battery can short-circuit, causing fire and damage.



If there is anything wrong (such as strange odor, heat generation, color change, deformation, or the like) during use, battery charge or storage, you should take the following steps immediately.

1. Remove the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
2. Turn off the FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.

Continuing to use the equipment without taking these steps will cause it to overheat, rupture, or ignite or cause the battery pack to leak.



CAUTION



When a child uses the FOMA terminal, first be sure an experienced adult teaches proper usage methods and techniques. Observe the child to determine that they are using the FOMA terminal correctly.

Failure to do so could result in injury.



Do not place on an unstable or tilted surface.

Doing so could cause the equipment to slide off, possibly causing personal injury or damaging the equipment.



Keep out of the reach of small children.

The components can be accidentally swallowed, resulting in injury.



Do not store in locations subject to high temperature, humidity or excessive dust.

Doing so could damage the equipment.



The temperature of the FOMA terminal, battery pack or adapter (and charger) may become high when charging the battery, recording/playing a video, or using videophone, i-mode or i-ppli repeatedly or for a long period of time.

If you touch the part with a high temperature directly for a long period of time, redness, itchiness, rash, etc. may arise in your skin depending on your constitution or condition.

Be especially careful when you use the FOMA terminal connected to an adapter (and charger) continuously for a prolonged period.



Turn off the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of electronic equipment that relies on high-precision control or faint signals.

The FOMA terminal may interfere with the correct functioning of such electronic equipment.

- Examples: hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators, other medical devices, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatically controlled equipment. Users of such medical equipments should check with the electronic equipment or device manufacturer with respect to the effect of electromagnetic interference.



Do not place the FOMA terminal in a breast or inner pocket if you are carrying or using electronic medical equipment.

The FOMA terminal could cause any medical equipment in its vicinity to malfunction.



People with weak hearts should take care with respect to the setting of the incoming vibrator and ring volume.

The FOMA terminal may affect hearts.



Do not use the FOMA terminal while driving.

From November 1, 2004, using mobile phones while driving is set as the object of penal regulations. Even if you use the handsfree device, park the car in a safe place before using the phone. Use Public mode or Voice Mail Service while driving.



Do not aim the infrared port at eyes and attempt to transmit.

Eyes could be affected. Aiming at other infrared devices and transmitting could cause other devices to malfunction.

Handling the FOMA terminal



WARNING



Turn off the FOMA terminal inside an aircraft, hospital or other location where use of mobile phones is prohibited.

The FOMA terminal may interfere with the correct functioning of electronic equipment. If the automatic power on function is used, cancel the setting and turn the power off. Observe any regulations posted in medical facilities.

If you have done prohibition acts such as using the FOMA terminal inside an aircraft, you may be punished as stipulated by law.



When you talk under handsfree settings (with the speakerphone function), be sure to keep a distance between the FOMA terminal and your ear.

Failure to do so could cause the hearing loss.



Do not place the FOMA terminal in an area over an air bag or in an air bag deployment area such as on a dashboard in a vehicle.

If the air bag inflates, the FOMA terminal may hit you and injury and damage to itself could result.



If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, immediately turn the power off and move to a safe location.

Use of the phone in such a situation could expose you to lightning strikes or electric shock.



Do not attach metallic materials such as wire to the port. Do not carry or store the battery pack together with a necklace or other metallic items.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



CAUTION



Do not swing the FOMA terminal around by the strap.

Doing so could cause injury to yourself or a third party or damage the phone.



Do not pierce the battery pack with nails, hammer on it or step on it.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



Rarely, some FOMA terminal users may develop itching, skin irritation or eczema. If such a condition occurs, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and seek medical attention.



When you attach the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, never attempt to forcefully insert, because it should slide in easily and fit correctly. Check the direction of the battery pack and try again.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



Use in certain makes of cars may affect onboard electronic equipment.

Continued use under such conditions could cause unsafe driving. Do not use the FOMA terminal in such a case.



WARNING



Do not bring magnetic cards near the FOMA terminal.

Magnetic data stored on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, and floppy disks may be corrupted or lost.



Should any electrolyte from the battery pack come into contact with your skin or clothing, immediately stop using the battery and rinse with clean water.

Failure to do so could cause skin injuries.

Handling the battery pack

Check the battery type indicated on the battery pack label.

Indication	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium ion battery



Stop charging if it is not possible to fully charge the battery pack within the specified time.

Failure to do so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



DANGER



If electrolyte from the battery pack gets in your eyes, do not rub; instead, rinse immediately with copious amounts of clean water and seek medical attention.

Doing so could cause the loss of vision.



If the battery pack leaks or emits strange odors, immediately stop using it, and always keep away from sources of fire.

Failure to do so could cause the battery liquid to catch fire, and the battery pack itself to rupture.



Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



CAUTION



Do not dispose of the battery pack with other regular household waste.

Failure to properly dispose of the battery pack in an environmentally sensitive manner could cause the battery pack to catch fire and damage the environment. Use adhesive tape to cover the terminal of battery pack when it is no longer used and bring it to a DoCoMo Shop after the insulation. Alternatively, you can also dispose of the battery pack in accordance with local regulations.



If the adapter (and charger) or holder is exposed to water or other liquid, immediately disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

Failure to do so could result in electric shock, smoke or fire.



When connected to a wall outlet, make sure that the AC adapter does not come into contact with metallic straps or other metal objects and the plug is properly seated.

Failure to do so could result in electric shock, short circuit, or fire.

Handling optional devices (AC adapter/DC adapter/Desktop Holder/In-Car Holder)



WARNING



Use care not to short circuit the recharging terminal when the adapter (and charger) is connected to a wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not touch the recharging terminal with your hands or fingers, or some other part of the body.

Doing so could cause fire, equipment failure, electric shock or other injury.



Use the designated power source and correct voltage.

Use of incorrect voltage could cause fire or equipment failure. When using the FOMA terminal overseas, use the FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use.

AC adapter: 100 V AC

FOMA AC Adapter for Global use: 100 V to 240 V AC

(Always connect to the outlet for internal household use.)

DC adapter: 12 V DC, 24 V DC (specific for negative ground vehicle)



Use only the specified fuse for the DC adapter.

Use of the incorrect fuse could cause fire or equipment failure. Check the instruction manual for details of the correct fuse to use.



Do not touch the adapter (and charger) cord or wall outlet with wet hands.

Doing so could cause electric shock.



The DC adapter is for use with negative ground cars. Do not use it with positive ground cars.

Doing so could result in fire.



Do not use the AC adapter and Desktop Holder in bathrooms or other potentially high humidity locations.

Doing so could cause electric shock.



Be sure the power plug is free of dust.

Failure to do so could cause the equipment to catch fire.



When the adapter (and charger) is not to be used for a prolonged period, disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.

Failure to do so could result in electric shock, fire, or equipment failure.



During charging, place the adapter (and charger) and Desktop Holder in a stable location. Do not cover or wrap the adapter (and charger) and Desktop Holder with a cloth or blanket, etc.

Using the equipment under such conditions could cause the FOMA terminal to be detached from the holder, or cause a heat buildup that leads to fire or equipment failure.



Never use the adapter (and charger) when it has a damaged power cord.

Failure to do so could result in electric shock, overheat or fire.



Do not touch the FOMA terminal and the adapter (and charger) when hearing thunder.

Contact with the FOMA terminal and adapter could cause you lightning strikes or electric shock.



CAUTION



Disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket before beginning any maintenance.

Failure to do so could cause electric shock.



Disconnect the adapter (and charger) from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket by pulling the adapter, not the adapter (and charger) cord or the power cord.

Pulling the cord could damage the cord, resulting in electric shock or fire.



Do not place heavy objects on the adapter (and charger) cord or power cord.

Doing so could cause electric shock or fire.

Handling the UIM (FOMA card)



CAUTION



Take care when removing the UIM (the IC).

Failure to do so could cause injury to hand and fingers.

Handling the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of medical devices

The information given below conforms to the guidelines set forth by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phone units.



WARNING



Turn off the FOMA terminal on packed trains or in crowded places as someone with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be nearby.

The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.



When inside a medical institution, always remember the following guidelines:

- Never take the FOMA terminal inside an operating room, intensive care unit (ICU) or coronary care unit (CCU).
- Always turn off the FOMA terminal in hospital wards.
- Even in the lobby and other areas, always turn off the FOMA terminal when electronic medical equipment is nearby.
- Follow the directives of the medical institution. There may be specific regulations as to items that are prohibited or use of which is restricted.
- If you are using the automatic power on function, cancel the setting and turn off the power.



If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, keep your FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from it.

The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.



If you are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators at your home or outside the confines of a medical institution, be sure to check with the manufacturer about possible adverse effects caused by electromagnetic interference.

The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of electronic medical equipment.

Handling instructions

General

Do not get the components wet.

The FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (and charger) and UIM are not waterproof. Avoid using the components in a bathroom or other high humidity areas or locations exposed to rain. If you carry the components, sweat could cause internal corrosion that leads to equipment failure. As a result of investigation, if component failure is found to be water-related, repair is not covered by the warranty and may not be able to be performed. In such a case, should it be found to be possible to repair the unit, you will be billed for all repairs. Clean the components with a soft dry cloth (such as a lens cloth).

- The FOMA terminal display may have a special coating on it so that the color LCD provides a clear view. Rubbing the display strongly with a dry cloth for cleaning could damage the display. Handle with care and clean the display with a soft dry cloth (such as a lens cloth). Also note that leaving the display with dirt or moisture attached could cause spots or remove the coating on it.
- Using alcohol, thinner, benzene or detergents could cause the printed text to fade or disappear, or the equipment to become discolored.

Occasionally clean the terminals with a dry cotton swab.

Dirty terminals could cause intermittent contact that could interrupt the flow of power to the unit. Such a situation also causes insufficient charging. Use a dry cloth or cotton swab to clean the terminals.

Do not place the components near an air conditioner vent.

Sudden changes in temperature could cause condensation, leading to corrosion inside the components and equipment failure.

Do not place the FOMA terminal in locations where it could be exposed to excessive pressure. Do not place it in a bag together with many other things or in your pocket when you sit down as this could exert pressure on the LCD or damage the internal boards, resulting in equipment failure. Damage arising from such causes is not covered by the warranty.

Carefully read the instruction manuals supplied with the battery pack and adapter (and charger) before use.

FOMA terminal

Avoid extremely high or low temperatures.

Use in an environment with a temperature of 5 to 35 °C and relative humidity of 45 to 85 %.

If the FOMA terminal is used near a radio, television or general subscriber phone, it could affect such equipment. Use the phone as far away from such equipment as possible.

With regard to data stored in the FOMA terminal, keep it separately in a memo, etc. so as not to permanently lose important data.

NTT DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of stored data.

Do not put the FOMA terminal in your back pocket and sit on it. Avoid putting the phone in the bottom of a bag, etc. where it is subject to excessive pressure.

Damage may result.

It is normal for the FOMA terminal to become warm during using or recharging. You can continue to use it while warm.

Do not aim the camera directly at the sun and leave it.

Elements may be discolored or baked.

Battery pack

The battery pack will gradually wear out.

Battery life also depends on how you use the battery pack; it is time to replace it when the usage time is very short even though you fully charge it. The specified battery pack can be purchased separately.

Recharge the battery pack in locations where the ambient temperature is between 5 °C and 35 °C.

When using for the first time or after a long period of non-use, be sure to fully charge the battery pack before use.

The time of use provided by the battery pack depends on the ambient conditions and the condition of the battery pack itself.

Depending on usage, the battery pack may swell as it nears the end of its life, but this will not cause a problem.

Do not expose to the direct sunlight and high temperature. Please keep your battery in an airy and cool place.

When you do not use your phone for a long period of time, remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal with the battery used up, put into the packing plastic bag or other container, and keep it.

Adapter (and charger)

Recharge the battery pack in a location where the ambient temperature is between 5 °C and 35 °C.

Do not recharge in the following locations:

- Locations that are subject to high humidity, dust or excessive vibration
- Near general subscriber phones, TVs or radios

It is normal for the adapter (and charger) to become warm during recharging. You can continue charging with a warm adapter.

When the battery pack is recharged using the DC adapter, always keep the car engine running. Failure to do so could cause the car battery to run down more quickly than normal.

When an outlet with falling prevention mechanism is used, check the instruction manual for the outlet before use.

Do not expose to the strong shock and deform the recharging terminal.

Giving the strong shock on an adapter can cause damage.

UIM (FOMA card)

Do not use excessive force to remove the UIM.

Do not place an excessive load on the UIM when inserting it into the terminal.

The UIM becomes warm during use. This is normal and not a cause for concern.

Note that any card failures resulting from inserting the UIM in an IC card reader/writer not designated by NTT DoCoMo are the responsibility of the customer.

Make sure that the ICs are kept clean.

Clean the UIM with a soft dry cloth (such as a lens cloth).

It is recommended that users maintain data stored on the UIM in some other form.

If the data should be erased, NTT DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

The UIMs that are no longer used should be returned to a DoCoMo Shop for environmental protection.

Avoid extremely high or low temperature.

Take care not to damage, touch, or short-circuit the ICs to prevent them from losing their data or from malfunctioning.

Take care not to drop the UIM or give shock to the UIM to prevent it from malfunctioning.

Do not bend the UIM and place heavy stuff on it to avoid a failure.

Camera

If you should use the FOMA terminal to make a public nuisance, you might be punished under the laws and bylaws such as Japan's nuisance prevention ordinance.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending images using

- **camera-equipped mobile phones.**

About intellectual property rights

Copyrights and portrait rights

Except in cases where reproduction and quoting for private use is sanctioned under copyright laws, the reproduction, alteration and public transmission of such content as text, images, music or software for which another party owns the copyrights, whether accomplished by using this product to photograph or record that content or by downloading it from Internet websites, is prohibited without the permission of the owner.

Taking photographs or recordings of such events as performances and exhibitions may be prohibited even for purposes of private use.

In addition, if you use this product to take another person's photograph without their permission, or display such a photograph without their permission on an Internet website and make that content public to an indeterminate number of people, you may be in violation of portrait rights.

Trademarks

Company names and trade names used in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

- FOMA, mova, i-motion, i-mode, i- ppli, i-motion mail, i-shot, DoPa, mopera, mopera U, WORLD CALL, WORLD WING, Short Mail, Chaku-motion, Deco-mail, V-Live, i-area, Chara-den, i- ppli DX, Dual Network, visualnet, i-Channel, FirstPass, sigmarion, Security Scan, musea, Public mode, My DoCoMo, iMCS, OFFICEED, the FOMA logo, the i-mode logo and the i- ppli logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- “キャッチホン (Call Waiting)” is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- The toll-free service name and the toll-free service logo mark are trademarks of NTT Communications Corporation.
- Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows Media®, DirectX® and PowerPoint® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Microsoft® Excel and Microsoft® Word are product names of Microsoft Corporation in the United States. In this manual, they are referred to as Excel and Word.

- Java and all Java-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2006 Aplix Corporation.

All rights reserved.

JBlend and all JBlend-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.

- “Multitask” is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.

- This product contains NetFront of ACCESS CO., LTD. to provide Internet function. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries. Copyright© 1996-2007 ACCESS CO., LTD.

- This product contains Flash® Lite™ of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the US and other countries. Copyright© 1995- 2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.

- McAfee and VirusScan are registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.

All other registered and unregistered trademarks herein are the sole property of their respective owners.

©2007 Networks Associates Technology, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

- QR code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.

- Contains Adobe Reader of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Copyright© 2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Patents pending.

Adobe, the Adobe logo and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Adobe and Adobe Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

- Powered by Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™ Mascot Capsule® is a registered trademark of HI CORPORATION.

- “ATOK” and “APOT” (Advanced Prediction Optimization Technology) are registered trademarks of Justsystem Corporation.



- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and the logos associated with G-GUIDE are registered trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates in Japan.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- "Privacy Mode" is a registered trademark of FUJITSU Limited.
- **symbian**
This product includes software licensed from Symbian Software Ltd. 'Symbian', 'Symbian OS' and other associated Symbian marks are all trademarks of Symbian Software Ltd. ©1998-2007 Symbian Software Ltd. All rights reserved.
- Word, Excel and PowerPoint file display technologies are powered by Pícsel Technologies Ltd. Pícsel, Pícsel File Viewer and the Pícsel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pícsel Technologies Ltd.
- Intel and Pentium are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.
- In addition to the above, company names and trade names used in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.



5,511,073	5,267,261	5,568,483
5,414,796	5,659,569	5,056,109
5,506,865	5,228,054	5,544,196
5,337,338	5,657,420	5,710,784
5,778,338		

- This product contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- "Meikyo Mobile Japanese Dictionary", "G-Mobile English-Japanese Dictionary" and "G-Mobile Japanese-English Dictionary" are copyrighted works of TAISHUKAN Publishing Co., Ltd.
- All the rights related to "逆転裁判 蘇る逆転 D703i版" are retained by Capcom Co., Ltd.
- In this manual, each OS (Japanese version) is written for short as follows:
 - Windows XP is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
 - Windows 2000 is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
 - It may describe like Windows XP and 2000 in parallel.



Other rights and responsibilities

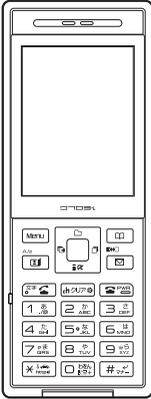
- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. The use of MPEG-4 Video Codec function is allowed for personal and nonprofit use only in the following cases:
 - Recording videos that conform to MPEG-4 Visual Standard (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
 - Playing MPEG-4 Videos recorded personally by consumers not engaged in profit activities
 - Playing MPEG-4 Videos obtained from the provider licensed from MPEG LA
- For further utilizing such as promotion, in-house use or profit-making business, please contact MPEG LA, LLC in the US.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307	5,504,773	5,109,390
5,535,239	5,267,262	5,600,754
5,416,797	5,490,165	5,101,501

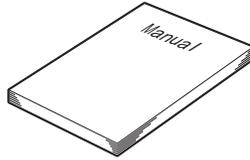
Basic package and optional accessories

Basic package

FOMA D703i
(including the written warranty and the Back Cover D15)

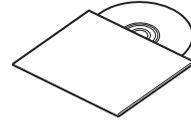


Instruction manual
(this book)



Quick Reference Manual • P396

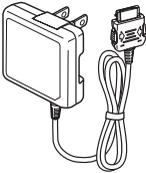
CD-ROM for FOMA
D703i



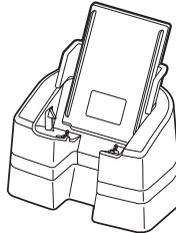
The PDF version of "Manual for Data Communication" and "Kuten Code List" is contained.

Optional accessories

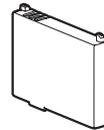
FOMA AC Adapter 01
(including the written warranty and the instruction manual)



Desktop Holder D11
(including the instruction manual)



Battery Pack D08
(including the instruction manual)

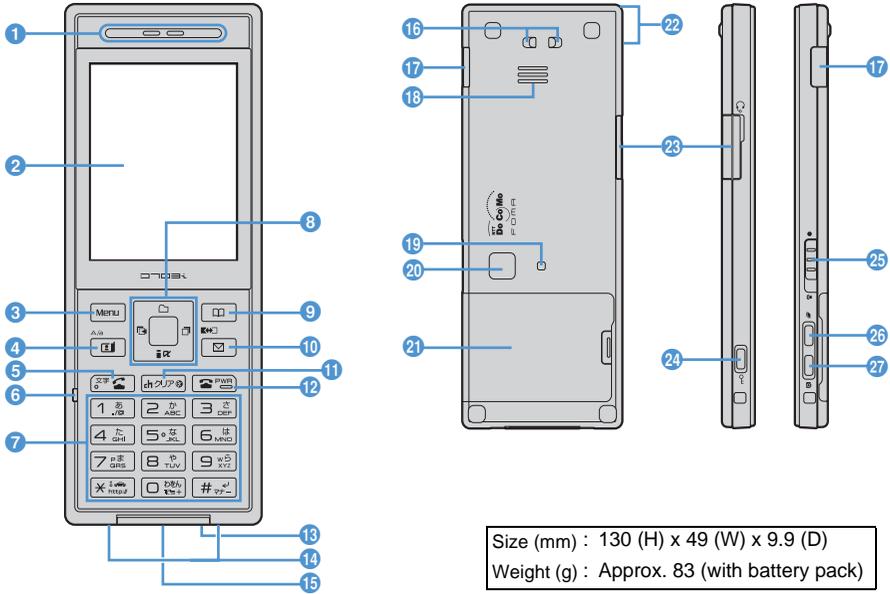


• Other optional accessories • P363

Before Using D703i

Names and functions of parts	24
Reading the display	25
Selecting the menu	28
Using the UIM (FOMA card)	32
Attaching/removing the battery pack	35
Charging the battery of FOMA terminal	36
Checking the remaining battery level	Battery Level 39
Turning the power on/off	Power ON/OFF 40
Switching to English display	Select Language 40
Setting the date and time	Date and Time Setting 41
Notifying your phone number to the other party	Caller ID Notification 42
Checking your own phone number	Own Number 42

Names and functions of parts



Size (mm) : 130 (H) x 49 (W) x 9.9 (D)
Weight (g) : Approx. 83 (with battery pack)

1 Earpiece

The other party's voice comes out of here.

2 Display \blacktriangleright P25

3 Menu/Menu/Upper left soft key

Use this key to display menus, perform the operation shown in the upper left part of the guide row, etc.

4 Start videophone/Scroll/Lower left soft key

Use this key to make/answer videophone calls, scroll mail or site display by a page, switch between upper/lower cases when entering characters, perform the operation shown in the lower left part of the guide row, etc.

5 Start voice call/Speakerphone/Character key

Use this key to make/answer voice calls, turn on/off the speakerphone function, switch input modes when entering characters, etc.

6 Charging indicator

Lights in red during charging.

7 Dial keys

0 to 9

Used to enter phone numbers and text and to select menu items.

*** /Public mode (Driving mode) key**

Use this key to enter "*", etc. Hold down for over a second to set/cancel Public mode (Driving mode).

/Silent Mode/Line-feed key

Use this key to enter "#", start a new line when entering characters, etc. Hold down for over a second to set/cancel Silent Mode.

8 Easy Selector Plus

Enter key

Use this key to perform the selected operation, activate Focus Mode, etc. Hold down for over a second to start i- ppli set for One-key Shortcut.

Data Box/ key

Use this key to display the Data Box menu, move the cursor upward, adjust volume, etc.

i-mode/i- ppli/ key

Use this key to display the i-mode menu, move the cursor downward, adjust volume, etc. Hold down for over a second to display the i- ppli folder list.

Received Calls/ (previous) key

Use this key to display the received call history, switch between pages, move the cursor leftward, etc. Hold down for over a second to set/cancel Privacy Mode.

Redial/ (next) key

Use this key to display the redial data, switch between pages, move the cursor rightward, etc. Hold down for over a second to switch between ON mode and OFF mode.

9 Phonebook/Schedule/Upper right soft key

Use this key to display the phonebook, perform the operation shown in the upper right part of the guide row, etc. Hold down for over a second to display schedules.

10 Mail/Scroll/Lower right soft key

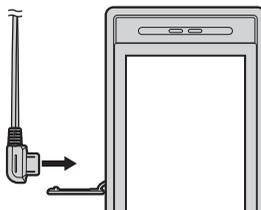
Use this key to display the Mail menu, scroll mail or site display by a page, perform the operation shown in the lower right part of the guide row, etc.

Hold down for over a second to perform Check i-mode Message.

- 11 **i-channel/Clear key**
Use this key to display the channel list, start i-mode on the i-mode standby display, delete characters, return to the previous screen, etc. Hold down for over a second to set/cancel Self Mode.
- 12 **Power/End key**
Use this key to end calls or functions in operation, place incoming calls on hold, cancel Secret Mode, switch displaying/not displaying the custom standby display, etc. Hold down for over 2 seconds to turn the power on/off.
- 13 **Microphone**
Picks up your voice.
- 14 **Charging terminals**
Used when charging FOMA terminal in the Desktop Holder (optional).
- 15 **External connection terminals** **P37**
Used to connect various optional accessories.
- 16 **Strap opening**
- 17 **Infrared data port** **P273**
Exchange data via infrared communication.
- 18 **Speaker**
Ring alert and other sounds including the other party's voice when using the speakerphone function come out of here.
- 19 **Camera indicator**
Lights or flashes in red when shooting still images or videos, etc.
- 20 **Camera** **P72, P144**
Used to shoot people or landscape and send these images during a videophone call.
- 21 **Back cover**
- 22 **FOMA antenna (built-in)**
The antenna is embedded.
- 23 **Earphone/microphone jack**
Used to connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional).

- 24 **Keylock switch** **P136**
Use this key to set/cancel Key Lock.
 - 25 **Macro mode switch** **P152**
Switches between the standard mode and the macro mode while shooting with the camera.
 - 26 **TASK key**
Use this key during Multiaccess or Multitask.
 - 27 **Answer Machine/Shutter key**
Use this key to display the Answer Machine/Voice Memo menu, release the shutter of the camera, stop ring alert/alarm, etc. Hold down for over a second to start Quick Record Message, activate the camera or switch between normal display and anti-peeping display (Only View) of the mail view screen.
- The keys explained in 5, 7, 11 and 12 light or flash while receiving a call or mail, shooting with the camera, etc. The lighting pattern can be set (P121). Also, they flash when there is new information (P122).
 - For the dial keys explained in 7, the typestyle of characters is different depending on the color of the terminal. (Example: ,)

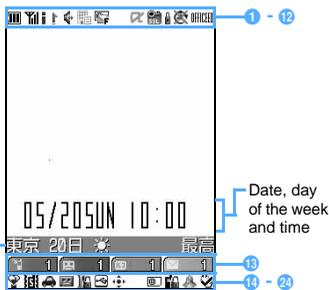
Connecting the Earphone/Microphone with Switch



- You can plug in the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) and use it. Using the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 (optional) allows you to use an existing earphone/microphone.

Reading the display

The description of icons displayed at the top or the bottom of the display is shown below:



Received i-channel information P183

- 1 : Battery level icon P39

- 2 : Signal level icon P40
- : Out of service area P40
- : Self Mode is set P132
- : During data transfer P273
DoCoMo keitai datalink in progress P328
- 3 : In i-mode communication (during i-mode connection) P160
- : In i-mode communication (during packet communication) P174, P199
- 4 : During infrared communication P273
- : Infrared remote control function in operation P277
- : Key Lock is set (in gray when Key Lock is temporarily released) P136

- ☎ : Total call cost exceeds the maximum limit ◀P310
- 5 *1 📢 : Speakerphone function in operation ◀P47
- 6 *1 📞 : Connecting to handsfree compatible device ◀P58
- 📧 : i-mode Mail and Message R/F storage space is full in the Center*2 ◀P200, P174
- 📧 / 📧 / 📧 : i-mode Mail or Message R/F storage space is full in the Center
- 📧 : Both i-mode Mail and Message R/F exist unreceived in the Center
- 📧 / 📧 / 📧 : i-mode Mail or Message R/F exists unreceived in the Center
- 7 *1 📧 : Unread i-mode Mail and/or SMS fills storage space and also SMS storage space is full on UIM ◀P226
- 📧 : Unread i-mode Mail and/or SMS fills storage space ◀P199, P226
- 📧 : SMS full on UIM ◀P226
- 📧 : Unread i-mode Mail and SMS exist
- 📧 : Unread i-mode Mail exists ◀P199
- 📧 : Unread SMS exists ◀P225
- 📧 (blue)/ 📧 (red) : Unread Message R exists/fills storage space*3 ◀P174
- 📧 (green)/ 📧 (red) : Unread Message F exists/fills storage space*3 ◀P174
- 8 🔄 : i- ppli running ◀P232
- 🔄 : i- ppli standby display on ◀P110
- 🔄 : Starting i- ppli from the i- ppli standby display ◀P240
- 🔄 : i- ppli DX running ◀P232
- 🔄 : i- ppli DX standby display on ◀P110

- 🔄 : Starting i- ppli from the i- ppli DX standby display ◀P240
- 9 *1 📄 : Displaying SSL page, using i- ppli downloaded from SSL pages and in SSL communication with i- ppli ◀P161
- 📄 : Displaying SSL/TLS page ◀P244
- 📄 : Auto-send failure mail exists ◀P198
- 📄 : Auto-send mail exists ◀P197
- 10 📞 : Secret Mode is set ◀P137
- 11 🔄 : i- ppli Auto Start failed ◀P239
- 12 OFFICEED : In OFFICEED service area ◀P324
- 13 📞 : Focus Mode icon ◀P31
- 14 📞 : General silent mode is set ◀P107
- 📞 : Personalized silent mode is set ◀P107
- 15 📞 : Call alert volume is set to *silent* ◀P63
- 📞 : Vibrator for incoming voice call is set ◀P105
- 📞 : Call alert volume is set to *silent* and vibrator for incoming voice call is set
- 16 🚗 : Public mode (Driving mode) is set ◀P66
- 17 📞 : Answer Machine is set ◀P68
- 📞 : Recorded messages full ◀P69
- 18 📞 : PIM Lock is set ◀P132
- 19 📞 : Connecting to external device via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) ◀P78
- 20 📞 : Effective Easy Selector Plus keys in Focus Mode ◀P31
- 21 📞 : Reading the UIM ◀P40
- 22 📞 : Keypad Dial Lock is set ◀P133
- 23 📞 : Alarm Clock is set ◀P296
- 📞 : Schedule alarm is set ◀P299
- 📞 : Alarm Clock and schedule alarm are set simultaneously
- 24 *1 📞 : Software Update reserved ◀P376
- 📞 / 📞 (succeeded/failed) : Result of auto-update of the latest pattern definition ◀P378

*1 The current highest priority item is displayed. These icons are listed in the order of priority from the top.

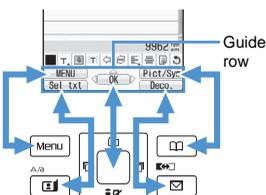
*2 Displayed also when the storage space for either i-mode Mail or Message R/F is full and also unreceived mails/messages exist.

*3 Displayed overlapped on the icon indicating presence of unread i-mode Mail/SMS

Reading the guide row

Operations that can be executed by pressing , , ,  and  are displayed in the guide row.

Example Guide row for the mail message entry screen



The display positions and the keys correspond as shown in the figure. In this manual, the operations displayed in the guide row are explained using the corresponding keys (, , , , ).

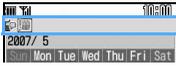
The operations displayed in the guide row differ depending on the screen.

-  on the guide row corresponds to  of the Easy Selector Plus (it may be different depending on the function, i-mode site or website in use).

Reading the task bar

The icon indicating the function (task) in progress appears on the task bar (up to 9 icons). You can confirm functions being used and run. In addition, when receiving mails/messages, the reception result scrolls.

- While entering characters, the input mode appears on the task bar. ➡P330



Task bar (when Scheduler is displayed during a voice call)

: Voice call	: Check i-mode Message/SMS	: Schedule alarm sounding
: Videophone (64K/32K)	: i-mode/i-channel	: Notepad
: Switching voice/videophone call	: i-mode Bookmark/Internet Connection/Screen Memo/i-mode Shortcut	: Calculator
: Ending call	: i- ppli	: Dictionaries
: Videophone call through external device	: Full Browser	: Data exchanging through external device
: Adjusting volume using Multitask	: My Picture	: 64K data communication
: Phonebook	: i-motion	: Originating/communicating/sending/receiving packet via USB
: Received Calls	: Melody	: Setting/holding each function
: Redial	: My Document (PDF Viewer)	: Software Update activated
: Answer Machine/Voice Memo	: Chara-den	: Software Update notified
: Own Number	: Others (Document Viewer)	: Update Definition activated/version display
: Mail	: Still Camera	: Setting each network service
: Receiving i-mode Mail/Message R/F	: Movie Camera	: Accessing Data Center
: Receiving SMS	: Sound Recorder	: Displaying communication log with Data Center
: Chat Mail	: Bar Code Reader	
: Message R/F	: Music Player	
: Sent Msg. Log	: Timer	
: Received Msg. Log	: Setting Alarm Clock/alarm clock sounding	
	: Scheduler	

Reading the list screen

Example The setting screen for Color Scheme



1/3 The number of the currently displayed page and the total number of pages (when a list extends over multiple pages)

^ indicates that other selectable items exist above and below the highlighted item.

- Press to move the cursor.

- If you press on the last item of the page, the next page appears, and if you press on the first item of the page, the previous page appears.

< > indicates that selectable items exist over multiple pages.

- Press to switch between pages.
- You cannot switch between pages on the icon selection screen, etc.

INFORMATION

Note that the following cases may occur due to the characteristics of liquid crystal display (LCD) and they are not defects in FOMA terminal.

- FOMA terminal display is manufactured by taking advantage of highly advanced technology but some dots may be always or never lit.
- When the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal with the power turned on, residual images may remain for some time. Remove the battery pack with the power turned off.
- When a screen has been displayed for a certain time, if you change it to another screen by performing some operations, residual images of the previous screen may remain.

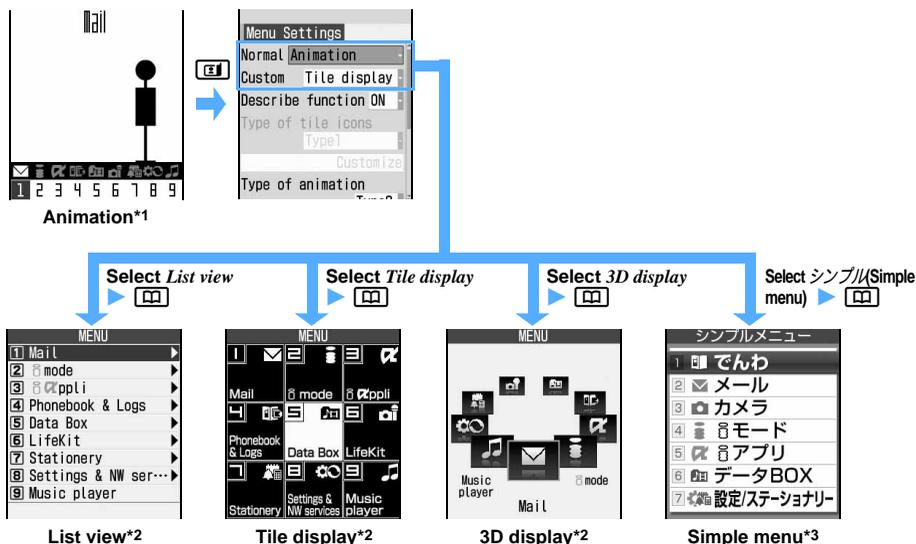
Selecting the menu

There are 2 types of the menu: normal menu and custom menu. When you press **[Menu]**, either the normal or custom menu appears according to the setting of *Default MENU* in Menu Setting.

- For normal menu, the simple menu which offers popular features can be set (Menu Setting **▶**P117).
- With custom menu, you can create your original menu. **▶**P304

Menu display format

The menu display format can be selected from the following types. By default, *Animation* of the normal menu is set.



*1 The screen is an example of the normal menu displayed when Style Theme is set to *BarCode*.

*2 Can also be set for the custom menu (Menu Setting **▶**P117).

*3 Can only be set in the Japanese display. Switch to the Japanese display before setting the simple menu.

Selecting functions from the menu

Select menu items by the dial keys (Shortcut operations). Also, use the Easy Selector Plus to select menu items.

- In this manual, the operation procedure is explained mainly in shortcut operations using the normal menu (except the simple menu).
- When any lock function is set or the UIM is not inserted, some functions are disabled. The disabled functions are indicated by **[Lock]** or dimmed. However, if the menu display format is set to *Animation*, a message appears when menu items for the disabled functions are selected.

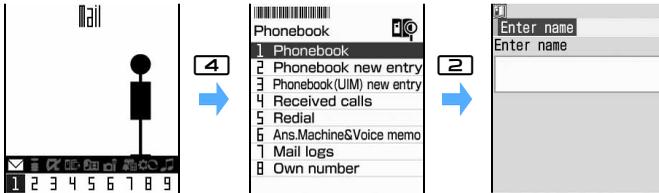
Selecting menu items with the dial keys (Shortcut operations)

Each menu item has a number (item number) and can be selected by pressing the corresponding key. In the 3D display menu, use the same item numbers as the tile display, list view or animation menu.

Example Executing *Phonebook new entry* from the normal menu (except the simple menu)

1 Press **Menu** **4** **2**

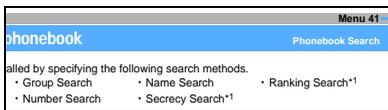
The phonebook registration screen appears.



When several shortcuts are available

When there are multiple shortcut operations available with the normal menu (except the simple menu), the shortcut operations other than described in the operating procedure are shown at the far right of the title in the body text.

Example Performing Phonebook Search



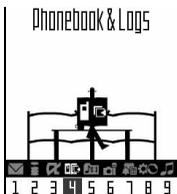
Press **Menu** to show the menu, then press **4** **1** to perform Phonebook Search.

• **☑** means pressing **☑**, and **↓** means pressing **↓**.

Selecting menu items with the Easy Selector Plus

Example Executing *Phonebook new entry* from the normal menu (*Type3* of animation menu)

1 **Menu** **☒** to highlight *Phonebook & Logs* **☑**



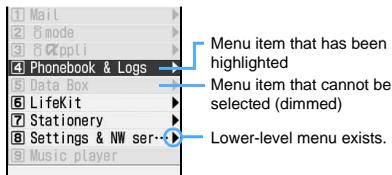
- To return to the previous screen: **☒☒☒**
- To return to the standby display: **☑**
- Highlighting the desired menu item in other than the animation menu shows the description of the item's function.
- In case of the animation menu, **☒** in the guide row does not appear.
- In case of the animation menu, the operations of **☒☒** differ depending on the animation design.

Phonebook & Logs is highlighted

2 **☒** to highlight *Phonebook new entry* **☑** Press **☑**

The phonebook registration screen appears.

Selecting menu items (List view)



Press **[↑]** to highlight a menu item and press **[↓]** or **[↵]**.

- To return to the menu of previous level: **[←]** or **[⏪]**

Selecting menu items (Tile display)

Press **[↵]** to highlight a menu item and press **[↓]**.

- To return to the previous menu: **[⏪]**

Selecting menu items (3D display)

Press **[↵]** to bring the desired item to the front of the icon ring and press **[↓]**.

- Press **[↑]** to move the the icon at the rear to the front.

Displaying description of menu items (Describe function)

Highlight a menu item in other than the animation menu. After a brief interval, description of the item's function appears.

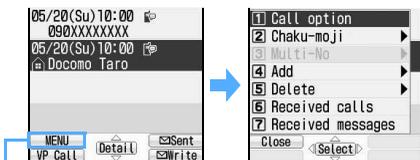
- The function description appears briefly then disappears.
- You can set FOMA terminal not to display the function description. **•P117**

Selecting functions from the submenu

When **MENU** is displayed at the upper left of the guide row, you can use the submenu to perform various operations.

Example Displaying the Redial submenu

1 **Menu** in the redial list ▶ **[↑]** to highlight a submenu item ▶ Press **[↓]** or **[↵]**



Shows that a submenu exists.

- Selecting menus in the submenu is the same as in the list view menu.

- To close the submenu: **Menu**

Setting each item on the screen

Selecting *Yes* or *No* on the confirmation screen

1 **[↑]** to highlight *Yes* or *No* ▶ Press **[↓]**



- For some functions, items other than *Yes* or *No* may appear.

Selecting an item from the pull-down menu

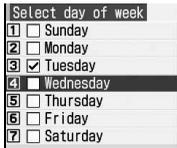
- 1 to highlight an item ▶ to display the pull-down menu ▶ to highlight an item
▶ Press



• You can select an item by the dial key for the item number.

Selecting an item from the check box

- 1 to highlight a check box ▶ Press



The check box changes from to , and is selected.

- Select the selected item to cancel the selection. The check box changes from to .
- Depending on the function, you can select/cancel all items by pressing **Menu**.
- You can select an item by the dial key for the item number.

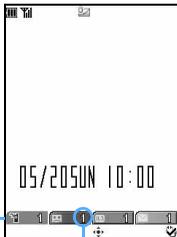
Displaying information quickly

Focus Mode

When the icons such as 1 or 1 are displayed on the standby display, you can quickly display the information.

- 1 ▶ to highlight an icon such as 1 or 1 ▶ Press

The screen corresponding to the selected icon appears.



The number of stored items is indicated at the right of each icon.

In Focus Mode, the color of the highlighted icon changes.

1 Missed call exists:

The received call list appears, letting you check the date and time, the caller information, etc.

1 Unplayed recorded message exists:

The recorded message list appears, letting you play the recorded messages.

1 Voice mail message exists:

The confirmation screen for playing voice mail messages appears, letting you play the messages.

1 Unread received mail exists:

The received mail folder list appears, letting you check unread mail.

/ (succeeded/failed) Auto-update result of the latest pattern definition exists:

The result can be checked.

- When or is displayed: ▶ to highlight the icon ▶
- To cancel Focus Mode: or

INFORMATION

When you highlight an icon and hold down **P378** for over a second, the icon temporarily disappears from the screen. It reappears when new information is stored or the number of stored items changes by viewing information, etc. For the icon indicating voice mail messages, however, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to clear the icon. Select **Yes** to clear it temporarily.

Using the UIM (FOMA card)

The UIM (FOMA card) is a card in which your phone number and other information are recorded. Insert the UIM into FOMA terminal to use it.

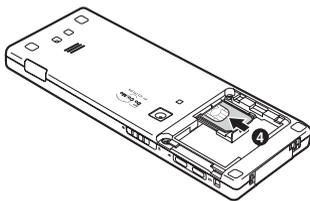
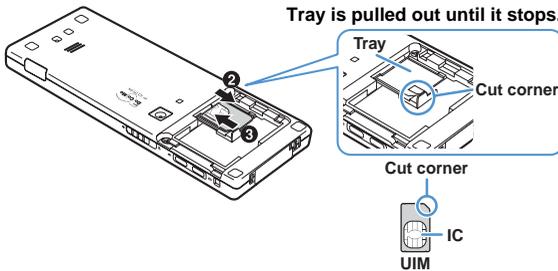
- For details on handling the UIM, refer to the UIM manual.

Inserting/removing the UIM

Use your FOMA terminal with the UIM inserted. If the UIM is not inserted in your FOMA terminal, first insert it.

- Turn the power off before inserting or removing the UIM.
- Insert or remove the UIM by holding FOMA terminal with both hands.

Inserting the card



❶ Remove the back cover and then the battery pack. ➡P35

❷ Pull out the tray.

Place your finger on the tray and slide it out until the tray stops.

❸ With the IC side of the card facing up, slide the UIM on the tray to match the cut corner of the UIM to the cut corner of the tray.

❹ Push the tray in until it stops.

❺ Reattach the battery pack and then the back cover. ➡P35

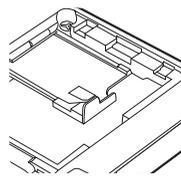
Removing the card

❶ Pull out the tray.

- The operations are the same as **❶** to **❷** in "Inserting the card".

❷ Remove the UIM by sliding it out.

When the UIM tray is removed



Insert and push the tray straight in.

Remove the UIM before replacing the tray.

INFORMATION

Insert or remove the UIM carefully as forcing it may damage the card.

Carefully handle the removed UIM so that it does not become lost.

When attaching the battery pack, make sure that the UIM tray is in place. If not, you cannot attach the battery pack. Forcibly attaching the battery pack may damage the UIM or the tray.

When pushing the UIM tray in, make sure that the UIM is properly placed in the tray. Forcibly pushing the tray into FOMA terminal may cause an operation error.

UIM security codes

The PIN1 and PIN2 codes are used for the UIM.

Both codes are set to "0000" at the time of subscription to the FOMA service. You can change this to any code (4 to 8 digits). ●P128

UIM operation restriction function

FOMA terminal is provided with the UIM operation restriction function for protecting your data and files.

- When the data or files downloaded from sites or the data attached to mail are saved in FOMA terminal with the UIM inserted, the UIM operation restriction is automatically set to these data or files.
- If the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal, the data or files with the UIM operation restriction set cannot be displayed or played, or sent by infrared communication.
- The data which is subject to the restriction is as follows:
 - File attached to i-mode Mail
 - Image inserted in Deco-mail or signature
 - i- ppli (including the i- ppli standby display)
 - Image (including animation and Flash movie)
 - Machi-chara
 - Melody
 - Word/Excel/PowerPoint data
 - Mail template containing data which is subject to the operation restriction
 - Recorded message of videophone call
 - Screen memo
 - Message R/F
 - i-motion
 - Chara-den
 - Chaku-Uta Full®
 - PDF data
 - Video memo
- For i- ppli with the UIM operation restriction set, if the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal, only deleting and protecting the i- ppli are possible.

INFORMATION

When the data with the UIM operation restriction enabled is set for the standby display, call image or ring alert, if the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal, the image and sound settings return to the default. In this case, the image and sound that are actually displayed/generated may differ from the settings. Inserting the UIM that was used when the data was downloaded cancels the operation restriction and restores the original settings. (Note that the setting of Random Display Image may be canceled if the data was used for it.)

The UIM operation restriction is not set to the data obtained via infrared communication or the DoCoMo keitai datalink, or to the still images or videos taken with the built-in camera.

When the UIM is inserted in other i-channel compatible terminals, the i-channel information is not displayed as ticker on the standby display. After that, if the information is updated automatically or if you press **[2/2]** on the standby display to display the channel list, the latest information is received and then displayed as ticker on the standby display.

When the UIM is not inserted, the i-channel information is not displayed as ticker on the standby display.

Settings saved into the UIM

The following settings are saved into the UIM. If the UIM is replaced, the settings of the new UIM become effective.

- My phone number
- DoCoMo certificate and user certificate set in Manage Certificate
- SMS Setting (except *SMS report request*)
- Select Language
- The PIN1/PIN2 code of the UIM and PIN1 Code ON/OFF

Functional differences between the UIM types

There are the following functional differences between the UIM (blue) and the UIM (green/white) when used in FOMA terminal:

Item	UIM (blue)	UIM (green/white)	Page
Number of digits of a phone number that can be registered in the UIM phonebook	Up to 20 digits	Up to 26 digits	P83
Certificate Download for using FirstPass	Unavailable	Available	P178
WORLD WING service	Unavailable	Available	P34
Service Dialing Number	Unavailable	Available	P322

WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the DoCoMo international roaming service for FOMA that allows you to make and receive calls with the same mobile phone number overseas by inserting the UIM (green/white) in a FOMA terminal compatible with WORLD WING or in a W-CDMA or GSM mobile phone for overseas use.

If you subscribed to the FOMA service on and after September 1, 2005, no subscription is required to use WORLD WING. However, if you requested not to subscribe to it at the time of subscription to the FOMA service or have canceled the subscription, a subscription is required.

If you subscribed to the FOMA service on and before August 31, 2005 but have not subscribed to WORLD WING, a subscription is required.

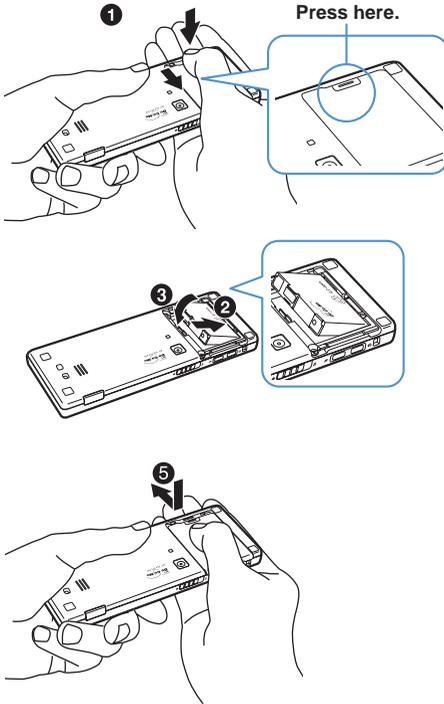
This service cannot be used with some billing plans.

If you lose the UIM (green/white) or have it stolen overseas, contact DoCoMo immediately to have the card suspended. For contact information, refer to "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual. Note that any call or communication charges incurred after the UIM is stolen will be borne by the customer.

Attaching/removing the battery pack

- Turn the power off before attaching or removing the battery pack.
- Be careful not to touch the camera lens.
- Use the specified Battery Pack D08.

Attaching the battery pack



❶ Remove the back cover.

While pressing the top of the back cover with your thumb, slide it in the direction of the arrow until it is removed.

❷ With the surface with the DoCoMo logo and the recycle mark facing up, insert the battery pack into FOMA terminal at the angle as shown in the figure.

Do not force the battery pack into FOMA terminal. Doing so could damage the body connector or battery pack terminals.

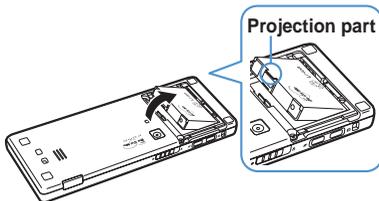
❸ Push the battery pack in.

❹ Place the back cover plate so that it can slide about 3 mm on FOMA terminal.

❺ Slide the back cover in the direction of the arrow pushing its center with your thumb so that FOMA terminal and the back cover do not gap.

Failure to follow the correct procedure could damage the back cover.

Removing the battery pack



❶ Remove the back cover.

❷ Lift the projection part of the battery pack and remove it.

INFORMATION

The FOMA terminal display uses an active LCD. Due to the characteristics of active LCD, residual images or crossbar may remain for a while when the battery pack is attached or removed. This is not a fault of FOMA terminal.

Charging the battery of FOMA terminal

When the battery level is low, charge the battery.

- The battery level icon shows how much charge remains in the battery. ●P39

Charging time and operation time on full charge (estimates)

Charging time	Continuous call time	Continuous standby time
Approx. 120 minutes	During a voice call: Approx. 120 minutes During a videophone call: Approx. 80 minutes	While standing still: Approx. 400 hours While moving: Approx. 290 hours

- Continuous call time is an estimate of call time for FOMA terminal when it can send and receive signals normally.
- Continuous standby time is an estimate of operation time of FOMA terminal when it is able to receive signals normally. The call time and standby time may be reduced to about half, depending on the amount of charge in the battery, the function settings, the ambient temperature and signal conditions (radio waves do not or hardly reach). Using i-mode communication reduces the call (communication) time and standby time. Even if you do not make a call or use i-mode, the call (communication) time and standby time will be reduced by composing i-mode Mail, or starting the i- ppli software downloaded from sites or on the i- ppli standby display.
- Continuous standby time (while standing still) is the average operation time of FOMA terminal when it is standing still and able to receive signals normally.
- Continuous standby time (while moving) is the average operation time of FOMA terminal that is standing still, moving and outside the service area when it is able to receive signals normally.
- Alternatively, if you perform data communication or Multiaccess, use the camera, or play video/i-motion or music, the call (communication) time and standby time will be reduced.

Starting/ending charging and other items to note

The battery pack can be charged regardless of whether FOMA terminal is turned on or off. However, charging takes longer with the power turned on.

- When charging starts, the charging indicator lights in red.

When FOMA terminal is turned on, the charge alert sounds and the battery level icon blinks.

Status	Icon ()	Charging indicator	Meaning
Charging	Blinks	Lights in red	Charging normally.
Charged	Lights	Goes off	Charging completed normally.

- If the charging indicator does not light in red at the start of charging or it blinks in red, charging is unsuccessful. The battery may not be charged when the temperature of FOMA terminal is high. Stop any function in progress and confirm that the temperature is low before charging again. If the battery pack still cannot be charged even after charging again, contact "Repairs" on the back of this manual.
- When charging is completed with FOMA terminal turned on, the charge alert sounds and the battery level icon lights.
- Do not charge the battery for an extended period (longer than a full day) with FOMA terminal turned on. FOMA terminal uses power after charging is completed until FOMA terminal is unplugged from the adapter. In such a case, the AC or DC adapter charges again but when FOMA terminal is removed in the middle of charging, the following could occur:
 - Low battery level
 - Message appears indicating that the battery runs down.
 - FOMA terminal is operational for a short time.
- If the battery is fully charged, connecting FOMA terminal to the AC or DC adapter may not start charging.

- If you use FOMA terminal for an extended period while charging the battery with the AC or DC adapter connected, the battery may not be charged temporarily by temperature rise.
- Insert or remove the connector to/from FOMA terminal slowly and firmly without forcing it. When removing it, be sure to press the release buttons on both sides of the connector and pull it out. Forcibly pulling the connector could cause equipment failure.
- Insert or remove the connector straight to/from FOMA terminal.

Battery pack life

- The battery pack is a consumable part and will gradually wear out. Each time it is charged, it will accept slightly less charge than the previous time.
- When the battery charge lasts only half as long as when it was new, replace it with a new one immediately, as the end of battery pack life is approaching. Depending on usage, the battery pack may swell as it nears the end of its life, but this will not cause a problem.
The battery pack life is about 1 year. However, if you repeat charging/discharging for a short time, charge in high temperature environments or keep charging for a long period of time, the battery pack life may become shorter.
- FOMA terminal uses a lithium ion battery containing valuable materials that should be recycled. To protect the environment, return used batteries to an NTT DoCoMo service counter, NTT DoCoMo agent or recycling center.
- Please take the following precautions when recycling batteries:
 - Attach a piece of adhesive tape on the terminals of used battery packs.
 - Do not disassemble or modify battery packs.

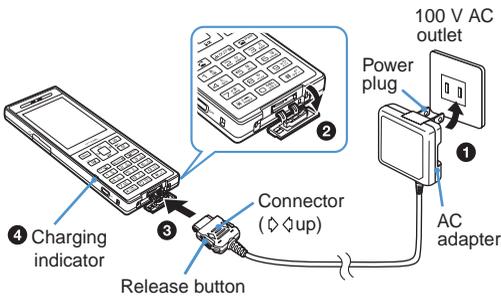


Charging from a wall outlet

Use the FOMA AC Adapter 01 (optional) to charge the battery. Also it can be used with the Desktop Holder D11 (optional).

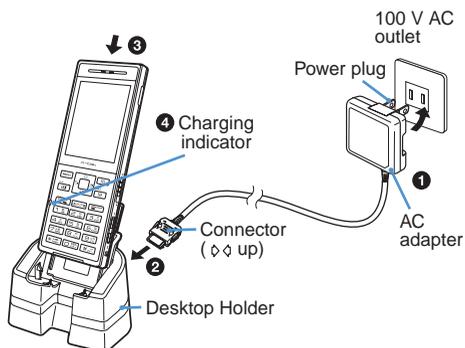
- The battery pack can only be charged when it is attached to FOMA terminal.
- For details, refer to the manuals for the AC adapter and the Desktop Holder.

Charging the battery with the AC adapter alone



- 1** Unfold the power plug from the AC adapter and plug it into a 100 V AC outlet.
- 2** Open the external connection terminal cap of FOMA terminal.
- 3** Insert the AC adapter connector in firmly until it clicks.
- 4** Check that charging starts.
Check that the charging indicator lights in red. When charging is completed, remove the AC adapter connector from FOMA terminal while pressing the release buttons on both sides of the connector, and unplug the AC adapter from the outlet. Then, close the terminal cap.

Charging the battery in the Desktop Holder



- 1 **Unfold the power plug from the AC adapter and plug it into a 100 V AC outlet.**
- 2 **Insert the AC adapter connector in the Desktop Holder until it clicks.**
- 3 **Along with the Desktop Holder, insert FOMA terminal at the angle as shown in the figure.**
- 4 **Check that charging starts.**

Check that the charging indicator lights in red. When charging is completed, remove FOMA terminal from the Desktop Holder by tilting it to the front while holding the Desktop Holder by hand.

- When inserting FOMA terminal into the Desktop Holder, be careful not to put a strap in the holder.
- When FOMA terminal is not inserted firmly or it leans, the battery is not charged normally. Insert FOMA terminal until it is locked certainly.

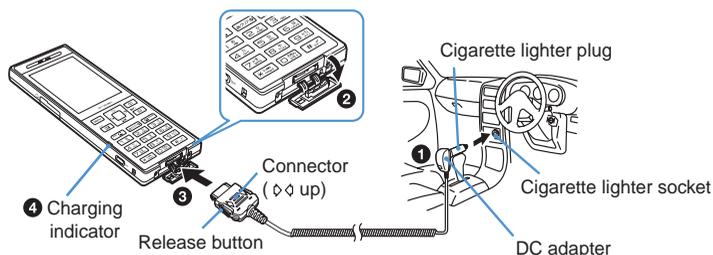
Charging in a car

Use the FOMA DC Adapter 01 (optional) to charge the battery in a car. It can be used in negative ground cars (both 12 V and 24 V).

- For details, refer to the DC adapter manual.

- 1 **Insert the cigarette lighter plug of the DC adapter into the cigarette lighter socket of the car.**
- 2 **Turn off the power of FOMA terminal and open the external connection terminal cap.**
- 3 **Insert the DC adapter connector firmly until it clicks.**
- 4 **Check that charging starts.**

Check that the charging indicator lights in red. When charging is completed, remove the DC adapter connector from FOMA terminal while pressing the release buttons on both sides of the connector, and remove the cigarette lighter plug from the cigarette lighter socket. Then, close the terminal cap.



INFORMATION

If you charge FOMA terminal with the car engine off, the car battery may be discharged. Charge the battery when the car engine is running.

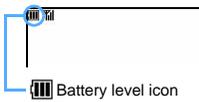
When not charging, remove the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket.

The DC adapter fuses (2A) are consumable items. New fuses are available at automotive supply stores.

Checking the remaining battery level

Battery Level

The display indicates an estimate of the remaining battery level in 3 levels.



- (Level 3): Amply charged
- (Level 2): Charging decreased
- (Level 1): Almost empty. Charge the battery.

Checking the remaining battery level by sound and display

1 **Menu** **8** **6** **6** **5**



Sounds 3 times.



Sounds twice.



Sounds once.

The remaining battery level is displayed. The confirmation sound rings by the sound set in Keypad Sound.

When the battery almost runs down

A message appears or an alert tone sounds to indicate that the battery level is low. Charging the battery stops the low battery alert. To stop it immediately, press .

- In standby, a message indicating low battery appears. The message disappears by pressing , or , but after a period of time, it reappears and the low battery alert sounds. At this time, all the icons on the top of the screen blink and after about 1 minute, the power turns off automatically.
- During a call, the low battery alert sounds from the earpiece and a message indicating low battery appears. The message disappears by pressing , or . When about 20 seconds elapse after the low battery alert is heard from the earpiece, the call is cut off and the standby display reappears. Then, after about 1 minute, the power turns off automatically.

Setting the low battery alert not to sound

Low Battery Alert

Default **ON**

1 **Menu** **8** **1** **1** **6** **5**

2 Press **2**

- To set the alert: **1**

INFORMATION

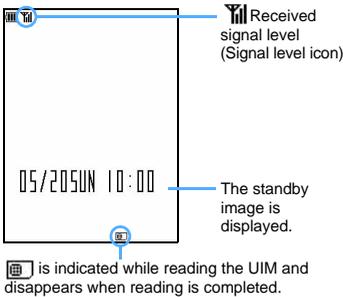
When the battery almost runs down during a call, even if *OFF* is set, the low battery alert sounds from the earpiece.

- When FOMA terminal is turned on for the first time, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to perform Software Update. ●P374

Turning the power on

1 Hold down for over 2 seconds

The wake-up screen appears and then the standby display. The wake-up screen may take some time to appear.



Icon					圏外
Received signal level	Strong ← → Weak				Outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach

- If the date and time have not been set, a message appears indicating that. When FOMA terminal receives the time information and the time is automatically corrected, the message disappears. Press  to set the date and time manually.
- If no UIM is inserted, a message appears indicating that insertion of the UIM is required. Turn the power off, insert the UIM and then turn the power back on.

Turning the power off

1 Hold down for over 2 seconds

INFORMATION

When you turn on the power of FOMA terminal after replacing the UIM (except when Omakase Lock (Remote Lock) is set), entry of the 4 to 8-digit terminal security code is required. After entering the correct terminal security code, the standby display appears. If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively, the power is turned off (but can be turned on again).

When you turn on FOMA terminal, the PIN1/PIN2 code entry screen appears depending on the setting (●P128, P309). Enter the PIN1 code or PIN2 code.

When *Normal use of Display light time* in Display Light Setting is set to other than *Always*, if you do not press any keys for about 90 seconds, the screen display disappears. ●P116

Switching to English display

Default Japanese

1     

2 Press 

- To switch to Japanese display: 

INFORMATION

This setting is saved in the UIM.

The time setting can be performed in 2 ways: obtaining the time information from the DoCoMo network to automatically adjust the time setting of FOMA terminal, or manually entering the current time to the terminal.

Default Auto time adjust: ON Offset: +, 00h00m

1 [Menu] [8] [6] [1] [1]

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press [OK]



- When you set *Auto time adjust* to *ON*, *Offset* can be set. To enter the date and time manually, set *Auto time adjust* to *OFF*.

Auto time adjust : Set whether to automatically correct the time.

Offset : Specify the amount of time advance (+) or delay (-) so that your terminal's clock advances from or delays to the time obtained for a given length of time.

Date, Time : Enter the date and time.

- The date can be set from January 1, 2000 to December 31, 2050.

- The entered number can also be increased or decreased with [↑/↓]. You can also reenter the number after highlighting it with [←/→].

When the automatic time correction is set

The automatic time correction takes place when the UIM is inserted and you turn the power on in a location where radio waves reach.

- The automatic time correction sometimes causes a time error of several seconds. In addition, it may fail to correct the time depending on the radio wave condition.
- If the time information is received while i- ppli is running, the time may not be corrected depending on the i- ppli.
- Even if *Auto time adjust* is set to *ON*, the time may not be corrected for a while. To enable the automatic time correction, turn the power off and then on.
- When no UIM is inserted or FOMA terminal is out of the service area, the automatic time correction is not performed even if you turn the power off and then on.

INFORMATION

You cannot use the following functions when the date and time are not set:

- Auto Power ON/OFF
- Alarm Clock
- Certificate Download
- i- ppli Auto Start
- i- ppli DX
- Flash movie which uses the date and time setting
- Software Update
- Update Definition
- SSL communication (authentication)
- Scheduler (including data transfer and display of schedule data)
- Machi-chara
- Downloading and playing i-motion with replay restrictions set
- Random Display Image
- Downloading and playing Chaku-Uta Full[®] for which replay restrictions are set for copyright protection

If the date and time are not set, the date and time are not recorded for the following functions and “----/--/--” or “-----” is displayed. A number to segmentalize (segmental number) may be appended.

- Redial/Received Calls
- Date and time of still image/video shot with the camera
- Date and time of sent mail/unsent mail
- Date and time of sound recorded with Sound Recorder
- Date and time of the last reset of call duration/call cost
- Date and time in the file name of data scanned by Bar Code Reader
- Date and time of downloaded i- ppli (detail information)
- Saved date and time of created mail template
- Answer Machine/Voice Memo
- Notepad
- Sent Msg. Log

The set time is retained even if the battery pack is replaced, but may be reset if the battery pack is removed for an extended period. In that case, set the date and time again.

Notifying your phone number to the other party

Caller ID Notification

Set FOMA terminal to send your phone number (caller ID) to be displayed on the other party's phone every time you make a call.

- The caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether to send your caller ID.
- The caller ID is displayed only when the other party's phone can display the caller ID.
- For details, see “Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]”.

1 **Menu** **8** **7** **4** **1** **1**

- To check the current setting: **Menu** **8** **7** **4** **1** **2** ▶ Select **Yes**

2 **Enter the network security code** ▶ Press **1**

- To hide the caller ID: **2**

INFORMATION

You can use several methods to set the caller ID notification. When setting/operating multiple caller ID notification methods at the same time, the caller ID is notified in the following priority. However, the caller ID notification setting shown on the display may differ from the actual setting.

1. Caller ID notification set in Call Option when making a call ◀P54
2. Setting by adding “186”/“184” before the other party's phone number ◀P54
3. Caller ID Setting of the phonebook ◀P94
4. Caller ID Notification setting

If you hear a guidance requesting your caller ID when you make a call, call back after setting to send caller ID.

Menu 48

Checking your own phone number

Own Number

Check your phone number (*My phone number*), name, mail address, etc.

Default | **My phone number: subscribed phone number** | **Other than that: not recorded**

1 Press **Menu** **0**

- Setting and checking your i-mode Mail address ◀P186

Checking your phone number during a call: **0** **0**

Calls/Videophone Calls

Making calls/videophone calls

Videophone	44
Making calls/videophone calls	45
Transmitting tone signals (DTMF)	Send DTMF 48
Switching between a voice call and videophone call	49
Using Redial/Received Calls	Redial/Received Calls 50
Setting Chaku-moji	Chaku-moji 52
Showing/hiding your caller ID for each call	186/184 Call 54
Making calls by setting the conditions	Call Option 54
Using international calls	WORLD CALL 55
Setting prefix numbers added to phone number	Prefix Dialing 57
Making a call by specifying a sub-address	Sub Address 57
Setting the alarm indicating reconnection of interrupted call	Reconnect Alarm 58
Suppressing ambient noises to improve the call quality	Noise Reduction 58
Talking without using hands in a car	In-car Handsfree 58

Receiving calls/videophone calls

Receiving calls/videophone calls	59
Switching a received call between a voice call and videophone call	61
Enabling use of dial keys to answer a call	Any Key Answer 61
Adjusting the volume of the other party's voice during a call	Listen Volume 62
Adjusting the volume of ring alerts and other sounds emitted from FOMA terminal	Adjust Volume 62
Setting for incoming voice/videophone calls	Call Alert/Videophone Alert 63
Setting the priority screen for incoming calls during a call or packet communication	Priority Comm Mode 64

When you can or could not answer a call/videophone call

Putting incoming calls on hold when you cannot answer right away	Response and Hold 64
Setting the response hold guidance	Status Message 65
Setting the on-hold tone	On-hold Tone 65
Using Public mode (Driving mode)	Public mode (Driving mode) 66
Using Public mode (power off)	Public mode (power off) 67
Allowing the caller to leave message when you cannot answer the call	Answer Machine 68
Using Chara-den	71
Setting images being sent to the other party	72
Customizing the screen settings during a videophone call	74
Changing the videophone settings	Videophone Settings 75
Setting of switching between a voice call and videophone call	Notify Switchable Mode 77
Setting how incoming videophone calls are handled during i-mode	Data Session Arrival Act 77
Using the videophone by connecting to an external device	External Device 78

Videophone

The videophone function is available between terminals that support DoCoMo's videophone. By using the videophone, you can talk on the phone while seeing each other's image. As your image, Chara-den is displayed and sent to the other party. It is also possible to display an image through the camera, still image, etc. instead of Chara-den.

- Chara-den ◀P264

DoCoMo videophone specifications are compliant with "3G-324M*1 that has been standardized by the international standard 3GPP*2". Note that the connection with videophones of different specifications cannot be established.

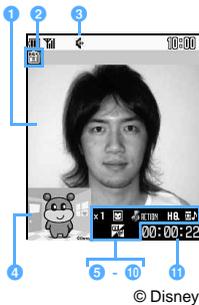
*1 3G-324M...An international standard for the 3rd generation mobile videophone.

*2 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)...Area standardization organization established to develop the standard technology specification for the 3rd generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).

• The following 2 communication speeds are provided for the videophone:

- 64K: Connects at communication speed of 64 kbps. • 32K: Connects at communication speed of 32 kbps.

Screen display during a videophone call

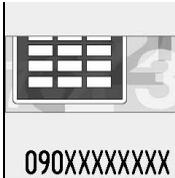


1	Main screen	The other party's image is displayed by default.
2	Communication speed	64K : 64K 32K : 32K
3	Speakerphone function	Speakerphone: On No icon: Off
4	Sub screen	Your image is displayed by default.
5	Zoom	x1 to x4: Normal to 4x
6	Status	: Sending Chara-den : Sending the camera-off image : Sending your camera image : Sending a frame : Sending a still image : On-hold : On Response and Hold : Recording a message : Recording a video memo
	Action mode	: Action : Action of parts
7	Scene mode/effect	: Full auto, etc. The icons for other modes/effects ▶P73
8	Quality of outgoing image	No icon: Normal : Prefer motion speed : Prefer image quality
9	Sending and receiving status of sound/image	: Sending and receiving sound : Sending and receiving image : Sending and receiving sound/image
	Speakerphone/earpiece volume	: Adjusting speakerphone/earpiece volume
10	Videophone and voice call switching	No icon: Switching is not available. : Switching is available.*1
11	Call duration	Displayed in the HH:MM:SS format

*1 Displayed only on the caller's terminal.

Making calls/videophone calls

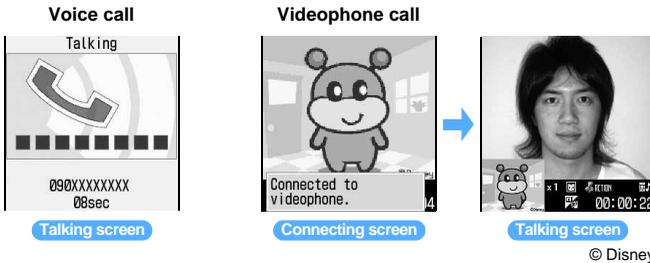
1 Enter the phone number



- When calling general subscriber phones, always include the area code, even from the same city.
- Up to 80 digits can be entered. However, only 24 digits are displayed.
- To correct the phone number: 
- To return to the standby display:  (for over a second)

2 (voice call) or (videophone call)

You will hear a dial tone. You can start talking when the call is answered.



© Disney

- If the other party is busy, you will hear a busy signal. For a videophone call, the message **Busy**. or **Connection failed**. appears on the screen. Press  to end the call and call again later. You can call back quickly using Redial.
- If the other party's mobile phone or PHS is turned off or is in an area where radio waves are hard to reach, a guidance informs that the connection is unavailable.
- Charging begins when **Connected to videophone**. appears.
- The other party's voice comes out of the speaker during a videophone call (Speakerphone function).
- The following operations are available during a voice call:
 - To display received calls: 
 - To display redials: 
 - To start the phonebook: 

3 Press when you finish the call

INFORMATION

[Common]

You can also make a call in order of Step 2, Step 1. A call will be made automatically about 5 seconds after you have pressed  (voice call) or  (videophone call) and entered the phone number.

If you hear a guidance requesting your caller ID when making a call, call again after setting FOMA terminal to send caller ID. ●P42

When you have subscribed to the Multi Number service, you can call after selecting a registered multi-number. ●P323

[Videophone call]

If a videophone call is not connected, one of the following messages appears on the screen and then the standby display returns. Note that the displayed message may not reflect the status of the other party's terminal correctly, depending on the type of the terminal or the network service used by the other party.

Message	Description
Busy.	The other party is busy.*1
Redial using voice call.	This message appears when the other party has activated Call Forwarding Service with the forwarding destination set to a terminal incompatible with videophone.
Upper limit exceeded. Connection failed.	This message appears when the upper limit of a billing plan with a charge limit (such as Type Limit and Family Wide Limit) is exceeded.
Connection failed.	Set Caller ID Notification to <i>Notify</i> and dial again. • The message may appear in cases other than the above.
Out of service area/power off.	The other party is outside the service area or the other party's terminal is turned off.
Busy with packet transmission.	The other party is in packet communication.
Set Caller ID to ON.	This message appears in case of connecting without notifying the caller ID (when accessing to V-Live or visualnet).
Check number, then redial.	You dialed the phone number not used.
Make call from i-mode web page.	This message appears when using V-Live. Access to the IP site via i-mode then make a videophone call on the site screen.

*1 The message may also appear when the other party is in packet communication, depending on his/her terminal.

If a videophone call is not connected, redialing is automatically performed as described below:

Call type	Auto redial as voice call	Redialing operation
64K	ON	64K 32K Voice call
	OFF	64K 32K Disconnection
32K	ON	32K Voice call
	OFF	32K Disconnection

If redialing as voice call occurs, voice call charges apply.

When there is an incoming call while dialing a videophone call or redialing, the dialing may be interrupted and the ring alert may sound.

Even if sending/receiving the voice or image is aborted and  (voice only) or  (image only) appears during a videophone call, the call may be continued.

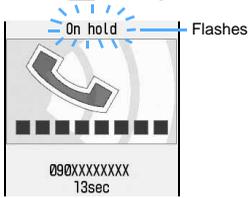
Please note that digital communication charges apply for videophone calls instead of voice call charges even if the substitute image or Chara-den is used.

Videophone at 32K is intended for connection with devices such as PHS with which videophone calls at 64K may not be available depending on the network condition. When a videophone call is made at 64K, the call type is automatically switched to 32K when redialing if the communication environment of the other party is found to be the 32K area. When *ON* is set for *Auto redial as voice* in Videophone Settings, redialing at 32K is also given priority. ●P75

• Even if a call is made at 32K, the 64K digital communication charges will apply.

Putting the call on hold while talking allows you to talk without the other party hearing your voice. Callers are charged for the time spent on hold.

1 Press during a call



Voice call on hold



Videophone call on hold

The call is put on hold and a guidance (on-hold tone) is played. For videophone calls, the on-hold image appears on the other party's terminal.

- Press  or  while a voice call is on hold to cancel the hold.
- Press  or  while a videophone call is on hold to cancel the hold and send the image that has been sent before the hold.

Using the speakerphone function

You can make a call allowing the other party's voice to be heard through the speaker.

Example Making a voice call

1 Enter the phone number ► Hold down for over a second

-  appears at the top of the display while the speakerphone function is on.
- The same operation is possible from the phonebook list, redial list, received call list, recorded message list and voice memo list.

Making a videophone call: Enter the phone number ► 

- If *Speakerphone* is set to *OFF* in Videophone Settings or Silent Mode is active, hold down  for over a second.

Turning on/off the speakerphone during a call:  or 

- While dialing or calling, press  to turn on/off the speakerphone.

Adjusting the speakerphone volume:  during a call ►  to adjust the volume

- The setting is retained even after the call is ended, and is also reflected to the volume of playback sound for recorded videophone call messages.

INFORMATION

When the speakerphone function is turned on, the volume may suddenly increase and damage your ears. Use it with FOMA terminal away from your ears.

If a call is hard to hear with a large amount of noise around you or the other party, turn off the speakerphone function. Talk to FOMA terminal within about 30 cm.

The speakerphone function can be used even when Silent Mode is on.

- You can input tone signals (DTMF) during a videophone call while sending the camera image (📹), the camera-off image (📴) or Chara-den (🚫).

Example During a videophone call

1 **Menu** **6** during a videophone call ▶ Enter with dial keys

The entered number appears on the screen and the tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted.

- To cancel transmitting tone signals (DTMF): **222**
- The tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted by pressing dial keys without pressing **Menu** **6** while the camera image or the camera-off image is being sent.
- When the tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted, the set frame and still image are canceled.
- Because tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted using dial keys, you cannot use dial keys to make actions while sending Chara-den.

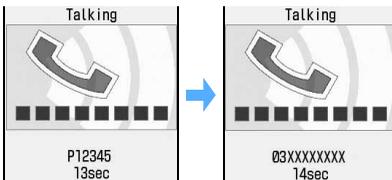
Transmitting tone signals (DTMF) during a voice call: Enter with dial keys during a voice call

Entering pauses or timed pauses

Pauses and timed pauses are available only for voice calls.

Example Calling to "03XXXXXXXXP12345" (P=Entered pause)

When you press **☎** after the call is connected, the numbers after the pause are sent.



Entering a pause "P"

A pause (P) is used for sending messages to beepers, operating the answering system at home, reserving tickets, etc. At the point the pause (P) is entered, the dial digits are separated and tone signals (DTMF) are sent.

1 Hold down **✖** for over a second

- You cannot make a call if a pause is entered at the beginning of the phone number.

Entering a timed pause "T"

A timed pause (T) is used to dial outside line numbers with extensions. Enter a timed pause (T) between the outside line and extension numbers to dial the extension number after a set number of seconds following the outside line number.

1 Hold down **#** for over a second

- Timed pauses can be entered in succession.
- Each timed pause is followed by a second interval.
- You cannot make a call if a timed pause is entered at the beginning of the phone number.

INFORMATION

Tone signals (DTMF) may not be received depending on the receiving device.

You cannot make a call to another party by putting the current call on hold and entering a pause (P) or timed pause (T).

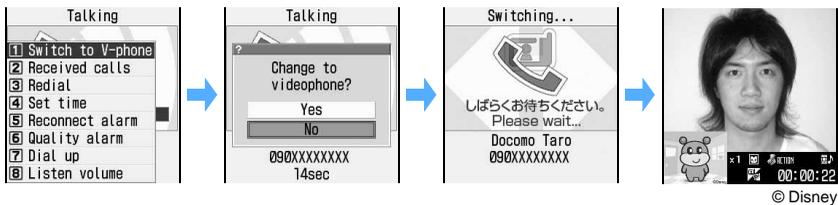
Switching between a voice call and videophone call

You can switch between a voice call and a videophone call by operating from the submenu during a call when the other party's terminal can switch calls. Switching can be performed only from the terminal that made the call.

- This operation is available between the terminals that support switching between a voice call and videophone call.
- To switch calls, the other party needs to set *Indication ON* of Notify Switchable Mode in advance. ◀P77

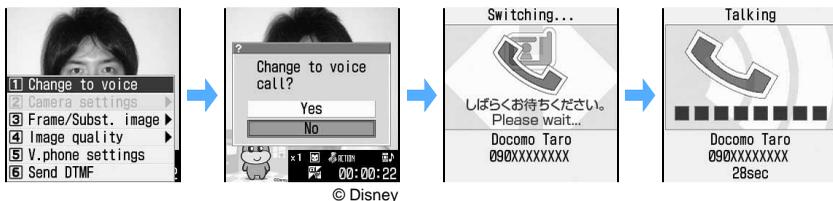
Example Switching a voice call to a videophone call

1 **Menu** **1** during a voice call ▶ **Select Yes**



- A guidance informing that the call is being switched is played during switching.
- Select *No* to return to the voice call talking screen.
- If *Speakerphone* is set to *ON* in Videophone Settings, the speakerphone is turned on when the call is switched to a videophone call.

Switching a videophone call to a voice call: **Menu** **1** during a videophone call ▶ **Select Yes**



INFORMATION

When you are in packet communication, disconnect the packet communication and switch to a videophone call.

When the other party is in packet communication, the call cannot be switched to a videophone call.

During a voice call using Call Waiting Service, you cannot switch the call to a videophone call.

It takes about 5 seconds to switch. However, it may take longer depending on radio wave conditions.

Depending on radio wave conditions, a voice call and videophone call may not be switched and the call may be disconnected.

The speakerphone function is turned off when a videophone call is switched to a voice call.

The settings (such as selecting the frame) made during a videophone call are canceled when a videophone call is switched to a voice call.

According to the call duration of a voice call and videophone call, the call charges are added up, respectively.

The call is not charged while *Switching...* is displayed.

Using Redial/Received Calls

Redial/Received Calls

FOMA terminal records voice calls and videophone calls that you made in Redial and those you received in Received Calls. With Received Calls, you can check unanswered calls (missed calls) and recorded messages.

- Up to 30 calls are recorded in each log, respectively. When the number exceeds 30, calls are deleted starting with the oldest one.

Example Making a call using Redial

1 **Highlight a party in the redial list**



- To make a call using Received Calls:  **Highlight a party in the received call list**
- To display the details screen: Select a call

2 Press (voice call) or (videophone call)

- To make a call with the same call type (voice/videophone call) as the highlighted call:  on the details screen
- A videophone call is dialed according to the setting of Connection Speed in the phonebook.
- If you use a received call with Chaku-moji to make a call, the Chaku-moji is not attached when dialing.

Operating on the redial/received call list

You can perform the following operations such as phonebook registration also from the details screen.

Registering an entry in the phonebook:

- ① **Highlight a call**  **4** **1**
 - To add to an existing phonebook entry:  **4** **2**
- ② **1** or **2**  **Register the name or mail address**  **P81, P83**
 - To add to an existing phonebook entry: **1** or **2**  **Select the party**  **Edit the data**  **P91**

Deleting redials/received calls:

- You cannot delete multiple calls at once on the details screen.
- ① **Highlight a call**  **5** **1**
 - To delete multiple calls:  **5** **2**  **Select calls** 
 - To delete all:  **5** **3**
 - ② **Select Yes**

Composing SMS: Highlight a call **3** (for over a second)

The SMS composition screen appears with the phone number of the highlighted call specified as the address.

- If the phone number is saved in the phonebook together with mail addresses, pressing  displays the i-mode Mail composition screen with the first mail address specified as the address. If not, the SMS composition screen appears with the phone number specified as the address.

Setting whether to display the image on the details screen: **3** on the details screen **1** to **3**

- For details  **P90**

Other operations available on the list screen

- To switch between the redial list and received call list:  **6**
- To switch to the sent message log:  in the redial list
- To switch to the received message log:  in the received call list

INFORMATION

If you switch between a voice call and videophone call during a call, the call type (voice/videophone call) that was specified when you dialed/received is recorded in the call log.

When multiple voice/videophone calls are made to the same number, only the most recent call is recorded as a redial for each caller ID preference: show, hide or no setting.

Calls received from callers using dial-in services in such as office may display different numbers from the caller's dial-in number.

Selecting a multi-number registered for Multi Number P323

Unanswered voice/videophone calls (Missed calls)

1 (with the number of missed calls) is indicated and the call is recorded as a received call. P31

- When there is a missed call from an unknown phone number, the ringing time enables you to check whether the call is a malicious call (One-Ring Call, etc.) made for the sole purpose of leaving a received call record.

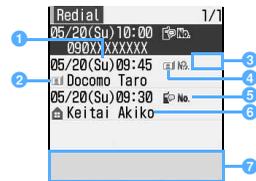
INFORMATION

Press in the received call list to display all the calls including the missed calls of which ringing times are shorter than the delay time set in Mute Ring Time Setting. To hide such short ringing calls, press .

If only missed calls of which ringing times are shorter than the delay time set in Mute Ring Time Setting are recorded as received calls, pressing on the standby display shows a confirmation screen asking whether to display missed calls.

Reading the redial/received call list screen

Example For Redial



List screen



Details screen

1	Date and time	Calling/receiving date and time
2	Icon	Icon registered in the phonebook*1
3	Ringing time *2	Displayed for missed call only
4	Call type	/ (domestic/overseas): Voice call / (domestic/overseas): Videophone call / (domestic/overseas): 64K data communication (for received call only)
5	Caller ID notification *3	: Notify/Show caller ID : Not notify/Hide caller ID
	Call status (with Chaku-moji/without Chaku-moji)	/ : Answered / : Missed call (checked) / : Missed call (unchecked) / : Recorded message / : Recorded message (deleted)
6	Other party information	Phone number (on the list screen only), name*4 or reason for no caller ID (for received call only)
7	Chaku-moji	Displayed for a received call with Chaku-moji attached
8	Image	Image registered in the phonebook*5
9	Name of multi-number	Displayed when you have subscribed to the Multi Number service*6 (the name of the basic number or additional number used by the call made/received)
10	Phone number	Not displayed for a call without the caller ID

*1 Displayed when registered in the phonebook (not displayed during PIM Lock or while not in Secret Mode for a phonebook entry with Secret Attribute).

*2 99+ appears on the list screen if the ring time is 100 or more seconds.

*3 Displayed when caller ID notification is set in Call Option or Caller ID Setting of the phonebook.

- *4 Displayed when registered in the phonebook (while not in Secret Mode, the phone number is displayed for a phonebook entry with Secret Attribute).
- *5 Displayed according to the setting of View Preference, when registered in the phonebook.
- *6 For redial, displayed for a call made using Call Option.

Setting Chaku-moji

Chaku-moji

When you make a voice/videophone call, you can set a message (Chaku-moji) to be displayed on the incoming screen of the other party's terminal. This allows the other party to know what the matter is in advance.



- Supporting models: 902iS series, SH902iSL, N902iX HIGH-SPEED, N902iL, 903i series, 702iS series (except N702iS, M702iS and M702iG), 703i series, 601i series (except L601i) and D800iDS
- Senders are charged, but receivers are not charged.
- Received Chaku-moji is recorded in the received call history.

Chaku-moji appears on the incoming screen of the other party's terminal. When the call is answered, the Chaku-moji is cleared.

Editing and setting for Chaku-moji

Creating a Chaku-moji message

- Up to 10 messages can be registered.



2 Select <New message>



Using the history of sent messages: **Menu** **1** ▶ Select a Chaku-moji message ▶ Go to Step 4

Deleting:

- ① Highlight a Chaku-moji message ▶ **Menu** **2**
 - To delete all: **Menu** **3**
- ② Select *Yes*

3 Enter a message (up to 10 one-byte or two-byte characters)

- Kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic and numeric characters, symbols, and pictograms can be entered.

4 Press **□**

- When you have edited a registered Chaku-moji message, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to register it. Select *Yes* to overwrite.

Default Only with Caller ID

1 Menu 8 7 3 2

2 Press any of 1 to 4

Display all : Displays all Chaku-moji.

Hide all : Hides Chaku-moji.

Only from stored No. : Displays Chaku-moji only from a party registered in the phonebook.

Only with Caller ID : Displays Chaku-moji only from a party with the caller ID.

Making a call by attaching Chaku-moji

- Up to 10 messages can be recorded in the history of sent messages. When the number of recorded messages exceeds 10, they are deleted, oldest first.

1 Enter the phone number ▶ Menu 3

2 Select a Chaku-moji message

Creating a message: 1 ▶ Create a Chaku-moji message

- Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Creating a Chaku-moji message". ◀P52

Selecting a registered message: 2 ▶ Select a Chaku-moji message

Selecting from the history of sent messages: 3 ▶ Select a Chaku-moji message

3 Press Menu

- When the Chaku-moji is received by the other party's terminal, *Transmission completed* appears and transmission fee is charged.
- When the Chaku-moji is sent to an incompatible terminal or is not received due to Message Display Setting of the other party's terminal, *Transmission failed* appears and transmission fee is not charged.

INFORMATION

If the receiver's terminal is in one of the following cases, Chaku-moji is not received and not recorded in the received call history. In addition, the transmission result does not appear on the sender's screen. In this case, transmission fee is not charged.

- Outside the service area or turned off
- In Public mode (Driving mode)
- When the response time of Answer Machine is set to 0 second, etc.

Even when Chaku-moji is received, the transmission result may not appear on the sender's screen depending on radio wave conditions. In this case, the sender is charged for the transmission.

When a call with Chaku-moji is received within the delay time set in Mute Ring Time Setting, the Chaku-moji is displayed and is recorded in the received call history. In this case, the sender is charged for the transmission.

You cannot send Chaku-moji to a party overseas.

Prefix a specific number to the beginning of the phone number when you make a call.

- The caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether to send your caller ID.
- The caller ID is displayed only when the other party's phone can display caller ID.

Showing your caller ID

1 **1 8 6** ▶ Enter the phone number ▶ Press  (voice call) or  (videophone call)

Hiding your caller ID

1 **1 8 4** ▶ Enter the phone number ▶ Press  (voice call) or  (videophone call)

INFORMATION

For an international call, the caller ID may not be notified depending on the phone company that handles a call even if "186" is added.

When you make a call by adding "186"/"184" to the other party's phone number, the phone number with "186"/"184" added is recorded in the redial data.

Caller ID notification priority ◀P42

Making calls by setting the conditions

You can set the dialing conditions each time you make a voice/videophone call.

1 Enter the phone number ▶  **2**

Making an international call: Enter the country code ▶ area code (city code) ▶ phone number
▶  **2**

- For an international call, dial without "0" when the area code begins with "0" (when calling to a general subscriber phone and other phones in Italy, you need to dial "0").

2 Select each item to set

- Chaku-moji** : Create or select the Chaku-moji message to be sent to the other party. ◀P53
- Multi-No** : Select the number to be notified to the other party from the basic number or additional numbers. ◀P323
- Call type** : Select from *Voice call*, *64K V.phone* or *32K V.phone*.
- Caller ID** : Set whether to show/hide caller ID.
 - Caller ID notification priority ◀P42
- Prefix** : Select the number (Prefix ◀P57) to be appended before the phone number.
- Intn'l prefix** : Select the international access code set in Int'l Call Assist.

3 Press

A call is made by the settings.

- When you select **64K V.phone** or **32K V.phone** in *Call type*, press  to select Chara-den to be displayed during a videophone call.
- When you have set *Prefix* or *Intr'l prefix* to other than *Unspecified*, press  and select *Yes*. Press  and select *No, use original* to cancel other settings than the setting of Chaku-moji and call type and make a call.

INFORMATION

In the redial list, received call list, recorded message list, voice memo list, details screen of Own Number, or member list for schedule, press  and select *Call option*.

In the FOMA terminal phonebook list/details screen or the UIM phonebook list/details screen, highlight a phone number, press  and select *Mail/Call option* *Call option*.

For an international call, the caller ID may not be notified depending on the phone company that handles a call even when *Notify* is selected for *Caller ID*.

Using international calls

WORLD CALL

DoCoMo international call service "WORLD CALL"

- The international call service "WORLD CALL" is available for DoCoMo mobile phones.
- How to call

 Enter the country code ▶ area code (city code) ▶ phone number ▶ 

- The above phone number can be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
 - When the area code begins with "0", dial without "0" (when calling to a general subscriber phone and other phones in Italy, you need to dial "0").
- You can call to about 240 countries and regions around the world.
 - WORLD CALL charges are added to the FOMA service charges every month.
 - No subscription charges or monthly fee is required.
 - You were subscribed to "WORLD CALL" as one of standard services at the time of subscription to the FOMA service (unless you request not to subscribe to it).
 - Changes in international call dialing procedure
MY LINE service is not applicable to mobile phone communications, including WORLD CALL service. However, along with the introduction of MY LINE service, the dialing procedure for international calls using a mobile phone was changed. Consequently, the previous dialing procedure (without prefix "010") no longer be used.
 - Contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual for details.
 - To use international call services other than the DoCoMo service, contact each carrier for details.
 - This service cannot be used with some billing plans.

"International videophone" calls to parties using specific overseas 3G mobile phone terminals can be made by dialing as described above and placing a call in the videophone mode.

- For the countries and overseas carriers you can connect to, visit the DoCoMo website for international services.
- The image of the other party displayed on FOMA terminal may be distorted or connection may not be established depending on the terminal at the other end of the international videophone line.

You can set whether to make an international call by replacing “+” which was entered at the beginning of a phone number with the international access code set in this setting.

Default Intn'l prefix: ON (Name: World Call, Intn'l prefix No.: 009130010)

Setting the auto-switch function

1

2 Set each item ▶ Press

Intn'l prefix : Set whether to automatically replace “+” with the international access code.
 • When *ON* is selected, select an international access code.

Registering the international access code (International prefix)

- Up to 3 international access codes can be registered.

1

2 Select <Not recorded>

Setting the international access code which is to replace “+”: Highlight an item ▶

✓ is displayed indicating the set code.

Deleting: Highlight an item ▶ ▶ Select *Yes*

3 Select *Name* field ▶ Enter a name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters)

4 Select *Intn'l prefix No.* field ▶ Enter a code (up to 10 digits) ▶ Press

Using “+” to make an international call

When you enter “+” at the beginning of a phone number for dialing, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to replace “+” with the international access code according to Int'l Call Assist.

- If you make a call by entering “+” before the country code of Japan “81”, the international access code does replace it.
- This operation is valid when *Intn'l prefix* of Int'l Call Assist is set to *ON*.

1 (for over a second) ▶ Enter the country code ▶ area code (city code) ▶ phone number ▶

- Hold down for over a second to enter “+”.
- When the area code begins with “0”, dial without “0” (when calling to a general subscriber phone and other phones in Italy, you need to dial “0”).

2 Select *Yes*

- Select *No, use original* to dial the phone number without replacing “+”.

Setting prefix numbers added to phone number

Prefix Dialing

By registering the number (prefix) such as an international access code, "186" or "184" to add to the beginning of the phone number in advance, you can add a prefix after entering the phone number to make a call easily.

☛P54

Default 009130010

1     

2 Select *Prefix1* to 3 field ▶ Enter a number ▶ Press 

- Up to 3 numbers in total and up to 10 digits for each number can be entered.
- Do not include a pause or timed pause in the number (prefix). If you set a prefix containing a pause or timed pause, you cannot add the prefix when making a call.

Making a call by specifying a sub-address

Sub Address

Specify a sub-address to call a specific phone or communication device.

- This setting is also used to select the contents in a video delivery service, "V-Live".

Enabling use of a sub-address

Default ON

1     

2 Press 

- To cancel the setting: 

Making a call by specifying a sub-address

1 Enter the phone number ▶  ▶ Enter the sub-address

- You can also make a call by entering "X" at the beginning of the phone number.

2 Press  (voice call) or  (videophone call)

- The sub-address needs to be set on the other party's phone or communication device.

INFORMATION

Even when Sub Address is set to *ON*, if "X" is entered after entering a pause, timed pause or "#", it is not recognized as a sub-address delimiter and sent as tone signals (DTMF) containing "X".

Setting the alarm indicating reconnection of interrupted call

Reconnect Alarm

Set an alarm that is heard at the time of reconnecting a voice call or videophone call interrupted due to poor signal conditions in a tunnel or behind a building, etc. when signal conditions improve.

- The other party hears no sound while signals are disrupted.
- The time until the call is reconnected depends on line use or signal conditions. The approximate time is a maximum of 10 seconds.
- Note that the call is charged for the time until the call is reconnected (up to 10 seconds).
- The call may be cut off before the alarm sounds depending on line use or signal conditions.

Default High alarm

1 **Menu** **8** **1** **1** **6** **4** ▶ Press any of **1** to **3**

Suppressing ambient noises to improve the call quality

Noise Reduction

By suppressing ambient noises during a call, the other party can hear your voice clearly and you can also hear the other party's voice clearly.

- It is recommended that this function usually be set to *ON*.

Default ON

1 **Menu** **8** **4** **7**

2 Press **1**

- To cancel the setting: **2**

Talking without using hands in a car

In-car Handsfree

You can make and receive voice calls from a handsfree compatible device by connecting FOMA terminal via USB to such device as the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) or car navigation system.

- For operations of handsfree devices, refer to the instruction manual for each handsfree device. Note that the FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional) is required to use the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional).

INFORMATION

If the setting is made to play sounds from a handsfree device, the ring alert sounds from a handsfree device regardless of the Silent Mode setting or the ring alert settings on FOMA terminal.

If a videophone call is made with a handsfree device using the phonebook or redial data, the communication speed setting of the handsfree device is used. If it is not set, the videophone call is made at fixed 64K.

When a videophone call is made or received with a handsfree device, a substitute image is sent to the other party.

The operation during incoming calls when Answer Machine is set follows the Answer Machine settings.

Receiving calls/videophone calls

1 A call arrives

The ring alert sounds, the display light turns on and the keys light/flash.

2

The call duration is displayed.



- You can also answer a voice call by pressing  to , , or  other than  (Any Key Answer). ◀P61
- You can also answer a videophone call by pressing .
- The other party's voice comes out of the speaker during a videophone call (Speakerphone function).
- For a videophone call, the substitute image may be displayed depending on the other party's settings.
- Even when Chara-den is set as the substitute image, Chara-den may not be displayed. If this happens, the default image for the substitute image setting is sent to the other party.

3 Press when you finish the call

Display information

The caller's phone number, name, image and/or video/i-motion will be displayed on the screen according to the dialing condition of the caller and your FOMA terminal settings. You can set FOMA terminal not to display the name or phone number. ◀P115

When the caller has notified caller ID



If the caller's phone number is not registered in your phonebook, the phone number is displayed. Also, the image set in Call Alert, Videophone Alert or other settings is displayed.

- Priority of incoming images ◀P114



If the caller's phone number is already registered in your phonebook, the name and phone number are displayed. When Contact Image is set to *ON*, the image or video/i-motion set in the phonebook is also displayed. ◀P114

- Received Chaku-moji is recorded in the received call history.

Chaku-moji ◀P52

When the caller has not notified caller ID

The reason why no caller ID is sent is displayed.



Reason for no caller ID	Description
<i>Anonymous</i>	The caller selected not to send the caller ID.
<i>Payphone</i>	The call was made from a payphone, etc.
<i>Unavailable</i>	The call was made from a party who cannot send caller ID, such as a call from overseas or from a general subscriber phone via forwarding service (however, caller ID may be displayed depending on the phone company that handles a call).

Operations available from the submenu while receiving a call

If you set *Arrival call act* to *Answer*, the same operations are available from the submenu when there is another incoming voice call during a call.

Submenu item	Description
1 <i>Call Rejection</i>	Disconnects the call (the caller does not pay for the call).
2 <i>Voice Mail (V-phone answerphone for videophone call)*1</i>	Connects the incoming call to the Voice Mail Service Center.
3 <i>Call Forwarding*2</i>	Forwards the incoming call to the forwarding phone number.

*1 Valid when you have subscribed to Voice Mail Service.

*2 Valid when you have subscribed to Call Forwarding Service and have set the forwarding phone number.

When you hear beeps (call waiting ring tone) during a voice call

If Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service or Call Forwarding Service is subscribed, you will hear beeps (call waiting ring tone) when you receive another incoming voice call during a voice call and the following operations can be performed:

Service	Operation
Voice Mail Service*1	Connects the second call to the Voice Mail Service Center.
Call Waiting Service	Puts the current call on hold and answers the second call.
Call Forwarding Service*1	Forwards the second call to the forwarding phone number.

*1 Available from the submenu when *Arrival call act* is set to *Answer* and *Set arrival act* is active.

- If Call Waiting Service is not subscribed, you cannot answer the call even if you hear the call waiting ring tone.

INFORMATION

When a call forwarded from a FOMA terminal arrives, the phone number from which it was forwarded is displayed if it is not registered in the phonebook. If it is registered, the name is displayed. However, the phone number or name may not be displayed depending on the forwarding source.

Even if video/i-motion is set as the incoming image in the phonebook or in Call Alert, it is not played and the first frame of the video/i-motion is displayed when there is an incoming voice call during a voice call.

When you receive an international call, a plus sign (+) appears at the beginning of the caller ID.

For calls received from callers not registered in the phonebook, you can reject calls or set the ring alert and vibrator ringer action not to start immediately. ●P141, P140

Call rejection can be set for some parties registered in the phonebook. ●P137

When a videophone call arrives, it is not connected if the forwarding destination is not set to a videophone terminal compliant with the 3G-324M even if Call Forwarding Service is activated. Check the specifications of the forwarding destination when setting it.

Switching a received call between a voice call and videophone call

- The switching operation can be performed only from the terminal that made a call. It cannot be performed from the terminal that received the call.
- To receive the request of switching calls, set **Indication ON** of Notify Switchable Mode in advance. ➡P77

Example Switching a received voice call to a videophone call

1 Receive the request of switching to a videophone call during a voice call



The call is switched to a videophone call and the substitute image is sent to the other party.

- A guidance informing that the call is being switched is played during switching.

Switching a received videophone call to a voice call: Receive the request of switching to a voice call during a videophone call



Enabling use of dial keys to answer a call

Any Key Answer

Allows you to answer a call by pressing **[0]** to **[9]**, **[*]**, or **#[** other than **☎**.

- This function is available for voice calls. However, it is unavailable when receiving a call while talking.

Default ON

1 **[Menu]** **[8]** **[4]** **[3]**

2 Press **[1]**

- To cancel the setting: **[2]**

Adjusting the volume of the other party's voice during a call

Listen Volume

The volume of the other party's voice can be adjusted from level 1 (lowest volume) to level 6 (highest volume).

- The volume changed while talking is retained even after the call is ended.
- The set volume is retained even if the power is turned off.

Default Level 4

1 during a call ► to adjust the volume

The volume is set automatically by pressing  or waiting for a while after you stop key operations.

- To turn up the volume:  or 
- To turn down the volume:  or 

Adjusting the volume of ring alerts and other sounds emitted from FOMA terminal

Adjust Volume

Adjust the volume of call, mail and Message R/F ring alerts, alarm clock, schedule alarm, and i- ppli sounds.

- The volume can be adjusted in 7 levels, from *silent* to level 1 to level 6 (the volume of Movie ringtone can also be adjusted in 7 levels). You can also set *STEPTONE* (the volume changes into *silent* level 1 ... level 6 about every 3 seconds) in standby.

Adjusting the volume of ring alerts while receiving

- The ring volume changed while receiving a call is reset to the original volume when a call is ended.

1 while receiving a call ► to adjust the volume

The volume is set automatically by pressing  or waiting for a while after you stop key operations.

- To turn up the volume:  or 
- To turn down the volume:  or 

INFORMATION

To stop the ring alert and vibrator:  while receiving a call

While receiving a call, the ring volume cannot be set to *STEPTONE*.

Adjusting the volume of ring alerts and other sounds in standby

- *Listen volume* cannot be set to *silent*.
- *Listen volume* and *i- ppli effect sound* cannot be set to *STEPTONE*.
- The ring volume changed while in standby is retained even if the power is turned off.

Default Level 4 (all)

1    

2  to , or 

Adjusting the volume of alarm clock:  

Adjusting the volume of schedule alarm:  

- Call alert volume** : Adjusts the ring volume for voice calls and videophone calls.
The set volume also applies to the following sounds:
- Timer alarm
 - Alarm for Call Cost Limit
 - Sound indicating the battery level
 - Playback sound of melodies attached to mail
- Mail/Msg alert vol.** : Adjusts the ring volume for mails, chat mails and Message R/Fs.
- Listen volume** : Adjusts the earpiece volume during a voice call and videophone call.
The set volume also applies to the following sounds:
- Keypad sound
 - Playback sound of voice call messages
 - Playback sound of voice memos
- Alarm volume (Alarm clock/Schedule reminder)**:
Adjusts the volume of alarm clock that will be used when the volume is set to **Terminal setting** on the **Set sound** screen of Alarm Clock. Also adjusts the volume of schedule alarm.
- i- ppli effect sound** : Adjusts the volume of effect sound for i- ppli.

3 to adjust the volume ▶ Press

- To set to **STEPTONE**:  or  when the volume is level 6
- To set to **silent**:  or  when the volume is level 1

INFORMATION

 is indicated on the standby display when **Call alert volume** is set to **silent**. If the vibrator for incoming voice calls is set at the same time,  is indicated.

Setting for incoming voice/videophone calls

Call Alert/Videophone Alert

- The settings of this function are reflected to the settings of Sound Setting (☛P101), Vibrator Setting (☛P105) and Light Alert Setting (☛P121). The setting of **Show image** is reflected to the settings of Incoming Call or Videophone Receiving of Call Image. ☛P114

Default Ring alert: Melody/Vivaldism (Call Alert), Melody/電話・メロディ A(Phone, melody A) (Videophone Alert)
Show image: Standard image Vibrate alert: OFF Light alert: ON/Blinking

Example Setting operations when receiving a voice call

1     

Setting operations when receiving a videophone call:    

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press Press

- Ring alert** : Sets the ring alert for incoming calls.
- When any of **Melody**, **Movie ringtone** or **Music** is selected, select a ring alert tone.
Setting music data ☛P102
- Show image** : Sets the image displayed for incoming calls.
- When **Select image** or **i-motion** is selected, set an image.
- Vibrate alert** : Sets the vibration for incoming calls.
- Light alert** : Sets the lighting pattern of keys for incoming calls.
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion file when selecting ☛P102

INFORMATION

Setting Created animation for the incoming image displays the first frame.

When the video/i-motion with sound only (i-motion without image such as singer's vocals) or music data is set for **Ring alert**, if **Show image** is reset to the video/i-motion with image only or Flash movie, the ring alert is reset to the default setting. The melody can be changed afterward.

Some video/i-motion may not be set for the incoming image. Also, the video/i-motion with sound cannot be set.

Setting the priority screen for incoming calls during a call or packet communication Priority Comm Mode

Set the priority of the screen to be displayed when you receive a packet communication through a connected PC during a voice call or you receive a voice call during i-mode.

- When there is incoming i-mode packet communication during a voice call, the voice call talking screen appears by priority regardless of this setting.
- The screen change caused by this function does not interrupt the call or packet communication.

Default | **No Set Up**

1 **Menu** **8** **4** **6** **1**

2 Press any of **1** to **3**

No Set Up : Displays the screen for the latest incoming call/communication without setting the priority.

Voice call : Displays the voice call talking screen by priority.

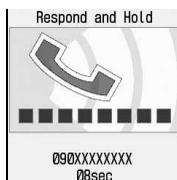
Packet : Displays the packet communication screen during a voice call, and the i-mode communication screen during i-mode.

- Press **Switch Task** to display the **Switch Task** menu then answer an incoming call.

Putting incoming calls on hold when you cannot answer right away Response and Hold

- Callers are charged for the time spent on hold.

1 **Response and Hold** while receiving a call



Incoming voice call on hold



Incoming videophone call on hold

The incoming call is put on hold (Response and Hold). The other party hears the response hold guidance.

For videophone calls, the response hold image appears on your and the other party's terminals.

2 Press **Response and Hold** when you are ready to answer the call

- Press **Response and Hold** or **Response and Hold** for a videophone call and the substitute image (P76) is sent to the other party.
- If **Response and Hold** is pressed or the other party hangs up during Response and Hold, the call is ended.

INFORMATION

When you have subscribed to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, you can use the service by pressing  and selecting *Voice Mail (V-phone answerphone* for videophone call) or *Call Forwarding* while receiving a call.

Setting the response hold guidance

Status Message

You can record your own voice as response hold guidance.

- One guidance of up to about 10 seconds long can be recorded.
- While a voice call or videophone call is during Response and Hold, the guidance set by this function is played.

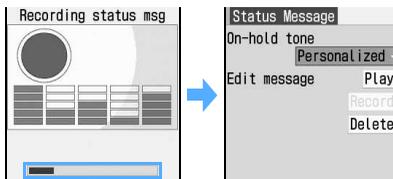
Default Standard

Example Setting a recorded guidance

1       ▶ Select *On-hold tone* field

2 
• To reset to the default guidance:  ▶ Go to Step 4

3 Select *Record in Edit message* field ▶ Speak a response hold guidance after a tone (beep)



Indication of the allowable recording time

Recording will start after a message appears.

- An end tone (beep) sounds in about 10 seconds from the start of recording.
- To stop the recording: 
- To check the recorded guidance: Select *Play*
- To record again, select *Delete*, select *Yes* and record after deleting the recorded guidance.

4 Press 

INFORMATION

If you delete the recorded guidance, the default guidance (*Standard*) is restored.

If *Standard* is set, the guidance "I cannot answer the phone right now. Please wait or call back later (in Japanese)" is played for the other party during Response and Hold.

Setting the on-hold tone

On-hold Tone

- While a voice call or videophone call is during On-hold, the melody set by this function is played.

Default 保留音・ボイス(On-hold tone, voice)

1      

2 Press any of  to 
• To play a melody: Highlight a melody ▶ 

Public mode is an automatic answering service considering etiquette in highly public places. When Public mode is activated and a call is received, a guidance is played and informs the caller that the called party is driving or in an area (train, bus, movie theater, etc.) where use of the phone should be refrained and cannot answer the call. Then the call is disconnected.

- Public mode can be activated/canceled only in standby (including when 圏外 (outside service area) is displayed on the screen).
- Even in Public mode you can make calls as normal.
- This function is not available during data communication.

Activating Public mode (Driving mode)

1 Hold down for over a second

Public mode is activated and  appears on the standby display.

When a call is received, a guidance is played saying “The person you are calling is currently driving or in an area where cellphone should not be used. Please try again later”.

- When Silent Mode is activated at the same time, Public mode takes precedence.

Canceling:  (for over a second)

When Public mode (Driving mode) is activated

No ring alert plays when your FOMA terminal receives a call.  (with the number of missed calls) appears on the standby display and the call is recorded in the received call history.

The caller hears a guidance informing that you are driving or in an area where use of the mobile phone should be refrained and the call is then ended.

Operation when receiving calls in Public mode (Driving mode) with network service activated

Service	Receiving voice calls	Receiving videophone calls
Voice Mail Service	The caller hears the Public mode guidance and the call is then connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.*1	The call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center without the Public mode video guidance.
Call Forwarding Service	The caller hears the Public mode guidance and the call is then forwarded to the specified destination.*1 Whether the caller hears the guidance or not depends on the setting for Call Forwarding Service. When the guidance is on, the Public mode guidance is played. When the guidance is off, no guidance is played.	The call is forwarded to the specified destination without the Public mode video guidance. If the destination party uses the phone not compatible with videophone, the call is disconnected.
Call Waiting Service	The caller hears the Public mode guidance and the call is then disconnected.	The caller sees the Public mode video guidance and the call is then disconnected.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	If registered as nuisance caller, the caller hears a guidance indicating that the call cannot be connected and the call is then disconnected.	If registered as nuisance caller, the caller sees a video guidance indicating that the call cannot be connected and the call is then disconnected.
Caller ID Request Service	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The caller who has not notified the caller ID hears a guidance requesting caller ID and the call is then disconnected. • The caller who has notified the caller ID hears the Public mode guidance and the call is then disconnected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The caller who has not notified the caller ID sees a video guidance requesting caller ID and the call is then disconnected. • The caller who has notified the caller ID sees the Public mode video guidance and the call is then disconnected.

*1 If the ringing time is set to 0 second, the Public mode guidance is not played.

INFORMATION

In Public mode, the following sounds are disabled. In addition, the vibrator does not operate or the keys do not light/flash for incoming calls/emails, etc.

- Ring alert
- Alarm clock
- Schedule alarm
- Timer alarm
- i- ppli sound
- Charge alert
- Low battery alert
- Alarm for Call Cost Limit (Even if *Alert* for Call Cost Limit is set to *ON* and an alarm is set, a message is not displayed.)

Even in Public mode, the keypad sound and the shutter sound are played.

In Public mode, neither the i-channel ticker nor Chaku-moji appears on the standby display.

Even if a mail or Message R/F is received, the receiving screen and reception result screen do not appear. But, when Check i-mode Message is performed, these screens appear.

Making emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) in Public mode cancels Public mode. However, it is not canceled when emergency calls are made using videophone.

Using Public mode (power off)

Public mode (power off)

Public mode (power off) is an automatic answering service considering etiquettes in highly public places. When Public mode (power off) is set and then a call is received with FOMA terminal switched off, a guidance is played and informs the caller that the called party is in an area (hospital, airplane, priority seat area on a train, etc) where the phone should be turned off and cannot answer the call. Then the call is disconnected.

Activating Public mode (power off)

1 * 2 5 2 5 1 Press

Public mode (power off) is set. There will be no change on the standby display.

When you subsequently turn the power off, Public mode (power off) is activated.

In Public mode (power off) if a call is received with FOMA terminal off, a guidance is played saying "The person you are calling is currently in an area where use is prohibited. Please try again later".

Canceling: * 2 5 2 5 0

Checking the setting: * 2 5 2 5 9

When Public mode (power off) is activated

The setting is retained until Public mode (power off) is canceled by dialing "* 25250". The setting is not canceled by turning the power on.

The Public mode (power off) guidance is played even in locations outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. The caller hears a guidance informing that you are in an area where the phone should be turned off and the call is then ended.

Operation when receiving calls in Public mode (power off) with network service activated

Service	Receiving voice calls	Receiving videophone calls
Voice Mail Service	The caller hears the Public mode (power off) guidance and the call is then connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.*1	The call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center without the Public mode (power off) video guidance.
Call Forwarding Service	The caller hears the Public mode (power off) guidance and the call is then forwarded to the specified destination.*1 Whether the caller hears the guidance or not depends on the setting for Call Forwarding Service. When the guidance is on, the Public mode guidance is played. When the guidance is off, no guidance is played.	The call is forwarded to the specified destination without the Public mode (power off) video guidance. If the destination party uses the phone not compatible with videophone, the call is disconnected.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	If registered as nuisance caller, the caller hears a guidance indicating that the call cannot be connected and the call is then disconnected.	If registered as nuisance caller, the caller sees a video guidance indicating that the call cannot be connected and the call is then disconnected.
Caller ID Request Service	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The caller who has not notified the caller ID hears a guidance requesting caller ID and the call is then disconnected. The caller who has notified the caller ID hears the Public mode (power off) guidance and the call is then disconnected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The caller who has not notified the caller ID sees a video guidance requesting caller ID and the call is then disconnected. The caller who has notified the caller ID sees the Public mode (power off) video guidance and the call is then disconnected.

*1 If the ringing time is set to 0 second, the Public mode (power off) guidance is not played.

Allowing the caller to leave message when you cannot answer the call

Answer Machine

By setting Answer Machine, you can play the greeting message and record the caller's message when you cannot answer the call.

- Up to 4 messages can be recorded for voice/videophone calls in total, a maximum of about 30 seconds for each.
- For voice calls, the caller's voice is recorded. For videophone calls, the caller's voice and image are recorded.
- You can set the time interval between the reception of the call and the start of the greeting.
- The greeting in your own voice can be recorded.
- It is advisable that the contents of recorded messages be separately written down in a notebook, etc. Recorded data may be lost due to failure, repair, change of model or other handlings of FOMA terminal. If the data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

Menu 4611

Setting Answer Machine

Default Deactivate

1 Press

appears on the standby display.

Canceling:

Replying with Quick Record Message

When Answer Machine has not been set to start, you can activate this function only once by holding down for over a second while receiving a call. This operation does not set Answer Machine to start.

INFORMATION

When the number of recorded messages reaches 4,  is indicated on the standby display. The icon does not disappear even if Answer Machine is canceled.

If there are already 4 recorded messages, Answer Machine cannot be set. If you attempt to activate Quick Record Message while receiving a call, the warning tone (rapid beeps) sounds and the ring alert keeps sounding. Delete unnecessary recorded messages and set again.

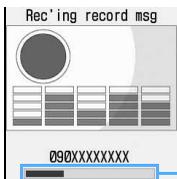
Receiving a call while Answer Machine is set

1 A call arrives

After the ring alert sounds according to Greeting Response Time, the greeting message screen appears.

- When the greeting message is set to **Preinstalled**, the caller hears the guidance "I cannot answer the phone right now, please leave your name and message after the beep (in Japanese)". Set **Personalized** to play a recorded guidance.

2 Recording the caller's message starts



Recording a voice call message



Recording a videophone call message

Indication of the allowable recording time

- A beep announces the caller the start and end of the recording. And when about 25 seconds have elapsed since the start of recording, rapid beeps sound to indicate that the end of recording is approaching.

3 When the recording is completed, the call is disconnected

 1 (with the number of recorded messages) appears on the standby display.

INFORMATION

When FOMA terminal is turned off or outside the service area, Answer Machine does not operate. Use Voice Mail Service (pay service).

Answer Machine does not operate and the ring alert keeps sounding when 4 messages have already been recorded.

If Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated, each service starts its operation.

Public mode (Driving mode) takes precedence over Answer Machine. In Public mode (Driving mode), Answer Machine does not operate.

The recording may be disrupted or the image may be distorted if the signal conditions are poor.

Another call received while playing the greeting or recording a message is rejected and playing or recording continues.

If Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service or Call Waiting Service is subscribed, the rejected incoming call is recorded in the received call history.

You can answer a call even while playing the greeting or recording a message. Press  to answer a voice call. Press  or  to answer a videophone call and send the substitute image. If the message is being recorded at this time, the contents before answering the call will not be recorded.

Menu 4613

Setting the response time until the greeting starts

Greeting Response Time

Default 013 Sec.

1   1 3

2 Enter the response time (0 to 120 seconds)

- To increase or decrease the entered values: 

INFORMATION

When Auto Answer, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service and this function are set simultaneously, the priority depends on the ringing time set for each service and function. To give priority to Answer Machine, the response time for this function should be set shorter than the ringing times set for Auto Answer, Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service. Note that Answer Machine may not be given priority depending on the signal conditions. In this case, answer a call with Quick Record Message.

The delayed time of Auto Answer and the response time of Answer Machine cannot be set to the same time period.

Menu 4614

Setting the greeting message

Greeting Message Setting

You can record your own voice as greeting message.

- One greeting of up to about 10 seconds long can be recorded.

Default Preinstalled

Example Setting a recorded greeting

1    ► Select *Greeting message* field

2 

- To reset to the default greeting:  ► Go to Step 4

3 Select *Record in Edit message* field ► Speak a greeting message after a tone (beep)

- The operation procedure is the same as when recording the response hold guidance. ◀P65

4 Press 

INFORMATION

If you delete the recorded greeting, the default greeting is restored.

Menu 462

Playing recorded messages

You can play or delete recorded messages from the list.

- Unplayed recorded messages, if any, can be played quickly from the standby display. ◀P31

1  

Recorded messages
 090XXXXXXXXX
 Docomo Taro
2007/05/20 (Su) 10:00
090XXXXXXXXX

On the recorded message list screen, the recording date and time and the caller's phone number appear.

: Voice call message (unplayed) : Videophone call message (unplayed)
: Voice call message (played) : Videophone call message (played)

- If the caller's phone number is notified, it is displayed. If not, the reason for no caller ID is displayed. If the notified caller's phone number is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.
- When you have subscribed to the Multi Number service, the name of basic number or additional number used by a received call is also displayed.

2 Select a recorded message to play



Indication of the playing time
Playing a voice call message

- During playback, the following operations are available:
 - : Adjust volume
 - : Stop
 - : Speakerphone on/off (for voice call messages only)

Deleting:

- ① **Highlight a recorded message** ▶
- To delete all:
- ② **Select Yes**

Registering an entry in the phonebook:

- ① **Highlight a recorded message** ▶
- To add to an existing phonebook entry:
- ② or ▶ **Register the name or address** ▶ P81, P83
 - To add to an existing phonebook entry: or ▶ Select the party
 - ▶ Edit the data ▶ P91

Making a call: Highlight a recorded message ▶ (voice call) or (videophone call)

3 Select whether to delete the played recorded message

- To delete the recorded message: Select *Yes*

Using Chara-den

You can select a Chara-den image to be sent during a videophone call.

1 during a call

2 **Select a folder** ▶ **Select a Chara-den image**



Chara-den
© Disney

- If you press dial keys while sending Chara-den as the substitute image, the character performs the action corresponding to the key pressed. The following operations can also be performed:

- : Cancel action
- : Display the action list
 - Selecting an action moves the character.
- (for over a second):
 - Switch action modes (Action/Action of parts)

INFORMATION

Some Chara-den has either one of full actions or parts actions or has no actions at all.

Setting images being sent to the other party

You can change the image being sent to the other party or apply special effects to it during a videophone call.

Switching the outgoing images

1 Press **[E]** during a call



Camera image

- Each press switches the image between the substitute image (**[E]** or **[E]**) and the camera image (**[E]**). ◀P76
- Even when Chara-den is set as the substitute image, Chara-den may not be displayed. If this happens, the default image for the substitute image setting is sent to the other party. ◀P76
- While sending the camera image, if you want to shoot an object from a very short distance, switch to the macro mode. ◀P152

Setting the quality of outgoing and incoming images

- Setting *Prefer motion spd* makes motions smoother in a little lower-definition image.
- Setting *Prefer img qual* makes motions a little slower in a higher-definition image.

Default **Normal**

Example Setting the quality of outgoing image

1 **Menu** **[4]** **[1]** during a call

Setting the quality of incoming image: **Menu** **[4]** **[2]** during a call

2 Press any of **[1]** to **[3]**

Setting a frame on the outgoing images

Frame

The frame can be set while sending the camera image.

- Only the frame with the display size of 176 x 144 or smaller can be selected. As for downloaded frames, only the frame with the display size of 176 x 144 can be selected.

1 **Menu** **[3]** **[1]** during a call

2 Select a frame



- To cancel sending the frame: **[E]** while sending a frame
- Frames set by default ◀P349

You can apply the following effects to outgoing images. This setting is available only while sending the camera image.

Item	Icon	Item	Icon	Item	Icon	Item	Icon
Full auto		Twilight		Letter		Mono tone (green)	
Adjust backlight		Surf&Snow		Whiten		Mono tone (blue)	
Spot photometry		Sport		Suntan		Monochrome	
Scenery		Pet		Soft touch		Sepia	
Night		Gourmet		Mono tone (red)			

• For details P153

Default Full auto

- 1 during a call
- 2 Press any of to



Current effect applied

Adjusting the brightness/color density/flicker of outgoing images

You can adjust the brightness and color density in 5 levels. Also, you may be able to control the flicker of images, if it occurs, by making settings according to the power supply frequency in your area.

- This setting is available only while the camera image is being sent.
- The brightness and color density may not be changed depending on the settings of Screen Mode/Effect.
- This setting is retained even after the call is finished.
- The flicker adjustment settings for the camera and Bar Code Reader will reflect changes in this setting.

P155, P157

Default Brightness: level 3 Density: level 3 Flicker adjustment: Auto

- 1 during a call ▶ Select an item

Adjusting brightness and color density:



- ① ▶ Highlight **Brightness** slider ▶
- ② to highlight **Density** slider ▶

- The camera image is displayed on the main screen while adjusting.
- If you do nothing on the terminal for some time after changing the slider's position, the settings are not changed and the talking screen reappears.

Adjusting flicker: ▶ to

Default Display setting: Both sides Sub screen: My side Screen size: Large Display light: Always on(normal)

1   during a call

2 Select each item to set ► Press 

- For setting each item (*Display setting*, *Sub screen*, *Screen size* and *Display light*), follow Step 2 in “Changing the videophone settings”.

Changing the videophone settings

Videophone Settings

Set the operation to be performed when a videophone call is not connected, the screen displayed during a videophone call, etc.

- The setting of *Auto redial as voice* is provided to ensure access to the other party. By setting this function to *ON*, a dialed videophone call will be automatically redialed as voice call if the other party's terminal does not support the videophone function or cannot receive the videophone call while using the mova service through Dual Network Service. Redialing does not occur, however, if you call an ISDN-sync 64 kbps or PIAFS access point, or an ISDN videophone incompatible with 3G-324M (as of December 2006), or if you dial the wrong number. Note that some calls may require the call charge.

Default Auto redial as voice: OFF Display setting: Both sides Sub screen: My side Screen size : Large
Visual preference: Normal Display light: Always on(normal) Speakerphone: ON

1    

2 Select each item to set ► Press 

- Auto redial as voice* : Sets whether to redial as voice call automatically when a videophone call is not connected.
- Display setting* : Specifies whether to display either your image (*My side*) or the other party's image (*Other side*) or both images during a videophone call.
- Sub screen* : Specifies whether to display your image (*My side*) or the other party's image (*Other side*) on the sub screen during a videophone call.
- Screen size* : Sets the main screen view size.
- Visual preference* : Sets the quality of image sent from the other party.
- Display light* : Sets the display light during a videophone call.
- When *Terminal settings* is set, the setting of *Display light time (Normal use)* in Display Light Setting (☛P116) applies.
- Speakerphone* : Specifies whether to turn on the speakerphone function automatically once a videophone call is connected.

INFORMATION

Even when *Auto redial as voice* is set to *ON*, redialing may not be performed depending on the situation of the other party or the network.

When *Auto redial as voice* is set to *ON*, if you make a videophone call during a packet communication with a PC connected, the call is redialed as voice call without connecting to a videophone call. During a voice call or 64K data communication, the call is not connected to a videophone call and redialing is not performed, either.

If redialing as voice call occurs with *Auto redial as voice* set to *ON*, voice call charges apply instead of digital communication charges.

When you talk on a videophone call while the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected, the voice sounds from the connected earphone/microphone regardless of the setting of *Speakerphone*.

If a videophone call is made to emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) from FOMA terminal while *Auto redial as voice* is set to *ON*, the call automatically switches to a voice call.

Menu 8235

Setting the substitute and on-hold images to be displayed during a videophone call

Videophone Image Setting

Change the images to be sent to the other party during a videophone call such as the substitute image, answer machine image, response hold image, on-hold image and video memo image.

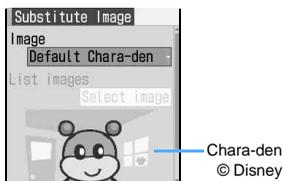
- You cannot set the following images:
 - Still image with a size larger than 176 x 144
 - Animation and Created animation
 - Still image in the format other than JPEG and GIF
 - Image not permitted to output from FOMA terminal

Setting the substitute image

Default Default Chara-den

1 Menu 8 5 5

2 1 ▶ Select *Image* field ▶ Press 



Setting the default Chara-den: 1

Default Chara-den (Dimo) is set.

Setting the default still image: 2

Default image (camera-off image) is set.

Setting other Chara-den:

① 3 ▶ Select *Select image* ▶ Select a folder

② Select a Chara-den image

- To display Chara-den: Highlight a Chara-den image ▶ 

Setting other still images:

① 4 ▶ Select *Select image* ▶ Select a folder

② Select a still image

- To display a still image: Highlight a still image ▶ 
- The selected image with the text message on it appears on the other party's terminal.

INFORMATION

If the Chara-den set as the substitute image is deleted, the substitute image is reset to *Default Chara-den*. If the still image or the default Chara-den is deleted, the substitute image is reset to *Default image*.

Changing the answer machine/response hold/on-hold/video memo images

Default Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image, Movie memo image: Default

1 [Menu] [8] [5] [5]

2 [2] to [5] ▶ Select *Image* field ▶ Press [□]



In case of the answer machine image

Setting the default still image: [1]

The default image is set.

Setting other still images:

① [2] ▶ Select *Select image* ▶ Select a folder

② Select a still image

• To display a still image: Highlight a still image ▶ [□]

• The selected image with the text message on it appears on the other party's terminal.

Setting of switching between a voice call and videophone call

Notify Switchable Mode

Set whether to notify the other party's terminal that your terminal can switch between a voice call and a videophone call.

- You cannot change the setting during a voice call or videophone call.
- This setting cannot be made outside the service area. Operate the terminal in locations with good radio wave condition.

Default Indication ON

1 [Menu] [8] [5] [7] [1]

Deactivating: [Menu] [8] [5] [7] [2]

Checking the current setting: [Menu] [8] [5] [7] [3]

2 Select *Yes*

Setting how incoming videophone calls are handled during i-mode

Data Session Arrival Act

Videophone calls can be received during i-mode packet communication.

Default V.phone priority

1 [Menu] [8] [5] [4]

2 Press any of [1] to [4]

V.phone priority : Receives a videophone call. When the call is answered, the current packet communication is disconnected.

Packet DL priority : Rejects an incoming videophone call and continues the packet communication.

V.phone answerphone : Connects an incoming videophone call to the Voice Mail Service Center.

Call forwarding : Forwards an incoming videophone call to the forwarding phone number.

INFORMATION

Without subscription to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, even if you set *V.phone answerphone* or *Call forwarding*, the action of *Packet DL priority* takes place.

If Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated and the ringing time for each service is set to 0 second, either service starts its operation, regardless of this setting. Incoming calls are not recorded in the received call history.

Using the videophone by connecting to an external device

External Device

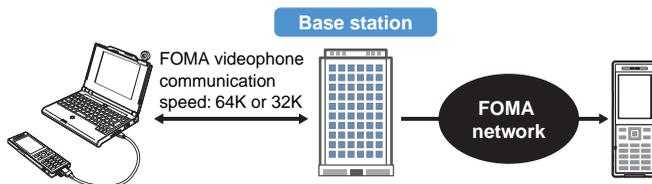
By connecting FOMA terminal to an external device such as PC by the FOMA USB Cable (optional), you can make and receive videophone calls from the external device.

To use this function, install a videophone application in a dedicated external device or a PC, and prepare devices such as an earphone/microphone or USB-compatible Web camera (available in market).

- This function is not available when FOMA terminal is not connected to an external device.
- Refer to the instruction manual of external devices for hardware requirements or setting/operating instructions of videophone applications.
- The application called “ドコモテレビ電話ソフト 2005 (DoCoMo videophone software 2005)” that is compatible with this function is available on the DoCoMo videophone software website. Visit the site below and download it (visit the support website for details of the environment for usage on PC):

<http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/> (in Japanese only)

Default Terminal



1

2 Press or

INFORMATION

A videophone call cannot be made from an external device during a voice call.

When Call Waiting Service is subscribed, if a videophone call is received through an external device during a voice call, it is recorded as a missed call in the received call history. The same applies when a voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication is received during a videophone call using an external device.

Phonebook

Phonebooks supported by FOMA terminal	80
Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook	
..... Phonebook New Entry	81
Registering entries into the UIM phonebook	
..... UIM Phonebook New Entry	83
Setting group names and incoming/outgoing actions	Group Setting 84
Making calls from the phonebook	Phonebook Search 85
Editing phonebook entries	Edit Phonebook 91
Copying phonebook entries	93
Deleting phonebook entries	Delete Phonebook 93
Saving (restoring/updating) of the phonebook data to the Data Center	
..... Data Security Service	94
Setting functions for phonebook entries	94
Protecting the secret phonebook entries	Secret Attribute 95
Checking the number of registered phonebook entries	
..... Check No. of Items	96
Using simple dialing to make calls	Quick Dial 97
Using Data Security Service	Data Security Service 97

Phonebooks supported by FOMA terminal

FOMA D703i supports the FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook.

- The items that can be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook are as follows:

○ : Available × : Not available

Item	FOMA terminal phonebook	UIM phonebook
The number of entries	Up to 700*1	Up to 50
Entry items		
Phonebook No.		×
Name/reading	Up to 32 one-byte or 16 two-byte characters for name and up to 32 one-byte characters for reading can be set.	Up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for name and up to 25 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters for reading can be set.
Image/video	One item per person	×
Group	Entries can be classified into 30 groups and グループなし (No group).	Entries can be classified into 10 groups and グループなし.
Phone number/icon	Up to 5 phone numbers per person, 2,105 in total*1 can be set. An icon can be set for each.	Only one phone number can be set per person. Icons cannot be set.
Mail address/icon	Up to 5 mail addresses per person, 2,105 in total*1 can be set. An icon can be set for each.	Only one mail address can be set per person. Icons cannot be set.
Other settings*2		×

*1 The number of items that can be registered may be decreased depending on the type of data registered.

*2 The following settings are available:

- Birthday, note, postal code/address, company name, job title and URL
- Even if you set your UIM to other FOMA terminals, the phonebook data in the UIM can be used.

Name displays

If a call is made/received to/from a party registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook, the name and the phone number registered in the phonebook appears on the screen displayed while dialing, calling, talking or receiving a call.

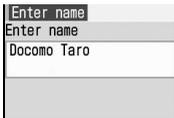
In addition, the name registered in the phonebook is also displayed in the redial data, received call history, recorded messages, senders of received mail, addresses of sent/unsent mail, custom menu's person, etc. It is also displayed when you enter the phone number or mail address without searching the phonebook.

- When phonebook entries of different names with the same phone number or mail address are registered in both phonebooks, the name registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook is displayed.
- In case some different names are registered for the same phone number or mail address in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the name registered first is displayed.
- When a mail is received, if the mail address including the @ and the following domain name exactly matches a mail address registered in the phonebook, the settings of the phonebook take precedence and the name registered in the phonebook is displayed. Note that in case i-mode terminal is used by sender, even when the mail address is registered in the phonebook without the domain name "@docomo.ne.jp", the settings of the phonebook take precedence and the name registered in the phonebook is displayed. When the mail address is "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp", register in the phonebook without "@docomo.ne.jp".
- When SMS is received and the phone number exactly matches a phone number registered in the phonebook, the settings of phonebook take precedence.
- If there is an incoming mail from the other party saved in the phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook is displayed as ticker on the task bar. Note that if mail is received from the other party with Secret Attribute set while not in Secret Mode, the mail address is displayed on the task bar.

- Maximum number of items that can be registered ➡P80
- It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of all the information you register in the phonebook.
If you have a PC, you can use the DoCoMo keitai datalink and the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to send data to the PC. Also, if you have subscribed to Data Security Service (charges apply), you can save the data to the Data Center.
- Registered data may be lost due to failure, repair, change of model or other handlings of FOMA terminal. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased data.
- Please be informed that if you copy the data registered in FOMA terminal to a new terminal at a DoCoMo Shop when switching to a new model, etc., the specifications of some new models may not allow copying of the data.

1   

2 Enter the name (up to 32 one-byte or 16 two-byte characters) ▶ 



- If a name is not entered, the entry cannot be registered.

3 Select each item to set



Phonebook No., name and reading

Phonebook No. : The lowest available phonebook No. is assigned automatically.

Changing the phonebook No.: Select the phonebook No. field ▶ Enter a number (0 to 699)

- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook No. can be omitted.

Name : Check the name.

Correcting the name: Select the name field ▶ Correct the name ▶ 

Reading : Check the reading.

Correcting the reading: Select the reading field ▶ Correct the reading (up to 32 one-byte characters)

- If you correct the name, the changes will not be automatically reflected to the reading of the name.

Select/Shoot image : Set an image or a video/i-motion file that is displayed when a call is made/received or the phonebook data is checked.

Select the *Select/Shoot image* field and perform the following operation:

Setting an image:  ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select an image**

- If an image with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 is selected, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to save the reduced image. If you select *Yes* and set the image, the image of which size is reduced to 96 x 72 (phonebook) or smaller is set/saved.
- When a call is made/received or the phonebook data is checked, for animation, the playing image is displayed and for Created animation, the first image is displayed.

Shooting a still image to set with the camera:  ▶ **Shoot the still image** ▶ 

- The size of a still image is set to 96 x 72 (phonebook) automatically.

Setting video/i-motion:  ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select video/i-motion**

- You can set video/i-motion with only images when the size is set to 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF) or 176 x 144 (QCIF).
- Playing and checking a video/i-motion file when selecting 
- When a call is made, the first frame of the video/i-motion is displayed.

Recording a video to set with the camera:  ▶ **Shoot video** ▶ 

- The size of a video is set to 176 x 144 (QCIF) automatically. Sounds are not recorded.

Restoring the default setting: 



Group

- : Select a group. *グループなし* (No group) is set by default.
Group Setting 

Adding the groups: Select the group field ▶  ▶ **Enter the name of the group (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters)** ▶ 

- Other than *グループなし*, up to 30 groups can be registered.



Phone number

- : Enter the phone number including the area code (up to 26 digits) and select an icon.
- Up to 5 phone numbers per person can be registered. Saving the first phone number displays items to be added.
- Pause (P), timed pause (T), " + ", " # " and sub-address delimiter (✕) can be registered.



Mail address

- : Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered. Select an icon.
- Up to 5 addresses per person can be registered. Saving the first mail address displays items to be added.
- When the other party has registered a secret code 



Birthday

- : Set *Set birthday* to *ON* and enter the birthday in the *Birthday* field.



Note

- : Up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters can be entered.



PostalCode/Address :

- Up to 7 digits can be entered for postal code. And up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters can be entered for address.



Company name

- : Up to 100 one-byte or 50 two-byte characters can be entered.



Job title

- : Up to 100 one-byte or 50 two-byte characters can be entered.



URL

- : Up to 256 one-byte characters can be entered.

4 Press

- When a phonebook No. that has already been used to save information is specified, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite. Select *New entry* not to overwrite and specify another phonebook No.

INFORMATION

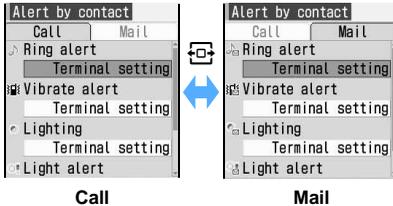
A phone number saved in the phonebook with preceding "184" or "186" does not allow sending of SMS even if it is selected as the address.

Ring alert or lighting, etc. can be set for each entry which is registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶

- Searching methods of the phonebook ◀P85

2 to display the setting screen ▶ Select each item to set ▶ Press



- In case the group is set to *グループなし*, each items are set to *Terminal setting*. If you select a group, the videophone substitute image is set to *Terminal setting* and the other items are set to *Group setting*.
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion file when selecting ◀P102

/ **Ring alert**

: Select *Movie ringtone*, *Melody* or *Music* to select a ring alert. Setting music data ◀P102

- Only video/i-motion and music data with the ring alert setting of the detail information specified to *Available* can be set as ring alert.
- To operate as set in Sound Setting, select *Terminal setting*.

/ **Vibrate alert**

: Select *Select* to set the vibrator for incoming calls/mails.

- To operate as set in Vibrator Setting, select *Terminal setting*.

/ **Lighting**

: Select *Select* to set whether to light the keys for incoming calls/mails.

- To operate as set in Light Alert Setting, select *Terminal setting*.

/ **Light alert**

: Select *Select* to set the lighting pattern of the keys for incoming calls/mails.

- To operate as set in Light Alert Setting, select *Terminal setting*.

Substitute image (only for the setting screen for calls) :

Select *Select* to set Chara-den (◀P264) displayed during a call.

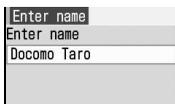
- To operate as set in Videophone Image Setting, select *Terminal setting*.

Registering entries into the UIM phonebook

- Maximum number of items that can be registered ◀P80

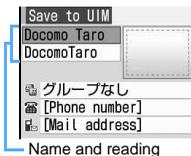
1

2 Enter the name (up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) ▶



- When both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used, up to 10 characters can be registered.
- If a name is not entered, the entry cannot be registered.

3 Select each item to set ▶ Press



Name and reading

Name : Check the name.

Correcting the name: Select the name field ▶ Correct the name ▶ 

Reading : Check the reading.

Correcting the reading: Select the reading field ▶ Correct the reading (up to 25 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters)

- Two-byte katakana and one-byte alphanumeric characters can be used to enter the reading.
- When both one- and two-byte characters are used, up to 12 characters can be registered.
- If you correct the name, the changes will not be automatically reflected to the reading of the name.

 **Group** : Select a group from Group 1 to 10 and グループなし. グループなし is set by default.

 **Phone number** : Enter the phone number including the area code. You can enter up to 26 digits (up to 20 digits depending on the UIM type).

- Pause (P), "+", "#", and sub-address delimiter (✕) can be registered. Timed pause (T) can be entered but cannot be registered.

 **Mail address** : Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

Setting group names and incoming/outgoing actions

Group Setting

You can change the group name of the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook and set the ring alert by group in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- As for グループなし, the group name cannot be changed or the incoming/outgoing action cannot be set.

Creating groups or edit the name of the groups

- Other than グループなし, up to 30 groups can be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

1    

- To change the UIM phonebook group names:     

2   ▶ Enter the group name

- You can enter up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for group names in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- You can enter up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for group names in the UIM phonebook. Note that when both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used, up to 10 characters can be registered.

Changing the name of the group : Highlight a group ▶  ▶ Edit the name of the group

- For UIM phonebook: Highlight the group ▶   Edit the name of group

Changing the order of groups of the FOMA terminal phonebook:  ▶  or 

3 Press

Setting incoming/outgoing actions of the group of FOMA terminal phonebook Alert/Image by Group

1  **4**   ► **Highlight a group** ►  **5**

2  to display the setting screen ► **Select each item to set** ► **Press **

- For setting call images, follow Step 3 of "Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook". ◀P81
For setting ring alert, vibrator, lighting and lighting pattern for incoming calls/mails, follow Step 2 of "Setting the incoming actions for each phonebook entry". ◀P83
- When video/i-motion with image is set for the ring alert on the setting screen for calls, the call image is set to *Sync ring alert*. Note that when changing call images while the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) is set to ring alert, *Select image* or *Shoot still image* can be selected.

INFORMATION

The priority of incoming/outgoing actions

- Ring alert ◀P103
- Incoming image ◀P114
- Vibrator ◀P106
- Lighting ◀P122
- Outgoing image ◀P113

Deleting the group of FOMA terminal phonebook

If you delete a group, all the phonebook entries registered in the group are also deleted.

- The phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set are also deleted.
- When you select *グループなし*, only the phonebook entries are deleted, but not the group.

1  **4**   ► **Highlight a group** ►  **3** ► **Enter the terminal security code** ► **Select *Yes***

Menu 41

Making calls from the phonebook

Phonebook Search

- The phonebook data can be called by specifying the following search methods.
 - Show All Names
 - Ph Book No. Search*1
 - Group Search
 - Number Search
 - Name Search
 - Secrecy Search*1
 - Ranking Search*1

*1 Cannot be used in the UIM phonebook.

- Column Search can also be performed. ◀P89
- You can specify the searching method displayed by pressing  on the standby display. ◀P89
- Also you can change the searching method by pressing  and selecting *Search criteria* from the phonebook list.
- In the searching method also available in the UIM phonebook, each press of  switches the FOMA terminal phonebook list and the UIM phonebook list.
- The UIM phonebook list indicates  in front of each entry name.

1



By default, the phonebook list is displayed by showing all names (Japanese syllabary order). When the searching method has been specified, the phonebook list is displayed by the specified method.

Icon set for the first phone number

Number of phone numbers and mail addresses registered in the highlighted entry

The first phone number registered in the highlighted entry (the part that cannot be displayed will be omitted.)

2 Highlight a party ▶ Press

- To make a videophone call: Highlight a party ▶ 
- When you operate on the details screen, highlight a phone number and press any of , , and .

Composing i-mode Mail: Highlight a party ▶

- Composing and sending i-mode Mail ▶P189
- In the details screen, highlight a mail address and press  or .
- You can also operate in the same way on the user information screen. The mail address registered first is set as the address.
- Operation is available in case the mail address is registered.

Composing SMS: Highlight a party ▶ (for over a second)

- Composing and sending SMS ▶P224
- In the details screen, highlight a phone number and press .
- You can also operate in the same way on the user information screen. The phone number registered first is set as the address.
- Operation is available in case the phone number is registered.
- You can also operate in the same way by pressing  in case the mail address is not registered.

Displaying sites: Highlight a party ▶ 1 5 ▶ Select Yes

- Pressing  instead of selecting Yes displays the sites in Full Browser.

Sending mail with the phonebook data attached: Highlight a party ▶ 1 3

- You can also perform the same operation from the details screen.
- Composing and sending i-mode Mail ▶P189

Displaying the list of sent/received mails to/from the party:

① Highlight a party

② 1 6 ▶ 1 or 2

- For reading received/sent mail ▶P205
- To return to the phonebook list:  or  0
- To search from the UIM phonebook:  1 5 ▶ 1 or 2

The phonebook data is displayed in the order of Japanese syllabary as shown below:

Line あ (a) line か (ka) line さ (sa) ... 他 (others) including alphabets, numbers, readings which start with blank, symbols, and no reading in this order.

1 [Menu] [4] [1] [1]

2  to select the line

- Pressing [0] to [9], [*] or [#] instead of  displays the line to which the dial key is assigned. For example, pressing [1] displays line あ. To display other than Japanese syllabary, press [*] or [#].

Searching by group

- Phonebook entries registered without specifying group are saved under グループなし.

1 [Menu] [4] [1] [2]

2 Select a group



- The entries in the same group are displayed in the following order:
 1. Japanese syllabary order
 2. Alphabetical order
 3. Numbers
 4. Entries starting with blank
 5. Symbols
 6. No reading

Searching by name

Enter a name to search for the entries that start with the first character of the entered name.

1 [Menu] [4] [1] [3]

2 Enter a name ▶ Press 



- You can search for the entry by entering the first part of the name. Also, even if you enter nothing, entries are searched.

The phonebook data saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook can be sorted by the number of calls that took place (Call frequency rank) or by the number of i-mode Mail sent or received (Mail frequency rank).

- The total number of calls and mails are displayed up to 9,999.
- Counting is also available in case a phone number or mail address registered in the phonebook is entered directly.

Example Displaying call frequency rank

1 Press **Menu** **4** **1** **4** **1**



- The total number of calls is the number of calls up to the present after the purchase or the last reset. Counting is started with the call made or received after the phonebook data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

Displaying mail frequency rank: **Menu** **4** **1** **4** **2**

- The total number of mails is the number of mails sent or received up to the present after the purchase or the last reset. Counting is started with the i-mode Mail sent or received after the phonebook data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

INFORMATION

When the total number of calls/mails is the same for multiple entries, the entries are displayed in the following order:

1. Japanese syllabary order
2. Alphabetical order
3. Numbers
4. Entries starting with blank
5. Symbols
6. No reading

Resetting the number of calls/mails

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ **Menu** **9** **3** ▶ Select *Yes*

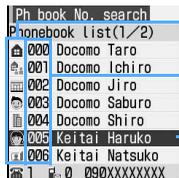
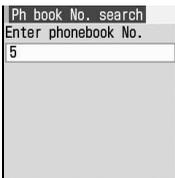
- The total number of calls, date and time of the last call, total number of mails, and date and time of the last mail for each phonebook entry are reset.

Searching by phonebook No.

Enter a phonebook No. to search for the entry with the specified phonebook No. You can search the entries even if you enter nothing.

1 **Menu** **4** **1** **5**

2 Enter a phonebook No. ▶ Press **□**

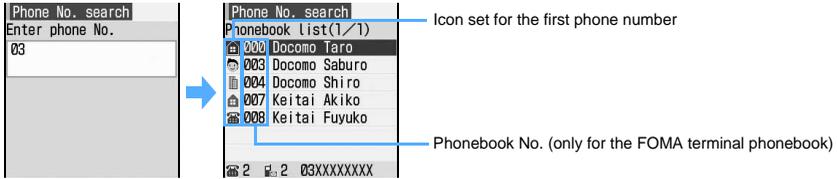


- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook No. can be omitted.

Enter only a part of phone number to search for the phone numbers that contain it. You can search the entries even if you enter nothing.

1 **Menu** **4** **1** **6**

2 Enter a part of phone number ▶ Press **☐**



INFORMATION

When multiple phonebook entries match the conditions of Number Search, the entries in the FOMA terminal phonebook are displayed in the order of the phonebook No. The entries in the UIM phonebook are displayed in the following order:

- 1. Japanese syllabary order
- 2. Alphabetical order
- 3. Numbers
- 4. Entries starting with blank
- 5. Symbols
- 6. No reading

Searching by Column Search quickly

Search for the phonebook data by the characters assigned to the dial key **1** to **9** and **☐** (あ to ら and わ).

- The previously used phonebook (the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook) is searched.

Example Searching for “ドコモ太郎 (Docomo Taro)”

1 Press **4** **☐**

The phonebook list with readings starting with a kana character in the line ㇿ is displayed.

- In the search result screen, pressing **☐** to **9**, **#**, **✖** or **↔** switches lines.

Specifying the searching method

The searching method displayed by pressing **☐** on the standby display can be specified.

- The searching method for the UIM phonebook cannot be specified.

Default Show all names

1 **Menu** **4** **1**

- ✓ is attached on the specified item of searching method.

2 Highlight the searching method ▶ Press **Menu**

- Secrecy Search cannot be specified.

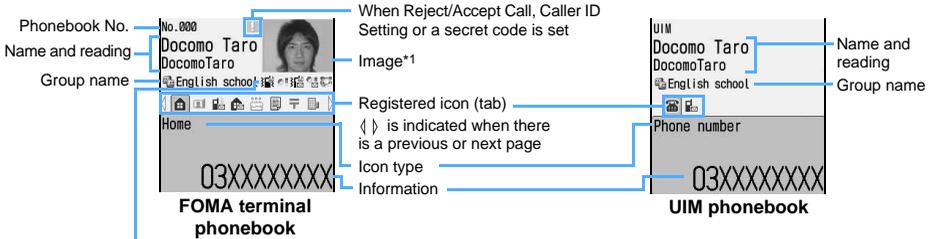
INFORMATION

If the UIM phonebook was searched previously, the UIM phonebook is displayed by the specified searching method. However, when specifying the method unavailable for the UIM phonebook, the phonebook list of the UIM phonebook (Japanese syllabary order) appears.

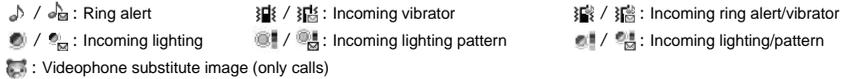
Checking phonebook details

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Select a party

The details screen appears.



Current settings for ring alert, etc. (call/mail)*2



*1 The registered image is displayed according to the setting of View Preference.

*2 When the setting such as ring alert is made in Alert by Contact, a colored icon is displayed.

2 Display the registered details by

- At each press of , the display of registered details switches.
- To display the details screen for the previous/next phonebook entry:

Checking the number of calls/mails: Highlight the phone number or mail address by ▶

The accumulated data screen appears.

- When you reset the accumulated data, press on the accumulated data screen and select **Yes**.

Checking the user information:

The user information screen appears.

- The image/phonebook No.(only for the FOMA terminal phonebook), name, reading, group name, first phone number (icon type, phone number), first mail address (icon type, mail address) registered in the phonebook are displayed.

INFORMATION

On the details screen, the following operations can be performed as with the phonebook list. However, select each registered data first to compose mail, etc.

- Display the sites P86
- Switch between image and name displays
- Change the order of the phone numbers, mail addresses, and phonebook Nos. P92
- Copy phonebook entries P93
- Set Connection Speed P94
- Set Secret Attribute P95
- Set Reject/Accept Call P138
- Search mail P86
- Copy registered information P92
- Set whether to show/hide caller ID P94
- Set a secret code P95
- Check the number of registered items P96

Setting whether to display an image on the details screen View Preference

Set whether to display an image on the phonebook details screen. The settings are also reflected to all phonebook data.

Default

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Select a party ▶

2 Press any of to

Show with image : Displays the images.

Show only name : Displays the names. Images are not displayed.

Show saved image : Images are displayed only when the images are registered. If image is not registered, the name is displayed.

INFORMATION

The setting of this function is also reflected to the same settings for Own Number (P307), Redial, Received Calls (P50), and Sent/Received Msg. Log (P214).

When the name is too long, all the names may not be displayed.

Editing phonebook entries

Edit Phonebook

Editing saved phonebook entries

Example Editing the data of FOMA terminal phonebook

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶

- For the UIM phonebook: Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶  

2 Edit the phonebook data ▶ Press

- For details:
Follow Step 3 of "Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook". P81
Follow Step 3 of "Registering entries into the UIM phonebook". P84

3 Select *Overwrite* or *New entry*

- When you register a new phonebook entry into the FOMA terminal phonebook without changing the phonebook No., the phonebook No. entry screen appears. Change the number if needed, and operate from Step 2 again.
- For *Overwrite*, the previous phonebook data are discarded. For *New entry*, previous phonebook data are left, and phonebook data are registered newly.

INFORMATION

The data may not be overwritten when registering if "✕" is included in the phonebook data in the UIM phonebook. In that case, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to make a new entry. Select *Yes* to register as a new entry. When multiple phone numbers and mail addresses are registered, if the phone number or mail address other than the last one is deleted, the followings are moved up and registered.

Copying registered information

Copied items can be pasted into the entry field on the screens such as the mail composition and phonebook registration screens.

- Data of copied item remains recorded until the power is turned off. They can be pasted any number of times while the power is on.
- Only one item can be recorded. Copying a new item overwrites the retained item.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶

2 to



FOMA terminal
phonebook

The data of selected item is recorded temporarily.

- For the UIM phonebook:  to 

3 Display the character entry screen to be pasted ▶ Paste the characters

INFORMATION

Selecting *Phone number* or *Mail address* copies the item registered first. To copy the second or subsequent phone number or mail address, highlight the phone number or mail address to copy on the details screen.

Changing the order of phone numbers, mail addresses and phonebook Nos.

When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook data, the order of the phone numbers and mail addresses can be changed. In addition, the phonebook Nos. for 2 phonebook entries can be switched.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Change the order

Changing the order of phone numbers:



- ① Highlight a party ▶    

- ② Select a phone number to register as the first phone number

The positions of the selected phone number and the first phone number are changed.

Changing the order of mail addresses:

- ① Highlight a party ▶    

- ② Select a mail address to register as the first mail address.

The positions of the selected mail address and the first mail address are changed.

Changing the phonebook Nos:

- ① Highlight a party ▶    

- ② Select the entry to replace the phonebook No. with

Copying phonebook entries

Copy phonebook entries from the FOMA terminal phonebook to the UIM phonebook or from the UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal phonebook.

- If the group in the phonebook data to copy has the same name as the group in the target phonebook, the data is copied to that group.

Items copied from the FOMA terminal phonebook to UIM phonebook

Name	Up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters, however, up to 10 characters can be copied when both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used.
Reading	Up to 25 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters, however in case of one- and two-byte are mixed or containing one-byte katakana, up to 12 characters. One-byte katakana are changed to two-byte katakana.
Phone number	Copies the first registered phone number up to 26 digits (up to 20 digits depending on the UIM types) → P34. If a timed pause (T) is registered, only the timed pause (T) is deleted. For all icons, ☎ is set.
Mail address	Copies the first registered mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters). 📧 is set for all icons.

- Note that if the number of characters exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be saved in the UIM phonebook, the exceeding part is deleted.

Items copied from the UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal phonebook

Name	The registered contents are copied as it is.
Reading	Two-byte katakana are changed to one-byte katakana.
Phone number	For the icon, ☎ is set.
Mail address	For the icon, 📧 is set.

Example Copying from the FOMA terminal phonebook to the UIM phonebook

- 1 **Search the phonebook** ▶
- 2 **Select a party** ▶ Press



INFORMATION

On the UIM phonebook list, press and select *Copy to phone*.

Deleting phonebook entries

Delete Phonebook

- When you delete all, the created groups are all deleted.
- When you delete all, all the phonebook data with Secret Attribute set will be deleted, even if you are not in Secret Mode.
- UIM phonebook cannot be all deleted.

- 1 **Search the phonebook** ▶ **Highlight a party** ▶

Deleting all: Search the phonebook ▶ ▶ Enter the terminal security code

Deleting an entry of the UIM phonebook: Search the phonebook ▶ **Highlight a party** ▶

2 Select *Yes*

Saving (restoring/updating) of the phonebook data to the Data Center

Data Security Service

You can save the FOMA terminal phonebook data to the Data Center using Data Security Service.

- For details on saving the phonebook data ➤P97

1 Search the phonebook ▶ **Menu** **7** **2** ▶ Select *Yes* ▶ Enter the terminal security code

FOMA terminal is connected to the Data Center and starts updating the data. When updating is completed, the result appears.

- The result disappears in about 5 seconds and returns to the standby display. Press **End** to return to the standby display immediately.

Setting functions for phonebook entries

You can set the showing/hiding of caller ID or the videophone communication speed for each phone number in the phonebook data saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook. In addition, a secret code can be set for each mail address.

- Functions described here cannot be set in the UIM phonebook.

Setting whether to show/hide caller ID for each phone number

Caller ID Setting

Default No setting

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ **Menu** **3** **4** **2**

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select a phone number

3 Press **1** or **2**

- To cancel the setting: **3**

INFORMATION

When *No setting* is set, the terminal operates according to the setting for Caller ID Notification.

For the entry set to show the caller ID, **I** is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. on the details screen.

The priority of the way of notifying caller ID ➤P42

Setting the communication speed when making videophone calls for each phone number

Connection Speed

Default 64K

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ **Menu** **3** **4** **5**

2 Select a phone number ▶ Press **1** or **2**

INFORMATION

When you specify the communication speed for each videophone call you make, that setting takes precedence over this setting. P54

Setting a secret code for the mail address

Secret Code Setting

When the other party has registered a secret code for its mail address (mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp), if you set the secret code in the phonebook data, the secret code is automatically added to i-mode Mail composed by searching the phonebook.

- 1 Search the phonebook ► Highlight a party ►    
- 2 Enter the terminal security code ► Select a mail address
- 3 Enter the 4-digit secret code
 - To cancel Secret Code Setting:  for over a second to clear ► 

INFORMATION

If a mail address is saved in the phonebook as "mobile phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp", you cannot reply to mail from that party.

For the entry with a secret code set,  is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. on the phonebook data details screen.

The set secret code is not displayed on the phonebook data details screen or the address set when composing i-mode Mail. You can check a secret code by following Steps 1 to 2 mentioned above.

Protecting the secret phonebook entries

Secret Attribute

The phonebook entry is set as the data having a secret attribute that is called only when you enter the terminal security code.

Setting Secret Attribute for the phonebook entry

- You cannot set Secret Attribute for the entries in the UIM phonebook.
- To set Secret Attribute, perform the setting operation in Secret Mode.

- 1 Set Secret Mode
- 2 Search the phonebook on the standby display ► Highlight a party ► Press    



-  flashes when Secret Attribute is set.

Canceling: Highlight the phonebook entry for which Secret Attribute is set ►    

INFORMATION

The phonebook data with Secret Attribute set cannot be edited unless Secret Mode is set.

When Secret Mode is not set, the registered names and images or video/i-motion of the phonebook data with Secret Attribute set are not displayed in the incoming screen, redial data, received call history, recorded messages, talking voice memos, mail reception result screen, received mail list and other screens. In addition, the ring alert or vibrator set for the phonebook data is not operated.

If the phonebook entry is registered and edited while Secret Mode is on, Secret Attribute is set for the phonebook entry.

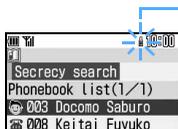
Searching the phonebook data with Secret Attribute set

Secrecy Search

- You can search only the phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set.
- You cannot search the phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set unless Secret Mode is set. In addition, Quick Dial or Quick Mail is also disabled.

1 Set Secret Mode

2 Press **[Menu]** **[4]** **[1]** **[7]** on the standby display



- The subsequent steps are the same as for the normal searching method.

☛P85

Flashes to show that Secret Attribute is set for the entry.

INFORMATION

When the search other than Secrecy Search is performed in Secret Mode, the phonebook data with and without Secret Attribute set are both searched.

Checking the number of registered phonebook entries

Check No. of Items

You can display the number of registered phonebook entries or phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set in the phonebook.

- The number of data for which Secret Attribute is set can be displayed only when Secret Mode is on.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Press **[Menu]** **[9]** **[2]**

INFORMATION

The number of registered items includes the one for which Secret Attribute is set.

Using simple dialing to make calls

Quick Dial

Phone calls can be made by simple operation to the parties with the phonebook No. 0 to 99 in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- The first phone number in the phonebook data is the number to be dialed.

Example Calling the phone number with phonebook No.2

1 Enter the phonebook No. (in this case **2**) ▶ Press 

- Enter the phonebook No. without prefixing it with 0, etc. If you enter an initial zero, etc., the call is not made.
- To make a videophone call: Enter the phonebook No. ▶ 

Using Data Security Service

Data Security Service

Use Data Security Service to save the FOMA terminal phonebook data to the Data Center. In case your terminal is lost, water leak, etc., phonebook data can be restored to the new FOMA terminal by the saved data. Also, the data saved in the Data Center can be edited by PC and other devices, and reflected to the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- Data Security Service is a pay service and requires a subscription. For more information, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
- The UIM phonebook cannot be saved.

Saving/updating/restoring the phonebook data

1  **6** **5** **1** ▶ Select **Yes** ▶ Enter the terminal security code

FOMA terminal is connected to the Data Center and starts updating the data. When updating is completed, the result appears.

- The result disappears in about 5 seconds and returns to the menu screen. Press  to return to the menu screen immediately.

INFORMATION

The operation for incoming calls while connecting to the Data Center is as follows:

- Even in the case of the incoming call from the other party which is registered in the phonebook, a name or image of the other party is not displayed, and only a phone number is displayed. In addition, ring alert or vibrator set in the phonebook data do not operate and follows the setting of FOMA terminal.
- Reject Call, Reject Unregistered Caller, and Mute Ring Time Setting do not operate.
- Chaku-moji cannot be received.

By setting of Data Security Service, you are able to update the FOMA terminal phonebook from the Data Center. However, when you are executing other functions, automatic update does not operate.

Restoring the data may not restore the order of the phonebook groups you registered previously.

If you have not yet subscribed to Data Security Service, a screen appears to inform you of that effect.

Checking the communication log

You can check the log of communicating with the Data Center.

- Up to 30 accesses are recorded. When the number exceeds 30, the oldest one is deleted chronologically.

1 ▶ Select the log

Specifying whether to send images saved in the phonebook

Specify whether to send images saved in the phonebook to the Data Center.

OFF

1 ▶ Select *Contact image sending field* ▶ or ▶ Press

Sounds/Displays/Lights Settings

Switching between ON mode and OFF mode [Mode Select](#) 100

Sound Setting

Changing the FOMA terminal sound [Sound Setting](#) 101

Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms [Vibrator Setting](#) 105

Setting the alert sound for charging [Charge Alert](#) 106

Setting the alarm announcing that the call is about to be cut off
..... [Quality Alarm](#) 106

Making FOMA terminal silent [Silent Mode](#) 107

Customizing Silent Mode [Customize Silent Mode](#) 107

Displays/Lights Settings

Changing the standby display [Standby Display Setting](#) 108

Changing images to be displayed for incoming/outgoing calls
..... [Call Image](#) 113

Changing images for incoming/outgoing mails or for message retrieval
..... [Mail Image](#) 115

Displaying the other party's phone number and name when receiving a call
..... [Receive Display](#) 115

Setting the light for the display and keys [Display Light Setting](#) 116

Changing the display color [Color Scheme](#) 117

Setting the menu display format or menu design [Menu Setting](#) 117

Changing the battery level icon [Battery Icon](#) 119

Changing the icon for received signal level [Signal Level Icon](#) 119

Coordinating according to the color of FOMA terminal [Style Theme](#) 120

Setting Machi-chara [Machi-chara Setting](#) 120

Setting the lighting pattern for incoming calls/mails, etc.
..... [Light Alert Setting](#) 121

Flashing the keys when receiving new information [Indicator Light](#) 122

Changing the font size [Font Size Setting](#) 122

Setting the clock display [Clock Display Format](#) 123

In each mode of ON mode and OFF mode, the standby display and ring alert can be set. The settings can be changed collectively by switching ON mode and OFF mode.

[Default](#) [ON mode](#)

Switching between ON mode and OFF mode

1 Hold down for over a second

- Each press switches between ON mode and OFF mode.

Functions that can be set and default settings

The functions which can set separately by ON mode and OFF mode are as follows. The settings changed in each mode are retained hereinafter.

Function/menu		Default		Page
		ON mode	OFF mode	
Mail Alert		Ring alert: <i>Melody/メー ル・メロ ディ A (Mail, melody A)</i> Light alert: <i>ON/Rotation</i> Vibrate alert: <i>OFF</i> Ring time (sec): <i>10</i>	Ring alert: <i>Melody/メー ル・メロ ディ A (Mail, melody A)</i> Light alert: <i>ON/Rotation</i> Vibrate alert: <i>OFF</i> Ring time (sec): <i>10</i>	P220
Sound Setting	Call ring alert (for phone)	<i>Melody/Vivaldism</i>	<i>Melody/Vivaldism</i>	P101
	Mail ring alert	<i>Melody/メー ル・メロ ディ A (Mail, melody A)</i>	<i>Melody/メー ル・メロ ディ A (Mail, melody A)</i>	
Adjust Volume	Call alert volume	<i>Level 4</i>	<i>Level 4</i>	P62
	Mail/Msg alert vol.	<i>Level 4</i>	<i>Level 4</i>	
	Listen volume	<i>Level 4</i>	<i>Level 4</i>	
Vibrator Setting	Call vibrate alert	<i>OFF</i>	<i>OFF</i>	P105
	Mail vibrate alert	<i>OFF</i>	<i>OFF</i>	
Standby Display Setting*1	Set image	use Style Theme setting	use Style Theme setting	P108 P110
	Set random image	—	—	
	Set i-motion	—	—	
	Set Chara-den image	—	—	
Clock Display Format		use Style Theme setting for <i>Style Time format: 24 hour</i> use Style Theme setting for <i>Clock layout</i> Day: <i>English</i>	use Style Theme setting for <i>Style Time format: 24 hour</i> use Style Theme setting for <i>Clock layout</i> Day: <i>English</i>	P123
Battery Icon		use Style Theme setting	use Style Theme setting	P119
Signal Level Icon		use Style Theme setting	use Style Theme setting	P119
Info/Calendar Layout*2		<i>Hide layout</i>	<i>Hide layout</i>	P111
Menu Setting		Normal: <i>Animation</i> Custom: <i>Tile display</i> Describe function: <i>ON</i> Type of animation: use Style Theme setting Icon display effect: <i>OFF</i> Default MENU: <i>Normal</i> Active shortcut: <i>Custom</i>	Normal: <i>Animation</i> Custom: <i>Tile display</i> Describe function: <i>ON</i> Type of animation: use Style Theme setting Icon display effect: <i>OFF</i> Default MENU: <i>Normal</i> Active shortcut: <i>Custom</i>	P117

Function/menu	Default		Page
	ON mode	OFF mode	
<i>Customize shortcut</i>	<i>ON mode</i>	<i>OFF mode</i>	P304
Color Scheme	use Style Theme setting	use Style Theme setting	P117
Call Image	<i>Incoming call</i>	<i>Standard image</i>	P114
Mail Image	<i>Image message alert</i>	<i>Default</i>	P115
Light Alert Setting	<i>Light alert</i> *3	<i>Incoming call: ON/Blinking</i> <i>Incoming Mail: ON/Rotation</i>	P121
Font Size Setting	<i>Standard (all)</i>	<i>Standard (all)</i>	P122
Style Theme	Carbon Black*4	<i>Black&White</i>	P120
	Frozen White*4	<i>BarCode</i>	
	Bright Red*4	<i>WhiteArrow</i>	
Call Alert	<i>Ring alert: Melody/Vivaldism</i> <i>Show image: Standard image</i> <i>Vibrate alert: OFF</i> <i>Light alert: ON/Blinking</i>	<i>Ring alert: Melody/Vivaldism</i> <i>Show image: Standard image</i> <i>Vibrate alert: OFF</i> <i>Light alert: ON/Blinking</i>	P63

*1 When the i-pppli standby display is set, the standby display is not switched even if ON mode and OFF mode are switched.

*2 Only setting/canceling can be set individually. The settings of pattern and area are common to ON mode and OFF mode.

*3 Only *Incoming call* and *Incoming Mail* can be set individually.

*4 The name of body color of FOMA terminal

Changing the FOMA terminal sound

Sound Setting

Set the sound to announce the reception of call, mail, Message R/F, etc. In addition, the alarm clock sound, schedule reminder and the various operation sound can be set.

• To set other sounds, see the following:

- Charge alert ●P106
- Response hold guidance ●P65
- On-hold tone ●P65
- Quality alarm ●P106
- Reconnect alarm ●P58
- Low battery alert ●P39

Setting ring alerts for calls, mails, messages, etc.

Call Ring Alert/Mail/Msg Ring Alert

• If video/i-motion is set as a ring alert, an image and/or sound is played for incoming calls or mails (Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion)).

Default Call ring alert: Melody/Vivaldism V.phone ring alert: Melody/電話・メロディ A(Phone, melody A)
Mail ring alert: Melody/メール・メロディ A(Mail, melody A)
Chat M ring alert: Melody/メール・メロディ B(Mail, melody B)
Msg.R ring alert, Msg.F ring alert: Melody/メール・メロディ C(Mail, melody C)

Example Setting a ring alert for calls

1 [Menu] [8] [1] [1] [1] ▶ [1] or [2]

Setting a ring alert for Anonymous Caller: [Menu] [8] [1] [1] [1] ▶ [3] ▶ Enter the terminal security code

• Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Setting the operations for incoming calls with no caller ID". ●P139

Setting a ring alert for mails/messages: [Menu] [8] [1] [1] [2] ▶ [1] to [4]

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press



- When *Melody*, *Movie ringtone* or *Music* is selected, set the ring alert. Setting music data P102
- If the chat mail ring alert is set to *Sync msg alert*, the setting for the mail ring alert is used.

Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion file

Highlight a melody in the melody list and press  to play it (Viewing the list P267). The following operations can be performed during playing:

- Adjust the volume*1:  • Play the previous/next melody: 
- Select a melody:  • Return to the melody list: 

Highlight a video/i-motion file in the video/i-motion list and press  to play it (Viewing the list P258).

Press  to check the detail information. The following operations can be performed during playing:

- Adjust the volume*1:  • Pause/play:  • Stop (return to the video/i-motion list): / 
- Wind forward and play:  • Rewind and play: 

*1 The sound volume for playing depends on Settings of melody or i-motion. Adjusting the volume is also reflected to Settings of melody or i-motion (P268, P263). It is not linked to the ring alert volume.

Setting music data

There are two procedures for setting music data as ring alerts: full song ring tone and point ring tone. Full song ring tone sets the whole music data. Point ring tone sets the predetermined part of music data.

Music data with replay restriction set and music data downloaded partially cannot be set.

The full song ring tone and point ring tone may not be set depending on music data, and only one of them may be set. You can check whether the full song ring tone or point ring tone can be set or not by referring to the detail information. P289

① Select *Music* ▶ Select a folder

- When the folder list is not displayed even if *Music* is selected, select the melody field.

② Set music data

- To check the detail information: Highlight music data ▶ 

Setting the full song ring tone: Select music data

Setting the point ring tone: Highlight music data ▶  ▶ Select a playback portion

Playing and checking:

- To play the whole music data: Highlight music data in the music data list ▶ 
- To play the playback portion of the point ring tone: Highlight a playback portion in the list ▶ 
- Viewing the music data list P288
- During playback, the following operations can be performed:
 - Adjust the volume*1:  • Pause/play: 
 - Stop (return to the music data list):  • Wind forward:  (for over a second)
 - Rewind:  (for over a second)

*1 The sound volume for playing depends on Settings for Music Player. Adjusting the volume is also reflected to Settings of Music Player. It is not linked to the ring alert volume.

Types of video/i-motion set as *Movie ringtone* and the incoming image

Video/i-motion set	Displayed incoming image
Only sound *1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the ring alert is changed from the video/i-motion with image to the video/i-motion with only sound, melody or music data, the standard image is displayed. When the video/i-motion with only image or Flash movie is set for the incoming image, if the video/i-motion with only sound or music data is set for the ring alert, the standard image is displayed. <p>However, the incoming image for a voice/videophone call can be changed to another image (except for Flash movie) from the standard image in Call Alert or Videophone Alert.*2</p>
Sound and image	The image of the set video/i-motion is displayed as the incoming image.

*1 i-motion without image such as singer's vocals

*2 Even if the animation (except for the standard image) is set, the image does not move and the first frame is displayed on the incoming screen.

Priority of ring alerts

Ring alerts set in multiple functions sound by priority given below:

- ① Incoming setting of Multi Number
- ② Alert by Contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ④ Sound Setting

When the other party did not notify the caller ID, the ring alert for voice calls sounds as set in Anonymous Caller. The ring alert for videophone calls sounds as set in Sound Setting. However, the incoming setting in Anonymous Caller is set to *Call Rejection*, all the incoming calls with no caller ID are rejected.

If the sound or image set in Anonymous Caller is deleted, the settings are changed. In this case, the generated sound or displayed image may be different from the settings.

Even when the image or video/i-motion is set in the phonebook, if the video/i-motion with sound and image is set for *Movie ringtone* for the ring alert, the setting for *Movie ringtone* is given priority for the ring alert and incoming image. If the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as singer's vocals) is set for *Movie ringtone*, or the music data is set for *Music*, *Movie ringtone* or *Music* is used for the ring alert and the image set in the phonebook, Alert/Image by Group, Call Alert or Videophone Alert is used for the incoming image.

INFORMATION

The following video/i-motion or music data cannot be set for the ring alert:

- The video/i-motion with only image
- The video/i-motion for which *Ring alert* of detail information (☛P270) is set to *Unavailable*
- Music data for which *Full song ring tone* and *Point ring tone* of detail information (☛P289) are set to *Unavailable*.

When music data is set for the ring alert and animation (except for the standard image) is set for the incoming image, the animation does not move and the first frame is displayed on the incoming screen.

The settings of this function are also reflected to the following settings:

- Call Alert, Videophone Alert ☛P63
- Chat Mail Alert ☛P223
- Mail Alert ☛P220
- Message Alert ☛P175

Setting the alarm clock sound or schedule reminder

Alarm Clock Sound/Schedule Reminder

Set the sound to be generated when *Alarm clock sound* or *Schedule reminder* is set to *Terminal setting* in Alarm Clock or Scheduler.

- Default**
- Alarm clock sound: Melody/ アラーム ・ メロディ (Alarm, melody)
 - Alarm on time: Melody/アラーム ・ 女性ボイス (Alarm, female voice)
 - Alarm in advance: Melody/パターン4 (Pattern 4)

Example Setting the alarm clock sound

1

Menu 8 1 1 3 1

Setting the schedule reminder: Menu 8 1 1 3 2

2

Select each item to set ▶ Press 

- If the video/i-motion with sound and image is set, the video/i-motion image will be displayed while an alarm is sounding.
- Setting music data ▶P102

Setting the sound generated when pressing keys

Keypad Sound

- When the keypad sound is changed, the confirmation sound for displaying the battery level is also changed.
- The keypad sound is not generated when pressing  or the keylock switch.

Default

Keypad sound1

1

Menu 8 1 1 4 1

2

Press any of  to 

- To set not to sound: 

INFORMATION

When **OFF** is set, the following sounds are not generated.

- The confirmation sound when the battery level is indicated
- The alert tone indicating the end of infrared communication or data transmission

In the following cases, the sound is not generated even if set to other than **OFF**.

- In Silent Mode (Note that the sound is generated in the personalized silent mode when the keypad sound of Customize Silent Mode is set to other than **OFF**.)
- During Key Lock (In case  is pressed when nothing is displayed on the screen, the sound is heard.)
- While i- ppli is running (The sound is heard in case switching the screen or displaying another screen during Multitask.)
- During video recording
- During recording with Sound Recorder

Setting the shutter sound

Shutter Sound

- When **Movie camera sound** is changed, the shutter sound of Sound Recorder is also changed.

Default

Shutter sound, Movie camera sound: Shutter sound1

Example

Setting the shutter sound

1

Menu 8 1 1 4 2

Setting the movie camera sound: Menu 8 1 1 4 3

2

Press any of  to 

INFORMATION

The settings of this function are also reflected to the settings of Still Image Setting and Recording Setting. ▶P150

List of melodies which can be set as the ring alert, etc.

The following melodies are provided in the *Preinstalled* folder of *Melody* by default.

- Melody names that are too long to be shown on the display are partially omitted.

Title (composer in [])	Title (composer in [])	Title (composer in [])
パターン1-5 (Pattern 1 to 5)	メール・英語ボイス (Mail, English voice)	森のくまさん (The Bear) [American folk song]
電話・メロディA (Phone, melody A)	アラーム・メロディ (Alarm, melody)	凱旋行進曲 (Triumphal March) [VERDI GIUSEPPE]
電話・メロディB (Phone, melody B)	アラーム・アナログ時計 (Alarm, analog clock)	ツァラトゥストラはかく語りき (Also Sprach Zarathustra) [STRAUSS RICHARD]
電話・メロディC (Phone, melody C)	アラーム・女性ボイス (Alarm, female voice)	ジムノペディ第1番 (1 ere Gymnopedie) [SATIE ERIK ALFREDI LE]
電話・黒電話 (Phone, phone retro)	保留音・ボイス (On-hold tone, voice)	SKY
電話・女性ボイス (Phone, female voice)	Vivaldism	Love
メール・メロディA (Mail, melody A)	交響曲第25番ト短調K.183より 第1楽章 (The first from Symphony No.25 in G minor) [MOZART WOLFGANG AMADEUS]	
メール・メロディB (Mail, melody B)	火星 (The Planets, Mars) [HOLST GUSTAV]	
メール・メロディC (Mail, melody C)	おもちゃの兵隊のマーチ (Parade of the wooden soldiers) [JESSEL LEON]	

- The composers are described in accordance with the JASRAC website.

Other sound settings

- Setting the mail ring alert, lighting or ring time, etc. ◀P220
- Setting to sound the ring alert only from the earphone when connecting the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) ▶P315

Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms

Vibrator Setting

- When the vibrator is set to *Terminal setting* in Alarm Clock, *Alarm clock* of Vibrator Setting will be valid.
- Note that if FOMA terminal is placed on a desk, etc. with Vibrator Setting on, the vibrations of the vibrator operation may cause it to fall off.

Default Call vibrate alert, V.phone vibrate alert, Mail vibrate alert, Chat M vibrate alert, Msg.R vibrate alert, Msg.F vibrate alert, Alarm clock, Schedule reminder: OFF i- ppli effect: ON

Example Setting the operation of vibrator for incoming calls

- Menu **8** **1** **3** **1** ▶ **1** or **2**

Setting the operation for incoming mails/messages: Menu **8** **1** **3** **2** ▶ **1** to **4**

 - If *Alert setting* is set to *Same: Mail setting* in Chat Mail Alert, *Chat M vibrate alert* cannot be set.

Setting the operation while an alarm is sounding: Menu **8** **1** **3** **3** ▶ **1** or **2**

Setting the operation while using i- ppli: Menu **8** **1** **3** **4**

2 Press any of **1** to **5**

- To set the operation while using i- ppli: **1** or **2**
- If you set to *Pattern A*, the terminal vibrates as follows: about 0.5 second vibration about 0.5 second pause about 0.5 second vibration about 1.5 second pause (repeated)
- If you set to *Pattern B*, the terminal vibrates as follows: about 1 second vibration about 2 second pause (repeated)

- If you set to **Pattern C**, the terminal vibrates as follows: about 0.25 second vibration about 0.25 second pause (repeated)
- If you set to **Sync melody**, the terminal vibrates along with the melody set as ring alert, etc. Note that it may not vibrate depending on melodies. In addition, vibration may not synchronize with the theme.
- When **Call vibrate alert** is set,  (when the call alert volume is set to **silent**, ) is indicated on the standby display.

Priority of vibrator

When the vibrator is set in multiple functions, the vibrator operates by priority given below:

- ① Alert by Contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ② Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Vibrator Setting

INFORMATION

The vibrator does not operate when another call is received during a call.

Even when **OFF** is set, the vibrator may be activated while some Flash movies are being played.

Even if **Sync melody** is highlighted on the selection screen for the pattern, the vibrator does not operate.

The settings of this function are also reflected to the following settings:

- Call Alert, Videophone Alert  P63
- Mail Alert  P220
- Chat Mail Alert  P223
- Message Alert  P175
- Vibrate Effect for i- ppli  P235

Setting the alert sound for charging

Charge Alert

Set whether to sound the alert sound for the start and completion of charging.

Default ON

1      ▶ Press  or 

INFORMATION

Even when **ON** is set, the charge alert sound is not played in the following cases:

- In Silent Mode
- In Public mode (Driving mode)
- During a voice call
- During a videophone call
- During 64K data communication
- During i-mode communication
- During packet communication

Setting the alarm announcing that the call is about to be cut off

Quality Alarm

When signal conditions for voice calls deteriorate, an alarm sounds just before the call is cut off on the way.

- If signal conditions deteriorate suddenly, the call may be cut off before the alarm sounds.

Default High alarm

1      

2 Press  or 

- To set not to sound: 

Disable the sounds from FOMA terminal in order to prevent disturbance to the people around you by enabling the vibrator for incoming calls or muting the keypad sound.

Default not set

1 Hold down **#** for over a second

The silent mode specified in Customize Silent Mode is set and  (in the general silent mode) or  (in the personalized silent mode) is indicated on the standby display.

Canceling: # (for over a second)

When the general silent mode is set

Incoming calls or mails are notified with vibrator by muting sounds heard from FOMA terminal such as ring alert, keypad sound and alarm. Microphone is sensitized so that a call can be made in a small voice.

In the following cases, the vibrator operates in *Pattern A*:

- When receiving calls or mails
- When the time specified in Timer has passed
- When the date and time set in Scheduler arrives

When the time set in Alarm Clock arrives, the vibrator operates as set in Alarm Clock.

Melodies are not played automatically even if the received mail or Message R/F is displayed with *Auto play* set for Attachment Auto-play.

When playing a melody or music data, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to play it. When *Yes* is selected, the melody or music data is played.

When playing the video/i-motion with sound, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to play the sound. When *Yes* is selected, the sound is played. When playing the video/i-motion with image, if *No* is selected, only the image is played.

INFORMATION

Even in Silent Mode, the shutter sound is generated (except when recording Chara-den).

In the general silent mode, even if Call Cost Limit is set to *ON* and the notification by alarm is set, only a message is displayed. In the personalized silent mode, the alarm sounds according to the call alert volume set in Customize Silent Mode.

The setting for Silent Mode can be changed (Customize Silent Mode). Which mode is set can be selected from the general silent mode and the personalized silent mode.

Default General

1    

2 

- Pressing  sets the general silent mode and the previous screen reappears.

3 Select each item to set ▶ Press

- Vibrate alert** : Sets whether to operate the vibrator for incoming calls or mails, etc.
- When **ON** is set, an incoming call or mail is informed by vibration according to Vibrator Setting (▶P105). Note that when **OFF** is set in Vibrator Setting, the vibrator operates in **Pattern A**.
- Keypad sound** : Sets the keypad sound.
- Call alert volume** : Sets the ring volume for incoming calls.
- Mail alert volume** : Sets the ring volume for incoming mails.
- Low Battery Alert** : Sets whether to sound an alarm when the battery becomes low.
- Alarm sound** : Sets whether to sound the alarm clock and timer alarm.
- When **ON** is set, the alarm clock sounds according to the setting of Alarm Clock and the timer alarm sounds by **アラーム・メロディ** (Alarm, melody) at the call alert volume set in **Call alert volume** of this function.
- Schedule sound** : Sets whether to sound a schedule alarm.
- When **ON** is set, it sounds according to the setting of the schedule and the volume of schedule reminder.
- i- ppli sound** : Sets whether to generate the i- ppli sound.
- When **ON** is set, it sounds according to the volume of i- ppli effect sound.
- Sensitize microphone** : Sets whether to sensitize the microphone.

Changing the standby display

Standby Display Setting

You can change the standby display to your favorite image.

- If you set video/i-motion, Chara-den or i- ppli for the standby display when **Show ticker** in i-Channel Ticker is set to **Yes**, displaying in ticker is canceled. After that, if you set other than the video/i-motion, Chara-den and i- ppli standby display, **Show ticker** in i-Channel Ticker is reset to **Yes**. ▶P183
- Setting the clock display ▶P123

Setting images, video/i-motion or Chara-den as the standby display

- Images, i-motion and Chara-den set by default ▶P347, P350

Default use Style Theme setting

1     

2  ,  or 



3 Select a folder ▶ Select an image, video/i-motion file or Chara-den image

- To check the image, highlight the image in the image list and press . The following operations can be performed on the image display screen:
 - Display the previous/next image: • Return to the image list: • Select an image:
- To check Chara-den, highlight the Chara-den in the Chara-den list and press . The following operations can be performed on the Chara-den display screen:
 - Switch between *Action* and *Action of Parts*:
 - Display the action list: • Switch between large size display and same size display:
 - Return to the Chara-den list: /
- Playing and checking a video/i-motion file when selecting ◀P102

Setting the action of Chara-den:

① Highlight a Chara-den image in the Chara-den list ▶

② Select *Stand-by field* ▶ to

- Set the action for missed call or unread mail in the same way.
- When *Action* or *Action of Parts* is selected, select an action from the action list.
- When *Input* is selected, enter the number corresponding to the action.
- When *OFF* is set, the preset action is played and another action cannot be set.

③ Select *Interval (sec) field* ▶ to

- When *OFF* is set, the selected action of Chara-den is played only once.

④

4 Select *Yes*

- If the selected image, video/i-motion or Chara-den can be zoomed, displaying at the same size or large size can be selected on the confirmation screen. Select *Yes(Same size)* to maintain the image size or select *Yes(Large size)* to enlarge the image to the screen size.
- If the i- ppli standby display is set, a confirmation screen subsequently appears asking whether to cancel it.

Playing the video/i-motion, animation or Chara-den set as the standby display

The following operations are available for video/i-motion:

- Play: • Stop: / • Adjust the volume:

The following operations are available for animation, Created animation or Flash movie:

- Play: Return to the standby display/Turn the power on • Pause/replay:

The following operations are available for Chara-den:

- Play (when the interval for the action is set, the action is played repeatedly at the set interval):
- Stop: /

INFORMATION

While All Lock, PIM Lock (when the data which is subject to PIM Lock is set for the standby display) or Omakase Lock (Remote Lock) is on, the set standby image is canceled and the image set by default is displayed temporarily. The set standby image reappears when lock is canceled. However, if the data in the *Preinstalled* folder is set, the set data is displayed even when PIM Lock is on.

The setting may not be available depending on the image.

The video/i-motion with restriction of the number of replay or replay period set or the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as singer's vocals) cannot be set for the standby display. In addition, some video/i-motion may not be set for the standby display.

When the standby display appears, the set Flash movie or animation starts playing and stops after a certain period of time.

If an animation is set in large size display, the display may be distorted.

Even if Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions are set as links in tickers of the video/i-motion set as the standby display, these links cannot be available from the standby display.

When the action of Chara-den is set for multiple items, the action is played by priority given below:

① Action set for *Missed call* or *Unread message*

② Action set for *Stand-by*

- When both action for missed calls and action for unread mail are set and there are both missed calls and unread mail, the action set for each item is played repeatedly by turns.

Displaying images in a random order

Random Display Image

Images can be displayed in a random order on the standby display every fixed time.



2 Select each item to set

Folder : Selects a folder in which the images are saved from the folders in *My Picture*.

- The folder with no image which can be displayed cannot be selected.

Change image :

Sets the timing when the images are switched.

- When *Every 15 seconds* is set, images are switched every 15 seconds after returning to the standby display.
- When any of *Every minute*, *Every 15 minutes* or *Every hour* is set, the images are switched according to the clock time. (For example, when *Every minute* is set, the images are switched per minute at 0 second.)
- When *Every day* is set, the images are switched at 00:00 a.m. every day.

3 Select Yes

- If the i- ppli standby display is set, a confirmation screen subsequently appears asking whether to cancel it.

INFORMATION

The following images cannot be displayed:

- Created animation
- Animation
- Flash movie

In case the power is turned off, the image is not switched.

Even if the still image currently displayed on the standby display is moved to another folder or Created animation is composed using the image, that image is displayed until it switches to the next image. After that, it is not displayed.

When there is no still image that can be displayed as the result of deleting the selected folder, moving or deleting still images in the folder or composing Created animation, the default image is displayed on the standby display and Random Display Image is canceled (if the still image is moved or Created animation is composed, the image is displayed until it switches to the next image).

Setting the i- ppli standby display

- The i- ppli standby display can be set simultaneously with other standby display settings including the custom standby display. When they are set simultaneously, the i- ppli standby display is displayed by priority.



A list of i- ppli available for the i- ppli standby display appears.

2 Select i- ppli Select Yes

The i- ppli standby display is set and or is indicated on the standby display.

INFORMATION

While PIM Lock or Privacy Mode (with *Authorized access* set for *i- ppli*) is on, the *i- ppli* standby display does not appear but a standby image set previously is displayed. Note that while PIM Lock is on, the default standby display appears when the data which is subject to PIM Lock has been set. While All Lock or Omakase Lock is on, the default standby display appears.

Operating the *i- ppli* standby display ◀P239

Customizing the standby display

Info/Calendar Layout

Set the information area on the standby display (Custom standby display) and press  to switch displaying/not displaying it.

[Default](#) [Hide layout](#)

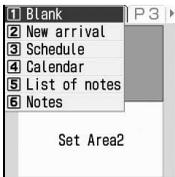
1     

2 

- Pressing  cancels the setting and the previous screen returns.

3  to switch patterns

4 Select an area ▶  to 



- If the pattern including multiple areas is selected, repeat Step 4.
- The calendar cannot be set in an area smaller than half of the screen (e.g. *Set Area1 of Pattern 3*).

Setting to display new information: Select an area ▶  ▶ Select information type ▶ 



Setting to display notes:

① Select an area ▶ 

② Select a note

- Highlight a note and press  to display the content of the note. Press  to return to the note list. Also, press  on the notepad view screen to set.

Resetting the displayed items in all the areas:  ▶ Select *Yes*

5  ▶ Select *Yes*

- If the *i- ppli* standby display is set, a confirmation screen subsequently appears asking whether to cancel it.

INFORMATION

If you change the setting for Style Theme, the custom standby display is not displayed, but the setting is saved. If you operate in order of Step 1, Step 2 and Step 5, the custom standby display set before is displayed.

Checking information on the custom standby display

1



The selected area is displayed with the cursor frame.

- In case the information on the custom standby display is not shown, display by pressing repeatedly on the standby display and press .

2 Press to move the cursor frame and select an area

INFORMATION

An image and a custom standby display can be set simultaneously, but if an animation, Created animation or Flash movie is set, press after the playback is stopped or paused to display the information of the custom standby display.

Displayed information

The custom standby display and various information appear as follows:

- The numbers of information and lines displayed differ depending on the area size.
- For the date and time of each information entry, the time is displayed for the current day and the date is displayed for the other days.

New arrival



The items set in *New arrival* are listed starting with the most recent item.

Unread messages :

The reception date and time and the first part of subject are displayed. Select the area when this item is displayed at the beginning to display the received mail folder list.

MessageR / MessageF :

The reception date and time and the first part of subject are displayed. Select the area when this item is displayed at the beginning to display the Message R/F list.

Missed calls : The date and time of incoming call and the phone number of the other party (or the name when registered in the phonebook) are displayed. Select the area when this item is displayed at the beginning to display the received call list.

Recorded messages :

The date and time of recording and the phone number of the other party (or the name when registered in the phonebook) are displayed. Select the area when this item is displayed at the beginning to display the recorded message list.

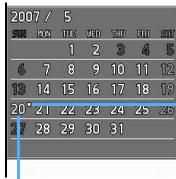
Schedule



The scheduled entries with the start time not passed are displayed in the order of the date and time. Select this area to display the details of the first schedule.

- The icon, the date and time and the beginning of the contents are displayed.
- In case of the date-straddled long-term schedule, is indicated instead of the registered icon. The start date or start time (when it is before the start time on the current day) is displayed behind the icon. The date-straddled long-term schedule is displayed until the end date and time has elapsed.
- If any schedule for all day is set on the current day, *AllDay* is displayed instead of the start date and time.

Calendar



The current day is displayed in yellow.

Dot

The current calendar is displayed. Select this area to display the calendar screen of Scheduler.

- The days-off and holidays are displayed in red, and Saturdays are displayed in blue. The days-off and holidays follow Day Off Setting or Holiday Setting for Scheduler. Note that when Privacy Mode is on (with *Authorized access* set for *Schedule*) or PIM Lock is on, the day set as day-off in Day Off Setting is not displayed in red and reset to the default display.
- When a schedule is set, a dot is displayed on the upper right of the date. Note that when all the schedules have Secret Attribute, the dot is displayed only when Secret Mode is on. In addition, it is not displayed when Privacy Mode (with *Authorized access* set for *Schedule*) or PIM Lock is on.

List of notes

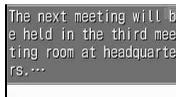


Status icon

The first part of the contents in order registered in Notepad is displayed. Select this area to display the list of notes.

- Only the note which is to be displayed in List by Status is displayed.
- Status icon 

Notes



The set note is displayed. Select the area to display the details of note.

Changing images to be displayed for incoming/outgoing calls

Call Image

Menu 8411 / Menu 851

Changing images to be displayed for outgoing calls

Outgoing Call/Videophone Dialing

Set images to be displayed for outgoing voice/videophone calls.

Default Default

Example Setting the image for outgoing voice calls

1 **Menu** **8** **2** **3** **2** **1**

Setting the image for outgoing videophone calls: **Menu** **8** **2** **3** **2** **3**

2 Select *Display image* field **▶** **1** or **2** **▶** Press **⏏**

- When selecting *Default*, the default image is set.
- When selecting *Select image*, set an image.

Priority of outgoing images

When the outgoing images are set in multiple functions, the images are displayed by priority given below.

- ① The setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook (available when Contact Image is set to *ON*)
- ② Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Call Image (Outgoing Call/Videophone Dialing)

INFORMATION

Setting Created animation displays the first frame.

Changing images to be displayed for incoming calls

Incoming Call/Videophone Receiving

Set images to be displayed for incoming voice/videophone calls.

- The settings of this function are also reflected to the settings for Call Alert and Videophone Alert. ●P63
- Setting the image for an incoming voice call with no caller ID ●P139

Default Standard image

Example Setting the image for incoming voice calls

1      

Setting the image for incoming videophone calls:      

2 Select **Show image** field ▶  to  ▶ Press 

- When selecting *Standard image*, the default image is set.
- When selecting *Select image* or *i-motion*, set an image.
- If the video/i-motion with sound and image is set for the ring alert, *Sync ring alert* is set.
- Playing and checking a video/i-motion file when selecting ●P102

Priority of incoming images

When the incoming images are set in multiple functions, the image is displayed by priority given below:

- ① Incoming setting of Multi Number
- ② The setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook*1 or Alert by Contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook*2
- ③ Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ④ Call Image (Incoming Call/Videophone Receiving) or Sound Setting*2

*1 Available when Contact Image is set to *ON*.

*2 Available when the video/i-motion with sound and image is set for ring alert.

When the other party did not notify the caller ID, the incoming image for voice calls conforms to the setting of Anonymous Caller. The incoming image for videophone calls conforms to the setting of Call Image (Videophone Receiving) or Sound Setting. However, the incoming setting in Anonymous Caller is set to **Call Rejection**, all the incoming calls with no caller ID are rejected.

If the sound or image set in Anonymous Caller is deleted, the settings are changed. In this case, the generated sound or displayed image may be different from the settings.

INFORMATION

In case Created animation is set, the first frame is displayed.

When the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion without image such as singer's vocals) is set for the ring alert, if *Show image* is reset to the video/i-motion with only image or Flash movie, the ring alert sounds by *Vivaldism* for voice call or by *電話・メロディ A* (Phone, melody A) for videophone call. The melody can be changed.

Some video/i-motion may not be set as the image. And the video/i-motion with sound cannot be set, either.

Displaying images saved in the phonebook when making/receiving calls

Contact Image

When a voice/videophone call from/to the other party registered in the phonebook is received/made, the portrait image saved in the phonebook can be displayed.

Default ON

1      

2 Press **1**

- To set not to display a portrait image: **2**

Changing images for incoming/outgoing mails or for message retrieval

Mail Image

Default Default

Example Setting the image for sending i-mode Mail or SMS

1 **Menu** **8** **2** **3** **3** **1**

Setting the image to be displayed while receiving i-mode Mail, SMS or Message R/F:

Menu **8** **2** **3** **3** **2**

Setting the image on the reception result screen of i-mode Mail, SMS and Message R/F:

Menu **8** **2** **3** **3** **3**

Setting the image to be displayed when performing Check i-mode Message or Check SMS:

Menu **8** **2** **3** **3** **4**

2 Select an image to register

- For setting the mail reception result screen, follow Step 2 in “Changing images to be displayed for incoming calls”. ◀P114
- For setting other than the above, follow Step 2 in “Changing images to be displayed for outgoing calls”. ◀P113

Displaying the other party's phone number and name when receiving a call

Receive Display

Set whether to display the phone number and name when a voice/videophone call is received, and set the font size for the name.

In addition, set whether to scroll the reception result on the task bar when i-mode Mail, SMS or Message R/F is received.

- Name displays ◀P80

Default Caller's phone number: Display Caller's name: Standard Receive mail/message: Display

1 **Menu** **8** **2** **3** **4**

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press **Menu**

Caller's phone number :

Sets whether to display the phone number when a call is received.

Caller's name : Sets whether to display the name in the normal size, in the small size or not to display the name when a call is received.

Receive mail/message :

Sets whether to display the reception result on the task bar when i-mode Mail, SMS or Message R/F is received.

- When **Display** is set, the reception result is scrolled on the task bar.

Setting the lighting time

Lighting makes the display brighter.

Default Normal use: 10 sec AC adapter connected, i-mode session: Terminal setting
Camera session, Movie camera session, i-motion: Always on i- ppli: Terminal setting

Example Setting *Display light time* for normal use

1 **Menu** **8** **2** **4** **1**

2 **1**

Setting the lighting time when connecting to the optional AC adapter (Desktop Holder) or DC adapter: **2**

Setting the lighting time during i-mode: **3**

Setting the lighting time while shooting the image with the camera: **4**

Setting the lighting time while shooting video with the camera: **5**

Setting the lighting time while playing the video/i-motion or displaying its list: **6**

Setting the lighting time while operating i- ppli: **7**

3 Press any of **1** to **7**

- To set items other than *Normal use*, press **1** or **2**. When *Terminal setting* is set, the lighting time set for *Normal use* is used.
- When *Always/Always on* is set, the display is always lighted with the brightness set in *Brightness*. However, it is lighted by *High* when AC adapter is connected.
- When *i- ppli* is set to *Software*, the display is lighted in accordance with the i- ppli software.

Setting the range

Set whether to light the display and keys or the display only.

- When the body color of FOMA terminal is Carbon Black, the Enter key does not light. (When the body color of FOMA terminal is other than Carbon Black, the Enter key lights.)

Default Display + Key

1 **Menu** **8** **2** **4** **2** ▶ Press **1** or **2**

Adjusting the brightness

Set the brightness for lighting the display.

Default Normal

1 **Menu** **8** **2** **4** **3** ▶ Press any of **1** to **3**

INFORMATION

When *Normal use of Display light time* is set to other than *Always*, if you do not press any keys for about 90 seconds, the display disappears and FOMA terminal goes into a power saving mode. If there is any key operation*1 or an incoming call, the display reappears. However, FOMA terminal does not go into a power saving mode in the following cases:

- During a videophone call
- While displaying the shooting screen of the camera or while shooting
- While charging with *AC adapter connected of Display light time* set to *Always on*
- While executing the function with *Display light time* set to *Always on*

*1 Even if the keylock switch is pressed, the display does not appear. In addition, except for during a call, a number, etc. is not entered even when pressing keys.

Even if *i- ppli* is set to *Terminal setting*, the setting of terminal may not be applied for some *i- ppli*.

The settings of this function are also reflected to the settings of Display Light for *i-mode* (P174), Still Image Setting (P150), Recording Setting (P150), Settings for *i-motion* (P263) and Display Light for *i- ppli* (P235).

Changing the display color

Color Scheme

The color of each part of the screen such as the background or characters is changed.

Default use Style Theme setting

1 **Menu** **8** **2** **3** **1** ▶ Press any of **1** to **9**

- You can select a color from 24 colors. The color names are for information purpose only.

Menu 8221

Setting the menu display format or menu design

Menu Setting

The menu display format or the icon design can be changed. It can also be set to the simple menu limited only to the often used functions. In the simple menu, characters are also displayed in large size.

- The designs of tile icons and animation set by default for the normal menu P347

Default Normal: Animation Custom: Tile display Describe function: ON
Type of animation: use Style Theme setting Icon display effect: OFF Default MENU: Normal
Active shortcut: Custom

1 **Menu** **EF**

- When *Default MENU* is set to *Custom*, press **Menu** on the standby display and press **Menu** **8**.

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press **□□**

Normal : Sets the display format for the normal menu.
• To set the simple menu, select シンプル(Simple menu)*.

Custom : Sets the display format for the custom menu.

Describe function : Sets whether to display description of the item's function.

Type of tile icons : Sets the design of tile icons for the normal menu.
• It can be set only when *Normal* is set to *Tile display*.
• The design of the first level menu can be set.

- *Customized 1* or *Customized 2* is set when changing the menu icons or background images and creating the original menu design.

Type of animation : Sets the design of animation for the normal menu.
• It can be set only when *Normal* is set to *Animation*.

Icon display effect : Sets whether to magnify the tile icons or 3D icons when selecting them.

Default MENU : Sets whether to display the normal menu or the custom menu when pressing **Menu** on the standby display.

- Active shortcut** : Sets the shortcut operation procedure for the custom menu.
- **Normal**: The same item numbers as the normal menu can be used for shortcut operations.
 - **Custom**: The item numbers for the positions of the respective functions on the custom menu can be used for shortcut operations.
- * Can only be set in the Japanese display. Switch to the Japanese display before setting the simple menu.

When the simple menu is set

The menu numbers differ. Menu list of the simple menu ◀P346

During calling or talking, you can see how to adjust the volume of other party's voice.

Enter a phone number to see the operation to be performed subsequently.

On the standby display, enter a phonebook No. (1 to 9) to see the registered name and phone number. Key operations for making a voice call/videophone call are also shown. During a voice call, you can also press **Menu**, select **ダイヤル入力 (Dial)** and enter a phonebook number to see the same information.

The characters in the redials, received calls, phonebook list/group list, mail view screen, sent message log, received message log, site screen, screen memo screen, message text entry screen and character entry screen (full-screen entry) are displayed in large font.

Setting the font size or switching ON mode/OFF mode cannot be performed.

INFORMATION

You cannot switch FOMA terminal to the simple menu when English display is set in Select Language. Also, when you choose the simple menu, the setting for Select Language is not available.

Even if you set the simple menu, when you insert the UIM for which English display is specified as language, the setting is canceled.

Creating the original menu design

Two kinds of the design of the menu screen can be created by changing the icons or background images of the normal menu.

- When the image size exceeds 96 x 96 for icons and 240 x 240 for background images, they are reduced to be displayed.

1



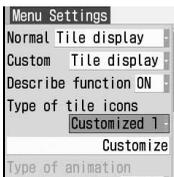
- In case *Default MENU* is set to *Custom*, press **Menu** on the standby display and press **Menu** **E**.

2

Select **Normal field** ▶ **2**

3

Select **Type of tile icons field** ▶ **7** or **8** ▶ Select **Customize**



4

Select a function ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image

Canceling a menu icon: Highlight an icon ▶ **Menu** **1** ▶ Select **Yes**

- To cancel all: **Menu** **2** ▶ Select **Yes**

5

Menu **4** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image

Canceling a background image: **Menu** **4** ▶ Select **Yes**

6 Press

INFORMATION

Created animation, Flash movie or images in the *Item* folder cannot be set. If an animation is set, the first frame is displayed.

The setting for *Customized 1* or *Customized 2* of *Type of tile icons* cannot be changed while PIM Lock is on.

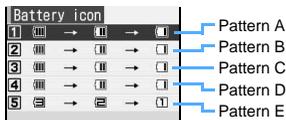
Changing the battery level icon

Battery Icon

Default use Style Theme setting

1     

2 Press any of  to 



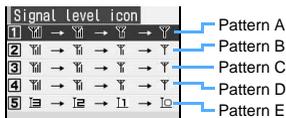
Changing the icon for received signal level

Signal Level Icon

Default use Style Theme setting

1     

2 Press any of  to 



The standby display, the battery icon, the signal level icon, the clock display, the color scheme and the menu design are coordinated in total by the color of FOMA terminal. They can also be changed to the style corresponding to the other colors.

Functions and items to be coordinated	Style Theme					
	<i>Black&White</i>	<i>Leaf</i>	<i>BarCode</i>	<i>Resort</i>	<i>WhiteArrow</i>	<i>Cocktail</i>
Standby display	<i>Black</i>	<i>Leaf</i>	<i>Bar code</i>	<i>Deck chair</i>	<i>White arrow</i>	<i>Cocktail</i>
Battery Icon	Pattern A	Pattern B	Pattern A	Pattern C	Pattern A	Pattern D
Signal Level Icon	Pattern A	Pattern B	Pattern A	Pattern C	Pattern A	Pattern D
Clock Display Format	<i>Style</i>	<i>ON/Digital 1</i>	<i>ON/Digital 2</i>	<i>ON/Analog 2</i>	<i>ON/Digital 3</i>	<i>ON/Digital 4</i>
	<i>Clock layout</i>	<i>Center</i>	<i>Top</i>	<i>Bottom</i>	<i>Bottom</i>	<i>Center</i>
Color Scheme	<i>CarbonBlack</i>	<i>LeafGreen</i>	<i>FrozenWhite</i>	<i>ResortBlue</i>	<i>BrightRed</i>	<i>Cocktail Orange</i>
Type of animation of Menu Setting	<i>Type1</i>	<i>Type2</i>	<i>Type3</i>	<i>Type4</i>	<i>Type5</i>	<i>Type6</i>

- The default settings are as follows:

Body color of FOMA terminal	Carbon Black	Frozen White	Bright Red
Style Theme	<i>Black&White</i>	<i>BarCode</i>	<i>WhiteArrow</i>

1 Menu 8 2 8

2 Press any of 1 to 6



INFORMATION

Even if *Time format* and *Day* of Clock Display Format, and *Normal* or *Custom* of Menu Setting are set, if you set this setting, the setting returns to the default state.

Setting Machi-chara

Machi-chara Setting

If Machi-chara is set, a character is displayed on the standby display, site display screen, etc.

- The action of Machi-chara or the position to display Machi-chara changes with the situation of FOMA terminal and Machi-chara.
- The list of Machi-chara registered by default ➡P350

Default ON/ドコモダケ (docomodake)

1 Menu 8 2 9

2 Select *Display* field ▶ 1



• To cancel the setting: Select *Display* field ▶ 2 ▶ Go to Step 4

3 Select *Select Machi-chara* ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a Machi-chara image

4 Press □

When Machi-chara is set

When Machi-chara is set, it is displayed on the following screens:

- Standby display*1
- Site display screen*2
- Menu (when displaying tile icons)

*1 The display range of Machi-chara becomes narrow when *Show ticker* in i-Channel Ticker is set to *Yes*.

*2 Machi-chara is displayed when the display lights up and there is no key operation for about 30 seconds while ■ is blinking.

In the following cases, Machi-chara is not displayed:

- While displaying the standby display when i-motion, Chara-den, i- ppli or Flash movie is set on the standby display
- When the information area or the icon for Focus Mode is selected while displaying the custom standby display
- When Flash movie is displayed on the site display screen
- When the description for the function of menu is displayed
- When the date and time is not set

INFORMATION

Highlighting a Machi-chara in the Machi-chara list of Data Box and pressing □ can also set Machi-chara.

Setting the lighting pattern for incoming calls/mails, etc.

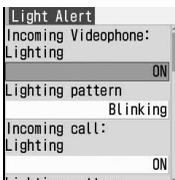
Light Alert Setting

- When the lighting or lighting pattern is set to *Terminal setting* in Alarm Clock, the setting for *Alarm clock* in this function will be valid.

Default Incoming Videophone, Incoming call: ON/Blinking Incoming Mail, Incoming Message R, Incoming Message F, Incoming Chat Mail: ON/Rotation Alarm clock: ON/Up & down Schedule: ON/Cross Play melody: ON/Flash

1 Menu 8 2 5 ▶ 1 or 2

2 Select *Lighting* field ▶ 1 or 2



3 Select *Lighting pattern* field ▶ **1** to **9** ▶ Press **Ⓜ**

- You can select a pattern from 27 patterns. The pattern names are for information purpose only.

Priority of lighting

In case the lighting is set in multiple functions, the keys light/flash by priority given below:

- ① Alert by Contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ② Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Light Alert Setting

INFORMATION

When *Alert setting* is set to *Same:Mail setting* in Chat Mail Alert, *Incoming Chat Mail* cannot be set.

The setting of this function is reflected to the following settings:

- Call Alert, Videophone Alert (☛P63)
- Mail Alert (☛P220)
- Chat Mail Alert (☛P223)
- Message Alert (☛P175)
- Settings for melody (☛P268)

Flashing the keys when receiving new information

Indicator Light

The keys flash when there is new information such as missed calls, unread mails, etc.

Default ON

1 **Menu** **8** **2** **6**

2 Press **1**

- To cancel the setting: **2**

INFORMATION

Even when *ON* is set, the keys do not flash in the following cases:

- While receiving a call
- While talking
- In Public mode (Driving mode)
- During All Lock
- While activating the camera/Sound Recorder
- While the keys are lighting

Even when *ON* is set, if there is no new information for about 6 hours since the first arrival of new information or if

1 or **1** (with the number of information items) on the standby display is cleared, the keys stop flashing even if the information has not been confirmed.

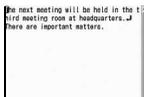
When *ON* is set, the keys flash at about 6 second intervals. If new information has been confirmed, flashing stops.

Menu 8271

Changing the font size

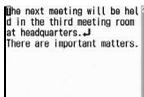
Font Size Setting

The font size on the character entry screen (for notes, etc.), the mail view screen or the site display screen can be changed (among 5 types or 3 types).



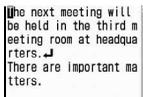
The next meeting will be held in the third meeting room at headquarters. There are important matters.

Minimum: 12 dots



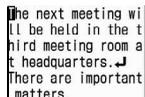
The next meeting will be held in the third meeting room at headquarters. There are important matters.

Small: 16 dots



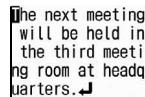
The next meeting will be held in the third meeting room at headquarters. There are important matters.

Standard: 20 dots



The next meeting will be held in the third meeting room at headquarters. There are important matters.

Large: 24 dots



The next meeting will be held in the third meeting room at headquarters.

Maximum: 28 dots

Example When setting at once

1 **Menu** **8** **6** **3** **1**

- Changing the setting of *All listed* alters the settings of *i-mode view*, *Mail view* and *Text input*.

Setting the font size on the display screen of sites, screen memos or Full Browser:

Menu **8** **6** **3** **2**

Setting the font size on the mail view screen: **Menu** **8** **6** **3** **3**

Setting the font size on the message text entry screen or the character entry screen by full-screen entry (for notes, etc.): **Menu** **8** **6** **3** **4**

2 Press any of **1** to **5**

- To set the font size for *i-mode view* or *Mail view*, press any of **1** to **3**.

INFORMATION

The font size during in-line entry cannot be changed.

The font size of Deco-mail pictogram is not changed.

The size of some characters may not change depending on the display screen of sites, screen memos or Full Browser. When changing the setting of *All listed* to *Maximum* or *Minimum*, the setting of *i-mode view* or *Mail view* becomes *Large* or *Small* for each.

The font size can be changed from the mail view screen as well. The setting is reflected to *Mail view* of this setting.

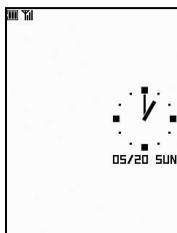
When changing the setting of *Text input*, the font size of predictive conversion options displayed when entering characters and the font size on the mail composition screen are also changed. However, if *Text input* is set to *Maximum* or *Minimum*, the font size on the mail composition screen becomes *Large* or *Small* for each.

Setting the clock display

Set whether to display the clock on the standby display. The clock design, the time display format (24 hour format/12 hour format), the clock display position and the language used to display the day of the week can also be set.

Default use Style Theme setting for Style Time format: 24 hour use Style Theme setting for Clock layout Day: English

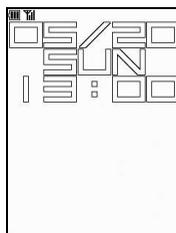
The example of setting



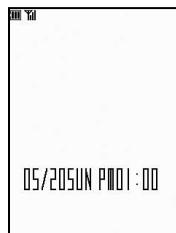
Displaying *Analog 1* at the center



Displaying *Analog 2* at the top



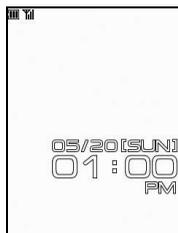
Displaying *Digital 1* by 24 hour format at the top



Displaying *Digital 2* by 12 hour format at the bottom



Displaying *Digital 3*
by 24 hour format
at the center



Displaying *Digital 4*
by 12 hour format
at the bottom

1 **Menu** **8** **6** **1** **4**

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press **Enter**

Style : Sets whether to display the clock.
• When *ON* is set, select the design.

Time format : Specifies 24 hour format or 12 hour format to display the clock.

Clock layout : Sets the position to display the clock.

Day : Specifies whether to display a day of the week in Japanese or English.
• When *Terminal settings* is set, the display follows the setting for Select Language.

INFORMATION

In the following cases, the digital clock (the fixed design) is displayed on the upper part of the display regardless of the setting for *Style* or *Clock layout*.

- When video/i-motion or Chara-den is displayed on the standby display
- When the i- ppli standby display is displayed

While All Lock or Omakase Lock is on, the clock is displayed on the upper part of the display regardless of the setting of this function.

On the screen other than the standby display, the time is displayed on the upper right of the display. The time display format (24 hour format/12 hour format) follows the setting of this function.

Safety Settings

Security code

Security codes	126
Changing the terminal security code	Change Security Code 127
Setting the PIN code	128
Unlocking the PIN lock	129

Restricting Mobile Phone Operations

Various lock functions	130
Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal	All Lock 130
Using Omakase Lock	Omakase Lock 131
Preventing making/receiving calls	Self Mode 132
Preventing display of the phonebook or schedule	PIM Lock 132
Prohibiting keypad dial	Keypad Dial Lock 133
Preventing unauthorized use of functions such as the phonebook or mail	Privacy Mode Setting 134
Preventing key errors	Key Lock 136
Displaying the data with Secret Attribute set	Secret Mode 137

Restricting outgoing/incoming or sending/receiving actions

Rejecting/accepting incoming calls from the specified phone numbers	Reject/Accept Call 137
Setting the operations for incoming calls with no caller ID	Anonymous Caller 139
Delaying the ringer action for calls from the party not registered in the phonebook	Mute Ring Time Setting 140
Rejecting calls from phone numbers not registered in the phonebook	Reject Unregistered Caller 141

Other “Safety settings”

Using Data Security Service	Data Security Service 141
Other “Safety settings”	142

Security codes

Some FOMA terminal functions for convenient use require the entry of security codes. There are security codes such as the network security code for use in network services and the password for i-mode in addition to the terminal security code for various terminal functions. Fully use your FOMA terminal by choosing the security code to suit your needs.

- The entered terminal security code, network security code and i-mode password are masked with “ * ”.

Precautions for security codes

- As for the security code to set, please avoid the number intelligible for others, such as “a birth date”, “a part of phone number”, “an address number or a room number”, “1111” or “1234”. In addition, be sure to keep a separate note of the set security code not to forget.
- Please be careful never to reveal your security code to others. If your security code is known and misused by others, DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for the damages.
- DoCoMo will never ask your security code.
- Please note that, if you forget the security codes, you need to bring a document (such as a driver’s license) for identifying that you are a subscriber, your FOMA terminal and the UIM to a DoCoMo Shop.
For details, contact “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual.

Terminal security code

The default terminal security code is “0000”, which can be changed to a code of your own choice. ●P127

- If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively, the power is automatically turned off.

Network security code

Network security code is the arbitrary 4-digit code that is set at subscription to FOMA terminal for various procedures for the DoCoMo e-site and usage of network services. You can optionally change the code. If you have “DoCoMo ID/Password” for “My DoCoMo” which is the total support site for PC, you can perform the change procedure for a new network security code from a PC.

From i-mode, you can change the code by yourself accessing **各種手続き** (Procedures) in DoCoMo e-site.

- Please refer to the back of this manual for “My DoCoMo” and “DoCoMo e-site”.

i-mode password

A 4-digit “i-mode password” is required to store/delete sites in My Menu or apply to/cancel Message Service or i-mode pay services (in addition, there may be passwords required by individual information service providers). The default i-mode password is “0000”, which can be changed to a code of your own choice.

When changing from i-mode, select **iMenu** *English iMenu* **Options** *Change i-mode Password*.

PIN1 code/PIN2 code

The PIN1 and PIN2 codes can be set for the UIM. Both codes are set to "0000" at the subscription and can be changed to a code of your own choice. P128

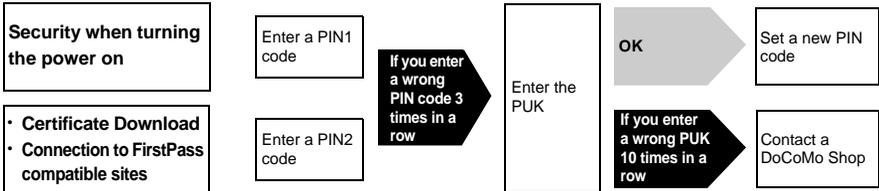
The PIN1 code is the 4 to 8-digit security code entered to confirm the user every time the UIM is inserted to FOMA terminal or the power of FOMA terminal is turned on to protect your FOMA terminal from unauthorized use by the third party. Entering the PIN1 code enables making or receiving calls and FOMA terminal operations. The PIN2 code is the 4 to 8-digit security code required when resetting the total calls cost, or using a user certificate or requesting the issue of it.

- The settings of the PIN1/PIN2 codes and PIN1 Code ON/OFF are recorded in the UIM. When using the current UIM to a FOMA terminal you newly purchased, the PIN1/PIN2 codes that you set previously can be used likewise.

PUK (PIN Unlocking Key)

The PUK is an 8-digit number for canceling the state where the PIN1 code or PIN2 code is locked. You cannot change it.

- If a wrong PUK is entered 10 times consecutively, the UIM is locked.



Changing the terminal security code

Change Security Code

- Enter the 4 to 8-digit number for the terminal security code.

Default 0000

1

2 Enter the current terminal security code

3 Select *New security code* field ▶ Enter a new terminal security code

Change security code
New security code
New security code-check

4 Select *New security code-check* field ▶ Enter the same terminal security code as entered in Step 3 ▶ Press

Setting the PIN code

- Enter the 4 to 8-digit number for the PIN1/PIN2 code.

Setting to require the entry of the PIN1 code when turning the power on

PIN1 Code ON/OFF

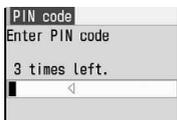
Time of subscription OFF

1 **Menu** **8** **3** **4** **3**

2 **1**

- To set not to require the PIN1 code entry: **2**

3 Enter the PIN1 code



- The PIN1 code is set to "0000" at the time of subscription.
- If a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN1 code is locked. Press **3** and cancel the PIN lock.
- The PIN1 code entry screen appears only when you change the current setting.

When PIN1 Code ON/OFF is set to ON

When the power of FOMA terminal is turned on, the PIN1 code entry screen appears. After entering the correct PIN1 code, the standby display appears.

- All the operations are unavailable unless a correct PIN1 code is entered.
- If a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN1 code is locked. Press **3** and cancel the PIN lock.

Changing the PIN1/PIN2 code

Change PIN1/PIN2 Code

- To change the PIN1 code, set PIN1 Code ON/OFF to *ON*.

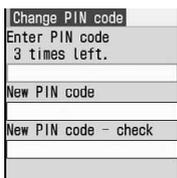
Time of subscription PIN code, PIN2 code: 0000

Example Changing the PIN1 code

1 **Menu** **8** **3** **4** **1**

■ **Changing the PIN2 code:** **Menu** **8** **3** **4** **2**

2 Enter the terminal security code ► Enter the current PIN1 code



3 Select *New PIN code* field ► Enter a new PIN1 code

4 Select *New PIN code - check* field ▶ Enter the same PIN1 code as entered in Step 3 ▶ Press

- If the current PIN1 code is entered incorrectly 3 times consecutively, the PIN1 code is locked.
Press  and cancel the PIN lock.

INFORMATION

Even if a wrong PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively and the PIN2 code is locked, making/receiving calls or sending/receiving mail is available, but if a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively and the PIN1 code is locked, those operations become unavailable.

Unblocking the PIN lock

If a wrong PIN1/PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively on the PIN code entry screen, the PIN code is locked. In that case, cancel the lock and set a new PIN code.

- Please be notified that, if you forget the PUK or the PIN codes are locked completely, you need to bring FOMA terminal, the UIM in use, and the identification (driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.

Example Unblocking the PIN1 code's lock

1 on the confirmation screen of the PIN code's lock

2 Enter the 8-digit PUK

PUK
Enter PUK
10 times left.
New PIN code
New PIN code - check

3 Select *New PIN code* field ▶ Enter a new PIN1 code

4 Select *New PIN code - check* field ▶ Enter the same PIN1 code as entered in Step 3 ▶ Press

The PIN lock is canceled and a new PIN1 code is set.

Various lock functions

A variety of lock functions are available to prevent unauthorized use of your FOMA terminal by others or to keep your private information and the phonebook entries confidential. You can select the function to suit your needs.

- You can set multiple lock functions at the same time.
- The settings of lock functions other than Key Lock and Secret Mode are retained even if the power is turned off.
- You can make emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) even when the lock functions other than Omakase Lock and Key Lock are set.

Lock function	Description	Page
All Lock	Disables operating the menu functions to prevent unauthorized use by others.	P130
Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)	Prevents unauthorized use by others in case your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen.	P131
Self Mode	Disables using the communication functions such as making/receiving of calls, communication in i-mode, sending/receiving of mail and the infrared communication.	P132
PIM Lock	Disables using the private information functions such as Phonebook, Own Number and Scheduler and prevents the display of and tampering with private information.	P132
Keypad Dial Lock	Disables pressing dial keys to make calls.	P133
Privacy Mode Setting	Disables displaying the phonebook, log, mail, My Picture, etc. and prevents unauthorized viewing by others.	P134
Key Lock	Disables the key operations to prevent key errors.	P136
Secret Mode	When you set Secret Attribute for the phonebook or schedule data, the data is displayed only when the terminal security code is entered and Secret Mode is set.	P137

Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal

All Lock

Disables operating the menu functions to prevent unauthorized use of your FOMA terminal by others. Calls cannot be made when All Lock is on.

To make emergency calls (110,119 or 118) when All Lock is on, enter the emergency call number on the standby display and press . At this time, the emergency call number is displayed as " * " in the entry field of the terminal security code.

Default | not set

1      ► Enter the terminal security code

All locked. is displayed.

Canceling: Enter the terminal security code on the standby display

INFORMATION

When All Lock is on, the default image appears even if the standby display is set. Besides, Machi-chara is not displayed.

When All Lock is on, the alarm clock or schedule does not operate even when the specified date and time arrives.

When All Lock is on, the i-channel information is not displayed as ticker on the standby display.

When All Lock is on, using Data Security Service does not allow you to save/update/restore the data from FOMA terminal.

If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively when canceling All Lock, the power is automatically turned off.

The voice calls can be received even when All Lock is on, but the name or image of the other party registered in the phonebook is not displayed, and only the phone number is displayed.

When All Lock is on, Chaku-moji can be received, but it is not displayed on the incoming screen. When All Lock is canceled, it is displayed in the received call list.

When the videophone calls are received during All Lock, they are rejected and the other party hears busy signals, but unanswered calls are recorded as missed ones in the received call history.

i-mode Mail, SMS and Message R/F can be received when All Lock is on. However, the receiving screen, icon for the receiving mail and reception result screen are not displayed and the ring alert does not sound.

When All Lock is on, the keys do not flash even if Indicator Light is set to *ON* and there is a newly-arrived information. You can turn the power on/off. In addition, when Auto Power ON/OFF is set, it is executed.

Using Omakase Lock

Omakase Lock

This is a service that you can lock your FOMA terminal using remote control by informing DoCoMo or by operating from My DoCoMo in case it is lost or stolen. Your important private information are protected. The lock can be canceled by phone call from you.

- Omakase Lock is a service to lock your FOMA terminal in which the UIM you have subscribed to is inserted.

Setting/canceling Omakase Lock

 **0120-524-360 Office hours: for 24 hours**

- Omakase Lock can be set/canceled on the My DoCoMo website from a PC.

- For details of usage of Omakase Lock, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Procedures and After-Sales Service]" or contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

Setting Omakase Lock

Omakase Lock active. is displayed and Omakase Lock is set.

- While Omakase Lock is on, all the key operations are disabled except for receiving voice/videophone calls and turning the power on/off. Using various functions is disabled.
- A voice/videophone call can be received, but the name or image of the other party registered in the phonebook is not displayed and only the phone number appears. In addition, the incoming image and ring alert depend on the default setting. Canceling Omakase Lock returns to the former status.
- When Omakase Lock is on, Chaku-moji can be received, but it is not displayed on the incoming screen. When Omakase Lock is canceled, it is displayed in the received call list.
- The mail received during Omakase Lock is stored in the Mail Center.
- The operation of turning the power on/off is available, but the lock setting is not canceled, even though the power is turned off.
- Note that the UIM is not locked.

INFORMATION

Even if other functions are activated, those functions are ended and Omakase Lock is set. When there is data during editing, the data is saved and the function is ended.

Even if other lock functions are used, Omakase Lock can be set.

When your FOMA terminal is outside the service area, turned off or during Self Mode, the lock is not set.

Omakase Lock is not set when you are subscribing to Dual Network Service and using the mova service.

Omakase Lock is a service which locks FOMA terminal by the offer of the FOMA card subscriber. The lock is set when an offer is made by the subscriber even if the subscriber is not the user of FOMA terminal.

Canceling the lock is available only when the same UIM as the time of setting the lock is inserted. When the lock cannot be canceled, contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

Preventing making/receiving calls

Self Mode

Disables all functions that require communications such as making or receiving calls, communication in i-mode or sending/receiving mails. Infrared communication, infrared remote control and the data transfer by USB connection are also disabled.

Default OFF

1 (for over a second) ▶ Select Yes

Self Mode is set and  is indicated on the standby display.

- When you use shortcut operations:  ▶ Select Yes

Canceling:  (for over a second) ▶ Select Yes

- When you use shortcut operations:  ▶ Select Yes

INFORMATION

Note that if emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) are dialed in Self Mode, Self Mode is canceled.

If you receive a call when Self Mode is on, a guidance is played for the caller that radio waves are hard to reach or the power of your terminal is turned off. You can use Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service.

i-mode Mail or Message R/F sent during Self Mode are stored at the i-mode Center and SMS are stored at the SMS Center. To receive messages, cancel Self Mode and perform Check i-mode Message or Check SMS.

Preventing display of the phonebook or schedule

PIM Lock

PIM Lock prevents the display of and tampering with private information:

- This function cannot be set when Reject Unregistered Caller is set to *ON*.

Default OFF

1

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Press

PIM Lock is set and  is indicated on the standby display.

- To cancel the setting: Enter the terminal security code ▶ 

When PIM Lock is on

- The following operations (the whole operation or part of the setting or function) become unavailable.
 - Mail/Chat Mail/SMS/Message R/F*1
 - i-channel
 - Answer Machine/Voice Memo
 - Data transfer via infrared communication
 - Bar Code Reader/Camera/Sound Recorder/Music Player
 - Scheduler
 - Call Ring Alert, Mail/Msg Ring Alert/Alarm sound
 - i-Channel Ticker
 - Videophone Image Setting
 - Outgoing Call/Videophone Dialing
 - Headset Key Control
 - Delete All Data
 - Number Setting/Incoming settings for Multi Number
 - Menu Setting
 - Check i-mode Message
 - Phonebook
 - Data Box (*My Picture, Melody*, etc.)
 - Alarm Clock
 - Anonymous Caller
 - Virus Scan Function
 - Call Alert/Videophone Alert
 - Call Cost Limit
 - Own Number
 - i-mode/Full Browser
 - Data Security Service
 - Standby Display Setting
 - Mail Image
 - Reject/Accept Call
 - Reset
 - Chaku-moji*2

- *1 Messages can be received automatically, but the receiving screen and the reception result screen are not displayed. In addition, the operation of receiving such as sounding the ring alert is not executed and the reception is not notified. The mail cannot be composed by using Sent/Received Msg. Log.
- *2 Can be received, but it is not displayed on the incoming screen. When PIM Lock is canceled, it is displayed in the received call list.
- Even if a call is made/received to/from a caller registered in the phonebook, only phone number is displayed instead of the name and image.
- Even though the details of Sent/Received Msg. Log are displayed, the name or image of the other party registered in the phonebook is not displayed and the mail address appears.
-  is not indicated on the standby display because Answer Machine does not operate even when Answer Machine is set. An icon for a recorded message which has not been played is not displayed either.
- The i-channel information is not displayed as ticker on the standby display.

INFORMATION

When the data which is subject to PIM Lock has been set for the standby display or the ring alert, the default setting is applied while PIM Lock is on. The setting you made is restored when PIM Lock is canceled. However, when data saved in the *Preinstalled* folder is set, the set standby display or ring alert is used even if PIM Lock is on. With PIM Lock on, *Default image* (camera-off image) appears as the substitute image for videophone. When PIM Lock is on, Machi-chara is not displayed. When PIM Lock is canceled, it reappears. When PIM Lock is on, the notification such as by alert tone is not made when the number of voice messages of Voice Mail Service is increased.

Prohibiting keypad dial

Keypad Dial Lock

Disables making a call by dialing a phone number (Keypad dial).

- You can make a call using the phonebook.

Default OFF

1     

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Press 

Keypad Dial Lock is set and  is indicated on the standby display.

- To cancel the setting: Enter the terminal security code ▶ 

Unavailable operations when Keypad Dial Lock is on

- Dialing from the received call history or redial data*1
- Editing, adding or deleting the phonebook data and Group Setting
- Editing and resetting Own Number data
 - Phone To (AV Phone To) and Mail To functions
- Transferring the phonebook data or Own Number to/from the external devices
- Sending i-mode Mail/SMS*2
 - Reading mail template from the mail composition screen
- Composing mail on the template list/view screen*3
- Using network services by the dial key operation

*1 You can make calls to the other party registered in the phonebook from redial data.

*2 Mail can be sent by using the phonebook, by replying to a mail from the party registered in the phonebook, or by using the sent/received message log with the party registered in the phonebook.

*3 Composing mail is available from the template if the mail address entered in the address field of the template is registered in the phonebook.

Setting the Privacy Mode operation

Set whether to enter the terminal security code when using the phonebook, mail or My Picture while Privacy Mode is on. Also, you can set Privacy Mode to manually start or to automatically start when no operation has taken place in a certain period of time.

- To enable Privacy Mode Setting, you need to start Privacy Mode.

Default Phonebook & Logs, Mail, My Picture, i-motion, Schedule, My Document, i- ppli, Bookmark, Screen memo, Notepad: Show all Auto start: OFF

1



2

Enter the terminal security code ► Select each item to set ► ► Press

- In case *Authorized access* is set, when using the following functions in Privacy Mode, it is required to enter the terminal security code.

Phonebook & Logs : Sets for displaying the phonebook, redials, received calls, recorded messages or voice memos.

Mail : Sets for displaying mails or Sent/Received Msg. Log.
 • Setting *Hide secret fldrs* hides the folders with the privacy set to *ON*. However, holding down for over a second on the applicable folder list screen and entering the terminal security code cancels Privacy Mode temporarily until the standby display reappears and displays the folder.

My Picture : Sets for using My Picture.

i-motion : Sets for using i-motion.

Schedule : Sets for using Scheduler.

My Document : Sets for using My Document.

i- ppli : Sets for using i- ppli.

Bookmark : Sets for using Bookmark.

Screen memo : Sets for using Screen Memo.

Notepad : Sets for using Notepad.

Auto start : Sets the time period until Privacy Mode is started automatically, if no operation is performed during standby.

INFORMATION

If all items except *Auto start* are set to *Show all*, Privacy Mode is not activated. In addition, when Privacy Mode has been activated, it is canceled automatically.

Starting Privacy Mode

1 Hold down  for over a second

Canceling:  (for over a second) ► Enter the terminal security code

INFORMATION

When Privacy Mode is on, some restrictions apply in case *Authorized access* is set for the following items:

Item	Restriction
Phonebook & Logs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The name and image of the other party registered in the phonebook are not displayed for incoming/outgoing calls/mails, and only the phone number or mail address is displayed. The ring alert, vibrator or the videophone substitute image set in the phonebook data does not operate. They operate according to the settings for FOMA terminal. The name registered in the phonebook by Mail Setting or Mail Group Setting is not displayed and the mail address appears.
Mail	When you search mails from the phonebook or schedule or download, update or delete Message i- ppli, entry of the terminal security code is required.
My Picture/ i-motion	<p>[General informaion]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the data other than the <i>Preinstalled</i> folder data is set for the ring alert or image in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the setting is disabled. <p>[My Picture]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When <i>Image</i> of Scheduler is set to <i>Yes</i> and the data except the <i>Preinstalled</i> folder data is set, the setting is disabled. In still image shooting or video recording, shooting using a frame cannot be performed. <p>[i-motion]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the data other than the <i>Preinstalled</i> folder data is set for the alarm clock sound or schedule sound, the setting is disabled. Editing tickers directly after recording video cannot be performed.
i- ppli	When you select the mail folder for Message i- ppli or download i- ppli, entry of the terminal security code is required.

When you use the function which is set to *Authorized access* in Privacy Mode, if you enter the terminal security code once, entry of the terminal security code is not required until the standby display is returned. It is also the same as when using multiple items which are set to *Authorized access*.

(Example) In case you try to send the image saved in My Picture by mail in Privacy Mode (with *Phonebook & Logs* and *My Picture* set to *Authorized access*), entry of the terminal security code is not required even when trying to access to the phonebook from the mail composition screen because the terminal security code is already entered in displaying My Picture.

In Privacy Mode (with *Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), if you enter the terminal security code once, for example, in case of calling from the phonebook, the name and image registered in the phonebook are displayed on the outgoing/incoming screen and the ring alert set in the phonebook is used until the standby display is returned.

If you try to perform the settings which use the data set as *Authorized access* and enter the terminal security code in Privacy Mode, a message is displayed indicating that the items set not to be displayed in Privacy Mode Setting are reflected when Privacy Mode is canceled depending on the setting.

Disables the key operations and prevent wrong operations while you carry the terminal around by putting it into a bag, etc.

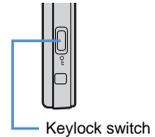
- Key Lock can be set/canceled even when the screen other than the standby display is displayed. However, the setting is unavailable until the standby display appears after turning on the power.

Default not set

1 Hold down the keylock switch for over a second

Key Lock is set, and the standby display disappears.

- The screen is still displayed and  is indicated on the upper part of the display in the following cases:
 - When the shooting/recording screen of the camera is displayed or during the shooting.
 - When *Normal use of Display light time* is set to *Always* in Display Light Setting.
 - When charging the battery in case *AC adapter connected of Display light time* of Display Light Setting is set to *Always on*.
 - When executing functions in which *Display light time* of Display Light Setting is set to *Always on*.
- During a call, Key Lock is set in the state of temporary release and  (in gray) is indicated on the upper part of the display. When a call is ended, Key Lock is set.



Canceling: Hold down the keylock switch for over a second

Key Lock is canceled, and the display lights.

INFORMATION

When the power is turned off by Auto Power OFF while Key Lock is on or is released temporarily, Key Lock is canceled. It is also the same as when the power is manually turned off during temporary release.

Even while Key Lock is on, the following key operations can be performed. And, if an incoming call is answered or the call is handled by Response and Hold or Answer Machine, Key Lock is released temporarily and the key operations can be performed. When the call is ended, Key Lock is set again.

- When there is a voice call, receiving the call by , putting the call on hold by , handling the call by Answer Machine by holding down  for over a second and stopping the ring alert by .
- When there is a videophone call, receiving the call by  or , putting the call on hold by , handling the call by Answer Machine by holding down  for over a second and stopping the ring alert by .
- Stopping the alarm sound, etc.
- Holding down a switch of the equipment such as the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) for over a second to make a voice call or receive a voice/videophone call.

When the display disappears while Key Lock is on, pressing  or receiving calls lights the display.  or  (in gray) is indicated on the upper part of the display.

Setting Key Lock automatically

Key Lock can be set to be active automatically when the preset time (10 seconds to 5 minutes) has elapsed on the standby display.

Default OFF

1     

2 Select **Key lock timer** field ▶ 

- To cancel: Select the **Key lock timer** field ▶  ▶ Go to Step 4

3 Select **Timer** field ▶  to 

Displaying the data with Secret Attribute set

Secret Mode

If Secret Mode is set, the phonebook data or the schedule data with Secret Attribute set can be displayed. When you set/cancel Secret Attribute, you need to set Secret Mode on.

Default not set

1 ▶ Enter the terminal security code

Secret Mode is set and  is indicated on the upper part of the display.

Canceling:  on the standby display

• Also, press     on the standby display to cancel it.

INFORMATION

If an animation, Created animation or Flash movie is set on the standby display while Secret Mode is on, the first frame is displayed. If you press , Secret Mode is canceled and the animation, Created animation or Flash movie is played. When a call/mail is received from the other party with Secret Attribute set, the ring alert, the incoming vibrator and the incoming lighting set in the phonebook data are used only when Secret Mode is on.

Rejecting/accepting incoming calls from the specified phone numbers

Reject/Accept Call

Reject/Accept Call is set for each phone number registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- To use this function, set Reject/Accept Call for each phone number and then enable Reject/Accept Call in this setting. The items to be set and operations of rejecting/accepting incoming calls are as follows:

Reject/Accept Call	Reject/Accept Call setting for each phone number		
	Accept call	Reject call	No setting
Cancel settings	Accept	Accept	Accept
Reject call	Accept	Reject* ¹	Accept
Accept call	Accept	Reject* ¹	Reject* ¹

*¹ When a call is received from the set phone number, the call is disconnected without the ring alert sounding and the other party hears busy signals.

- This function is activated only when the other party notifies the caller ID.
- The rejected calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.
- If the ringing time is set to 0 second for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated and the call is not recorded in the received call history.
- Combination with Caller ID Request Service and Anonymous Caller is recommended when used.

Specifying phone numbers to reject/accept

Reject/Accept Call is set for the phone numbers registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- Reject/Accept Call cannot be set for the phone numbers registered in the UIM phonebook.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ **Menu** **3** **4** **3**

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select a phone number

3 Press **1** or **2**

- To cancel the setting: **3**
- **H** is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. on the details screen of the phonebook data for which Reject/Accept Call is set.
- To reject/accept incoming calls from the specified phone numbers, enable Reject/Accept Call continuously.

INFORMATION

If the phone number with Reject/Accept Call set is changed or deleted, this function's setting is canceled. In that case, set Reject/Accept Call for the phone number changed or registered again.

Enabling Reject/Accept Call

- The setting of this function applies to all phone numbers with Reject/Accept Call set.
- Reject Call and Accept Call cannot be enabled at the same time.

Default **Cancel settings**

1 **Menu** **8** **4** **5** **1**

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Press **2** or **3**

- To cancel the setting: Enter the terminal security code ▶ **1**

INFORMATION

If a call with no caller ID is received from a party that you set Reject Call to, FOMA terminal operates according to Anonymous Caller regardless of this function's setting.

In case there is no phonebook data for which *Accept call* is set, in this setting, when selecting *Accept call*, a message appears indicating that all calls are rejected. When selecting *Yes*, all calls are set to be rejected.

i-mode Mail or SMS is received regardless of this function's setting.

The operation for an incoming voice call with no caller ID can be set for each reason for no caller ID.

- For the ring alert and incoming image in case there is an incoming voice call without caller ID, this function's setting is given priority over the setting of Call Alert.
- When there is an incoming videophone call without caller ID, it operates as set in Videophone Alert. However, when the incoming operation of this setting is set to *Call Rejection*, incoming calls are rejected.

Default Disable settings (all)

1 **[Menu]** **[8]** **[4]** **[2]** ▶ Enter the terminal security code

2 **[1]** to **[3]**

- Perform Step 2 to 3 repeatedly for every reason for no caller ID.
- The reason for no caller ID ◀P60

3 Select each item to set ▶ Press **[M]**



Incoming setting :

Sets the operation for an incoming call with no caller ID.

- When *Disable settings* is set, the ring alert set in Call Alert sounds.
- Setting *Call Rejection* rejects an incoming call.
- Setting *Ring alert off* makes the ring alert to be silent.
- When selecting any of *Melody*, *Movie ringtone* or *Music*, set the ring tone.
Setting music data ▶P102

• When *Disable settings* or *Call Rejection* is set, *Show image* cannot be set. When a video/i-motion with sound and image is set for *Movie ringtone*, *Show image* is set to *Sync ring alert*.

Show image : Sets an image displayed for an incoming call with no caller ID.

- When *Standard image* is selected, the default image is set.
- When *Select image* or *i-motion* is selected, set an image.
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion file when selecting ▶P102

INFORMATION

When *Call Rejection* has been set, the rejected calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.

Standard image may be set for *Show image* when the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as singer's vocals) is set for *Movie ringtone* in the incoming setting or when the music data is set for *Music*. Note that the image can be changed to another image (except for Flash movie) by selecting *Select image* in the *Show image* field.

When Reject Unregistered Caller is set and a call without caller ID is received, the setting of Reject Unregistered Caller takes precedence over this function.

- The function is effective to nuisance calls such as “One-Ring Call”.
- This function cannot be set when Reject Unregistered Caller is set to *ON*.

Default OFF

1 Menu 8 1 5

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press ☐

Delayed ring alert : Specifies whether to enable this setting.

Delay time (sec) : Sets the time between the arrival of calls and the start of ringing (between 1 to 99 seconds).

Missed call : Sets whether to display a missed call which ends in less than the time set in *Delay time* in the received call history.

When Mute Ring Time Setting is on

When there is an incoming call from a caller who is not registered in the phonebook, the call will be notified only on the display for the set time period. After the set time has elapsed, normal ringer action will start.

- Even before the set time passes, answering an incoming call or replying by Answer Machine can be performed.
- This function operates even for incoming calls from the party registered in the phonebook while PIM Lock or Privacy Mode is on (with *Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*).
- This function also operates in the following cases:
 - When a call with no caller ID is received even if the party is registered in the phonebook.
 - While not in Secret Mode, there is an incoming call from the party registered in the phonebook as an entry with Secret Attribute set.

INFORMATION

The following functions and services are operated regardless of this function's settings:

- Public mode (Driving mode)
- Answer Machine
- Voice Mail Service
- Call Forwarding Service

If you receive a call from the phone number set to be rejected in Anonymous Caller, Anonymous Caller is prioritized over this function.

In case *Delay time* is set to the same number of seconds as the ringing time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, the ring alert may sound.

- Combination with Caller ID Request Service is recommended to use.
- When *Delayed ring alert* in Mute Ring Time Setting is set to *ON*, this function cannot be set.

Default OFF

1 [Menu] [8] [4] [5] [2]

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Press [1]

- To cancel the setting: Enter the terminal security code ▶ [2]

When Reject Unregistered Caller is on

When there is an incoming call from the party who is not registered in the phonebook, the call is disconnected without activating the ring alert and the caller hears busy signals.

- The rejected calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.
- The call is also rejected in the following cases:
 - When a call with no caller ID is received even if the party is registered in the phonebook.
 - While not in Secret Mode, there is an incoming call from the party registered in the phonebook as an entry with Secret Attribute set.

INFORMATION

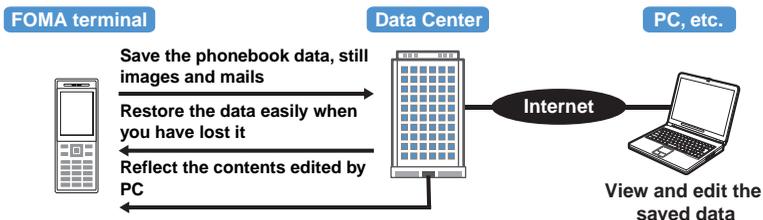
When there is an incoming call with no caller ID, this function's setting is prioritized over Anonymous Caller. i-mode Mail or SMS is received regardless of this function's setting.

Using Data Security Service

Data Security Service is a service which allows you to save the phonebook data, still images and mails in your FOMA terminal (hereinafter called the saved data) to the Data Center of DoCoMo.

Even if your FOMA terminal is lost or exposed to water and the saved data is cleared, you can restore the phonebook data, etc. saved in the Data Center to a new FOMA terminal by operating in i-mode. In addition, you can edit easily the saved data in the Center from a PC by operating on the My DoCoMo web page and reflect the edited data to your FOMA terminal.

- For details of usage of Data Security Service, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".



- Data Security Service is a pay service for which subscription is required (it requires i-mode subscription).
- To save or restore the data, refer to the following pages:
 - Phonebook data ▶ P94, P97
 - Still images ▶ P258
 - Mails ▶ P212

Other “Safety settings”

The following Safety settings can be used:

Purpose	Function or Service	Page
To enable safe and reliable data communications by using the electronic authentication service, “FirstPass” (FirstPass-compatible sites only)	FirstPass	P161 P178
To receive only necessary mails out of large-volume messages received	Receive Option Setting	P217
To register/check the safety of relatives by using i-mode when a disaster occurs	i-mode Disaster Message Board Service	See “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”
To change/check the mail address	Change/check Mail Address	
To receive/reject only mails sent from the specified domains	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/Receive Mail Settings)	
To receive/reject mails only between i-mode terminals		
To receive/reject only mails from the specified addresses	Spam Mail Prevention (SMS Rejection Settings)	
To reject SMS		
To reject i-mode mails after 200th mail sent from an i-mode terminal (including mova terminal) in a day	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To reject unsolicited AD mails	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To restrict the received mail size	Limit Mail Size	
To check the setting status of the mail function	Confirm Settings	
To stop the mail function temporarily	Suspend Mail	
To reject “Nuisance calls” including malicious calls and repeated misdialed calls	Nuisance Call Blocking Service	P321
To reject calls with no caller ID	Caller ID Request	P321
To update FOMA terminal software by using packet communication	Software Update	P374
To protect FOMA terminal from viruses by deleting data that may cause problems or stopping the starting of applications	Virus Scan Function	P378

Camera

Before using the camera.....	144
Shooting still images.....	Still Camera 147
Recording videos.....	Movie Camera 149
Setting the still image/video size or the saving method	Still Image Setting/Recording Setting 150
Shooting by various methods	151
Changing the settings during shooting.....	152
Sending still images shot during voice calls	One-shot Message 156
Using Bar Code Reader.....	Bar Code Reader 156

Before using the camera

Still images and videos can be shot with your FOMA terminal camera. You can display or play still images or video you shot on your FOMA terminal. Also you can send them via i-mode Mail as attachments or via infrared communication.

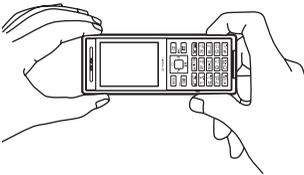
Precautions for using the camera

About the camera

- Though the camera is manufactured using extremely accurate technology, some pixels and lines may always be displayed lighter or darker than you expect. Noise such as dots and lines may increase especially when you shoot in a place with very low light intensity, but note that such noise is not a malfunction.
- When the lens is exposed to direct sunlight for a long period of time, the inside color filter will become discolored and images may be correspondingly discolored as well.
- When you attempt to shoot a strong light source such as the sun or a lamp or when the battery level is low, the image may become dark or degraded.
- Depending on the characteristics of the lens, displayed images may be distorted.
- Capturing under illumination flickering at high frequencies such as fluorescent lights, mercury vapor lights, or sodium lights may make the screen flicker, but this is not a malfunction. Flickers may be reduced by changing the distance or the angle of shooting the object or by moving to another position. In addition, flickers can be reduced by flicker adjustment. ◀P155
- Images taken with the camera may differ from the actual subjects in color and brightness, depending on conditions.

To shoot clean images

Hold your FOMA terminal firmly to shoot, as shown in the illustration below.



- When shooting, be careful not to move FOMA terminal.

- Be careful not to cover the lens with fingers or strap, especially when you hold FOMA terminal vertically to shoot still images or video.
- Use of auto timer is effective to avoid camera shake because the shutter is automatically released.
- To shoot a video, use the shake reduction function. ◀P154

Points of concern when shooting images

- If the lens is contaminated with fingerprints or skin oil, you cannot shoot clean images. Use a soft cloth to remove any such contaminants before shooting.
- When shooting with the camera, keep a distance of at least 50 cm from the object. Switch to the macro mode when you want to come closer to the object to shoot. ◀P152
- Set the brightness depending on the situation of the shooting. ◀P154
- There is a small time lag after you press  or  until the image is shot. Do not move your FOMA terminal for a while after pressing  or . If you shoot a fast moving object, the shot image may slightly differ from the image you see on the screen before pressing  or .
- If you shoot a quickly moving object with Movie Camera, the image may be blurred.
- If the battery power goes out before saving a shot still image or video, it is not saved.
- Because the camera consumes a lot of battery power, do not leave the camera activated long time or do not keep shot images long time without being saved.
- If no action is taken on the shooting screen for about 1 minute, Still Camera/Movie Camera terminates automatically by default. You can change the time period before termination. ◀P150
- Some settings may require extra time to show an image on the shooting screen after you start the camera.
- Some functions cannot be used or some settings cannot be changed when the camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i- ppli software.

About copyrights and portrait rights

The copyright laws prohibit unauthorized use, such as reproduction, alteration and modification, of photographs or videos and i-mode site or website information obtained by using the FOMA terminal without the permission of the relevant copyright holders except for personal use. Please refrain from unauthorized use of portraits or names of other persons that may infringe on portrait rights. When you release shot or recorded work on web pages, use care not to infringe on copyrights or portrait

rights. Note that shooting or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.

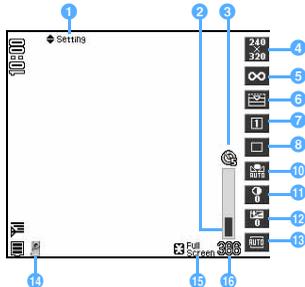
Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Shutter and countdown sounds

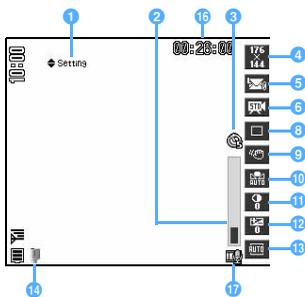
- The shutter sound and the auto timer's countdown sound are heard even when *silent* is set for the ring alert volume or while Silent Mode or Public mode (Driving mode) is on.
- The volume of the shutter or countdown sound cannot be changed.
- You can change the type of the shutter sound in Still Image Setting or Recording Setting.

Viewing the shooting/recording screen

The shooting/recording screen



Still image shooting screen



Video recording screen

1 Settings guide

Use to change settings for shooting. ◀P152

2 Indicator

<During standby for shooting>

Indicates the usage rate of the memory space during the normal shooting. Indicates the time remaining until the shutter is released during auto timer count down.

<During video recording/pause>

Indicates the rate of the recorded image size to the file size set in size restrictions.

3 Auto timer

The icon of the auto timer is displayed when the auto timer is set. ▶P152

4 Size ▶P155

5 Size restriction ▶P155

6 Quality ▶P154

7 Continuous shoot ▶P148

8 Frame ▶P154

9 Shake reduction ▶P154

10 White balance ▶P154

11 Color density ▶P154

12 Brightness ▶P154

13 Scene mode/effect ▶P153

14 Task bar icon ▶P27

15 Screen mode switching guide

Use to switch between the standard and full-screen displays during still image shooting.

16 Counter

<During standby for shooting>

During the normal shooting, the indicator indicates the maximum number (estimate) of still images or the maximum recording time (estimate) of videos that can be saved with the current setting. Indicates the time remaining until the shutter is released during auto timer count down. Indicates shot number/total shot number during manual continuous shoot of still images.

<During video recording/pause>

Indicates the elapsed/remaining time (estimated remaining time before the recording stops).

17 Recording type ▶P151

: Video + Voice : Video only

INFORMATION

The indicator, counter and size restrictions are not displayed when the screen is started from *i*-ppli.

Lighting of the keys and the camera indicator

When you activate the camera or shoot images or video, the keys and the camera indicator light or flash. You cannot set them not to light or flash. Also you cannot change the lighting pattern.

Status	Key lighting	Camera indicator*1
When still image shooting/video recording is activated	Lights.	—
While the shooting screen is displayed	—	Lights.
During still image shooting	Lights.	Goes off and lights again.
During video recording	Flashes.	Flashes.
During pause in video recording	Lights.	Lights.
During countdown by the auto timer*1	Flashes.	Flashes.

*1 As the end of countdown approaches, the keys light and the intervals of flashing become shorter.

File names and file formats

The shooting date/time is automatically assigned as the file name and displayed name of the shot image or recorded video file, or as the title of the recorded video file.

(Example) In case of 12:34:56 on May 20, 2007
20070520123456

The file format is as follows:

Format of still image files

Item	Contents
File format	JPEG (compatible to Exif format, PRINT Image Matching)
Extension	JPG

Format of video files

Item	Contents
File format	MP4 (MobileMP4)
Encoding method	Video: MPEG-4 Sound: AMR
Extension	3GP

INFORMATION

The file name and display name can be changed after shooting. ●P270

Maximum number of saved still images

The number of still images that can be saved varies depending on the settings of image size, quality and size restrictions or the shooting conditions. The estimated number of still images that can be saved is as shown below.

- The image size, quality and size restrictions can be set in Still Image Setting.

Unit: number of images

Size	Quality	Economy	Standard	Fine
	96 x 72	573	573	573
128 x 96	573	573	573	
176 x 144	573	573	512	
240 x 320	572	423	256	
352 x 288	442	335	211	
640 x 480	211	152	89	
480 x 640	211	147	88	
960 x 1280	81	50	28	

Maximum recording time of videos

The video recording time available varies depending on the size restrictions, image size, quality and recording type settings and the recording conditions.

- The size restrictions, image size, quality and recording type can be set in Recording Setting.

Maximum recording time per video clip

The estimated recording time per video is as shown below:

Upper row in a cell: Video & Voice Lower row: Only video

Unit: seconds

Size restriction	Size	Quality			
		LP	STD	HQ	HQ+
Msg attach: (Small)	128 x 96	197	123	88	37
	96	330	165	124	42
	176 x 144	152	78	52	20
	144	221	93	63	21
Msg attach: (Large)	320 x 240	56	30	23	10
	240	63	31	25	10
	128 x 96	802	502	364	150
	96	1345	672	505	170
	176 x 144	619	319	213	80
	144	902	379	255	86
	320 x 240	227	121	96	41
	240	255	128	102	42

Total recording time

The estimated total recording time of video clips that can be saved is as shown below:

Upper row in a cell: Video & Voice Lower row: Only video
Unit: minutes

Size restriction	Size	Quality			
		LP	STD	HQ	HQ+
Msg attach: (Small)	128 x 96	78 132	49 66	35 49	14 16
	176 x 144	60 88	31 37	20 25	8 8
	320 x 240	22 25	12 12	9 10	4 4
Msg attach: (Large)	128 x 96	78 132	49 65	35 49	14 16
	176 x 144	60 88	31 37	20 25	7 8
	320 x 240	22 25	11 12	9 10	4 4

Menu 631

Shooting still images

Still Camera

Shooting still images

1 Hold down for over a second



Still image shooting is activated.

Still image shooting screen

- During standby for shooting, the following operations are enabled:

-  : Switches the screen between the full mode/standard mode
 - In the full-screen mode, the settings guide disappears from the screen, as well as icons and the guide row on the right of the screen.
-  : Switches to Movie Camera.

2 Point the camera at the object and or

The shutter sound is heard and a still image is shot before the image confirmation screen appears.

- For auto-saving without displaying a confirmation screen P151

3 View and confirm the still image

- To save the still image immediately: Go to Step 4
- To retake another image without saving the shot image: 
- To display the still image of the size of 640 x 480 (H-VGA) or larger at the same size for check: 
-  to scroll. Press  to return to the original size.

Sending mail with images attached:

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether or not to save the shot still image. Select *Yes* to save the image and the mail composition screen is displayed. Depending on the image size or file size, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert the image to the size of 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (standby) or save it to Data Box. P194

- A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to adjust the file size of the shot still image depending on the settings of the image size and size restrictions. Select *No limit* to save the shot still image at the original size, or select *Msg attach:Small* to save the shot still image in the file size smaller than 90 Kbytes.
- If the file size of the still image is smaller than 90 Kbytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to paste the shot still image into the mail text. Select *Yes* to paste it into the mail text, and select *No* to set to the attached file.

Setting the image for the standby display:

    **Select Yes**

The shot still image is saved and set for the standby display.

- If zooming is available for the shot image, select *Yes (Large size)* to enlarge it to the screen size or select *Yes (Same size)* to display it in its actual size.
- If the i- ppli standby display has been set, a confirmation screen asking whether or not to cancel it is displayed continuously.

Adding the image to phonebook entries (only when the image size is 96 x 72 (phonebook)): **Menu** **2** ▶ **2** or **3** ▶

Select Yes

The shot still image is saved and the phonebook registration screen is displayed.

- To update saved entries, select the party to add the image.

Changing the title: **Menu** **3** **1** ▶ **Enter the title (up to 31 one-byte or two-byte characters (30 characters for continuous shot images))** ▶ **OK**

Adjusting the brightness or color balance: **OK**

For the subsequent steps, follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Adjusting brightness and tone balance". ▶ P257

- When the image size is 640 x 480 (H-VGA) or larger, it cannot be corrected.
- When a frame is set in four-frame shooting, mirror images cannot be corrected.

Displaying the list of images stored:

Menu **7**

4 Press or

The shot still image is saved in the *Camera* folder of *My Picture*.

Checking the saved still image: **OK** ▶
Select the still image

INFORMATION

Saving the shot still image may take time depending on the image size and quality.

When there is not enough available storage space to save, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number of images, delete unnecessary images according to the screen or change the settings of image size and quality to lower values.

Shooting still images during a voice call may interrupt the call. If a call arrives before you complete saving of still images you shot, the shot still images may be discarded.

If you set the shooting date/time with *Date* or *Date + Time* of Still Image Setting and shoot a still image, the date/time does not appear on the confirmation screen. The shooting date/time appears, however, when you display the saved still image on the screen. For a still image of the size of 640 x 480 (H-VGA) or larger, the shooting date/time is displayed on the confirmation screen if you press **OK** to display the image at the same size.

Shooting continuously

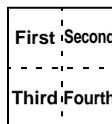
The following types of shooting can be performed. In any case, automatic continuous shooting which shoots automatically at about 0.8 seconds intervals and manual continuous shooting which shoots by one piece at a time can be performed.

- Automatic continuous shooting/manual continuous shooting

Up to 6 still images can be shot continuously. The shot images are saved in the format of Created animation in *My Picture* and can be displayed continuously like animations. The image sizes which can be shot are 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF), 176 x 144 (QCIF), 240 x 320 (standby) and 352 x 288 (CIF).

- The number of images to be shot is set in Still Image Setting.
- If you use the function to cancel Created animation in *My Picture*, you can divide the continuous shots into individual still image.
- Automatic four-frame shooting/manual four-frame shooting

Shots 4 still images of the size of 120 x 160 and makes the images arranged to one still image. The image size which can be shot is only 240 x 320 (standby).



1 Hold down for over a second

Still image shooting is activated.

2 to highlight the icon for continuous shooting ▶ to highlight the shooting method ▶



Icon of continuous shooting

-  : Automatic continuous shooting
-  : Manual continuous shooting
-  : Automatic four-frame shooting
-  : Manual four-frame shooting
-  : OFF (Continuous shooting deactivated)

-  and  in this procedure correspond to directions when you hold FOMA terminal horizontally.

- The cursor does not move to the icon for continuous shooting on the image size in which continuous shooting cannot be performed.

3 Point the camera at the object and or

In the auto continuous shoot, the still images are continuously shot till their count reaches the predefined number, each shooting with the shutter sound for the auto continuous shoot. In the manual continuous shoot, the first of the continuous still images is shot with the shutter sound. To shoot the next ones, press or for each. The image confirmation screen is displayed after shooting the predefined number.

- To stop manual continuous shooting or manual four-frame shooting on the way, press .
 - In case of manual four-frame shooting, the still images shot by then cannot be saved.
- Automatic continuous shooting and automatic four-frame shooting cannot be interrupted on the way.
- For auto-saving without displaying a confirmation screen P151

4 View and confirm the still images shot continuously

- Functions available on the image confirmation screen are the same as in normal shooting.
- To retake another shot without saving the shot images:
- When you have shot two or more images by automatic continuous shooting/manual continuous shooting, each time you press , the display switches between one image and thumbnail display. When one image is displayed, press to show the previous or next still image.

5 Press or

The still images are saved.

Saving only one still image (only for automatic continuous shooting/manual continuous shooting):

- ① **Highlight a still image**
 - Display the still image to be saved for one image display.
- ② (for over a second) ▶ **Select Yes**
 - Unsaved still images are discarded.

Saving the selected still images (only for automatic continuous shooting/manual continuous shooting):

① while displaying thumbnail ▶ **Select still images**

- Press to zoom the still image at the cursor position. To return to the thumbnail display, press .

② ▶ **Select Yes**

- Unsaved still images are discarded.

INFORMATION

If a call arrives or the time set for the alarm clock or schedule alarm is reached during manual continuous shooting, shooting stops at that point. In case of manual four-frame shooting, the still images shot up until then are discarded and cannot be saved.

Recording videos

Movie Camera

- At the time of purchase, the video with sound is set to be shot. It can be changed in Recording Setting.

1



Video recording screen

Video recording is activated.

- To switch to still image shooting:



2 Point the camera at the object and or

The shutter sound is heard and recording is started. ● appears at the upper part of the screen.

- Press to pause during shooting. ● switches to |||. Press or , and the recording restarts.

3 or

The shutter sound is heard and the recording is finished. The image confirmation screen is displayed.

- If the size of video file reaches the limit while recording, recording is automatically stopped.
- You can end video recording during pause by pressing .
- For auto-saving without displaying a confirmation screen P151

4 View and confirm the video shot

- To save the video immediately: Go to Step 5
- To retake another video without saving the shot video: 
- To play the video: 
- For auto-playing  P15

Sending via mail:

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the recorded video. Select **Yes** to save the recorded video and the mail composition screen is displayed.

Setting the video for the standby display:

   ▶ **Select Yes**

The recorded video is saved and set for the standby display.

- If zooming is available for the shot video, select **Yes (Same size)** to maintain the image size or select **Yes (Large size)** to enlarge it to the screen size.
- If the i- ppli standby display has been set, a confirmation screen asking whether or not to cancel it is displayed continuously.

Adding the video to phonebook entries:

  ▶  or  ▶ **Select Yes**

The recorded video is saved and the phonebook registration screen is displayed.

- To update saved entries, select the party to add the video.
- Videos can be added to the phonebook entry only when the image size is set to 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF) or 176 x 144 (QCIF) and the recording type is set to **Video only**.

Changing the title: ▶ **Enter the title (up to 31 one-byte or two-byte characters)** ▶

- The changed title will be valid after the video is saved.

Inserting a ticker: ▶ **Select Yes**

The recorded video is saved and the ticker setting screen is displayed. Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Inserting tickers".

• P262

- When the image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA), a ticker cannot be inserted.

Displaying the list of videos stored:

5 Press or

The recorded video is saved in the **Camera** folder of **i-motion**.

Checking the saved video:  ▶ **Select a video**

INFORMATION

When you press a key or start charging the battery during recording, operation sound or confirmation sound may be recorded.

Recording may be stopped before the file size reaches the limit set for the size restrictions, depending on data you record.

When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum allowable number is exceeded, delete unwanted videos or sounds according to the screen or change settings of the size restrictions.

When a call arrives, the time set for the alarm clock or schedule alarm is reached or  is pressed during video recording, the recording ends at that point. The data recorded up to that point can be saved.

If the battery is almost exhausted during recording, the low battery message appears and the recording process ends. The data recorded up to that point can be saved.

If an alarm clock sound, schedule alarm or battery alarm interrupts recording, you may hear the alarm clock sound, schedule alarm or battery alarm at the end of the recorded video/sound.

Setting the still image/video size or the saving method

Still Image Setting/Recording Setting

- Images/videos cannot be set when the camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i- ppli software. In this case, **Camera time-out** is automatically reset to **1 min**.

Default

Still image settings

Image size: Standby (240 x 320)

Size restriction: None Quality: Standard

Shooting date/time: None

Continuous shot photos: 6 Auto save: No

Camera time-out: 1 min.

Shutter sound: Shutter sound1

Set lighting: Always on

Recording settings

Size restrict: Yes attach: Large

Quality: STD (Standard)

Image size: QCIF (176 x 144)

Recording Type: Video + Voice

Size restrict: SoundREC: Msg attach: Large

Quality: Sound recorder: STD (Standard)

Auto Play: No Auto save: No

Camera time-out: 1 min.

Shutter sound: Shutter sound1

Set lighting: Always on

Example When changing Still Image Setting

1 Hold down for over a second ▶

Changing Recording Setting:

    ▶  

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press

Checking the number of still images that can be shot (estimate):

The estimated number of still images that can be shot is displayed for each image size and quality.

- The number of images is calculated according to the current size restrictions. For any image size that cannot not be set from the current size restrictions, however, assignable size restrictions will be used for the calculation.
- When the image size selection screen is being displayed, the number can also be displayed by pressing .

Items to be set

Still image settings

Image size :

Set the image size. ◀P155

- You cannot set 960 x 1280 (SXGA) and *Msg attach:Small* (size restrictions) at the same time.

Size restriction :

Set the size restrictions. ◀P155

Quality :

Set the image quality. ◀P154

Shooting date/time :

Set whether to insert the shooting date and time at the lower right of still images.

- Even when *Date* or *Date + Time* has been set, if the image size is set at 96 x 72 (phonebook), the shooting date/time will not be inserted.

Continuous shot photos :

Set the number of images to be shot continuously (2 to 6 images).

Auto save :

If *Auto save* is set to *Yes*, the shot still image is automatically saved. When setting *No*, the image confirmation screen appears after shooting.

Camera time-out :

Set a time-out period of inactivity before termination of still image shooting.

Shutter sound :

Select one from the shutter sounds 1 to 5.

Set lighting :

When *Phone settings* is set, the setting conforms to *Normal use of Display light time* of Display Light Setting. ◀P116

Recording settings

Size restriction :

Set the size restrictions for video files. ◀P155

Quality :

Set the video quality. ◀P154

Image size :

Set the image size for video files. ◀P155

Recording Type :

Select *Video + Voice* or *Video only* as the recording type.

Size restrict:SoundREC :

Set the restrictions on file size for the voice recorded with Sound Recorder. ◀P279

Quality:Sound recorder :

Set the sound quality of the voice recorded with Sound Recorder. ◀P279

Auto Play :

Set whether to play the video/sound automatically when the image confirmation screen appears.

Auto save :

If *Auto save* is set to *Yes*, the recorded video/sound is automatically saved. Selecting *No* displays the image confirmation screen after recording.

Camera time-out :

Set a time-out period of inactivity before termination of video recording or Sound Recorder.

Shutter sound :

Select one from the shutter sounds 1 to 5.

Set lighting :

When *Phone settings* is set, the setting conforms to *Normal use of Display light time* of Display Light Setting. ◀P116

INFORMATION

You can also change the recording settings by pressing  in the Sound Recorder screen and selecting

Recording settings.

If Recording Setting is set for either video recording or Sound Recorder, both settings are changed.

The settings of *Shutter sound* are reflected to the settings of Shutter Sound of Sound Setting. ◀P104

The *Set lighting* setting is reflected to the settings of *Display light time* of Display Light Setting. ◀P116

Shooting by various methods

Zooming

The display magnifications which can be changed in each image size are as follows:

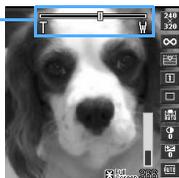
During still image shooting

Image size	Magnification
96 x 72 (phonebook)	10 times (25 steps)
128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	7.5 times (22 steps)
176 x 144 (QCIF)	5.5 times (18 steps)
240 x 320 (standby)	4 times (15 steps)
352 x 288 (CIF)	2.7 times (11 steps)
640 x 480 (H-VGA)	1.5 times (5 steps)
480 x 640 (V-VGA)	2 times (8 steps)
960 x 1280 (SXGA)	Zooming not possible

During video recording

Image size	Magnification
128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	1, 2, 4, and 6 times
176 x 144 (QCIF)	1, 2, 4, and 6 times
320 x 240 (QVGA)	1, 2 and 4 times

1 Press on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen



During still image shooting

Slider

Each time you press, the magnification changes and the slider indication shifts.

-  in this procedure corresponds to directions when you hold FOMA terminal horizontally.
- Shooting procedures for still images and videos are the same as in normal shooting.

3 Point the camera at the object and press



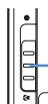
The countdown sound is heard and the auto timer starts countdown. The indicator and counter show an estimate of the remaining time before shooting and the remaining number of seconds. The interval of sounds becomes shorter as the shooting time approaches. After the specified number of seconds has elapsed, the shutter sound is heard and shooting is started.

- To stop the auto timer on the way: 
- The shooting stops if a call arrives, the time set for the alarm clock or schedule alarm arrives, or  is pressed during auto timer countdown.

Shooting nearby object

Macro

To shoot an object from a very short distance, switch the macro mode switch to  (Macro).



Macro mode switch (switched to Macro)

- Slide the switch (and do not stop sliding) until it reaches the end of the  side.
- When shooting, keep a distance of 7 to 10 cm in the macro mode or at least 50 cm in the normal mode.
- At the end of shooting in the macro mode, be sure to turn the macro mode switch back to  (normal mode). If you shoot a distant object without canceling  (Macro), you cannot get a sharp picture.

Using auto timer

The shutter is automatically released after the specified number of second has elapsed.

- You cannot use auto timer for manual continuous shooting or manual four-frame shooting.
- The number of seconds before the shutter is released can be selected from among 2, 5, 10 and 15.

1 on the still image shooting screen or on the video recording screen

2 to



The auto timer is set and any of the , ,  and  is displayed.

- To cancel the setting:



Icon of auto timer

Changing the settings during shooting

- The following settings will be maintained even after you terminates still image shooting or video recording.
 - Brightness · Color density · Shake reduce
 - Quality · Size restriction · Image size
 - Flicker adjustment

Default SceneModes: Full auto Brightness: ± 0
 ColorDnsty: ± 0 WhiteBalance: Auto
 ShakeReduce: Auto Frame: not set
 Quality: <Still image> Standard <Video> STD (Standard)
 Size Limit: <Still image> None <Video> Msg attach:Large
 Size: <Still image> 240 x 320 (standby) <Video> 176 x 144 (QCIF) Adjust flicker: Auto

- 1 to highlight the icon on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen to highlight an item to set Press



Selecting scene mode/effect

- and in this procedure correspond to directions when you hold FOMA terminal horizontally.
- Flicker adjustment cannot be set by the icon. Setting flicker adjustment P155
- Keypads of to and are assigned for each icon from the left. Icons can be selected also by pressing the relevant keypad. Every time you press a key, the value of the corresponding item changes (excluding the brightness and color density).
 - : Scene mode/effect
 - : Brightness : Color density
 - : White balance
 - : Shake reduction (only for video recording)
 - : Frame
 - : Continuous shooting (only for still image shooting) P148
 - : Quality : Size restriction
 - : Image size
- To cancel the frame, hold down on the shooting screen for over a second.

Scene mode/effect

You can select a suitable mode or effect in accordance with the shooting condition or the color shade you want to apply.

Full auto :

Standard scene mode/effect. Use this mode normally.

Adjust backlight :

Compensates backlight images by adjusting brightness of the darkened part such as face.

Spot photometry :

Brightness of the whole image is set based on its central part.

Scenery :

Suitable for shooting nature or cityscape vividly. Intensity and sharpness are set rather high.

Night :

Slows the shutter speed for night shooting. Hold the terminal firmly to prevent blurring.

Twilight :

Suitable for shooting the beautiful sunset scenery. With high intensity, images tend to look rather cyan.

Surf&Snow :

Enhances the blue of the sky and sea, and the white of snow.

Sport :

Shutter speed is set to high, allowing you to shoot fast-moving objects with less jiggling.

Pet :

Shutter speed and color intensity are set to high.

Gourmet :

Suitable for shooting cuisines and sweets.

Letter :

Enhances letter outlines.

Whiten :

Skin-color looks brighter and whiter. Recommended for indoor shooting.

Suntan :

Skin-color looks sun-tanned. Recommended for outdoor shooting situation.

Soft touch :

Blurs the outlines to soften the image.

Mono tone (red) :

Shoots in monotone of red gradation.

Mono tone (green) :

Shoots in monotone of green gradation.

Mono tone (blue) :

Shoots in monotone of blue gradation.

Monochrome :

Shoots images like black-and-white photographs.

Sepia :

Shoots in sepia colors.

- **Night** cannot be set with the automatic continuous shooting or automatic four-frame shooting.
- In **Night** mode, color is captured more precisely; due to the camera characteristics, there may be noise (such as lines) in the image when shootings are done in a low-light situation.
- In **Sport** or **Pet** mode, shoot in a sufficient-light situation. There may be noise in the images shot in a room or a low-light situation.
- In **Gourmet** or **Letter** mode, switch to Macro when shooting from a close range.
- Press on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen to select a mode while viewing the description of each mode.

Brightness

: +2 : +1 : ±0
 : -1 : -2

- If you change the level, it may not give much effect depending on the object.
- Unavailable when the scene mode/effect is set to **Whiten** or **Suntan**.

Color density

: +2 : +1 : ±0
 : -1 : -2

- If you change the level, it may not give much effect depending on the object.
- Unavailable when the scene mode/effect is set to **Whiten**, **Suntan**, **Mono tone (red)**, **Mono tone (green)**, **Mono tone (blue)**, **Monochrome** or **Sepia**.

White balance

Natural color tone coordinated with the light source is provided for shooting.

Auto :

Adjusts white balance automatically.

Sunlight :

Sets when shooting outdoor in fine weather.

Cloudy :

Sets when shooting in cloudy weather, shade or evening.

Fluorescent light :

Sets when shooting under illumination such as a fluorescent lamp.

Bulb light :

Sets when shooting under illumination such as an electric bulb.

- Unavailable when the scene mode/effect is set to **Scenery**, **Twilight**, **Surf&Snow**, **Whiten**, **Suntan**, **Mono tone (red)**, **Mono tone (green)**, **Mono tone (blue)**, **Monochrome**, or **Sepia**.

Shake reduction

Set whether to use the shake reduction function during video recording.

- You cannot use during still image shooting.

Auto :

Shake reduction is automatically activated when the settings and conditions for shooting are likely to cause camera shake.

OFF :

Shake reduction is disabled.

INFORMATION

Camera shake may not be corrected in the following cases:

- When camera shake is too much
- When the object is moving
- When shooting with zoom

Even in other cases, note that camera shake may not be corrected, depending on the object or shooting situation. When you record video using the shake reduction function, the angle of coverage becomes narrower as compared with the case where shake reduction is disabled.

If you use the shake reduction function with the flicker adjustment being set to **Auto**, flickering may not be adjusted sufficiently. It is recommended that you change the flicker adjustment setting according to the local power supply frequency.

Frames

You can select frames saved in FOMA terminal or frame images downloaded from sites.

: Frame is set : Frame is canceled

- The frames registered in FOMA terminal by default are applicable to image sizes of 176 x 144 (QCIF) and 240 x 320 (standby). P349
- Frames cannot be set when 96 x 72 (phonebook), 640 x 480 (H-VGA), 480 x 640 (V-VGA) or 960 x 1280 (SXGA) for image size of still image, or 320 x 240 (QVGA) for image size of video is set.

INFORMATION

You can also select frames from the list by pressing on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen.

If you select a frame that is opposite in horizontal and vertical values to the image size, the frame is displayed after rotating 90 degrees clockwise; for example, suppose that you have selected a 144 x 176 frame when the image size is 176 x 144 (QCIF). In this case, the frame rotates 180 degrees by pressing on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen. Note that your frame cannot be rotated if it is the same as the image size in terms of horizontal and vertical values. If the frame downloaded from a site during shooting is not displayed, press on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen.

Quality

Set the quality of still image or video to shoot.

During still image shooting

Fine :

Provides the highest quality. The file size is enlarged.

**Standard :**

Provides the standard quality.

**Economy :**

Provides the lowest quality. The file size is reduced.

During video recording**HQ+ :**

Provides the highest quality. The file size is enlarged and the recording time becomes the shortest.

**HQ :**

The video motion becomes smooth.

**STD :**

Provides the standard quality

**LP :**

Provides the lowest quality. The file size is reduced and the recording time becomes the longest.

Size restriction

Set the size restrictions of files.

During still image shooting

When the file size of the shot still image is larger than the limit value, this setting automatically degrades the quality or reduce the file size to save the image.

**None :**

No restriction for the file size.

**Msg attach:Large*1 :**

Restricts the file size to 2 Mbytes. You can attach the image to i-mode Mail without changing the file size.

**Msg attach:Small*1 :**

Restricts the file size to 90 Kbytes. The image with this file is suitable for attaching to i-mode Mail.

- If the image size is 960 x 1280 (SXGA), you cannot use *Msg attach:Small* for the setting.
- The setting for size restrictions may be changed automatically depending on the setting for the image size.

During video recording

When the file size of video exceeds the limit value during video recording, recording ends automatically.

**Msg attach:Large*1 :**

Restricts the file size to 1.99 Mbytes.

**Msg attach:Small*1 :**

Restricts the file size to 500 Kbytes. The file of this size is suitable to be attached to i-mode Mail.

*1 When you select the icon, *Msg attach S* or *Msg attach L* is displayed on the screen.

Image size

You can set the following image size:

Shooting method	Icon	Image size	Remarks	
Still Camera		96 x 72 (phonebook)	①	
		128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)		
		176 x 144 (QCIF)		
	Still Camera		240 x 320 (Standby)	②
			352 x 288 (CIF)	
			640 x 480 (H-VGA)	
		480 x 640 (V-VGA)		
		960 x 1280 (SXGA)		
Movie Camera		128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	③	
		176 x 144 (QCIF)		
		320 x 240 (QVGA)		

①: Images can sent as an i-mode mail attachment. In addition, these sizes are suitable for attaching to Deco-mail.

②: Images can sent as an i-mode mail attachment. A confirmation screen appears asking whether to convert to 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (standby) when attaching files to mail.

③: Images can sent as an i-mode mail attachment.

- The maximum size of an image or video file that can be sent to the i-mode terminal is up to 2 Mbytes.
- Depending on the receiver's model, the file may not be received or displayed properly, or video may be degraded or displayed as continuous images.
- When a video file is sent to devices other than i-mode Mail terminal (compatible with 2-Mbyte files), use the video size of 176 x 144 (QCIF).
- The still image size best suited for viewing on the i-mode terminal is 240 x 320 (standby).
- The setting for size restrictions may be changed automatically depending on the setting for the image size.

Flicker adjustment

If you set the flicker adjustment according to the power supply frequency of the area of use when the screen flickers under a fluorescent light etc., the flicker may be reduced.

- Even if you adjust the flicker under a strong light source, the flicker may not disappear.

1 on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen

2 Press any of **[1]** to **[3]**

Auto :

Adjusts to reduce the flicker automatically.

50Hz (East-Japan) :

Adjusts according to the power supply frequency of Eastern Japan.

60Hz (West-Japan) :

Adjusts according to the power supply frequency of Western Japan.

INFORMATION

This setting is also reflected to the flicker adjustment setting for the videophone and Bar Code Reader. **▶P73, P157**

Changing the settings collectively Adjust All

You can set the brightness, color density, white balance and flicker adjustment at the same time.

- Adjust All is unavailable when you select *Whiten* or *Suntan* of Scene Mode/Effect.

1 **[Menu]** **[2]** **[5]** on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen

Operating in the scene mode/effect setup screen:

- ① **[Menu]** **[1]** on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen
- ② **Highlight the scene mode/effect** **[▶]** **[Menu]**

2 Select each item to set **[▶]** Press **[OK]**

- The *Scene mode/effect* field displays the current scene mode/effect (or the scene mode/effect selected in the scene mode/effect setup screen if you have operated in that setup screen). It cannot be changed.
- Some items cannot be selected depending on the scene mode/effect.
- If you have operated in the scene mode/effect setup screen, pressing **[OK]** sets the scene mode/effect as well.

Resetting all items to the default settings collectively: **[OK]** **[▶]** **Select Yes**

Restoring the default settings for shooting

Reset the settings for the scene mode/effect, brightness, color density, white balance and flicker adjustment to the default settings.

1 **[Menu]** **[2]** **[6]** on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen

2 Select **Yes**

Sending still images shot during voice calls One-shot Message

Send the still image shot during a voice call by attaching it to i-mode Mail to the other party during the call.

1 **[OK]** during a voice call

2 Shoot a still image

- When **Yes** is set for *Auto save* in Still Image Setting, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to attach the shot image to mail. If **Yes** is selected, the shot still image can be checked.
- The still images shot continuously are displayed as thumbnails. Press **[▶]** to highlight the still image.

3 **[OK]** **[▶]** Select **Yes**

The shot still image is saved and the mail composition screen appears.

- If the mail address of the other party you are talking to has been registered in the phonebook, the other party's address is inserted in the receiver field automatically. However, the mail address is not inserted when Privacy Mode is active (with *Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*)
- Confirmation screens may appear depending on the image and file size. The displayed screen is the same as with mail attachment made from a confirmation screen during still image shooting. **▶P147**

4 Compose and send i-mode Mail

- To return to the talking screen: **[2/2]**

Using Bar Code Reader Bar Code Reader

You can scan and use text and numerics from the JAN code or QR code.

- You can save the scanned data up to 5 items.
- The bar codes and 2-dimensional codes other than JAN and QR codes cannot be scanned.
- Some bar codes may not be scanned depending on the types and sizes.

- Scratches, dirt, damages, the low print quality, the strong reflection of light or some QR code versions may prevent the codes from being scanned.
- You can activate Bar Code Reader on the character entry screen and enter the scanned data directly. ◀P334

JAN Code

The JAN code is one of the bar codes indicating numbers with the vertical lines (bars) of different width. The bar codes of 8 digits (JAN8) or 13 digits (JAN13) can be scanned.

The JAN code below shows the numeral data "4942857127812".



QR Code

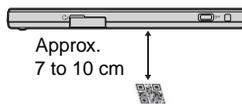
The QR code is one of the two-dimensional codes indicating a string of alphanumeric and other characters (kanji, kana and pictograms) or data such as melody or image with the vertical and horizontal patterns.



The left QR code shows the text data "FOMA D703i".

Scanning the code

Keep the camera about 7 to 10 cm away from the code to scan.



- 1 Press **Menu** **6** **1** ▶ Slide the macro mode switch to (Macro)



Macro mode switch (switched to Macro)

- After bar code reading finished, turn the macro mode switch back to (normal mode) to make the camera ready for a next shooting occasion. If you shoot a distant object without canceling (Macro), you cannot get a sharp picture.
- To read a large size code, switch the mode to the normal mode.

- During bar code reading, the following operations are enabled:



Switch to the same size



Switch to the double size

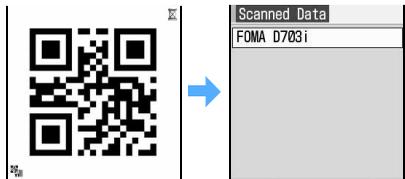
- To set flicker adjustment: **Menu** **1** ▶ **1** to **3**

- For details of settings ◀P155

- This setting is also reflected to the flicker adjustment setting for the videophone and camera. ◀P73, P155

2 Scan the code

When you point the camera toward the code, the code is scanned automatically. If scanned correctly, a confirmation sound is played and the scanned data is displayed.



- When it is hard to read the code, adjust the distance, angle or direction of the code and the camera. This may enable the code to be read. Switching to the same size may also work out.
- If the code cannot be read within 30 seconds after key operation, **Could not scan.** appears on the screen. If the code still cannot be read within another 30 seconds, **Could not scan.** appears again and Bar Code Reader terminates.
- If the data exceeds 11,000 one-byte or 5,500 two-byte characters, the exceeded characters are not displayed, but can be saved.
- When scanning is paused such as while a submenu is displayed, the icon indicated at the upper right of the screen changes to .

Re-scanning the code:

3 Press **Menu** **4**

The scanned data is saved.

- When 5 data items have already been saved or the memory is not enough, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete the saved data. Select **Yes** to delete the saved data.

Copying the text data in the scanned data:

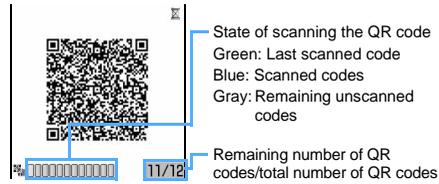
- ① **Menu** **1** ▶ Select the start position to copy

- To copy the entire text data: **Menu**

- ② Select the end position to copy

Scanning divided QR codes

When the data is divided into multiple parts (up to 16), scan them one by one according to messages displayed on the screen.



- Press **[2/7]** to cancel scanning on the way. Select **Yes** when a confirmation screen appears asking whether to discard the scanned QR code data.

INFORMATION

If you press **[Menu]** on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen and select **Switch mode Bar code reader**, Bar Code Reader can be used as well. Press **[Menu]** **[2]** on the bar code reading screen and press **[1]** or **[2]** to switch to Still Camera or Movie Camera. When Bar Code Reader is started from the character entry screen or *i- ppli*, switching is not available. The scanned data is given a file name made up of the scanned date and time + serial file number + .jan or .qr (“jan” is for JAN code and “qr” for QR code). The file name 20070520123400.jan, for example, means the JAN code scanned at 12:34 on May 20, 2007. When there are any previously saved data at the same date and time, 1 is added to the serial file number. The file name cannot be changed.

Using the scanned data

The available operations vary depending on the scanned data.

Example Adding data to the phonebook

- [Menu]** **[6]** **[1]** ▶ **[☐]**
- Select the scanned data**
Deleting the scanned data: Highlight the data ▶ **[Menu]** **[3]** **[1]** ▶ **Select Yes**
 - To delete all: **[Menu]** **[3]** **[2]** ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ **Select Yes**
- Highlight the data to add to the phonebook** ▶ **[Menu]** **[3]** **[1]** (**Add new data**) or **[Menu]** **[3]** **[2]** (**Update**) ▶ Press **[1]** or **[2]**

The phonebook registration screen appears with the highlighted data entered.

- To update saved entries, select the party to add the data.

Adding all data to the phonebook at one time: Select Add to phonebook ▶ **[1]** or **[2]**

The phonebook registration screen appears. The name and the reading are also entered depending on the data.

Sending i-mode Mail: Select a mail address or Compose message

The mail composition screen appears.

- When **Compose message** is selected, the subject and the text are entered depending on the data.

Connecting i-mode sites or Internet websites: Select a URL ▶ **Select Yes**

- When the display is possible in both i-mode and Full Browser, selecting **Yes** displays i-mode and selecting **[☐]** displays Full Browser.

Saving URLs as bookmarks:

- Highlight a URL** ▶ **[Menu]** **[3]** **[3]** or **select Add bookmark**
- Select a folder**
- Enter a title name (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters)** ▶ **[☐]**
 - When **Add bookmark** is selected, the title name is also entered depending on the data.

Starting i- ppli: Select Start i- ppli

Making a voice/videophone call:

- Select a phone number** ▶ **Set the dialing conditions** ▶ **P54**
- [Menu]** ▶ **Select Yes**
 - To make a call after invalidating the settings other than Chaku-moji and call type: **[Menu]** ▶ **Select No, use original**

Saving still images:

- Select the file name of a still image** ▶ **Select Save**
 - To display a still image: **Select Display**
- Select each item to set** ▶ **[☐]** ▶ **P270**
- Select a folder to save**

Saving melodies:

- Select a file name of melody** ▶ **Select Save**
 - To play the melody: **Select Play**
- Enter a display name** ▶ **[☐]**

The melody is saved in the *Data transfer* folder of *Melody* in Data Box.

i-mode/i-motion/i-channel

What's i-mode?	160
Displaying sites	
Displaying i-mode sites	160
Reading and operating sites	162
Using My Menu	My Menu 163
Changing your current i-mode password	Change i-mode Password 164
Displaying Internet websites	Internet Connection 164
Registering websites and i-mode sites for quick browsing ...	Bookmark 165
Saving site contents	Screen Memo 167
Downloading images and melodies from sites	
Downloading images from sites	Save Image 168
Downloading melodies from sites	i-melody 169
Downloading PDF data from sites	169
Downloading dictionaries from sites	169
Downloading Chara-den from sites	170
Downloading the original certificate from sites	170
Downloading Machi-chara from sites	170
Useful functions of i-mode	
Useful functions of i-mode	171
Making i-mode settings	
Making i-mode settings	i-mode Setting 172
Using Message Service	
When Message R/F is received	Receive Message R/F 174
Displaying saved Message R/F	Message R/Message F 175
Using certificate	
Operating certificates	177
Using i-motion	
i-motion	179
Downloading i-motion from sites	179
Setting auto play and the type of i-motion to be downloaded	i-motion Setting 181
Using i-channel	
i-channel	181
Displaying i-channel	Channel List 183
Changing i-channel settings	i-Channel Ticker 183
Restoring i-channel information to the default settings	Reset i-Channel 184

What's i-mode?

With i-mode, you can use online services such as connecting to i-mode sites (programs) or Internet websites, or sending and receiving i-mode Mail by using the display of i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter called the i-mode terminal).

- i-mode is a pay service for which subscription is required. Please refer to the back cover of this manual for further information on subscription.
- For details of i-mode service, see the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Before using i-mode

The contents of i-mode sites (programs) and Internet websites are usually protected by copyright laws. All or any portion of text, image or other data downloaded to your i-mode terminal from these i-mode sites (program) or Internet websites cannot be used or altered except for personal use, and cannot be sold or redistributed in any form without the express permission of the copyright holder. Data saved/registered in your i-mode terminal (mail, Message R/F, screen memo, i- ppli, i-motion, and bookmark) may be erased due to failure, repair, or other handling of i-mode terminal. It is recommended that you maintain a separate record of the data you saved/registered in your i-mode terminal. We are not responsible for any lost data.

Depending on the model, you cannot display or play still images, videos or melodies downloaded from sites, files (images, videos, melodies, etc.) attached to sent/received mail, screen memos or Message R/Fs when the power of your terminal is turned on with another UIM or no UIM inserted. When the data with the UIM operation restriction enabled is set for the standby display or ring alert, the settings return to the default if the power is turned on with another UIM or no UIM inserted. When the UIM that was used during downloading the data is inserted, the settings returns to the previous settings.

INFORMATION

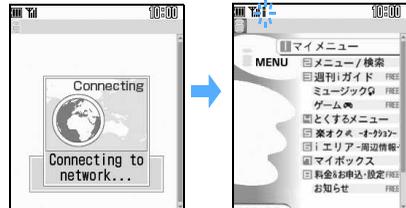
If you have a PC, data such as mail and bookmarks can be saved to the PC by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink and the FOMA USB Cable (optional). If you subscribe to Data Security Service (charged), you can save mails in the Data Center.

Menu 21

Displaying i-mode sites

1 Select English iMenu

Flashes in i-mode communication.



- Press  on the connecting screen to stop connection.
- Item with the number such as  or  can be selected by pressing the key of the number corresponding to the item (Direct key function). However, you may not select them on some sites.

2 Select Menu List



- Press  while accessing the page to stop downloading.

3 Select an item

You are connected to a site. You can display the target page by repeating this operation.

4 when you finish viewing the site Select Yes

INFORMATION

When you display a site containing an image, the following icons may be indicated instead of the image:

-  : When *Not display* is set for *Image* in Image & Effect Setting ( in case of undownloaded image of Message R/F)

 : When no image has been received because, for example, the image data is invalid, the image is missing, or FOMA terminal is out of the service area

 : When the image cannot be displayed because of incorrect URL

To return to iMenu during site display, press  and select **iMenu**.

When a site requests your FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number, a confirmation screen appears. When you select **Yes**, your FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number is sent. The IP (Information Provider) uses the FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number to identify you for providing the information customized for you or for determining whether your FOMA terminal supports the site content provided by the IP. Since your FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number is sent to the IP via the Internet, there is a possibility the information could be intercepted by third parties. However, your information such as FOMA terminal's phone number, your address, age, and sex will never be disclosed to the IP with this operation. If a site requests entry of the user name and password, the entry screen is displayed. Enter the user name and password of the site and select **OK**.

Connecting to SSL pages

You can display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) by the same operation as for ordinary sites.

- Some SSL pages may not allow connection unless the date and time are set.
- Establishment of SSL session may require electronic information called "certificate" for the connected site and FOMA terminal issued by the same certifier. 
- To connect to a FirstPass compatible site, you need to download a user certificate for the site from the FirstPass center and save it in the UIM.

Connecting to an SSL page

A screen informing you of the start of SSL communication is displayed. When the certificate saved in FOMA terminal is required for the SSL communication, the selection screen is displayed.

 appears on the top of the screen when the SSL page is displayed.

Displaying a certificate during SSL page display:   

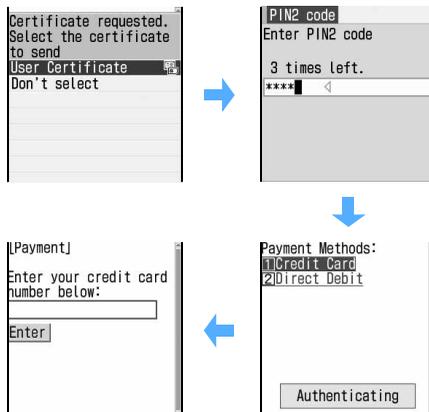
- Certificate contents 

Displaying an ordinary page from an SSL page

A confirmation screen appears. Select **Yes** to display an ordinary page and  disappears on the top of the screen.

Connecting to a FirstPass compatible page

The following screens appear:



① Select a certificate

- In case **Detail** is displayed in the guide row when you highlight a certificate, press  to check the content of the certificate.

② Enter the PIN2 code

The certificate is sent and the FirstPass compatible page is displayed.

- If the correct PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the SSL communication is disconnected.

INFORMATION

Packet communication fee while being connected to FirstPass compatible sites will be included in the Pake-Houdai service. However, the fee for data communication using a connected PC will not be included in the Pake-Houdai service.

Menu 233

Reconnecting to the page displayed last

Last Visited URL

Last Visited URL allows you to quickly reconnect to the page displayed last.

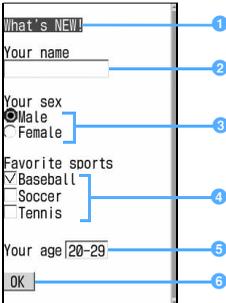
- Some pages may not be displayed. In addition, pages different from the last visited one may be displayed.

1    ▶ Press 

Reading and operating sites

Selecting links and items

Selectable items and entry fields appear depending on the page. Press **[↑]** to highlight an item or entry field and press **[↵]** to select the item or enter characters.



1 Link

Select to jump to a related page. The link is highlighted when the cursor is placed over.

2 Character entry field

Enter characters. The character types and the maximum number of characters that can be entered depend on the character entry field.

3 Radio button (: Unselected : Selected)

You can select only one from selections.

4 Check box (: Unselected : Selected)

You can select multiple items from selections. Press **[↵]** to switch between and .

5 Pulldown menu

Select an item from the item list.

6 Button (name differs depending on the site)

You can send page settings to a site or cancel the settings.

INFORMATION

Some images may have links.

The character entry screen allows you to enter the phonebook data, registered contents of Own Number and character strings information of the JAN or QR code read by Bar Code Reader. **▶P334**

Depending on the pulldown menu, multiple items can be selected by pressing **[↵]**. After selecting items, press **[OK]**.

The information set or entered using radio buttons, check boxes, pulldown menus, or character entry fields does not have effect on the contents of registered bookmarks or screen memos.

Flash movie displays

Flash movie allows expressive sites to be displayed.

- Some sites that use Flash movie may not be operated or displayed in the same way as normal sites.
- Even if saved as an image or screen memo, some Flash movies may appear different from those displayed on sites because the part of the image is not saved.
- The sound effects of Flash movie set for the standby display or incoming image do not play.
- Even if Flash movie is displayed, it may not operate correctly. Also, you may not be able to save Flash movie that does not operate correctly.
- If an error occurs while playing Flash movie, the image cannot be saved.
- Even if **[⏮]** is not indicated in the guide row, some Flash movies may be operated.
- To play Flash movie from the beginning, press **[Menu]** **[9]** **[7]**.
- Some Flash movies may have sound effects. The volume conforms to the ring alert volume for calls specified by Adjust Volume. To disable sound effects during site display, press **[Menu]** **[9]** **[3]** and set **Sound effect setting** to **OFF** in Image & Effect Setting.
- Even if Vibrator Setting is set to other than **OFF**, FOMA terminal does not vibrate when the sound effects of Flash movie play.
- Note that some Flash movies may vibrate FOMA terminal during play even if Vibrator Setting is set to **OFF**.
- If no operation is performed for 30 seconds or longer while playing Flash movie, it is brought to a pause. To replay, press any of the following keys: **[↓]**, **[↑]**, **[←]**, **[→]**, **[M]**, **[O]** to **[9]**, **[*]**, **#[**, **0#**.

Displaying the previous or next page

FOMA terminal keeps a record of the last 20 pages displayed in a "cache".

- Cache is a storage space in FOMA terminal that temporarily records the displayed pages. You can display the recorded pages by pressing **[↵]** without establishing communication. In case the cache is full or a page that is set by the site to load the latest page is displayed, FOMA terminal starts communication.
- This function is unavailable while being connected to the FirstPass center. **▶P178**

1 page before the current page



Indicates you can proceed to the next page.

Current page



Indicates you can return to the previous page.

INFORMATION

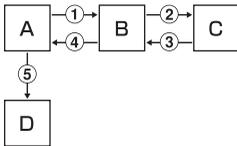
Records in the cache may be deleted when it is full.

Pressing **[←]** may not return to previous pages.

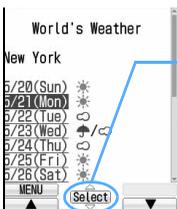
Information such as entered characters or settings is not recorded.

When you terminate i-mode, all the records in the cache are deleted.

The operation may differ when Flash movie is displayed. When you display page A → page B → page C in this order (①, ②), return to page A (③, ④), and proceed to page D (⑤), the display record of page A → page B → page C is deleted. You can return to page A from page D but you cannot then return to page B.



Scrolling the screen



When there are more rows or links not shown on the screen, and appear in the guide row to allow scrolling.

- Press **[↓]** to scroll the screen. Hold down the button to scroll continuously.
- Press **[E]** or **[M]** to scroll the screen by a page. Hold down the button to scroll the screen continuously by a page.

Reloading data

When sites cannot be displayed because of connection interruption, etc., you may be able to display the sites by reloading.

- 1 Press **[Menu]** **[5]** during site display

Displaying the URL of current site

- 1 Press **[Menu]** **[9]** **[1]** during site display

Using My Menu

My Menu

You can register i-mode sites in My Menu, which allows you to quickly access the sites later.

- Up to 45 sites can be registered.
- You need the i-mode password to register sites. The i-mode password is set to "0000" by default.
- When you submit an application to a pay site registered in Menu List of iMenu, the site is automatically registered in My Menu.
- Only the sites listed in Menu List of iMenu can be registered in My Menu. However, some sites cannot be registered in My Menu. To register the site which cannot be registered or Internet websites, use Bookmark.

Registering sites in My Menu

- 1 Select **マイメニュー登録 (Register)** during site display

- Since the page structure differs depending on the site, press the key of the number corresponding to the item or select the applicable item.

- 2 Select the i-mode password entry field ▶ Enter the i-mode password ▶ Select **決定 (OK)**

Displaying sites from My Menu

- 1 Select **iMenu** ▶ **English iMenu** ▶ **My Menu** ▶ Select a site

Changing your current i-mode password

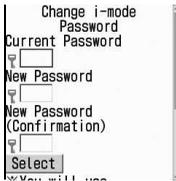
Change i-mode Password

Your i-mode password is required to register/delete sites in/from My Menu, subscribe to/cancel Message Service or i-mode pay sites, or make the mail settings. The i-mode password is set to "0000" by default, so change it to your own number (4 digits). Please be careful never to reveal your i-mode password to others.

- Please note that, if you forget the i-mode password, you need to bring the identification (driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.

1 Select *iMenu* ▶ *English iMenu* ▶ *Options*
▶ Select *Change i-mode Password*

2 Select *Current Password* field ▶ Enter the current i-mode password



3 Select *New Password* field ▶ Enter a new i-mode password

4 Select *New Password (Confirmation)* field
▶ Re-enter the password entered in Step 3
▶ Select *Select*

- When there is an error or omission in the entered contents, an error screen is displayed. Select *Re-enter* and operate from Step 2 again.

Menu 231

Displaying Internet websites

Internet Connection

- Internet websites incompatible with i-mode may not be displayed correctly.
- You can switch i-mode to Full Browser. ▶P247

1 [Home] [3] [1]

- From the next time, the last entered URL you connected to appears.

2 Enter a URL (up to 256 one-byte characters)

▶ Press [Home]

- To enter "/", ".", ", "- , etc., press [1] repeatedly in the alphabet input mode. To enter "http://www.", ".co.jp", ".ne.jp", ".com" and ".html", press [X] repeatedly in the alphabet input mode.

INFORMATION

On the site screen, press [Menu] and select *Go to location*
Enter URL.

A message is displayed when received data exceeds the maximum size for a page. Press [3] to clear the message and display the received data.

The operation procedures when displaying Internet website are the same as when displaying i-mode site.

Menu 232

Displaying sites using URL history

URL History

The terminal keeps a record of the last 20 URLs of sites you connected to by entering URL. You can use this URL history to connect to Internet websites.

1 [Home] [3] [2]

2 Select the URL of an Internet website

- A long URL is shown only partially. To check the URL, highlight it and press [Home].

Editing the URL and connecting to it:

① Highlight a URL in the URL history list ▶

[Menu] [6]

② Edit the URL ▶ [Home]

Deleting the URL history:

① Highlight a URL in the URL history list ▶

[Menu] [4] [1]

- To delete all: [Menu] [4] [2] in the URL history list ▶ Enter the terminal security code

② Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

On the site screen, press [Menu] and select *Go to location*
URL history.

When the number of recorded URLs exceeds 20, the oldest URL is overwritten.

Displaying characters correctly Character Encode

When characters are not displayed correctly on i-mode sites or websites, they may be displayed correctly by changing the character encode. Character encode is a generic term for the encoding scheme and structure developed for making characters available on computers.

1 Press **Menu** **9** **6** **1** during displaying i-mode sites or websites

- Each press of these keys switches the character encodes in the following order: *Auto switch* SJIS EUC JIS UTF8. Pressing **Menu** **9** **6** **2** returns to *Auto switch*.
- When you display an i-mode sites or website, *Auto switch* is set.
- Characters may not be displayed correctly even if you change character encodes.

Registering websites and i-mode sites for quick browsing Bookmark

If you register your favorite i-mode sites or websites in Bookmark, you can quickly display the pages by only selecting bookmarks.

- The maximum number of bookmarks that can be registered ➔P381
- You cannot register URLs longer than 256 one-byte characters in Bookmark.
- Some sites may not be registered in Bookmark.

Registering in Bookmark

1 Display an i-mode site or website **▶** **Menu** **2** **1** **▶** Select a folder to save the bookmark

2 Enter a title name (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters) **▶** **□**

- If you save the bookmark without entering a title, the URL is displayed in the bookmark list.

INFORMATION

In the screen memo list, screen memo view screen, or URL history list, press **Menu** and select *Add bookmark*. When the maximum number of registered bookmarks is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite the registered bookmarks. To register a new URL, select the bookmark to overwrite.

Displaying websites or i-mode sites from Bookmark

1 **□** **2**

2 Select a folder

□: No bookmark

□: Bookmark present

3 Select a bookmark

Checking the URL: Highlight a bookmark



INFORMATION

On the site screen, press **Menu** and select *Bookmark Display*.

Connecting to sites using simple key operation i-mode Shortcut

When you register a bookmark as i-mode shortcut, you can quickly display an i-mode site or website from the standby display.

- Up to 10 sites can be registered in total for i-mode and Full Browser.

1 **□** **2** **▶** Select a folder

2 Highlight a bookmark **▶** **Menu** **2**

- If a bookmark unregistered as an i-mode shortcut has been highlighted, you can also register it by pressing **□**.

Canceling: Highlight a bookmark **▶**



3 Select the number to register

- The icon numbers (**□** to **□**) correspond to the dial keys (**□** to **9**) used to display the site with i-mode Shortcut.
- In the bookmark list, the icon changes from **□** to **□** when registered.
- If the already registered number is selected, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite it. When *Yes* is selected, it is overwritten.

Displaying a site using i-mode Shortcut

1 The dial key (**□** to **9**) **▶** Press **□**

1 Press

The list of i-mode shortcuts is displayed.
 • is indicated for a bookmark of Full Browser.

Displaying a site: Select a bookmark

Registering a site:

- ① **Highlight *Not recorded*** ▶
 - To register a bookmark of Full Browser:
 Highlight *Not recorded* ▶

② **Select a folder** ▶ **Select a bookmark**

Canceling an i-mode shortcut: Highlight a bookmark ▶ ▶ **Select *Yes***

Checking the URL: Highlight a bookmark ▶

Creating/deleting folders

Creating a folder

• Up to 20 folders including フォルダ1 can be created.

1 ▶

Changing a folder name: Highlight a folder in the folder list ▶

Changing the order of folders: Highlight a folder in the folder list ▶ ▶ or

2 Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ▶ Press

Deleting folders

• When only one folder exists, it cannot be deleted.

1 ▶ **Highlight a folder** ▶

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ **Select *Yes***

Moving bookmarks

1 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Highlight a bookmark** ▶
Moving selected bookmarks:
 ▶ **Select bookmarks** ▶

3 **Select a folder to move the bookmark to**

Renaming bookmark titles

1 ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Highlight a bookmark** ▶ Press

• Follow the procedure from Step 2 of “Registering in Bookmark”. ▶P165

Sending mail with a bookmark attached

1 ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Highlight a bookmark** ▶

The mail composition screen with the bookmark attached appears.

Deleting bookmarks

1 ▶ **Select a folder**

Deleting all the bookmarks: in the folder list ▶ **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ **Go to Step 3**

2 **Highlight a bookmark** ▶

Deleting selected bookmarks:
 ▶ **Select bookmarks** ▶

Deleting all the bookmarks in the folder:
 ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**

3 **Select *Yes***

INFORMATION

If you delete a bookmark registered as an i-mode shortcut, the i-mode Shortcut setting is also canceled.

Sorting bookmarks

Sort

Bookmarks in the list are temporarily sorted. When you quit the display, *By access date* returns.

- All the folders are the target of sorting.
- You can select from *By access date*, *By title*, *By URL* or *By access frequency*.

1 ▶ **Select a folder** ▶
 ▶ **Press any of** to

INFORMATION

If one-byte, two-byte, alphabetic, and kanji characters and URLs are mixed in titles, the result sorted by *By title* may not be in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

Saving site contents

Screen Memo

Saving screen memos

- The maximum number of items that can be saved
☛P381
- The maximum size of a screen memo that can be saved is 100 Kbytes including images, etc.

1 Display a site ▶

2 Enter a title name (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters) ▶ Press

- When you save the screen memo without entering the title, *No title* is displayed in the screen memo list.

INFORMATION

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite the saved screen memo. Select the screen memo to overwrite. The protected screen memos are not overwritten.

Menu 24

Displaying screen memos

1

2 Select a screen memo

- : Ordinary screen memo
- : Protected screen memo

- The available operations are the same as on site displays, with a few exceptions. ☛P162

Checking URL: Highlight a screen memo
▶

INFORMATION

On the site screen, press and select *Screen memo Display*. At this time, if the character encode has been changed, it is reset to *Auto switch* when returning to the site from the displayed screen memo.

To play Flash movie again during screen memo display, press and select *Display Retry*.

Renaming screen memo titles

1 ▶ Highlight a screen memo ▶ Press

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 of "Saving screen memos".

INFORMATION

During screen memo display, press and select *Rename title*.

Protecting screen memos

- The maximum number of items that can be protected ☛P381

1

2 Highlight a screen memo ▶ Press

The screen memo is protected and the icon changes from to .

- To cancel protection: Highlight a screen memo
▶

Protecting selected screen memos:

▶ Select screen memos ▶

Canceling protection of selected screen

memos: ▶ Select screen memos ▶

Canceling protection of all the screen

memos:

INFORMATION

During screen memo display, press and select *Protect or Release*.

Deleting screen memos

- Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

1

2 Highlight a screen memo ▶

Deleting selected screen memos:

▶ Select screen memos ▶

Deleting all the screen memos:

▶ Enter the terminal security code

3 Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

During screen memo display, press and select *Delete*.

Screen memos in the list are temporarily sorted. When you quit the display, *By date* returns.

- You can select *By date* or *By title*.

1  Press **1** or **2**

INFORMATION

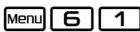
If one-byte, two-byte, alphabetic, and kanji characters and URLs are mixed in titles, the result sorted by *By title* may not be in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

Downloading images from sites

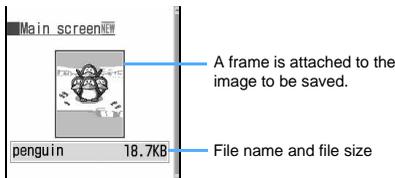
Images, frames or Deco-mail pictograms can be downloaded and saved from sites. The saved images can be viewed from *My Picture* or set for the standby display.

- The maximum number of items that can be saved **▶P381**
- The maximum size of an image that can be downloaded is 100 Kbytes.
- Images in GIF, JPEG or Flash format can be saved.

Example Downloading an image from a site

1 **Display a site**  **Saving the background image on site:**
Display a site  **Go to Step 3**

2 **Select an image**



3 **Select each item to set**

- For images that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal (file restriction set to *File restricted*), you can change the display name only.

Display name :

36 one byte or two-byte characters can be entered.

File name :

36 characters including one-byte alphanumeric, “.”, “-” and “_” can be entered. However, “.” character cannot be used for the first character of file name.

Comment :

100 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered.

Use as frame :

Sets whether to enable an image to be pasted as a frame image.

- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 352 x 288 cannot be changed to *Yes*.

Use as stamp :

Sets whether to enable an image to be pasted as a stamp image.

- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 240 x 320 cannot be changed to *Yes*.

File restriction :

When you send an image to another mobile phone via mail attachment, you can set whether to restrict that image from being sent again from the received party's mobile phone to any other mobile phone.

- The image files downloaded from sites cannot be changed.
- Some items may not be available for setting depending on the image file.
- Press **Menu** to display the menu list for setting images for the standby display, etc. **▶P253**

4  **Select the folder to save the image**

- For Deco-mail pictograms, the folder to save cannot be selected. The image is saved to the *Deco-mail pict* folder.

INFORMATION

Some images may not be displayed correctly.

Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 in GIF format or 1728 x 2304 in JPEG format cannot be saved. Also, some JPEG images may not be saved.

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the images. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete them. Before deletion, an image can be displayed by pressing  on the image list and detail information on the image can be displayed by pressing **Menu**.

When displaying a site containing an image wider than the display, the image will be reduced.

Downloading melodies from sites

i-melody

Your terminal can download melodies from sites and play and save them (compatible with i-melody). The saved melodies can be played from *Melody* or used as ring alert.

- The maximum number of items that can be saved
 • P381
- The maximum size of a melody that can be downloaded is 100 Kbytes.
- Melodies in the SMF and MFi formats can be saved.

1 Display a site ▶ Select a melody

- To stop downloading: 

2 Select Save

- To play the melody: Select *Play*
- To cancel saving: Select *Back* ▶ Select *No*

3 Enter a display name (up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters) ▶ Press

The melody is saved in the *i-mode* folder of *Melody*. • P267

INFORMATION

Some melodies may not play correctly.

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the melodies. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the melodies. Before deletion, you can play a melody by pressing  on the melody list and view detail information on the melody by pressing .

Downloading PDF data from sites

- The maximum number of items that can be saved
 • P381
- The maximum size of a PDF data file that can be downloaded is 2 Mbytes.
- Note that downloading large PDF data may incur high packet communication fees.

1 Display a site ▶ Select PDF data

- The data is downloaded and then displayed on PDF Viewer. • P279
- To stop downloading: 

- When a password is set for the PDF data, enter the password and press .
- To download the remaining data of the PDF data downloaded partially, press  .

2

- If the same PDF data has already existed, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite it, depending on the data. Select *Yes* to overwrite.

3 Enter a display name (up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters) ▶ Press

The PDF data is saved in the *i-mode* folder of *My Document*. • P279

- If not all the pages are downloaded, the downloaded part is saved.

INFORMATION

If you try to download PDF data exceeding 2 Mbytes, a message appears indicating that the data exceeds the download size limit and the download fails.

For the PDF data in which the total size of i-mode bookmarks and marks is larger than 100 Kbytes or whose size is unknown, the download fails.

When a different i-mode bookmark or mark is set for the PDF data that you are downloading again, the i-mode bookmark or mark is added. However, when the number of registered i-mode bookmarks or marks exceeds 10, a message appears indicating that the maximum number of registered items is exceeded. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete i-mode bookmarks or marks until the number is below the limit.

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete PDF data.

Follow the instructions on the screen and delete it. Before deletion, you can view detail information on the data by pressing  on the data list.

When you download PDF data exceeding 500 Kbytes in size, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to download. To download such data, select *Yes*.

If you stop downloading or the network connection breaks while downloading the PDF data, the data is saved incompletely. You can download it again from *My Document*. To download again, follow Step 3 in "Displaying the PDF data". • P280

Downloading dictionaries from sites

- Up to 10 items can be saved
- The maximum size of a dictionary that can be downloaded is 32 Kbytes.
- Using the downloaded dictionary • P337

1 Display a site ▶ Select a dictionary

- To stop downloading: 

2 Select *Save*

- To cancel saving: Select *Back* ▶ Select *No*

3 Press

The dictionary is saved to *DL dictionary of Other* in *Settings & NW services*.

INFORMATION

When the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the dictionary cannot be saved. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete any of the saved dictionaries.

Downloading Chara-den from sites

- The maximum number of items that can be saved
▶P381
- The maximum size of a Chara-den image that can be downloaded is 100 Kbytes.

1 Display a site ▶ Select a Chara-den image

- To stop downloading: 

2 Select *Save*

- To display the Chara-den image: Select *Display*
- To cancel saving: Select *Back* ▶ Select *No*

3 Select each item to set

Display name :

Up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered.

Comment :

Up to 100 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered.

4 Press

The Chara-den image is saved in the *i-mode* folder of *Chara-den*. ▶P264

INFORMATION

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the saved Chara-den images. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete them. Before deletion, the Chara-den images can be displayed by pressing  on the Chara-den list and detail information can be viewed by pressing .

If the preinstalled Chara-den has been deleted, it can be downloaded from the *i-mode* site, "My D-style". ▶P347

Downloading the original certificate from sites

- The original certificate can be saved up to 5 items. The RootCA certificate and intermediate certificate can be saved up to 10 items or 35 Kbytes in total.
- When the UIM (blue) is inserted, the original certificate cannot be downloaded.
- The original certificate is issued by each company. The downloaded certificate can be used on the site which supports the certificate.
- The packet communication fee for downloading is charged.
- Setting validity/invalidity of the downloaded original certificate ▶P177

1 Display a site ▶ Select the original certificate

- To stop downloading: 

2 Select *Save*

- To stop saving: Select *Back* ▶ Select *No*
- When entry of the password is required, enter the password and select *OK*.

INFORMATION

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the saved certificates. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete them. In case of user certificate, it can be displayed by pressing  in the certificate list before deletion.

Downloading Machi-chara from sites

- The maximum number of items that can be saved
▶P381
- The maximum size of a Machi-chara image that can be downloaded is 500 Kbytes.
- Setting Machi-chara ▶P120

1 Display a site ▶ Select a Machi-chara image

- To stop downloading: 

2 Select *Save*

- To display the preview screen: Select *Preview*
- To stop saving: Select *Back* ▶ Select *No*

3 Enter the display name (up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters)

- To set to display on the standby display: 

4 Press

The Machi-chara image is saved in the *i-mode* folder of *Machi-chara*. ◀P266

INFORMATION

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the saved Machi-chara images. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete them. Before deletion, Machi-chara can be displayed by pressing  in the Machi-chara list and the detail information can be viewed by pressing . Press  to switch between title display and thumbnail display.

If you save Machi-chara for which download stopped in the middle due to communication interruption, etc., you can download it again from *Machi-chara*. To download again, follow Step 3 in "Displaying Machi-chara". ◀P267

Useful functions of i-mode

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

When phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs are displayed on the screen, select them to make voice calls or videophone calls (Phone To/AV Phone To), compose i-mode Mail (Mail To), or connect to i-mode sites or websites (Web To).

- Some functions may not be available depending on i-mode sites or websites.

1 Display a site ▶ Select a link such as a phone number, mail address, or URL

- You can select only highlighted phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs.

Phone To (AV Phone To):

The Call Option screen appears.

① Set dialing conditions ◀P54

② ▶ Select *Yes*

- To dial with the setting other than Chaku-moji or call type set to invalid:  ▶ Select *No, use original*

Mail To:

The mail composition screen with the selected mail address set as the receiver is displayed.

① Compose and send i-mode Mail

- When multiple addresses are listed with no space in between, the Mail To function may not be available.

Web To:

You are connected to the selected i-mode site or website.

- When you executed from mail, etc, a confirmation screen appears. If you select *Yes*, you are connected to the site. When *Full Browser* in the guide row while displaying the confirmation screen is displayed, press  to display by Full browser.

Using the location information

When there are the link items of location information (address information) on the screen, you can display the map.

1 Display a site ▶ Select location information

2 Select a menu item

Viewing the map: Select *Read map* ▶

You are connected to a map site and a map is displayed. After the map is displayed, you can use i-area to check the peripheral information. For details on i-area, visit the DoCoMo website.

Using GPS compatible i- ppli: Select *Use i- ppli* ▶ ▶ Select *i- ppli*

- GPS compatible i- ppli is not registered by default.

Pasting to i-mode Mail: Select *Paste to mail* ▶

The mail composition screen on which  and the URL of location information are entered in the text is displayed.

Copying the URL

Copy the URL of the site or screen memo being displayed. The copied text can be pasted in the entry fields on the mail composition screen, phonebook registration screen, etc.

- The copied text is recorded until the power of FOMA terminal is turned off. You can paste it in other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be recorded. When you copy a new item, it overwrites the previously copied text.

Example Copying the URL of current site

- 1 Display the URL of a site** ▶
 - Displaying the URL ◀P163
- 2 Select the start position of the copying range** ▶ **Select the end position**
 - Press to select all the text.
 - Press to specify the start position again.
 - Press or after specifying the start position to move the cursor to the beginning or end of the text.
- 3 Display a character entry screen to be pasted** ▶ **Paste the copied text**

INFORMATION

In the URL history list, i-mode shortcut list, or screen memo list, press and select *Copy URL*. In the bookmark list, press and select *URL disp/type/copy Copy URL*. When you operate from any of these screens, the whole URL is copied.

To paste the URL of the current site to mail, press during site display and select *Compose message*. The mail composition screen is displayed with the URL of the site pasted in the message text.

Registering phone numbers and mail addresses in the phonebook

Add to Phonebook

When phone numbers or mail addresses are displayed on the screen, you can register them in the phonebook.

- You may be able to register the data other than displayed items depending on the sites.

Example Registering a phone number displayed on the site screen as new entry

- 1 Display a site** ▶ **Highlight a phone number**
 - You can register only highlighted phone numbers or mail addresses.
- To add to the existing phonebook data:
- 3** or ▶ **Register the name, etc.**
◀P81, P83
 - To add to the existing phonebook data: or ▶ Select a party ▶ Edit the data ◀P91

INFORMATION

During screen memo display, press and select *Phonebook Add to phonebook* or *Update phonebook*. On the Message R/F view screen, press and select *Record Add to phonebook* or *Update phonebook*.

Registering URLs in the phonebook

Add URLs to the phonebook from the bookmark list or screen memo list.

Example Registering a URL from the bookmark list

- ▶ **Select a folder**
- 2 Highlight a bookmark** ▶
 - To add to the existing phonebook data:
Highlight a bookmark ▶
- 3 Register the name, etc.** ◀P81, P83
 - To add to the existing phonebook data: Select a party ▶ Edit the data ◀P91

INFORMATION

In the screen memo list, press and select *Phonebook Add to phonebook* or *Update phonebook*.

Making i-mode settings

i-mode Setting

Menu 282

Setting the connection timeout

Connection Timeout Setting

Set the timeout for connection to the i-mode Center. If a connection is not established correctly, it is automatically interrupted after the set period of time.

Default 60 seconds

- ▶ **Press any of** to

INFORMATION

Even if you set the connection timeout to *Unlimited*, a connection with the i-mode Center may be interrupted due to poor signal conditions, etc.

Menu 287

Changing the host from i-mode (ISP Connection Communication)

Host Selection

* You do not need to change the settings when using DoCoMo i-mode service.

Default i-mode(UIM)

About ISP connection communication

You can connect to various providers (ISPs) by changing the host of i-mode terminal of DoCoMo. Packet communication fee is charged for the ISP connection communication.

- Please note that packet communication fee for connection to the ISP will not be included in the Pake Houdai service.
- You do not need to additionally subscribe to DoCoMo.

About provider subscription

- You need to separately subscribe to a provider to use the ISP connection communication. Contact the provider for details on services (site and Internet connection, mail function, etc.) and subscription.
- Information fee may be charged for some services, but DoCoMo will never charge you for it.
- Your phone number may be sent to the provider for some sites you visit.
- Up to 10 hosts can be registered.
- You cannot make or change the host settings during communication.

1   

2 Highlight one from *User host1 to 10* ▶
 ▶ Enter the terminal security code

Restoring the setting for using i-mode:

Select *i-mode (UIM)* ▶ Go to Step 5

Changing to the previously set host:

Select a host ▶ Go to Step 5

3 Select each item to set ▶ 

Host name :

Up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters can be entered.

Host number :

Up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

Host address :

Up to 30 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

Host address2 :

Up to 30 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

• *Host address2* is the host of i-channel.

- You can delete all the contents entered by pressing .

4 Select the edited host

5 Press 

INFORMATION

If you change the host, the i-channel information will no longer be displayed as a ticker on the standby display. When the i-channel information is automatically updated or when you press  on the standby display to show the channel list, the latest information is received and displayed as a ticker on the standby display.

Menu 285

Setting image display and sound effects

Image & Effect Setting

You can set image display and sound effects (when playing Flash movie) on a site, screen memo, etc.

 **Image, Animation: Display**
Use phone information: Yes
Sound effect setting: ON

1   

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press 

Image :

Sets whether to display images.

- When *Not display* is set, images, Flash movie and animation are not displayed and  appears instead. Also, *Animation* and *Use phone information* cannot be set.

Animation :

Sets whether to play animation.

- When *Not display* is set, the first frame of animation is displayed.

Use phone information :

Sets whether to use the data saved in FOMA terminal when displaying Flash movie.

Sound effect setting :

Sets whether to play the beep sound of Flash movie.

INFORMATION

On the site screen or screen memo view screen, press  and select *Display Set image & effect*.

When *Not display* is set for *Image*, the images attached to i-mode Mail using the Web To function cannot be displayed or saved.

Even if *Not display* is set for *Animation*, Flash movie plays.

The setting for *Image* does not apply to the images attached as attachment or images inserted in the text of Message R/F. In addition, *ON/OFF* of *Sound effect setting* does not have effect on Message R/F, either.

When *Yes* is set for *Use phone information*, information such as the battery level, received signal level, time, ring volume for calls, selected language, and terminal model may be sent to IPs via the Internet, which may give the information to third parties.

Setting the display lighting for use during site display

Display Light

You can set the lighting for a site, screen memo, etc.

- This setting is also reflected to *i-mode session of Display light time* in Display Light Setting. ◀P116

Default Terminal setting

1 ▶ Press or

Terminal setting :

The display light conforms to the setting of *Normal use of Display light time* in Display Light Setting.

Always ON :

The display always lights up.

INFORMATION

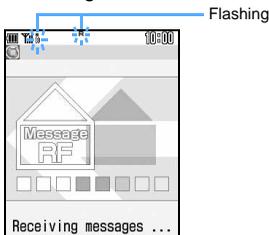
On the site screen or screen memo view screen, press  and select *Display Set lighting*.

When Message R/F is received

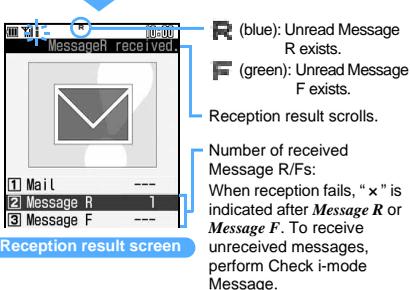
Receive Message R/F

- The received Message R is saved in *Message R* and the received Message F is saved in *Message F*.
- The maximum number of items that can be saved ◀P381

1 A Message R/F is received



Reception completed



 and  or  flash and *Receiving messages...* is displayed.

When reception is completed, the Message R/F ring alert sounds, the keys light/flash, and the reception result screen is displayed.

- Press  on the receiving screen to stop reception.

2 or ▶ Select a Message R/F

- When a melody is attached, it plays automatically. Auto play can be turned off. ◀P219
However, when a Message R/F is displayed automatically, it does not play.
- Viewing the Message R/F screen ◀P175

INFORMATION

The reception result screen is displayed for about 15 seconds if you do not press any key or until the ring alert stops if ring time is set to 15 seconds or longer in Message Alert. When Auto-display is set, the contents of received Message R/F are displayed before the display returns to the previously displayed screen. To return to the previous screen quickly, press .

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the received Message R/Fs except unread ones will be overwritten, oldest first. Note that you need to protect Message R/F you want to keep. ◀P176

- If the messages cannot be overwritten because the memory is full with unread Message R/F and protected Message R/F, Message R/F reception is stopped.  (red) or  (green) is indicated on the screen. To receive new messages, display unread Message R/Fs (◀P175), delete unnecessary Message R/Fs (◀P176) or cancel message protection (◀P176) beforehand.

Incoming Message R/F is stored in the i-mode Center in the following cases:

- The power is off
- During a videophone call
- In Self Mode
- When reception fails
- While being out of service area
- While receiving SMS
- During infrared communication
- While connecting to the Data Center
- While Omakase Lock is on
- While connecting to the FirstPass center
- When the memory is full with unread Message R/F and protected Message R/F

Message R/F received by FOMA terminal is saved to FOMA terminal and the Message R/F stored in the i-mode Center is deleted.

If there are unreceived Message R/Fs in the i-mode Center, , , or  is indicated. However, the icon may not be indicated even when there are Message R/Fs in the i-mode Center. When the maximum number of Message R/Fs that can be stored in the i-mode Center is reached, the icon changes to , , or .

Displaying Message R/F automatically

Auto-display

Sets whether to automatically open and display Message R/Fs for about 15 seconds upon reception. In addition, you can set either of Message R/F to be displayed and also set to give priority to either of Message R/F.

Default MessageR preferred

1 Press any of to

INFORMATION

Auto-display is available only from the standby display. When you display a mail or Message R/F from the reception result screen or when you receive a Message R/F using Check i-mode Message, Auto-display is not performed.

When Auto-display is set, the contents of received Message R/F are automatically displayed when the reception result screen returns to the screen that was displayed prior to reception. If you do not press any key during auto-display, the Message R/F is saved as unread.

Setting operations for incoming Message R/F

Message Alert

- This setting is also reflected to Sound Setting (☛P101), Light Alert Setting (☛P121) and Vibrator Setting (☛P105).

Default Ring alert: Melody/メロディ・メロディC (Mail, melody C)

Light alert: ON/Rotation Vibrate alert: OFF
Ring time (sec): 10

Example Setting operations for an incoming Message R

1 Setting operations for an incoming Message R
F:

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press

Ring alert:

When *Melody*, *Movie ringtone* or *Music* is selected, set the ring alert. Setting music data ☛P102

- Playing and checking a melody, video/i-motion or music data when selecting ☛P102

Light alert:

Sets whether to light the keys and the lighting pattern for incoming messages.

Vibrate alert:

Sets the vibration for incoming messages.

Ring time (sec):

Sets the sound duration of ring alert (1 to 30 seconds).

Displaying saved Message R/F

Message R/Message F

Example Displaying Message R

1 Displaying Message F:

2 Select a Message R

The Message R/F list/view screen

Reading Message F is the same as that of Message R.

Message R/F list screen

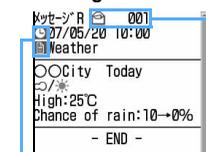


1 Reception date and time, and subject

2 In the reception date and time column, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.

1 : Unread : Read : Protected
2 : Image attached : Melody attached
 : Multiple files attached

Message R/F view screen



: Status icon, attachment icon (only when there is an attachment), Message R/F number

: Reception date and time : Subject

- You can display the previous/next Message R/F by pressing .

When a file is attached, its icon, file name, file size, etc. are displayed on the Message R/F view screen.

- Meaning of icons for images and melodies ☛P202

When an image is inserted in the message text, the image is displayed.

If you could not receive the image, an icon is indicated. The icon is the same as when you cannot display images on a site. ☛P160

Displaying and saving the attached file

Display or save images attached to Message R/F, or play or save melodies.

Example Saving an attached file

- 1 Display the Message R/F list
- 2 Select a Message R/F
- 3 Highlight the file name of an attached file

▶ **Menu** [5] [2]

- For the images, follow the procedure from Step 3 of “Downloading images from sites”. ➔P168
- For the melodies, follow Step 3 of “Downloading melodies from sites”. ➔P169

Displaying and playing: Select the file name

- For the images, displaying/not displaying are switched.

Displaying the title: Highlight the file name

▶ **Menu** [5] [3]

- Operation is not available for images.

INFORMATION

To save the image inserted in the text or the background image, press **Menu** and select *Save image* *Select image* or *Save Background*, and then select an image.

Protecting Message R/F

Protect Message

- The maximum number of items that can be protected ➔P381
- Unread Message R/Fs cannot be protected.

- 1 Display the Message R/F list
- 2 Highlight a Message R/F ▶ Press

Menu [2] [1]

The Message R/F is protected and the icon changes from  to .

- To cancel protection: Highlight the Message R/F
- ▶ **Menu** [2] [3]

Protecting selected Message R/Fs:

Menu [2] [2] ▶ **Select Message R/Fs** ▶



Canceling protection of selected Message R/Fs: **Menu** [2] [4] ▶ **Select Message R/Fs** ▶ 

Canceling protection of all the Message R/Fs: **Menu** [2] [5]

INFORMATION

On the Message R/F view screen, press **Menu** and select *Protect* or *Release*.

Deleting Message R/F

Delete Message

- Protected Message R/Fs cannot be deleted. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

- 1 Display the Message R/F list
- 2 Highlight a Message R/F ▶ **Menu** [1] [1]

Deleting only read Message R/Fs:

Menu [1] [2]

Deleting selected Message R/Fs:

Menu [1] [3] ▶ **Select Message R/Fs** ▶



Deleting all the Message R/Fs: **Menu** [1] [4]

▶ **Enter the terminal security code**

- 3 Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

On the Message R/F view screen, press **Menu** and select *Delete*.

Selecting the type of Message R/F to display

Display by Type

Display only the specified type of Message R/F temporarily on the Message R/F list. When you quit the display, *Display all* returns.

- You can select from *Display all*, *Display unread only*, *Display read only*, or *Display protected*.

- 1 Display the Message R/F list ▶ **Menu** [3]
- ▶ Press any of [1] to [4]

- When you select *Display read only*, the protected Message R/F is not displayed.

Sorting Message R/F

Sort

Message R/Fs in the list are temporarily sorted. When you quit the display, *By access date* returns.

- You can select *By access date* or *By title*.

- 1 Display the Message R/F list ▶ **Menu** [4]
- ▶ Press [1] or [2]

INFORMATION

If one-byte, two-byte, alphabetic, and kanji characters and URLs are mixed in titles, the result sorted by *By title* may not be in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

Operating certificates

Perform the operation of certificates required for the SSL communication.

Menu 2841

Displaying certificates and setting certificate validity/invalidity

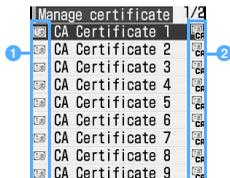
Manage Certificate

Default all valid

Displaying a certificate

- When the blue UIM is inserted in FOMA terminal, the certificate other than CA certificate is not displayed.

1 Select a certificate



- : Available No icon: Unavailable
- : CA certificate
- : DoCoMo certificate/User certificate
- : Original certificate

- When you select *Original certificate*, the list screen appears. Select a certificate.

CA Certificate :

It is a certificate issued by the certifier. It is stored in FOMA terminal by default.

DoCoMo Cert :

It is a certificate required for connecting to the FirstPass center and FirstPass compatible sites. It is saved in the UIM in advance.

User Certificate :

It is a certificate required for connecting to FirstPass compatible sites. You request the FirstPass center to issue the certificate and download. The downloaded certificate is saved in the UIM.

Original certificate :

It is a certificate which you issued uniquely and was downloaded.

Changing the certificate name of the original certificate:

- Highlight a certificate on the certificate list screen 
- Enter the certificate name (up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters) 
 - To return to the user name: 

Deleting the original certificate: Highlight a certificate on the certificate list screen 

  Select Yes  Enter the terminal security code

INFORMATION

Certificate contents displayed:

User

CN= : (Common Name) Server name, administrator name, or discrimination number

O= : (Organization) Company name, etc.

C= : (Country) Country name

Issued by

CN= : (Common Name) Server name, administrator name, or discrimination number

OU= : (Organization Unit) Departments or other positions in the company

O= : (Organization) Company name, etc.

Expiration date

Serial number

When a certificate has no information on the user, issuer and/or expiration date, only the item names are displayed.

Setting validity/invalidity of certificate

1

2 Highlight a certificate

- Each press switches on/off.
- Press  to display the certificate.

3 Press

The checked certificate is set as valid.

INFORMATION

DoCoMo Cert2 cannot be set as invalid.

The settings for *DoCoMo Cert* and *User Certificate* are saved in the UIM.

All the operations made after the entry of the PIN2 code are regarded as operations you made. Use abundance of caution not to let the UIM or PIN2 code used by any third party.

If the UIM is lost or stolen, you can contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual to have the user certificate nullified.

Under no circumstances shall DoCoMo have any obligation or be held responsible for sites and information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. Any issue that occurs must be settled between you and the FirstPass compatible site concerned.

Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier provides any guarantee for security, etc. in use of FirstPass or SSL. Use the services on your own judgment and responsibility.

Menu 2843

Changing the certificate host Certificate Host

When you use services other than FirstPass, set the connection destination. If you change this setting, you cannot connect to the FirstPass center.

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

- Downloading the original certificate ➡P170

Default **DoCoMo**

1    

2 Select **Host** field ▶ 

- To restore the setting for connecting to FirstPass: Select **Host** field ▶  ▶ Go to Step 5

3 Select **User host** field ▶ Enter the connection destination (up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters)

4 Select **User host URL** field ▶ Enter the URL (up to 100 one-byte alphanumeric characters)

5 Press 

i-motion

Images or sounds downloaded and saved from i-mode sites or websites can be played as "i-motion" or can be set for Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion). i-motion such as vocals of your favorite singers can be used as ring tone as well as melodies (some i-motion may not be set for Movie ringtone). Generally, there are 2 types of i-motion as follows. You cannot change or select the data type when downloading the data.

Normal type (can be saved*1)

Playing action	Description
Play while downloading data (up to 500 KB)	The i-motion file is played while the data is being downloaded. After downloading of data is completed, the i-motion can be operated in the same way as the i-motion played after downloading all data.
Play after downloading data (up to 500 KB)	The i-motion file is played after downloading all data.

*1 Some i-motion cannot be saved.

Streaming type (cannot be saved)

Playing action	Description
Play while downloading data (up to 2 MB)	The i-motion file is played while the data is being downloaded. The i-motion data is deleted after playback is completed and cannot be saved in FOMA terminal.

Downloading i-motion from sites

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ➡P381

1 Display a site ▶ Select i-motion

When downloading is finished, a message indicating that appears.

- If you try to download streaming type i-motion when *i-motion type setting* in i-motion Setting is set to *Normal type*, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to change the setting. Select *Yes* to change the setting to *Norm•Streaming* so that you can download the streaming type i-motion. ➡P181

- When the streaming type i-motion is selected, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to replay. Select **Yes** to replay while downloading i-motion.

i-motion played while the data is being downloaded:

i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded. After finishing the replay, the operation is the same as the i-motion replayed after downloading data.



- During playback, the following operations are available:
 - : Pause/play (only normal type)
 - : Adjust volume
 - : Interrupt (streaming type)
 - Stop (normal type; press to play from the beginning.)
 - : Display detail information
- Even if you pause or stop playing, the data reception continues.
- When the operation is interrupted, a confirmation screen is displayed. Select **Yes** to interrupt.

i-motion played after downloading data:

i-motion is played automatically when downloading is completed.



- During playback, the following operations are available:
 - : Pause/play
 - : Adjust volume
 - : Play at fast speed
 - : Rewind and play
 - : Stop (the message is displayed indicating the completion of downloading.)
 - : Display detail information

2 Select Save

- Streaming type i-motion cannot be saved.
- To play i-motion again: Select **Play**
- To display detail information: Select **File property**
- To cancel saving: Select **Back** ▶ Select **No** (For streaming type i-motion, a confirmation screen does not appear.)

3 Enter a display name (up to 36 one- or two-byte characters) ▶ Press

The downloaded i-motion is saved in the *i-mode* folder of *i-motion*.

- Press to display the list of destination to use i-motion. For setting to the standby display, etc, follow Step 3 in "Setting video/i-motion to the standby display or phonebook data". ▶ P260

When a link is set within ticker stream of downloaded i-motion:

If a link such as a phone number, a mail address, or a site URL is set in a ticker, you can use Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To, or Web To after playback is finished or interrupted. For Phone To and AV Phone To, the Call Option screen appears. For Mail To and Web To, a confirmation screen appears.

- If no i-motion is saved, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save it.
- When the link type is Phone To (AV Phone To), pressing allows you to add phone numbers to the phonebook. When the link type is Mail To, selecting **Add to phonebook** allows you to add mail addresses to the phonebook.
- When there are two or more link items, only one item will be effective. The item which is to become effective depends on i-motion data.

INFORMATION

Only the i-motion in MP4 (Mobile MP4) format can be downloaded and played. i-motion in ASF format cannot be downloaded and played.

The replay restrictions such as number of replayable times or expiration of playback may be set for i-motion files.

When i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded, replay may be paused in wait for data reception. The replay is automatically resumed when data reception is restarted.

When i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded, i-motion may become unable to play or the i-motion image may be blurred depending on radio wave conditions. Even if in such a case, the i-motion can be replayed after the completion of downloading if the data is normally received. However, some i-motion files may allow downloading of data but may not be replayed correctly.

Even for the type of i-motion which is played while the data is being downloaded, it may not be played during downloading depending on the status of sites.

When i-motion data is improper, reception of i-motion may be canceled.

When you use i-motion from i- ppli and attempt to save it, sometimes it may not be saved even if **Ring alert** and **Receive display** are set to **Available** in the detail information. In this case, you cannot set the i-motion as the ring alert or incoming image.

When there is an incoming call in case streaming type i-motion is being played while downloading or when the date and time specified by Alarm Clock or schedule arrives, downloading is interrupted and playing is stopped.

When the memory is not enough, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete data. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the saved video/i-motion. Before deleting, you can play video/i-motion by pressing **[OK]** on the video/i-motion list or view the detail information about it by pressing **[Menu]**.

Menu 286

Setting auto play and the type of i-motion to be downloaded

i-motion Setting

Default Auto replay setting: Auto Play ON
i-motion type setting: Normal type



2 Select each item to set ▶ Press **[OK]**

Auto replay setting :

- Sets whether to automatically play normal type i-motion during or after downloading.
- Even when **Auto Play OFF** is set, i-motion can be played by selecting **Play** after downloading i-motion.
- For streaming type i-motion, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to play automatically regardless of the auto play setting.

i-motion type setting :

- Sets the type of i-motion to be downloaded.
- When replaying streaming type i-motion, select **Norm. Streaming**.

INFORMATION

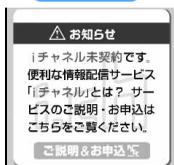
On the site screen, press **[Menu]** and select **Display i-motion settings**.

i-channel

i-channel is a service in which DoCoMo or IP (Information Provider) delivers graphical information such as news and weather information to i-channel compatible terminals. Users can receive information regularly, and read the latest information as it appears as tickers on the standby display, or view it in the channel list by pressing the i-channel compatible key (**[クリア]**) (Displaying the channel list ◀P183). Additionally, users can obtain rich, detail information by selecting a favorite channel in the channel list.

- i-channel information is displayed in Japanese only.
- For important notes on using i-channel and detail information about how to use i-channel, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Not signed



Before you sign up for i-channel

After sign-up



After you sign up for i-channel, tickers automatically run on the standby display as information is received or as you display the channel list.



Pressing **[クリア]** displays the channel list. Each channel contains various information in a list form including those that ran as tickers.



to make connection

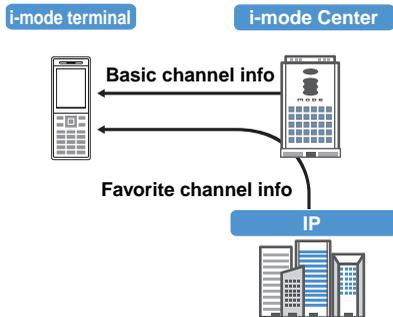
You can select each channel to view detail information.

- The screens shown here are for information purpose only and may differ from the actual screens.

There are 2 types of channels: "Basic channel" and "Favorite channel". Basic channel is pre-registered channels provided by DoCoMo and ready for use immediately after i-channel sign-up. Packet communication fee for automatic information update in relation to Basic channel is included in the i-channel service fee. Favorite channel is provided by non-DoCoMo IPs and users register their favorite channel for viewing. Packet communication fee for automatic information update and other fees in relation to Favorite channel are not included in the i-channel service fee.

Both the information on Basic channel and Favorite channel can be displayed as a ticker on the standby display.

- Information charge may be imposed to use Favorite channel.
- Some Favorite channels require separate sign-up to the IPs who provide the channels.
- Viewing detail information from the channel list, whether Basic channel or Favorite channel information, causes separate packet communication fee that is not covered by the i-channel service fee.



i-channel is a pay service for which subscription is required. (You need an i-mode subscription in order to subscribe to i-channel.)

- Operating i-channel ◀P183

Trial channel

Basic channel is available for free of service charge for a set period of time to i-mode subscribers who use an i-channel compatible terminal, and who have never signed up for the subscriber line. However, packet communication fee caused by viewing the detail information from the channel list is to be borne by the users.

- For important notes on using Trial channel and detail information about how to use the service, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

In principle, Trial channel automatically starts after a set amount of time once the UIM (FOMA card) is inserted and the i-channel compatible terminal goes into use. If Trial channel does not start automatically, you can start it by pressing **[277]**.

Trial channel is available only once per subscriber line.

Trial channel automatically stops after a certain period of time following the service start. For information about how to stop the channel on the way, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

INFORMATION

Neither ring tone nor vibrator operates at the reception of information. Likewise, the keys do not light or flash.

If you cancel i-channel or i-mode service subscription, tickers are no longer displayed. Pressing **[277]** displays the pre-subscription screen. Until the cancellation procedure has finished, however, tickers may be displayed on the screen and pressing **[277]** may display the last received information in the channel list. When *Show ticker* is set to *No* in i-Channel Ticker, no tickers are displayed.

If you cannot receive information because the power of FOMA terminal is turned off or due to out-of-service area or poor signal conditions, press **[277]** to receive information.

[277] blinks during reception of information.

You can change the i-channel host (although you usually do not need to change it).

- Operating procedure ◀P172

Displaying i-channel

Channel List

1

The channel list appears.

- When video/i-motion, Chara-den or i- ppli is set as the standby display:    
- i-channel is not displayed even if  is pressed.

2 Select a channel

Your terminal connects to the site and the detail information appears.

- Depending on the situation of use, information may be received when displaying the channel list.

INFORMATION

To refresh the channel list, press  in the channel list and select *Retry*.

When you press  in the channel list and select *Sound effect setting*, you can set whether to enable sound effects for Flash movie. For setting, see "Setting image display and sound effects". ◀P173

Changing i-channel settings

i-Channel Ticker

You can set whether to run tickers of the received i-channel information on the standby display. You can also set the ticker running speed.

- When *Show ticker* is set to *Yes*, up to 10 tickers for the newest information are shown on the standby display each time the standby display appears until the display items disappear. When *Show ticker* is set to *No*, no tickers are displayed.
- In the default state or in case the UIM is replaced or the host address 2 is changed, the ticker is not displayed. If the i-channel information is automatically updated or if you press  to display the channel list, the ticker is displayed and you can set i-Channel Ticker.

Default Show ticker: Yes Ticker speed: Normal

1

2 Select each item to set

Show ticker :

Select *Yes* or *No*.

Ticker speed :

Select *Slow*, *Normal* or *Fast*.

3 Press

- When *Show ticker* is set to *Yes*, a confirmation screen appears when video/i-motion, Chara-den or i- ppli is set as the standby display. If you select *Yes*, the video/i-motion, Chara-den or i- ppli is released.

INFORMATION

In the following cases, i-channel information cannot be displayed in the ticker.

- In All Lock
- In PIM Lock
- In Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)
- In Public mode (Driving mode)
- When the UIM not inserted

Restoring i-channel information to the default settings

Reset i-Channel

You can delete all the received information of i-channel and restore the default settings.

- The setting for i-Channel Ticker is retained.

1    ► Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

If Reset i-Channel is performed, tickers on the standby display disappear. Pressing  on the standby display and displaying the channel list receives the latest information. When *Show ticker* is set to *Yes*, tickers will be displayed on the standby display.

Mail

FOMA terminal mail function	186
Composing i-mode Mail/Deco-mail	
Composing and sending i-mode Mail	Compose Message 189
Composing and sending Deco-mail	Deco-mail 190
Attaching files	Attachment 194
Using mail templates	196
Saving i-mode Mail for sending later	Save Mail 197
Composing mail quickly	Quick Mail 198
Receiving and handling i-mode Mail	
Receiving i-mode Mail	Mail Auto Receive 199
Selecting i-mode Mail to receive	Receive Option 200
Checking for i-mode Mail	Check i-mode Message 201
Replying to received i-mode Mail	Reply to Mail 201
Forwarding received i-mode Mail	Forward Mail 201
Displaying, playing and saving attachments from i-mode Mail	Display/Play/Save Attachment 202
Using the mail box	
Displaying mail in Inbox/Outbox	Inbox/Outbox 205
Useful functions of mail	211
Saving mails in the Data Center	Data Security Service 212
Using the mail log	
Using the mail log	Received Msg. Log/Sent Msg. Log 213
Setting mail	
Setting mail functions of FOMA terminal	Mail Setting 214
Using chat mail	
Composing and sending chat mail	Compose Chat Mail 221
Using SMS (Short Message)	
Composing and sending SMS	Compose SMS 224
When SMS is received	Receive SMS 225
Checking for SMS	Check SMS 226
Making SMS settings	SMS Setting 226
Saving SMS to the UIM	Save SMS to UIM 227

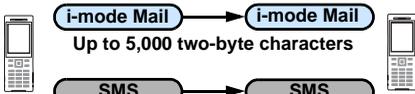
FOMA terminal mail function

FOMA terminal provides 2 mail functions: i-mode Mail and SMS.

- To use i-mode Mail, an i-mode subscription is required.
- You can use SMS without an i-mode subscription.

Sending and receiving mail

FOMA terminal FOMA terminal

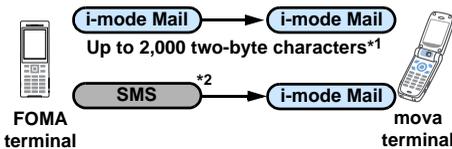


FOMA terminal Up to 160 characters (in English*1) FOMA terminal
Up to 70 characters (in Japanese*1)

*1 Set with *Font type* in SMS Setting.

FOMA terminal mova terminal

SMS sent from FOMA terminal is received by mova terminal as i-mode Mail.

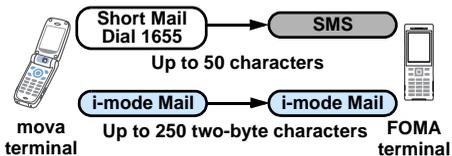


*1 The limit varies by the settings of a mova terminal.

*2 When you set the delivered report to *Request* in SMS Setting, SMS cannot be sent to the mova terminal.

mova terminal FOMA terminal

FOMA terminal receives Short Mail sent from mova terminal as one SMS message.



- Short Mail Service allows the exchange of text messages between mova service mobile phones.

i-mode Mail

i-mode subscribers can send and receive mail to and from other i-mode terminals (including mova terminal) or via Internet e-mail.

In addition to the text, files (JPEG, PDF, etc.) can be attached up to 10 items within a total of 2 Mbytes. Also, it supports Deco-mail and the font color, size and background color of characters of the mail text can be changed. Since many Deco-mail pictograms which can be inserted like pictograms are preinstalled, you can compose richly expressive mail easily and send it.

The mail address for i-mode subscribers is constructed as follows:

When you newly subscribe to i-mode

The part of the address preceding the @ symbol is a combination of random alphanumeric characters. Be sure to check your mail address after subscribing to i-mode.

Example: abc1234-789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

• How to check your mail address

iMenu English iMenu Options Mail Settings Confirm Mail Address

- For mail exchange between i-mode terminals (including mova terminal), mail can be sent also only with the address before the @ symbol.
- For receiving e-mail from a PC, use the entire address including @docomo.ne.jp.
- Sending mail ☛P189
- Receiving mail ☛P199
- For details of i-mode service, see the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Receive Option

You can check the subject of i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center and select the mail to receive or delete without receiving it. ☛P200

Mail settings

The following settings can be made for mail:

Setting procedure

iMenu English iMenu Options Mail Settings Follow each setting in [] below.

- For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" you received when you subscribed to i-mode.

Changing the mail address [Mail Address (Change Mail Address)]

You can change the address before the @ symbol to another, such as "docomo. _ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp".

Checking the mail address [*Mail Address (Confirm Mail Address)*]

You can check your current mail address.

Registering a secret code [*Mail Address (Other Settings) Register a Secret Code*]

When you use the phone number address, a 4-digit secret code can be registered in addition to the mail address. Since mail with no secret code specified is not received, you can avoid receiving unnecessary mail.

Resetting the mail address [*Mail Address (Other Settings) Reset Mail Address*]

You can set your mail address to "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp".

Spam Mail Prevention

You can restrict incoming mail by setting to receive/reject mail in one of the following methods:

① **Reject/Receive Mail Settings** [*Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention) Reject/Receive Mail Settings*]

- You can receive only the mail through the specified carrier(s) out of DoCoMo, au, SoftBank, Tu-Ka, and WILLCOM. Of the mail through carriers other than above, you can receive from the specified domain(s) or address(es). In addition, you can reject the mail that pretends to be the domain of the mobile phone/PHS via Internet.

② **SMS Rejection Settings** [*Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention) SMS Rejection Settings*]

- You can set to reject SMS to be received and select from 4 types, *Reject All SMS*, *Reject Anonymous SMS*, *Reject Intl. SMS* or *Reject Anonymous and Intl. SMS*. You can also confirm the current settings.

③ **Rejecting mass i-mode Mail senders** [*Receiving Mail (Other Settings) Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders*]

- The 200th and later i-mode mails sent from an i-mode terminal (including mova terminal) in a single day are rejected. The initial setting is *Reject* and you do not need to make any settings to reject mail from large-volume senders.

④ **Rejecting Unsolicited Ad Mail (mail with “未承諾広告 ”) [*Receiving Mail (Other Settings) Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail*]**

- Unsolicited mail sent for the purpose of advertising and publicity without the receiver's consent that is marked with “未承諾広告 ” at the beginning of the subject can be rejected. The initial setting is *Reject* and you do not need to make any settings to reject such mail. (The sender is required by law to add “未承諾広告 ” (6 two-byte characters) at the beginning of the subject.)

Restricting mail size [*Receiving Mail (Limit Mail Size)*]

You can restrict the i-mode Mail you receive to a specified size.

Checking current settings [*Receiving Mail (Confirm Settings)*]

You can check the current settings for receiving/rejecting mail, etc.

Suspending i-mode Mail function [*Suspend Mail*]

If you do not use the mail function, you can stop it in the i-mode Center.

When you cannot receive mail

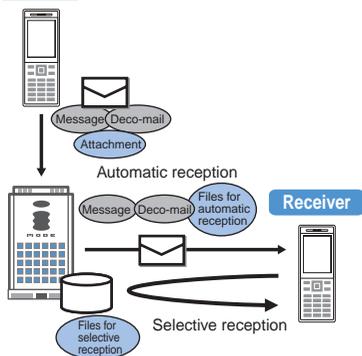
The i-mode Mail received by the i-mode Center is immediately sent to your i-mode terminal. However, when you cannot receive mail because the terminal is turned off or out of the service area, i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center. When mail is stored in the i-mode Center, it is resent a maximum of 3 times at a certain interval. You can also select and receive i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center using Receive Option.

Other useful functions

Sending and receiving attachments

For i-mode Mail (compatible with 2-Mbyte files), it is possible to attach all the file types. The files up to 10 items within a total of 2 Mbytes can be attached to mail for sending. When receiving as i-mode Mail (compatible with 2-Mbyte files), it is possible to receive all the file types and you can receive automatically up to 100 Kbytes (automatic reception of attachments), and for the attachment up to 2 Mbytes exceeding 100 Kbytes, you can select and receive only files you need (selective reception of attachments). In addition, attachments of which size is 100 Kbytes or less can also be selected and received regardless of the size by Incoming Msg. Attach of the terminal. When receiving by other models, only the compatible file types are received within the mail receiving capacity of the terminal.

Sender



Deco-mail

Compose and send your original i-mode mails by changing the font size/background color or inserting images in the text, and also enjoy receiving decorated mail. In addition, since many Deco-mail pictograms which can be inserted like pictograms are preinstalled, you can compose richly expressive mail easily and send it (when decorated mail is received from a PC, operations may not be the same as on PC because some decorations are not supported by i-mode terminals).

When Deco-mail is sent to non-compatible terminals and Deco-mail compatible terminals up to 10,000 bytes, it may be received as mail containing a URL. In that case, the receiver can view Deco-mail by clicking the displayed URL.

- Editing Deco-mail ◀P190
- Sending Deco-mail ◀P190
- Supporting models: Available with Deco-mail compatible models. For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

SMS (Short Message)

Text messages can be exchanged between FOMA terminals.

- Sending ◀P224
- Receiving ◀P225
- Checking for SMS ◀P226

Address of SMS

The address of SMS is the subscribed mobile phone number.

- You can exchange SMS with users of overseas service provider other than DoCoMo. For more information, visit the DoCoMo website.

Number of characters that can be sent/received

The maximum number of characters differs depending on the font type setting. ◀P226

Item	English	Japanese
Address	20 characters (numbers only)*1	
Message	160 one-byte characters*2	70 one- or two-byte characters

*1 If a one-byte "+" is contained, up to 21 characters can be entered.

*2 One-byte alphanumerics and symbols (except for `、[]、` and ` `) can be sent.

When symbols (| ^ { } [] and ¥) are entered, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced.

When you cannot receive SMS

SMS sent to your FOMA terminal is received by the SMS Center and sent to your FOMA terminal immediately. When you cannot receive the messages because the terminal is turned off or outside the service area, the messages are stored in the SMS Center.

INFORMATION

The SMS Center can store messages up to 72 hours.

The sender can specify the storage period. ◀P226

The messages are automatically deleted after the maximum storage period expires.

You can use Check SMS to receive the messages stored in the SMS Center. ◀P226

When FOMA terminal receives the messages stored in the SMS Center, the messages are deleted from the Center. The received SMS is saved to FOMA terminal.

Other useful functions

Delivered report

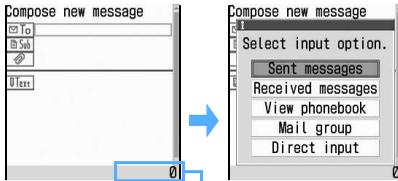
You can receive a delivered report that informs you whether the other party has received the sent SMS. ◀P226

Saving to the UIM

You can save the received and sent SMS to the UIM. ◀P227

Composing and sending i-mode Mail

Compose Message

1 Select **To** field

Mail composition screen

The number of total bytes of the characters and decoration data in the message (1 two-byte character is 2 bytes)

2 Select **Direct input** ▶ Enter the address (up to 50 one-byte characters)

- When sending mail to an i-mode terminal, you may omit "@docomo.ne.jp" in the mail address.
- In 5-touch Input Method, press **1** repeatedly in the alphabet input mode to enter ".", "@", "-", etc. In addition, ".com", ".ne.jp", ".co.jp", etc. can be entered by pressing **X** repeatedly in the alphabet input mode.
- When the other party has registered a secret code, enter the other party's i-mode terminal phone number followed by the 4-digit secret code.

Selecting from the sent message log:**Select Sent messages ▶ Select a log**

- The address of mail receiver is set.

Selecting from the received message log:**Select Received messages ▶ Select a log**

- The address of mail sender is set.

Searching the phonebook: Select View phonebook ▶ Select a party**Using a mail group: Select Mail group ▶ Select a mail group**

- If the total of entered addresses exceeds 5, the mail group cannot be added.
- Highlight a mail group and press **Menu** to check the mail group details.

3 Select **Sub** field ▶ Enter the subject (up to 30 one-byte or 15 two-byte characters)4 Select **Text** ▶ Enter the message (up to 10,000 one-byte or 5,000 two-byte characters)

- Line feeds can be inserted in the message. Press **#** to enter a line feed in 5-touch Input Method (except for the one-byte/two-byte numeric modes).
- A space of one- or two-byte or a line feed is also counted as a character in the message.
- If Deco-mail pictogram (pictogram D) is inserted in the message, it will become Deco-mail.
- Text can be decorated. ◀P190

Inserting a signature: **Menu** **5** **5**

5 Press **End**

- Pressing **End** on the connecting screen or pressing **End** on the sending screen stops sending and saves the i-mode Mail to the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages*. Even when saved in the *Unsent messages* folder, the i-mode Mail may be sent depending on the operation timing.
- When you are outside the service area and the auto-send mails already saved is 4 or less, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to send mail automatically in the service area. When you select *Yes*, the mail is saved as auto-send mail in the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages*.

INFORMATION

When mail exceeding 10,000 bytes was automatically saved due to start of other functions, part of the mail being composed may not be saved.

Depending on signal conditions, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.

When transmission is completed correctly, the i-mode Mail is saved in the *Outbox* folder of *Outbox*. However, when the sent mail matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder. When the memory is not enough, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest sent mail is overwritten. Be sure to protect sent mail you want to keep.

When transmission fails, an error message is displayed and the i-mode Mail is saved in the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages*. You can edit and send i-mode Mail from *Unsent messages*.

Even if i-mode Mail is sent correctly, "Transmission failed." may be displayed depending on signal conditions, and the mail may be saved in the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages*.

If you send i-mode Mail including pictograms to other mobile phone companies (au/SoftBank/Tu-Ka), it is automatically converted to the similar pictograms displayed at the receiver side.

- Depending on the model or function of the receiver's mobile phone, the pictograms may not be displayed correctly.
- If there is no corresponding pictograms displayed at the receiver side, it is converted to characters or "☐". Depending on the settings of the receiver's terminal such as the number of characters that can be displayed, the font or its display size, face marks may not be displayed correctly and their shapes and views may be different from the original ones.

An error message for address unknown etc. may not be received when mail is sent to addresses other than DoCoMo.

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, i-mode Mail cannot be composed and sent. Delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and/or SMS from *Unsent messages*. ●P211

Adding receivers

Add Address

You can send i-mode Mail to up to 5 addresses at one time (Multi-address transmission).

- There are 3 address types:  (TO),  (CC) and  (BCC).
 - : Used for usual addresses.
 - : Used when you want to inform the other party of the content of the particular mail sent to the TO address.
 - : Used when you want to inform the other party as with CC, but the BCC-specified address is not shown for the other party.
- Mail with no address entered in the  field cannot be sent.

1 Highlight the address field on the mail composition screen



An address field is added.

Adding CC and BCC:

- ①   on the mail composition screen  Select an input method

② Select CC or BCC Enter a mail address

- Also *TO* can be selected.
- When you have added by selecting *Mail group*, TO, CC and BCC are set as registered for the mail group.

Changing TO, CC and BCC: Highlight an address field Select an address type

Deleting the added address field: Highlight an address field Select Yes

- Only the address in the field is deleted when there is only one field.

2 Enter the address in the added field Press

INFORMATION

The mail address entered in the  field and  field can be seen at the receiver side. However, it may not be displayed depending on the terminal, device, or mailing software.

When sending of mail to some addresses fails, an error message is displayed. Pressing  may display a list of mail addresses for which transmission failed.

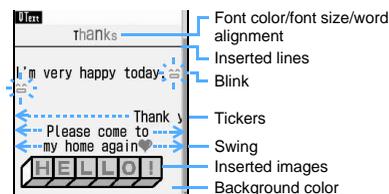
Composing and sending Deco-mail

Deco-mail

You can decorate the i-mode mail message by changing the font size, font color, or background color and inserting the shot still images. Deco-mail picture or Deco-mail pictogram (pictogram D) set by default can also be used to compose Deco-mail.

- The size of Deco-mail which can be sent is less than 100 Kbytes, which is the total size of the mail text and the images inserted in the text. In addition, the files up to 10 items or 2 Mbytes can be attached.

Examples of decoration



Flow of Deco-mail composition

Step 1 Display the message text entry screen from the mail composition screen



Start composing i-mode Mail on the message text entry screen.

Step 2 Enter characters and set decorations



- Specify the decoration and then enter characters. ●P191
- Enter characters and then specify the decoration. ●P193
- Press **Menu** during editing to check the decoration on the preview screen.

Step 3 Confirm the decoration before sending

Check the decoration on the mail composition screen.

INFORMATION

Even if you delete decorated characters, the decoration data may remain and the number of characters that can be entered may be fewer. Cancel the decoration first and then delete characters. Holding down **2227** for over a second deletes all the characters and decoration data (except the background color).

When sent and received to/from other than the Deco-mail compatible FOMA terminal such as a PC, the decoration in Deco-mail may not be correctly displayed. When Deco-mail exceeding 10,000 bytes is sent to Deco-mail compatible terminals other than the following terminal*1, the mail with URL for viewing is received at the receiver side.

*1 903i series, 703i series (except for P703i μ)

When Deco-mail exceeding 10,000 bytes is sent to a Deco-mail non-compatible terminal, the mail with URL for viewing is received at the receiver. However, when the size of Deco-mail exceeds 10,000 bytes, some non-compatible terminal may receive only the text, and mail without URL for viewing may be received.

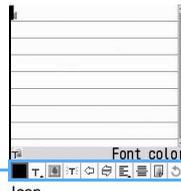
The actions of decoration such as blink, ticker, swing, and animation stop automatically after a certain period of time on the mail composition screen or the preview screen.

If Deco-mail pictogram (pictogram D) is entered in the message, it will become Deco-mail.

Entering characters after specifying the decoration method

- 1 Select **Text** on the mail composition screen

2 Select a decoration ▶ Enter characters



Decoration selection screen

Highlight an icon on the decoration selection screen and press **Enter** to select a decoration. For operations, see “Operations on the decoration selection screen”.

Setting more than one decoration:

Highlight icons on the decoration selection screen ▶ **Menu**

- *Ticker*, *Swing* and *Word alignment* cannot be selected at the same time.

Canceling a selected decoration and enter characters: Place the cursor on the character entry position ▶ **Enter** ▶ **Enter**

- *Font color*, *Font size*, *Blink*, *Ticker*, *Swing* and *Word alignment* can be canceled.

Changing the decoration: **Menu** **1** **Enter** ▶ Place the cursor on the start position ▶ **Enter**

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in “Specifying decoration method after entering characters”. ●P193

Canceling all the decorations:

Menu **1** **9**

3 **Menu** **Enter** ▶ Check the decoration ▶ **Enter**

You can check the set decoration and the accurate remaining number of bytes that can be entered.

4 **Enter** ▶ Press **Menu**

Operations on the decoration selection screen

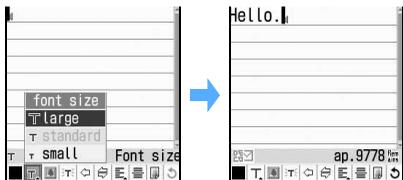
Changing the font color: Select **Enter** ▶ Select a color ▶ Enter characters



- Select from 20 standard colors or 64 colors in *Other color*.

- The color of pictograms 1, 2 is also changed. To return to the original color, specify the range and select *Default*. For operations, see "Specifying decoration method after entering characters". ◀P193

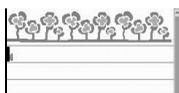
Changing the font size: Select T_▲ (or T_▲ T_▲) ▶ Select a size ▶ Enter characters



large selected

- The size of Deco-mail pictogram cannot be changed.

Inserting images: Select ▶ Select Data Box ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image



The image is inserted at the cursor position.

- An image that cannot be inserted is not displayed.

- To take and insert a still image: Select *Use still camera* ▶ Shoot ▶
- The size of still image is automatically set to 96 x 72 (phonebook).
- Deco-mail pictogram can also be inserted by the procedure for entering pictograms.
- Up to 20 images within a total of 90 Kbytes can be inserted. The same image may be inserted up to more than 20 items.
- When an image is inserted, the number of bytes of text increases by the size of not actual image size but the decoration data size which indicates an insertion of the image.
- Deco-mail pictures and Deco-mail pictograms set by default ◀P348, P349

Making characters blink: Select ▶ Enter characters



Making characters into ticker to run from right to left: Select ▶ Enter characters



- Enter characters between and .

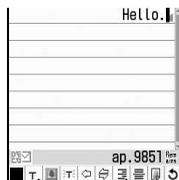
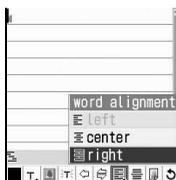
Making characters swing left and right:

Select ▶ Enter characters



- Enter characters between and .

Changing word alignment: Select (or) ▶ Select the display position ▶ Enter characters



right selected

- When characters are already entered and the cursor is placed between characters, a new blank line is started at the selected position.

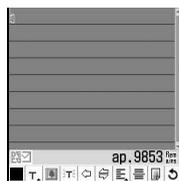
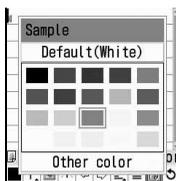
Inserting lines (ruled lines): Select



A line (ruled line) is inserted in the color specified with font color ().

Changing text background color: Select

▶ Select a color



- Select from 20 standard colors or 64 colors in *Other color*.

Restoring the previous condition: Select

The last decoration or characters entered are canceled.

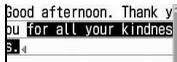
Specifying decoration method after entering characters

You can decorate entered characters or change the decoration of characters by specifying the range.

- You cannot insert lines or images, or change the background color. Specify the decoration first.

1 Highlight the start position on the message text entry screen ▶

2 Place the cursor on the end position ▶

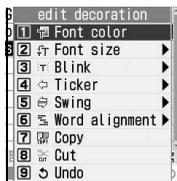


- To select from the start position to the beginning of the text:



- To select from the start position to the end of the text:  
- To select all the text: 

3 Select the decoration method



- The procedure for confirming and canceling decorations is the same as when entering characters after specifying the decoration method.

◆P191

Changing the font color: ▶ Select a color

- The color of lines (ruled lines) is also changed.

Changing the font size: ▶ to

Making characters blink:

- To cancel:  

Making characters into ticker to run from right to left:

- To cancel:  

Making characters swing left and right:

- To cancel:  

Changing the word alignment: ▶ to

- The display position of an image is also changed.

Copying characters:

Cutting characters:

Restoring the previous condition:

- The last decoration or characters entered are canceled.

Decorating characters continuously:

▶ Repeat Step 3

4

The selection of decorated characters is canceled.

- You can also unselect it by pressing .

5 ▶ Press

INFORMATION

Press  on the message text entry screen to display the preview screen and confirm the accurate remaining number of bytes that can be entered.

Attaching melodies to Deco-mail

Melo-deco

1 on the decoration selection screen

- When a melody is already attached, the list of attached melodies is displayed. Go to Step 2, "Attaching another melody" or "Removing an attached melody".

2 Select a folder ▶ Select a melody

The melody is attached and its file name and file size are displayed in the list of attached melodies.

- Melodies that cannot be attached are not displayed. Highlight a melody and press  to play the melody. Press  to attach it or  to return to the list.

Attaching another melody: ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a melody

Removing an attached melody: Highlight a melody ▶ ▶ Select Yes

- If all the melodies are deleted, a message appears indicating that there is no attached melodies. Press .

Playing melodies: Select a melody

- Completing the play returns to the list.

3

 appears at the lower part of the screen.

4 ▶ Press

Melodies for mail attachment

The following melodies are registered in the *Mail attach melody* folder by default.

Title	Song title (composer name in [])
クリスマス (Christmas)	JOY TO THE WORLD [HANDEL GEORGE FRIDERIC/MASON LOWELL]
結婚式 (Wedding)	BRIDAL MARCH [WAGNER RICHARD WILHELM]
誕生日 (Birthday)	-
嬉しい (Glad)	-
悲しい (Sad)	-

- The composer's names are described in accordance with the JASRAC website.

Attaching files

Attachment

You can send i-mode Mail with the following files attached:

- The maximum number of files that can be attached is 10, and the total size of attachments that can be saved is a maximum of 2 Mbytes.
- Sending may take some time depending on the size of attachment.

File type	Restriction
Image*1	Only images in JPEG and GIF formats can be attached. Created animation cannot be attached.
Video/ i-motion*2	Files with replay restriction set cannot be attached. The file without replay restrictions set may not be attached, either.
Melody	The melodies in the <i>Preinstalled</i> folder cannot be attached. Even if the melody in MFi format is attached, it is not inserted in the message.
PDF data	PDF data in the <i>Preinstalled</i> folder cannot be attached.
Phonebook	-
Schedule	-
Bookmark	-
Recorded voice	-
Others	The file of Word, Excel, PowerPoint is attached.

*1 Depending on the receiver's device (terminal, PC, etc.), images will be received as attachments to mail or a mail containing URLs.

*2 Depending on the receiver's model, video/i-motion is not received or displayed correctly, or may be degraded or displayed as continuous images. When sending video to other than i-mode Mail compatible terminal (compatible with 2-Mbyte files), video with the size restriction: Msg attach:Small, image size: 176 x 144 (QCIF) and quality: HG is recommended.

- Files prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal (except images and melodies with the file restriction set to *File restricted* on your terminal, and PDF data of which origination is Data transfer) and files with the UIM operation restriction set cannot be attached.
- Only one JPEG image can be attached and sent to a mova terminal. In this case, it is received as a mail containing a URL (i-shot Mail).
- The data recorded with Sound Recorder is saved as i-motion and can be attached to mail.
- When sent to other than the following terminals*3, melodies may not play correctly at the receiver side.

*3 D701i, D701iWM, D702i, D702iBCL, D702iF, D703i, D800iDS, D851iWM, D901i, D901iS, D902i, D902iS or D903i

1 Select field on the mail composition screen

2 Select a file type ▶ Select a file

Attaching an image:

① Select Image

② Select Data Box ▶ Select a folder

- To shoot a still image and attach it: Select *Activate camera* ▶ Shoot an image ▶  ▶ Go to Step 3
- The size of images is automatically set to 240 x 320 (standby).

③ Select an image

The file name is displayed in the  field of the mail composition screen.

- Images that cannot be attached are not displayed. Highlight an image and press  to display. Press  to attach it or  to return to the list.
- For a JPEG image with the image size exceeding 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (QVGA), a confirmation screen appears asking whether to reduce it to the standby size (QVGA). Select *Yes* to convert.
- For a JPEG image exceeding 2 Mbytes, it is automatically reduced to a size that can be attached to mail. This operation may take some time.

Attaching video/i-motion (Compose i-motion Mail):

- 1 Select *i-motion*
- 2 Select **Data Box** ▶ Select a folder
 - To record and attach video: Select **Activate camera** ▶ Record ▶ ▶ Go to Step 3
 - The size of video images is automatically set to 176 x 144 (QCIF).
- 3 Select a video/i-motion file
 - The file name is displayed in the field of the mail composition screen.
 - Video/i-motion that cannot be attached is not displayed. Highlight video/i-motion and press to play. Completing the play returns to the list.

Attaching a melody:

- 1 Select **Melody**
- 2 Select a folder ▶ Select a melody
 - The file name is displayed in the field of the mail composition screen and appears at the lower part of the screen.
 - Melodies that cannot be attached are not displayed. Highlight a melody and press to play. Press to attach it or to return to the list.

Attaching PDF data:

- 1 Select **PDF**
- 2 Select a folder ▶ Select PDF data
 - The file name is displayed in the field of the mail composition screen.
 - PDF data that cannot be attached is not displayed. Highlight PDF data and press to display the data. Press to return to the list.

Attaching a schedule:

- 1 Select **Schedule**
- 2 Select a date ▶ Select a schedule ▶
- The file name is displayed in the field of the mail composition screen.

Attaching a bookmark:

- 1 Select **Bookmark**
- 2 Select a folder
 - Press in the folder list to switch between bookmarks of i-mode and bookmarks of Full Browser.
- 3 Select a bookmark
 - The file name is displayed in the field of the mail composition screen.
 - Highlight a bookmark and press to display the URL. Press to return to the list.

Attaching phonebook data:

- 1 Select **Phonebook**
- 2 Select a phonebook entry ▶
- The file name is displayed in the field of the mail composition screen.

Recording and attaching sound (Compose i-motion Mail): Select **Record voice** ▶

- Record (Sound Recorder) ▶
- The file name of the recorded sound is displayed in the field of the mail composition screen.

Attaching a Word, Excel, PowerPoint file:

- 1 Select **Other**
- 2 Select a folder ▶ Select a file
 - The file name is displayed in the field of the mail composition screen.

3 Press

- You can display or play the attached file by selecting the field. However, the following files cannot be displayed and played:
 - Melody exceeding 100 Kbytes
 - The file which includes two or more types among phonebook, schedule and bookmark in a file
 - Non-viewable file
 - Highlighting the field and pressing displays the file name.

INFORMATION

When you send mail with a JPEG image exceeding 10,000 bytes attached to an i-mode Mail (non-compatible with 2-Mbyte files) terminal, the image is reduced in the i-shot Center to a size that can be received at the receiver's terminal.

When you send mail with a file other than JPEG image, attached to a mova terminal, the attached file will be deleted and mail with no attachment will be delivered. If you send mail with the file which the receiver's terminal does not support attached, the attached file may be deleted in the i-mode Center. In that case, the message of [添付ファイル削除] (Attachment deleted) is added to the mail message.

Images exceeding 10,000 bytes can be reduced to 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (QVGA). ◀P254

The QVGA size is suitable for sending an image to an i-mode terminal.

Changing/removing attachments

Example Removing an attachment

1 Display the mail composition screen

2 Highlight field Select Yes

Changing the attachment: Highlight 
field  Attach a file  P194

Using mail templates

Mail templates are samples of the i-mode Mail. You can easily compose i-mode Mail by using mail templates; adding and editing the content. In addition, the Deco-mail also can be composed easily by using the mail template that has the decoration such as images predefined. You can use the mail templates downloaded from the sites or those you have composed besides the mail templates set by default (P348).

- Mail templates downloaded or composed are saved in *Read templates* as well as the mail templates set by default.
- You cannot use templates for SMS.

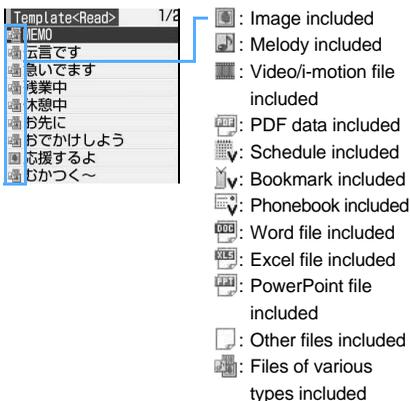
Using templates while composing mail

Read Template

1 on the mail composition screen

- Highlight a template and press  to display the template. Press  to read it or press  to return to the list.

2 Select a template



Template<Read> 1/2

-  : Image included
-  : Melody included
-  : Video/i-motion file included
-  : PDF data included
-  : Schedule included
-  : Bookmark included
-  : Phonebook included
-  : Word file included
-  : Excel file included
-  : PowerPoint file included
-  : Other files included
-  : Files of various types included

- When you read a template on the mail composition screen after entering any text, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite the mail contents. When you select *Read body only* and then select a template, only the message text is overwritten with the template. When you select *Read all* and then select a template, the address, subject, attachment, and message text are all overwritten. Press  to stop reading.
- Multiple templates cannot be read for one mail.

3 Edit the mail Press

Menu 18

Viewing templates and composing mail

Read Template

1 Select a template

- Press  to display the previous or next template.

2 Edit the mail Press

Saving templates

Save Template

Composed or received/sent i-mode Mail can be registered as a template.

- The maximum number of items that can be saved  P381
- You can edit a preinstalled template and save it as new template.
- In the following cases, the mail cannot be registered as a template.
 - When the total size of the text and decoration exceeds 10,000 bytes
 - The total size of images inserted in the text exceeds 90 Kbytes
 - The total size of the text, and images and attachments inserted in the text exceeds 100 Kbytes
- If no text is entered, the received/sent i-mode Mail cannot be registered. In addition, the address and subject are not be registered.

1 on the mail composition screen Select Yes

- To register a received/sent i-mode Mail:    on the mail view screen

2 Select each item to set

Display name :

Up to 20 one- or 10 two-byte characters can be entered.

File name:

The file name can contain up to 36 characters including one-byte alphanumeric, ".", "-", and "_". However, "." cannot be used for the first character of a file name.

3 Press

- To overwrite the saved template:  ►
Select a template ► Select *Yes*
- The preinstalled templates cannot be overwritten.

INFORMATION

To check or change the detail information of saved templates, highlight a template in the template list, press  and select *Detail info* *View* or *Edit*. Note that the detail information of preinstalled templates cannot be changed.

If you save a template containing an image that cannot be sent, the image may be deleted.

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the saved templates. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete them.

Downloading templates from sites

- The maximum number of items that can be saved
☛P381

1 Select a mail template during site display

- Press  to stop downloading.

2 Select *Save*

Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Saving templates". ☛P196

- To check the template: Select *Preview*
- To cancel saving: Select *Back* ► Select *No*

INFORMATION

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the saved templates. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete them.

When the downloaded mail template has a file attachment which cannot be used, it cannot be saved until the attachment is deleted.

When the downloaded mail template has an image that cannot be attached to mail or output from or used on FOMA terminal, it cannot be saved until the image is deleted.

Deleting templates

- The preinstalled templates cannot be deleted.

Example Deleting one item

1

2 Highlight a template ►

Deleting selected templates:   
► Select templates ► 

Deleting all the templates:    ►
Enter the terminal security code

3 Select *Yes*

Saving i-mode Mail for sending later

Save Mail

Saving unsent i-mode Mail

- The maximum number of items that can be saved
☛P381
- If none of address, subject, attachment or text is entered, the mail cannot be saved.

1 Press on the mail composition screen

i-mode Mail is saved in the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages*.

INFORMATION

When the memory is not enough, a message may appear indicating that the mail cannot be saved, or a confirmation screen may appear asking whether to remove the attachment and then save it. In that case, delete unnecessary mails in *Unsent messages* or remove the attachment before saving.

Sending i-mode Mail automatically inside the service area

Auto-send

You can save i-mode Mail composed outside the service area after setting it to be sent automatically when you are within the service area.

- Up to 5 items can be saved.
- You cannot save without setting the receiver (To).

1 Press **Menu** **2** on the mail composition screen

The mail is saved as auto-send mail in the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages* and  appears at the top of the screen.

Inside the service area

Auto-send mail is sent automatically.  flashes while auto-send mail is being sent and  disappears after all the auto-send mails are sent.

- When sending fails, the auto-send failure mail remains in *Unsent messages* and  flashes. When there are no failure mail by deleting, canceling the auto-send setting or exchanging the UIM,  disappears.

INFORMATION

Auto-send mail is not sent automatically while editing the signature.

Once auto-send mail fails to be sent, it is not sent automatically inside the service area next time. However, when sending is failed due to outside the service area, mail is resend up to twice.

Canceling the auto-send setting for auto-send mail/failure mail

- 1 Highlight the auto-send mail or failure mail in the unsent mail list ▶  ▶ **Select**
Yes

INFORMATION

The auto-send setting is also canceled if an auto-send mail is selected in the unsent mail list.

If you highlight a failure mail in the unsent mail list, press **Menu** and select *Display Display failed msg*, the cause of the error is displayed. Pressing  cancels the auto-send setting.

- In case a message indicating that sending to the broadcast addresses has failed appears as the cause of the error, you can display the broadcast address by pressing . Pressing  cancels the auto-send setting.

The auto-send setting for auto-send mail/failure mail is also canceled in the following cases:

- When the mail is moved to the folder for the Message i- ppli
- When exchanging the UIM
- When *Host number* or *Host address* is changed in Host Selection.

Editing and sending unsent/sent i-mode Mail

Example Editing the unsent mail

- 1  **4** ▶ **Select a folder**
 -  is indicated for SMS.
 - To edit and send the sent mail:  **5** ▶
Select a folder
- 2 **Select a mail**
 - To edit the sent mail again: Highlight a mail ▶

- 3 **Edit the mail** ▶ Press 

INFORMATION

You can also edit mail by pressing  on the sent mail view screen.

Composing mail quickly

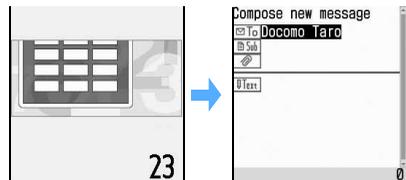
Quick Mail

You can compose i-mode Mail and SMS easily to the parties saved to the phonebook No. 0 to 99 in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- The first mail address registered in the phonebook entry is set as the address of i-mode Mail and the first phone number as the address of SMS.

Example Sending i-mode Mail to the party of phonebook No. 23

- 1 Enter the phonebook No. (**2** **3** in this case) ▶ Press 



- Enter the phonebook No. without prefix 0.
- Composing and sending i-mode Mail ▶ P189

Composing SMS: Enter the phonebook No. ▶  (for over a second)

- Composing and sending SMS ▶ P224

- The received i-mode Mail is saved in the **Inbox** folder of **Inbox**. However, when the received mail matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.
- The maximum number of items that can be saved
 ◀P381

1 An i-mode mail is received



Receiving screen

Flashing

When reception is completed, the reception result screen is displayed, the mail ring alert sounds and the keys light/flash.



Reception completed



Reception result screen

✉: Unread i-mode Mail exists.

✉: Unread i-mode Mail and SMS exist.

Reception result scrolls.

Number of received i-mode Mail

When reception fails, "x" is indicated after **Mail**. To receive unreceived mail, perform Check i-mode Message.

- Press while receiving to stop reception but depending on the receiving condition, the mail will be received.

2 1 Select a folder ▶ Select a mail

- When a melody is attached, it plays automatically. Auto play can be turned off. ▶P219
- Displaying the received mail ▶P205
- Select a Message i- ppli folder to start the corresponding i- ppli.

INFORMATION

The reception result screen is displayed for about 15 seconds if you do not press any key, or until the ring alert stops if ring time is set to 15 seconds or longer in Mail Alert. To return to the previous screen immediately, press .

If the data size of received mail (number of characters, attachment file size) exceeds the limit (maximum number of characters) set with **Limit Mail Size** in **Options** of iMenu, the attachments cannot be received automatically. To receive it, select the file name on the mail view screen. When the memory is not enough, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest received mail except unread one is overwritten. Be sure to protect received mail you want to keep. Note that the number of read mails to be deleted increases especially when receiving an attachment with large size, such as 2 Mbytes. If the mail cannot be overwritten because storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail, reception of i-mode Mail is stopped. or is indicated on the screen. To receive new messages, display unread mail, change unread mail to read, delete unnecessary mail or cancel mail protection.

i-mode Mail may not be received automatically soon after sending it. Perform Check i-mode Message.

Extremely large i-mode Mail may not be accepted by the i-mode Center and be returned to the sender with an error message.

When new i-mode Mail is delivered, the i-mode Mail and Message R/F stored in the i-mode Center are also received.

i-mode Mail received by FOMA terminal is saved in **Inbox** and i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center is deleted.

FOMA terminal shows which of TO, CC and BCC is specified for you when you receive a mail from a party who can specify TO, CC and BCC. ▶P207

When i-mode Mail is received from a party with the incoming mail settings made in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the settings apply to the operation of the ring alert, vibrator and/or the key. For details on checking with the phonebook, see "Name displays". ▶P80

- When multiple items of i-mode Mail or Message R/F are received at the same time, the operation depends on the conditions set for the last i-mode mail or Message R/F received.

For each i-mode mail including the attachment, it can be automatically received up to 100 Kbytes. The attachment exceeding 100 Kbytes can be manually downloaded from the i-mode Center. ▶P203

Incoming i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center in the following cases:

- The power is off
- During a videophone call
- In Self Mode
- When reception fails
- While being out of service area
- While receiving SMS
- During infrared communication
- When Receive Option Setting is on
- While connecting to the Data Center
- While Omakase Lock is on
- While connecting to the FirstPass center
- When the storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail

If there is unreceived i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center,  or  is indicated. However, the icon may not be displayed even when there is i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center. When the maximum number of mail that can be stored in the i-mode Center is reached, the icon changes to  or .

Selecting i-mode Mail to receive

Receive Option

You can select and receive i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center without receiving automatically.

When mail arrives in the i-mode Center

When Receive Option Setting is set to *ON*, incoming i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center and **You have mail at i-mode Center** appears.

- Even if i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center, the mail ring alert or vibrator is not activated.
- Press any key other than  or the keylock switch to clear the message.

INFORMATION

During All Lock, Omakase Lock or PIM Lock, the notification message does not appear for mail coming to the i-mode Center.

Even if Receive Option Setting is on, all the i-mode mails in the i-mode Center is received when Check i-mode Message is performed. If you do not want to receive mail, unselect the mail in Message Retrieval Setting. SMS and Message R/F are received automatically even if Receive Option Setting is on.

Selecting mail to receive

Check the subjects of i-mode Mail stored at the i-mode Center and then select mails to receive. You can also delete mails at the i-mode Center before receiving.

- To select mails to receive, set Receive Option Setting to *ON* in advance. When *ON* is set, i-mode Mail is not received automatically.

1



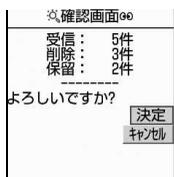
You are connected to the i-mode Center and the list of i-mode Mail stored appears.

-  : Image attached
-  : Melody attached
-  : i-motion attached
-  : Other files attached

2 Select 保留 (Hold) for each mail ▶ Select 受信 (Receive), 削除 (Delete) or 保留

- When 保留 is selected, the mail is stored at the i-mode Center. It can be received by using Check i-mode Message, etc.
- To delete all mails stored at the i-mode Center, select 削除 for *i モードセンターから全てのメールを* (All the mails from the i-mode Center).
- When the mail list has more than one page, select 前ページ (Previous page) and 次ページ (Next page) at the end of the list to view the previous and next pages.

3 Select 受信 / 削除 (Receive/Delete) ▶ Select 決定 (OK)



Checking for i-mode Mail

Check i-mode Message

You can check whether i-mode Mail has been delivered to the i-mode Center while FOMA terminal was out of the service area or turned off. Also check for Message R/F at the same time if it is set so in Message Retrieval Setting.

- Operate the terminal in locations with good radio wave conditions.

1 Hold down for over a second

- The operation on the reception result screen is the same as for auto reception. However, the screen does not return to the previous screen after about 15 seconds.

Replying to received i-mode Mail

Reply to Mail

- You may not be able to reply to some received mail.
- You cannot reply to the SMS for which *Anonymous*, *Payphone* or *Unavailable* is displayed in the sender field.
- Mail Reply Format allows you to set whether to quote the message in a reply mail and to select the character to be inserted at the beginning of the quoted message.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a mail ▶

The quick reply message selection screen appears.

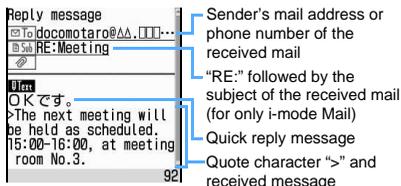
- When you are replying to SMS, the quick reply message selection screen does not appear. Go to Step 4.

Replying to all of the multiple addresses of received mail:

You can reply to the sender and all the receivers except you. You can select whether to quote the text.

   ▶  or 

3 Select a quick reply message



- To cancel inserting a quick reply message, select *Compose Message*. The message text entry screen appears.

4 Edit the mail ▶ Press

INFORMATION

On the received mail view screen, press .

If you press  on the received mail list and view screen, and select *Reply/Forward Reply* or *Reply with quote*, you can select whether to quote the text regardless of the setting for Mail Reply Format. When there are multiple addresses, you can also select *Reply all* or *Reply all w/ quote*.

The attachments to received mail are not attached to reply mail.

The data attached in the message text of received mail (links to start i- ppli or melodies (MFI format) inserted in the message) is neither attached nor quoted as characters in reply mail.

When received Deco-mail is quoted, the text is displayed with the decoration and inserted images quoted.

However, if file restriction is set to the images, they are not quoted in reply mail.

When you reply to the mail that was sent to multiple addresses by pressing , the mail addresses entered in the address field differ depending on the screen you operate from. When you reply from the received mail list, the mail address of the sender is entered. When you reply from the received mail view screen, the mail addresses of the sender and all the receivers except you are entered.

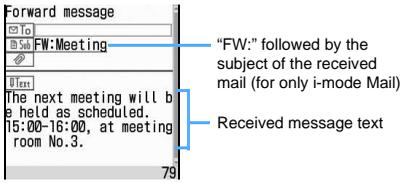
Forwarding received i-mode Mail

Forward Mail

- You can forward received SMS in the same way. i-mode Mail is forwarded as i-mode Mail and SMS is forwarded as SMS.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a mail



"FW:" followed by the subject of the received mail (for only i-mode Mail)

Received message text

- When forwarding received mail with an attachment, the attachment is also set. However, an attachment which is not downloaded or is being downloaded is not set.

3 Edit the mail

INFORMATION

On the received mail view screen, press  and select **Reply/Forward Forward**.

Regarding the attachments to received mail, files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal are not attached to forwarding mail. The data attached in the message text of received mail (links to start i-ppli or melodies inserted in the message) is neither attached nor quoted as characters in forwarding mail.

When received Deco-mail is forwarded, the text is displayed with the decoration and inserted images quoted.

When the total size of images inserted in the text exceeds 90 Kbytes, a message appears indicating that the image which exceeds the limit is deleted. Pressing  deletes the image of the part beyond the limit and displays the mail composition screen.

Displaying, playing and saving attachments from i-mode Mail Display/Play/Save Attachment

The file attached to i-mode mail can be received and downloaded up to 10 files within a total of 2 Mbytes.

The attachment is automatically downloaded up to 100 Kbytes in total. The attachment beyond it is selected and then downloaded. The downloaded attachment can be displayed and played, or saved in FOMA terminal.

- The maximum number of items that can be saved 

Checking the type/download status of attachment

1 Select a folder Select an i-mode mail with the file attached



Icon for attachment, file name and file size

- When the file is not downloaded or is being downloaded, the storage period is displayed.
- For the melody inserted in the message, the title is displayed.
- For the links to start i-ppli, only  and the name of i-ppli is displayed. 

- The downloaded image is displayed automatically (except for the attachment of Deco-mail).
- The downloaded melody is played automatically. Also, you can set not to play automatically. 
- The downloaded other viewable files can be displayed or played by selecting the file name. 
- The file which cannot be displayed and played by FOMA terminal (Non-viewable attachment) cannot be saved to FOMA terminal. Forwarding i-mode Mail () with it is available.

Meaning of the icon for attachment

File type	Download Status					
	Down loaded ^{*1}	Down loaded ^{*2}	Not down loaded	Download in progress	Download unavailable	Data invalid
Image						
Video/i-motion						
Melody						
Melody (In the message)			-	-	-	
PDF data						
Schedule		-				
Bookmark		-				
Phonebook		-				
Word		-				
Excel		-				
Power Point		-				
Non-viewable file		-				-

*1 Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal.

*2 Cannot be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal.

Downloading the attachment for selective reception

Download the attachment which is not downloaded or is being downloaded of the received mail.

- The file of which storage period expires cannot be downloaded.

1 Select the file name on the mail view screen

- Highlight the file name, press **Menu** and select **Attachment Display URL** to check the download destination.

INFORMATION

In case downloading the attachment which is not downloaded or is being downloaded, if the memory is not enough, the unprotected read mail may be deleted according to the size of file to be downloaded.

Displaying, playing and saving the image, video/i-motion or PDF data

Example Saving from *Inbox*

1 Highlight the file name on the mail view screen ▶ **Menu** **6** **3**

Saving images displayed in Deco-mail:

Menu **4** **4** ▶ **Select an image.**

- For the image inserted in Deco-mail, the display name or file name is not displayed.

Displaying and playing: Select the file name

- For the image, displaying/not displaying is switched whenever the file name is selected.

Checking the title: Highlight the file name

▶ **Menu** **6** **2**

2 Select each item to set

- For details on setting the image, follow Step3 in "Downloading images from sites". ◀P168
- For details on setting video/i-motion, follow Step3 in "Downloading i-motion from sites". ◀P179
- For details on setting PDF data, follow Step3 in "Downloading PDF data from sites". ◀P169

3 Press **Menu**

- For the image, select the folder to save.
- For the location to save, refer to "The location to save attachments". ◀P205

INFORMATION

When you check the title from the sent mail view screen or mail template view screen, highlight the file name, press **Menu** and select **Attachment Check title**.

You can save the file attached to the sent mail in the same way as above.

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved items. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete.

- For image, before deletion, the image can be displayed by pressing **Menu** on the image list, and the detail information on it can be displayed by pressing **Menu**.
- For video/i-motion, before deletion, you can play video/i-motion by pressing **Menu** on the video/i-motion list, and view detail information on it by pressing **Menu**.
- For PDF data, before deletion, you can view the detail information on it by pressing **Menu** on the PDF data list.

When an image is wider than the display, the reduced image is displayed.

Some images and video/i-motion files may not be displayed correctly.

Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 352 x 288 cannot be used as frame.

Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 240 x 320 cannot be used as stamp.

When the received mail with an image attached is displayed, the attached image is automatically displayed. Note that, the image inserted in the message text of received Deco-mail is automatically displayed, but the image attached to Deco-mail is not displayed automatically. Select the file name of image to display the image.

Playing i-motion attached to the mail on a PC requires special software. ◀P364

Playing and saving melodies

- If the sender uses a terminal other than the following terminals*1, the received melodies may not be correctly played.

*1 D701i, D701iWM, D702i, D702iBCL, D702iF, D703i, D800iDS, D851iWM, D901i, D901iS, D902i, D902iS and D903i

Example Saving from *Inbox*

1 Highlight the file name (title) on the mail view screen ▶ **Menu** **6** **2**

Playing: Select the file name (title)

- To stop playing: **Stop**
- The melody exceeding 100 Kbytes cannot be played.

Checking the title (melody attached after the message): Highlight the file name ▶

Menu **6** **5**

- To check the title (melody inserted in the message): Highlight the title ▶

Menu **6** **4**

Displaying the melody data as characters:

Highlight the title ▶ Menu **6** **5**

- This function is not available with melodies attached after the message.
- To return to the title display: Select the first row of the melody data

2 Enter the display name (up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters) ▶ Press **□**

- For details on entering the display name, follow Step 3 of “Downloading melodies from sites”. ◀P169
- For the location to save, refer to “The location to save attachments”. ◀P205

INFORMATION

To play and save the melody when displaying the melody data, highlight the first row of the data, press **□** and select *Attachment Play or Save*.

On the sent mail view screen, highlight the melody, press **□** and select *Attachment Save*.

When you check the title from the sent mail view screen or mail template view screen, highlight a file name, press **□** and select *Attachment Check title*.

The attached melody of the sent mail and mail template can be played similarly.

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved items. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete. Before deletion, you can play a melody by pressing **□** on the melody list and view detail information on the melody by pressing **□**.

Displaying and saving the schedule, bookmark and phonebook data

Example Saving from *Inbox*

1 Select the file name on the mail view screen

Displaying: Highlight the file name ▶

Menu **6** **1**

- If multiple data is contained in one file, they cannot be displayed.

Checking the file name: Highlight the file name ▶ Menu **6** **2**

2 Press **□**

- For a bookmark, enter the title (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters).
- If multiple data is contained in one file, they cannot be saved.
- For the location to save, refer to “The location to save attachments”. ◀P205

INFORMATION

The phonebook, schedule and bookmark data can be displayed and saved by the same operation also from the sent mail view screen.

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the data cannot be saved. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete.

Displaying and saving the files of Word, Excel and PowerPoint

Example Saving from *Inbox*

1 Highlight the file name on the mail view screen ▶ Menu **6** **3**

Displaying: Select the file name

Checking the file name: Highlight the file name ▶ Menu **6** **2**

2 Press **□**

- For the location to save, refer to “The location to save attachments”. ◀P205

INFORMATION

The files can be displayed and saved by the same operation also from the sent mail view screen.

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved items. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete.

Deleting attachments

Delete Attachment

- Images, melodies or links to start i- ppli inserted in the message cannot be deleted.

Example Deleting an image attached to the received mail

1 Highlight the file name on the mail view screen ▶ Menu **6** **4**

- To delete all the attachments: Menu **6** **5**

2 Select *Yes*

- The file name of the deleted attachment is displayed in a light color and cannot be selected.

INFORMATION

On the sent mail view screen, highlight an attachment, press **Menu** and select *Attachment Delete* or *Delete all*.

The location to save attachments

Attachments are saved in the following locations by the file type.

File type	The folder to save
Image *1	<i>My Picture</i> of Data Box • The folder is selected when saving.
Video/i-motion	<i>i-motion</i> of Data Box
Melody	<i>Melody</i> of Data Box
PDF data	<i>My Document</i> of Data Box
Schedule	<i>Scheduler</i> of Stationary
Bookmark	<i>Bookmark</i> of i-mode • The bookmark of Full Browser is saved to <i>Bookmark</i> of Full Browser.
Phonebook	Phonebook list
Word, Excel, PowerPoint	<i>Other</i> of Data Box
Non-viewable file	-

*1 The images which can be used as Deco-mail pictogram are saved to the *Deco-mail pict* folder.

Menu 11 / Menu 14 / Menu 15

Displaying mail in Inbox/Outbox

Inbox/Outbox

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ☛P381
- Folders in *Unsent messages* contain the i-mode Mail and SMS that were saved without sending or failed to be sent, as well as the i-mode Mail that is set to be sent automatically upon entering the service area.
- Mails in *ドコモからのお知らせ* (Information from DoCoMo) are saved in the *Inbox* folder of *Inbox* by default.

Example Displaying received mail in *Inbox*

1  1

- To display sent mail in *Outbox*:  5
- To display unsent mail in *Unsent messages*:

 4

2 Select a folder

The received mail list is displayed.

- Select a Message i- ppli folder to start the corresponding i- ppli.
- To display mail in a Message i- ppli folder without starting i- ppli: Highlight the folder ▶

Menu 1

3 Select a mail

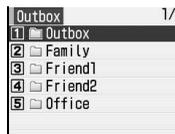
- Useful functions of mail ☛P211
- Selecting mail from the unsent mail list displays the mail composition screen.

The received mail folder list screen



-  (in gray): No mail
-  (in yellow): No unread mail
-  : No mail/No unread mail (Privacy on)
-  : No mail/No unread mail (used for Message i- ppli)
-  : Unread mail exists
-  : Unread mail exists (Privacy on)
-  : Unread mail exists (used for Message i- ppli)

The sent/unsent mail folder list screen



-  (in gray): No mail
-  (in yellow): Mail exists
-  : Privacy on
-  : Message i- ppli

The received mail list screen



- 1 Reception date/time and sender
- 2 Subject (for SMS, beginning of message)

- 1
 - : Unread
 - : Unread (unable to reply)
 - : Read
 - : Read (unable to reply)
 - : Read (replied)
 - : Read (forwarded)
 - : Protected
 - : Protected (unable to reply)
 - : Protected (replied)
 - : Protected (forwarded)
- For replied/forwarded mail, icon indication priority is given to the last operation made.
- 2
 - : Image attached : Melody attached
 - : Video/i-motion attached
 - : PDF data attached : Schedule attached
 - : Bookmark attached
 - : Phonebook data attached
 - : Word file attached
 - : Excel file attached
 - : PowerPoint attached
 - : Non-viewable files attached
 - : Multiple files attached
 - : SMS
 - : Delivered report/missed call notice
 - : i- ppli To exists
 - : Mail used for Message i- ppli
- When **Display 1 row** is set in Mail List Setting, is displayed before the subject of a mail with attachment.
- When i- ppli To exists, the icons for other attachments are not displayed.
- When the sender is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.
- For SMS sent from overseas, "+" is appended at the beginning of the sender address.
- In the reception date/time field, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
- The subject may not be displayed depending on the received i-mode Mail.
- For SMS which contains an error, is indicated and the reception date/time becomes "--/--" (only on the reception day). The sender is not displayed.

The sent/unsent mail list screen

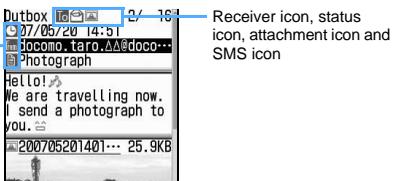


- 1 Sent or saved date/time and receiver
- Subject (for SMS, beginning of message)

- 1 No icon: Unprotected
 - : Protected
 - : Auto-send
 - : Protected (auto-send)
 - : Auto-send failure
 - : Protected (auto-send failure)
 - : Image attached : Melody attached
 - : Video/i-motion attached
 - : PDF data attached : Schedule attached
 - : Bookmark attached
 - : Phonebook data attached
 - : Word file attached
 - : Excel file attached
 - : PowerPoint file attached
 - : Non-viewable files attached
 - : Multiple files attached
 - : SMS
 - : i- ppli To exists
 - : Mail used for Message i- ppli
- When **Display 1 row** is set in Mail List Setting, is displayed before the subject of a mail with attachment in the sent mail list.
- When i- ppli To exists, the icons for other attachments are not displayed.
- In the sent or saved date/time field, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
- When the receiver is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.

The mail view screen

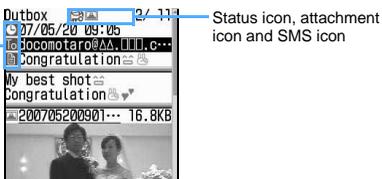
Received mail view screen



Receiver icon, status icon, attachment icon and SMS icon

- 1 : Reception date and time
 - : Sender
 - : Receiver (TO) (only i-mode Mail)
 - : Receiver (CC) (only i-mode Mail)
 - : Subject (*Received SMS, SMS report request* or *Notify missed call* for SMS)
 - : Sender (unable to reply)
 - : Receiver (To) (unable to reply) (only i-mode Mail)
 - : Receiver (CC) (unable to reply) (only i-mode Mail)
- For SMS which contains an error, is indicated.

Sent mail view screen



Status icon, attachment icon and SMS icon

- 1 : Sent date and time
- : Receiver (TO)
- : Receiver (CC) (only i-mode Mail)
- : Receiver (BCC) (only i-mode Mail)
- : Subject (*Sent SMS* for SMS)

INFORMATION

The character which cannot be displayed is replaced by a blank, etc.

When decorated mail is received from a PC, operations may not be the same as on the PC.

For melody and links to start i- ppli inserted in the message, only one item is available. When there is more than one data item attached in the message text, the attached data becomes invalid. In this case, is indicated for the attachment icon.

When viewing Deco-mail, URLs for downloading images or i-motion may not be visible depending on the background color of the mail.

If i- ppli introduced by mail in ドコモからのお知らせ is started, the communication fee is charged.

For i-mode Mail, the mail address of sender or receiver is checked against the mail address field in the phonebook data. For SMS, the phone number of sender or receiver is checked against the phone number field in the phonebook data. For details on checking with the phonebook, see "Name displays". P80
The subject and sender of the received SMS, delivered report, and missed call notice are displayed on the view screen as shown below:

Item	SMS	Delivered report	Missed call notice
Subject	<i>Received SMS</i>	<i>SMS report request</i>	<i>Notify missed call</i>
Sender	Phone number	<i>SMS Center</i>	<i>DoCoMo SMS</i>

• When the caller ID is not notified, the following characters are displayed in the sender field:

Anonymous:

Message sent by setting not to notify the caller ID

Payphone:

Message sent from a payphone

Unavailable:

Message sent using a procedure that does not provide the caller ID

When there are attachments (P202) or links to start i- ppli (P239), the icon, the file name, etc. are displayed on the view screen.

Adding/deleting folders

Adding folders

- In *Inbox*, you can add up to 40 folders other than the *Inbox* folder and Message i- ppli folders.
- In *Outbox* or *Unsent messages*, you can add up to 20 folders other than the *Outbox* folder or the *Unsent messages* folder and Message i- ppli folders respectively.
- Folder settings for the *Inbox*, *Outbox* and *Unsent messages* folders and Message i- ppli folders cannot be changed.

Example Adding a folder in *Inbox*

1

• *Outbox* P205 • *Unsent messages* P205

2

Changing folder settings: Highlight a folder

Moving up or down the folder: Highlight a folder or

3 Select each item to set ▶ Press

Folder name:

Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters).

Privacy:

When *ON* is set, the folder is not displayed when Privacy Mode is active (with *Hide secret fldrs* set for *Mail*).

Deleting folders

- The *Inbox*, *Outbox* and *Unsent messages* folders registered by default cannot be deleted.
- Folders containing protected mail cannot be deleted. Cancel protection and then delete the folders.
- Message i- ppli folders cannot be deleted when the i- ppli for the folder exists. Although the folder can be deleted when there is no corresponding i- ppli, all the folders created by the corresponding i- ppli are deleted.

Example Deleting a folder in *Inbox*

1

- *Outbox* ◀P205 • *Unsent messages* ◀P205

2 Highlight a folder ▶

3 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select *Yes*

Checking number of mail items Msgs. in Folder

You can check the number of received, sent or unsent mail saved in each folder.

Example Checking the number of received mail saved

1

- Sent mail ◀P205 • Unsent mail ◀P205

2 Highlight a folder ▶ Press

INFORMATION

On the mail list screen, press  and select *Display Check No. of items*.

Checking mail addresses

Display Address

You can view an entire mail address when the whole address is not displayed or when the address is registered in the phonebook and only the name is displayed.

Example Checking the mail address of a received mail

1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a mail

- Sent mail ◀P205 • Mail templates ◀P196

2 Select a sender or receiver

INFORMATION

To check multiple mail addresses at one time, press  on the mail view screen and select *Display Display address*. In the received/sent/unsent mail list, highlight the mail to display mail addresses, press  and select *Display Display address*. All the receiver's addresses are displayed for sent/unsent mail, and the addresses of sender and all the receivers (except you) for received mail (*TO:* and *CC:* are also displayed).

Moving received/sent mail to another folder

Move Mail

Saved mail can be moved or copied to other folders.

Example Moving a received mail to another folder

1 ▶ Select a folder

- Sent mail ◀P205 • Unsent mail ◀P205

2 Highlight a received mail ▶

Moving selected mails:    

▶ Select mails ▶ 

Moving all the mails in the folder:

3 ▶ Select the destination folder ▶ Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

If mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, *Unable to display message* appears and the operation may be canceled.

When i-mode Mail with the auto-send setting is moved to a Message i- ppli folder, the auto-send setting is canceled.

Search received/sent mail by specifying sender/receiver or by received/sent date.

- Received mails are searched by specifying sender or received date.
- Sent mails are searched by specifying receiver or sent date.

Example Searching received mails by sender



- Sent mail  P205

2    ▶ Select the phonebook entry to use for search



- To search by received date or sent date:
   ▶ Select the date
- When you highlight a phonebook entry or a date, when *Display 1 row* is set in Mail List Setting, the first 4 mails that meet the search condition are displayed. When *Display 2 rows* is set, the first 2 mails that meet the search condition are displayed.
 - Press  to display all the mails in a list that meet the search condition.
 - If you search sent mails by receiver, the mails are searched even if the party registered in the phonebook is set in the address after the second item (the first address is displayed on the screen).
- To display the phonebook entry with Secret Attribute set, activate Secret Mode.

3 Select a mail to display

- The search result screen can be operated in the same way as the mail list.
- To cancel mail search:  

INFORMATION

In the received mail or sent mail list, press  and select *Message search With phonebook* or *With calender*. In this case, only the mails in the selected folder are searched.

You can temporarily change the order of received or sent mail in the list. Closing the list resets the sorting order to *By date*.

- You can select from *By date*, *By sender (By address for sent mail)*, *By title*, and *By size*.
- You cannot change the order of unsent mail and received/sent SMS in the UIM.

Default  

Example Sorting the received mail list

1   ▶ Select a folder

- Sent mail  P205

2    ▶ Press any of  to 

Sorting the sent mail list:   ▶  to 

INFORMATION

When *By sender* or *By address* is set, mails will be sorted by mail address not by name in the phonebook even if the mail address is registered in the phonebook. When *By title* is set, if the subject contains both one-byte and two-byte characters, mails may not be properly sorted in the order of the Japanese syllabary. In case of *By size*, mails are sorted in order of the mail size including attachments from large to small. When *By title* is set, if any SMS is saved in the same folder mails will not be properly sorted in the order of the Japanese syllabary because the beginning of the message is displayed as subject.

Changing the read/unread status of received mail

- You cannot change the read/unread status of protected received mail.

Example Changing a read mail to unread

1   ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a mail ▶ Press   

Changing an unread mail to read:

Highlight a mail ▶   

Changing multiple read mails to unread:

   ▶ Select mails ▶  ▶

Select Yes

Changing multiple unread mails to read:

   ▶ Select mails ▶  ▶

Select Yes

Changing all the mails in the folder to unread: [Menu] [5] [6] ▶ Select *Yes*

Changing all the mails in the folder to read: [Menu] [5] [5] ▶ Select *Yes*

Protecting received/sent mail

Protect Mail

You can protect received, sent and unsent mail to avoid accidental deletion or being overwritten when there is not enough storage space.

- The maximum number of items that can be protected ◀P381
- Unread mail cannot be protected.

Example Protecting a received mail

1 [Envelope] [1] ▶ Select a folder

- Sent mail ◀P205 • Unsent mail ◀P205

2 Highlight a mail ▶ Press [Menu] [3] [1]

The mail is protected and the icon changes to one of the following:

Received mail : (read) (unable to reply)

(replied) (forwarded)

Sent/unsent mail:

- To cancel protection: Highlight a mail ▶

[Menu] [3] [4]

Protecting selected mails: [Menu] [3] [2] ▶

Select mails ▶

Protecting all the mails in the folder:

[Menu] [3] [3]

Canceling protection of selected mails:

[Menu] [3] [5] ▶ Select mails ▶

Canceling protection of all the mails:

[Menu] [3] [6]

INFORMATION

On the mail view screen, press [Menu] and select *Protect* or *Cancel protection*.

If mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, *Unable to display message.* appears and the operation may be canceled.

When *Protect all* is selected, mails are protected in the chronological order, most recent first, until the limit is reached.

Deleting received/sent mail

Delete Mail

Unnecessary mail can be deleted from *Inbox*, *Outbox* and *Unsent messages*.

- Protected mail cannot be deleted. When you delete all the mails at one time, protected mail remains undeleted even if it matches the specified criteria. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

Deleting received mail

: Available x: Not available

Deletion method	Screen for starting operation		
	Folder list	Mail list	Mail view
<i>All messages</i>		x	x
<i>Read in folder</i>		*1	x
<i>All in folder</i>		*1	x
<i>7days past in fldr</i> *3		*1	x
<i>14days past in fldr</i> *3		*1	x
<i>30days past in fldr</i> *3		*1	x
<i>One item/Selected item</i>	x		
<i>Selected items</i>	x		x
<i>All search result</i>	x	*2	x

*1 Not available from the mail search results list

*2 Available only from the mail search results list

*3 Mail is deleted when the specified number of days has passed since it was received.

- When you delete all the mails at one time, unread mails that match the specified criteria are also deleted.

Example Deleting a received mail

1 [Envelope] [1]

Deleting all the mails: [Menu] [4] [6] ▶

Enter the terminal security code ▶ Go to Step 4

2 Select a folder

3 Highlight a received mail ▶

[Menu] [2] [1]

Deleting selected mails: [Menu] [2] [2] ▶

Select mails ▶

Deleting the read mail in the folder:

[Menu] [2] [3]

Deleting all the mails in the folder:

[Menu] [2] [4] ▶ Enter the terminal security code

Deleting by specifying the number of days that has passed since the mail was received: **Menu** **2** ▶ **5** to **7**

4 Select Yes

INFORMATION

In the folder list, press **Menu** and select *Delete message*. On the mail view screen, press **Menu** and select *Delete*. If mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, *Unable to display message*. appears and the operation may be canceled.

Deleting sent/unsent mail

: Available x : Not available

Deletion method	Screen for starting operation		
	Folder list	Mail list	Mail view (sent mail)
<i>All messages</i>		x	x
<i>All in folder</i>		x	x
<i>All items</i> *1	x	*2	x
<i>One item/Selected item</i> *3	x		
<i>Selected items</i>	x		x
<i>All search result</i>	x	*3	x

*1 Deleting all the mails in the folder

*2 Not available from the sent mail search results list

*3 Available only from the sent mail search results list

Example Deleting a sent mail

1 **5**

- Unsent mail ◀P205

Deleting all the mails: **Menu** **4** **2** ▶

Enter the terminal security code ▶ **Go to Step 4**

2 Select a folder

3 Highlight a mail ▶ **Menu** **2** **1**

Deleting selected mails: **Menu** **2** **2** ▶

Select mails ▶ **1**

Deleting all the sent mails in the folder:

Menu **2** **3** ▶ Enter the terminal security code

4 Select Yes

INFORMATION

In the folder list, press **Menu** and select *Delete message*. On the mail view screen, press **Menu** and select *Delete*.

Useful functions of mail

You can make voice/videophone (Phone To/AV Phone To), compose i-mode Mail (Mail To), or connect to sites (Web To) from a phone number, mail address or URL in the message. You can also copy characters in the message and save phone numbers or mail addresses, etc. in the phonebook.

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

- The operation is the same as when performing the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function from sites. ▶P171
- When mail is received from a PC, these functions may not be available.

Copying text

You can copy characters in the i-mode Mail, SMS, or mail template. Copied text can be pasted in entry fields on the mail composition screen, phonebook registration screen, etc.

- For SMS stored in the UIM, you can copy the message text, receiver and sender.
- For Deco-mail, the decoration data is not copied other than the message text and signature. Only the text can be copied.
- Copied text is recorded until FOMA terminal is turned off and it can be pasted into other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be retained. When you copy a new item, it overwrites the previously copied text.

Example Copying text from the received mail view screen

1 Display the received mail view screen

- Highlight the item to copy when copying a selected item.

2 **Menu** **2**

- When a mail template is displayed, press **Menu** **3**.

3 Select the copying method

Copy text:

Copies a specified range of the message text.

Copy title:

Copies the subject.

Copy selected item:

Copies a highlighted item.

- For *Copy text*, specify the copy range. Follow Step 2 in "Copying the URL". ➔P172

4 Display a character entry screen to be pasted ▶ Paste the copied text

INFORMATION

When text in the Date To format is included in the message, it needs to be pasted and saved to Notepad before saving as schedule.

Making calls from the received/sent mail

Phone Call

Calls can be made to the sender of received mail or the receiver of sent mail.

- The mail address (except for "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp") and phone number must be registered in the phonebook.

Example Making a call from the received mail

1 Display the received mail list

2 Highlight a mail ▶

- On the received/sent mail view screen, highlight the party to call (sender/receiver) and press  .
- When there are multiple receivers, the mail address selection screen appears. Select the mail address to make a call to.

3 Set dialing conditions

4 Press

- When operating from the view screen, press  and select *Yes*.

Registering phone numbers, addresses and URLs in the phonebook

You can register phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs in i-mode Mail or SMS in the phonebook.

Example Registering a new entry from the received mail view screen

1 Display the mail ▶ Highlight an item

- You can register only the items that can be highlighted.

2

- To add the data to the existing phonebook entry:   
- Follow Step 3 in "Registering phone numbers and mail addresses in the phonebook". ➔P172

INFORMATION

On the view screen for sent mail or SMS in the UIM, press  and select *Save*.

Registration may not be made from Deco-mail.

When multiple addresses are listed with no space in the message text, you may not be able to register them.

Registering URLs in Bookmark

You can register URLs in the message text of the i-mode Mail or SMS in Bookmark.

Example Registering a bookmark from the received mail view screen

1 Display the mail

2 Highlight the URL ▶

3 Select a folder

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 of "Registering in Bookmark". ➔P165

INFORMATION

Registration may not be made from Deco-mail.

Saving mails in the Data Center

Data Security Service

Data Security Service allows you to save i-mode Mail and SMS in the Data Center.

- Data Security Service is a pay service and require a subscription. For more information, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Saving mails

- Mail for which the file capacity of one item exceeds 10,000 bytes cannot be saved.
- You can check the log of communication with the Data Center. ➔P98

Example Saving a received mail

1 ▶ Select a folder

- Sent mail ➔P205 • Unsent mail ➔P205

2 ▶ Select a mail ▶

- Up to 10 items can be selected.
- Delivered report of SMS cannot be saved.

Saving sent mail:    ▶ Select mail ▶ 

Saving unsent mail:    ▶ Select mail ▶ 

3 Select Yes ▶ Enter the terminal security code

The selected mail is saved in the Data Center. When saving is completed, the result is displayed.

- The result disappears in about 5 seconds and returns to the mail list. Press  to return to the list immediately.

INFORMATION

If you have not yet subscribed to Data Security Service, a screen appears to inform you of that effect.

Restoring mail

Mail saved in the Data Center is restored from the site of the Data Center to FOMA terminal. For more information, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

- Files will be protected when restored. However, this is not applicable in the following cases:
 - When unread mail saved in the Data Center is restored
 - When the maximum number of protected mails that can be saved in FOMA terminal is reached

Using the mail log

Received Msg. Log/Sent Msg. Log

This function records the log of the received/sent mails. You can compose i-mode Mail/SMS, or make a voice/videophone by calling the log.

- When the mails are sent to multiple addresses, they are recorded on the sent message log, beginning with the address added at the last.
- Up to 30 items are recorded, respectively. If it exceeds 30 items, the oldest one will be deleted.

Example Operating from the received message log

1

- Sent message log:    

2 Highlight a log

- If you select the log, the details screen of the log is displayed.

3 Press the key to perform the operation

- You can perform the operation in the same way from the details screen of the log.

Composing i-mode Mail: 

The mail composition screen is displayed and a mail address is set in the address field as follows:

- For the log of i-mode Mail, the mail address of the sender/receiver is set.
- For the log of SMS, when the phone number of the sender or receiver is registered in the phonebook entry and the mail address is registered in the same phonebook entry, the mail address is set.

Composing SMS:  (for over a second)

The SMS composition screen is displayed, and a phone number is set in the address field as follows:

- For the log of SMS, the phone number of the sender or receiver is set.
- For the log of i-mode Mail, when the mail address of the sender or receiver is registered in the phonebook and the phone number is registered in the same phonebook entry, the phone number is set.

Making a voice call: 

- Holding  down for over a second dials using the speakerphone function regardless of the setting for speakerphone.

Making a videophone call: 

- Holding  down for over a second dials using the speakerphone function regardless of the setting for speakerphone.

Using Call Option:  

The screen for Call Option is displayed.

Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Making calls by setting the conditions". ●P54

Adding to the phonebook:  ▶  to register a new entry or  to add to an existing entry.

- Follow Step 3 in "Registering phone numbers and mail addresses in the phonebook". ●P172
- The mail address is registered for i-mode Mail, and the phone number is registered for SMS.

Setting whether to display an image on the log details screen: **Menu** **9** on the details screen of the log ▶ **1** to **3**

- For details ◀P90

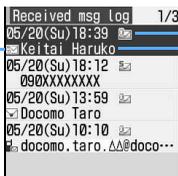
INFORMATION

You can also operate in the same way from the sent message log list and sent message log details screen. Even if mails sorted automatically to the folders with the privacy set to **OFF** is moved to the folders with the privacy set to **ON** and Privacy Mode is set (with **Hide secret fldrs** set for **Mail**), the mails are displayed on the mail log. On the contrary, even if mails sorted automatically to the folders with the privacy set to **ON** is moved to the folders with the privacy set to **OFF**, the mails are not displayed on the mail log when Privacy Mode is on (with **Hide secret fldrs** set for **Mail**). The phone number used when making a voice/ videophone or using Call Option is as follows depending on whether you use the log of i-mode Mail or SMS.

- For SMS, a call is made to the phone number of the log.
- For i-mode Mail, when the mail address of the sender or receiver is registered in the phonebook and the phone number is registered in the same phonebook entry, a call is made.

Received/sent message log list screen

Log list screen



Displayed when registered in the phonebook

Received/sent date and time
Icon for type of i-mode Mail and SMS

Mail address of sender/receiver (phone number for SMS) or name*1

*1 When the mail address or phone number is registered in the phonebook.

Log details screen



Received/sent date and time

Icon for type of log

Name*1, Image*2

Mail address of sender/receiver (phone number for SMS)

*1 When the mail address of sender/receiver (phone number for SMS) is registered in the phonebook.

*2 When the mail address is registered in the phonebook.

- On the received message log list or details screen, if you press **Menu** and select **Sent msg log**, the sent message log list is displayed.

- On the sent message log list or details screen, if you press **Menu** and select **Received msg log**, the received message log list is displayed.
- On the received message log list or details screen, press **☐** to display the received call list of phone.
- On the sent message log list or details screen, press **☐** to display the redial list.

Deleting message logs

Delete Msg. Log

Example Deleting a received message log

1 **Menu** **4** **7** **2**

• Sent message log: **Menu** **4** **7** **1**

2 Highlight a log ▶ **Menu** **6** **1**

Deleting selected logs: **Menu** **6** **2** ▶

Select a log ▶ **☐**

Deleting all the logs: **Menu** **6** **3**

3 Select **Yes**

INFORMATION

On the mail log details screen, press **Menu** and select **Delete**.

Even if the received/sent message log is deleted, the received/sent mail is not deleted.

Even if the received/sent mail is deleted, the received/sent message log is not deleted.

Setting mail functions of FOMA terminal

Mail Setting

Menu 193

Sorting mails automatically into designated folders

Sort Criteria

Received/sent i-mode Mail and SMS can be sorted into the specified folders automatically according to the set criteria.

- Up to 30 criteria can be registered for received mail and sent mail respectively.

Setting sort criteria

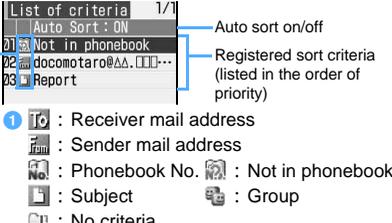
- To set and activate the criteria, set auto sort to **ON** for received mail and sent mail. It is set to **ON** by default. ◀P216
- The criteria are valid for the mail received/sent after setting the criteria. Previously received/sent mail is not resorted.

- You can sort normal mail to Message i- ppli folders.
- If the corresponding Message i- ppli folder exists, any mail for Message i- ppli is saved in that folder, regardless of the sort criteria.

Example Setting sort criteria for incoming mail



- To set sort criteria for outgoing mail: 



1         

Auto sort on/off

Registered sort criteria (listed in the order of priority)

 : Receiver mail address

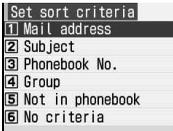
 : Sender mail address

 : Phonebook No.  : Not in phonebook

 : Subject  : Group

 : No criteria

3   **Set the sort criteria**



Sort criteria setting screen

Specifying a mail address:

Sorts mail by sender/receiver mail address. Specify an entire address including characters following the @ symbol (up to 50 one-byte characters). You cannot sort mail by specifying part of the mail address. If you specify a phone number, you can sort SMS as well.

①   **Enter a mail address** 

- Selecting from the sent message log:   **Select a log**
- Selecting from the received message log:   **Select a log**
- Specifying a mail address registered in the phonebook:   **Select a party**

Specifying a subject:

Sorts mail having a subject that includes the specified characters (up to 30 one-byte or 15 two-byte characters). You cannot sort SMS by subject.

①  **Enter a subject** 

Specifying a phonebook No.:

Sorts mail to/from the mail address or phone number corresponding to the specified FOMA terminal phonebook No. i-mode Mail is sorted by checking the mail address in the phonebook. SMS is sorted by checking the phone number in the phonebook.

①  **Enter the phonebook No.** 

② **Select the phonebook data**

Specifying a group:

Sorts mail to/from the mail address or phone number saved to the specified group.

① 

②  **to specify the FOMA terminal phonebook or**  **to specify the UIM phonebook**

③ **Select the group**

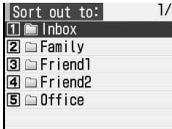
Specifying "Not in phonebook":

Sorts mail to/from the mail address or phone number not saved in the phonebook. i-mode Mail is checked against the mail address in the phonebook. SMS is checked against the phone number in the phonebook.

Setting "no criteria":

Sorts all the mails without setting criteria.

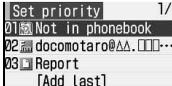
4 Select the folder to sort mail



- When a Message i- ppli folder is selected, a message appears indicating that mail in the selected folder is used for i- ppli. To set as the folder to sort mail to, select *Yes*.

5 Specify the priority

The new criteria is added above the selected row.



- To set the first criteria in the list: Select *[Add last]*.
- To add the criteria to the end of the list: Select *[Add last]*.
- Criteria are listed in the order of priority.
- When registered criteria are changed, *[Move to last]* is displayed instead of *[Add last]*.

INFORMATION

If the sender uses an i-mode terminal with its phone number set as the mail address, only the phone number is received as the address. Therefore, no sorting occurs when "mobile phone number @docomo.ne.jp" is specified in the criteria. When the same mail address is registered in both of the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook, the FOMA terminal phonebook addresses are given priority for sorting. In such a case, the sort priority set in this function may not apply.

The criteria are checked in accordance with their priority. For example, when 2 criteria are set, mail is sorted as follows:

- ① Mail is checked to determine if it matches the criteria of first priority; if so, it is saved in the specified folder. If not, the procedure goes to ②.
- ② Mail is checked to determine if it matches the criteria of second priority; if so, it is saved in the specified folder. If not, it is saved in the *Inbox* folder or the *Outbox* folder.

Checking and changing sort criteria

1 ▶ or

2 Select the sort criteria

- You can change or delete sort criteria while checking it.

Changing registered sort criteria:

① **Highlight the sort criteria** ▶ ▶

Specify the sort criteria

- Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Setting sort criteria". ◀P215

② **Select Yes**

Changing the priority: Highlight a sort criteria ▶ ▶ **Select the position**

- The criteria is moved to just above the selected row. To move to the end of the list, select *[Move to last]*.

Deleting criteria: Highlight a sort criteria

▶ ▶ **Select Yes**

- To delete all: ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ **Select Yes**

Setting auto sort

- Even if *ON* is set, no sorting occurs when sort criteria are not set.

Default *ON* (all)

Example Sorting received mail automatically

1

2 ▶

- To sort sent mail automatically ▶

3 Press or

Menu 194

Registering signature for mail

Signature

You can register the signature to be inserted in the message of i-mode Mail and SMS. You can also set whether to automatically insert the signature when you compose mail.

Editing and registering signature for mail

- The signature can be decorated, but Melo-deco cannot be used. The procedure of decoration is the same as for Deco-mail. Decoration reduces the number of characters you can enter accordingly.
- Mail becomes Deco-mail if any decorated signature is inserted into the mail.

Default not recorded

1 ▶ ▶

2 Enter the signature (up to 9,998 one-byte or 4,999 two-byte characters)

- Up to 10,000 one-byte or 5,000 two-byte characters can be entered. However, since a line feed is entered when you insert a signature, reduce 2 one-byte or 1 two-byte for line feed.

3 Press

Setting whether to insert signature automatically

- Even if *ON* is set, the signature cannot be inserted when not registered.

Default *ON*

1 ▶

2 Press or

INFORMATION

The signature text is counted as characters in the message. If there is no available space for number of characters of the signature and line feed, a signature cannot be inserted.

When *Auto add* is set to *ON*, the signature is always inserted at the end of message when replying and forwarding. However, as for the background color which is set for Signature, it is reflected only when composing i-mode Mail or replying to received i-mode Mail without quoting.

When a signature is registered, you can insert the signature by pressing **Menu** on the message text entry screen and selecting **Phrase/Kuten/Quote Add signature**. However, as for the background color which is set for Signature, it is reflected only at the state where the text is not input in case of in i-mode Mail. The signature cannot be inserted in SMS in following cases:

- When the number of characters exceeds 70 (one- or two-byte), if you add the signature.
- When the signature is decorated.
- When composing SMS in case the font type is set to **English** in SMS Setting.
- When replying to or forwarding SMS for which the font type is set to **English**.

When the registered signature includes phone number, mail address or URL and is sent to an i-mode terminal, the receiver can use the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function.

Menu 164 / Menu 2632 / ▼ 632

Setting items to inquire to the i-mode Center

Message Retrieval Setting

- **Mail**, **MessageR**, and **MessageF** are all selected to be by default. If you do not want to check for any item, change it to .

Default selected (all)

- 1 **Menu** **6** **4** ▶ Select the item to inquire ▶ Press **Menu**

Menu 1972

Setting to select and receive only necessary mail

Receive Option Setting

- When **ON** is set, mail is selected to be received, and when **OFF** is set, mail is received automatically.

Default OFF

- 1 **Menu** **9** **7** **2** ▶ Press **1** or **2**
 - When **ON** is selected, a message appears indicating that mails will not be automatically delivered. Press **3**.
 - When **ON** is set, Chat Mail cannot be used.

Menu 196

Registering addresses in a mail group

Mail Group Setting

By registering multiple mail addresses in a mail group, multiple addresses can be set by a simple operation when composing i-mode Mail.

- Up to 20 mail groups can be registered. Up to 5 mail addresses can be saved in each mail group.

- 1 **Menu** **9** **6**

- 2 **Menu**

Renaming a mail group: Highlight a mail group ▶ **Menu** **2**

Copying a mail group: Highlight a mail group ▶ **Menu** **3**

Deleting a mail group: Highlight a mail group ▶ **Menu** **4** **1** ▶ Select **Yes**

Deleting all the mail groups: **Menu** **4** **2** ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select **Yes**

- 3 Enter a mail group name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ▶ **Menu**

- To add another group: **Menu**

- 4 Select a mail group

- 5 **Menu** ▶ Select each item to set

Address Type:

Select TO, CC or BCC. ◀P190

Address:

Enter a mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters).

- To select from the sent message log: **Menu** **1** ▶ Select a log
- To select from the received message log: **Menu** **2** ▶ Select a log
- To select from the phonebook: **Menu** **3** ▶ Select a party

- 6 **Menu**

- To add another mail address to the mail group: Repeat from Step 5

Editing a mail address: Select a mail address (or name) ▶ Edit the mail address ▶ **Menu**

Deleting a mail address: Highlight a mail address (or name) ▶ **Menu** **2** ▶ Select **Yes**

Displaying mail address details: **Menu** **3** ▶ **3** after checking the details

- 7 Press **Menu**

- Highlight a mail group and press **Menu** to compose i-mode Mail.

Setting whether to quote the message when replying

Mail Reply Format

You can set whether to quote the message text when you reply to i-mode Mail or SMS. In addition, you set the quote characters that are added to the quoted message.

Default Quote:Yes
Quote characters:> (one-byte character)

1 [✉] [9] [5] [1]

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press [📧]

Quote:

Sets whether to quote the message when replying to mail.

Quote characters:

Up to 2 one-byte or 1 two-byte character can be entered.

- The quote characters are counted as characters in the message.
- If a character that cannot be sent is specified, the default character is used.

Setting whether to insert a quick reply message when replying

Quick Reply Setting

- Quick reply messages cannot be inserted in SMS messages.
- Even if *ON* is set, a quick reply message cannot be inserted when not registered.

Default ON

1 [✉] [9] [5] [2] ▶ Press [1] or [2]

Registering quick reply messages to be inserted when replying

Quick Reply Template

- Up to 5 messages can be registered.
- To add a new quick reply message when there are 5 default messages, select to edit or delete a default message.

Default OKです。(OK) NGです。(No good) ありがとう! (Thank you!) ごメンなさい! (Sorry!) 後ほど連絡します。(Get in touch later.)

1 [✉] [9] [5] [3] ▶ Select a message

2 Enter the message (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters) ▶ [📧] ▶ Select Yes

- A line feed cannot be inserted.

Viewing a registered message: Highlight a message in the quick reply message list ▶



Deleting a registered message: Highlight a message in the quick reply message list

▶ [Menu] [1] ▶ Select Yes

Registering a new message: Select <New reply template> in the quick reply message list ▶ Enter the message ▶ [📧]

Restoring the default settings: [Menu] [2] in the quick reply message list ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select Yes

Setting the display style of the mail list

Mail List Setting

The display style of the mail list can be set for received/sent mail.

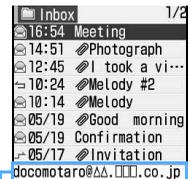
- The 2-row display applies to unsent mail and SMS in the UIM regardless of this setting.

Default Display 2 rows

Display 2 rows



Display 1 row



Sender address of the highlighted received mail (first receiver address for sent mail)

1 [✉] [9] [7] [5] ▶ Press [1] or [2]

Preventing mail from being peeped

Only View

Specifies whether to set Only View to the i-mode Mail/SMS composition screen, view screen, signature edit screen (not decorated), or mail template display screen.

- Setting *ON* adjusts the contrast of the display screen, making it difficult to see the display, so that one can hardly peep the screen.
- For the following screens, Only View is not available.
 - Entering characters
 - Deco-mail
 - Listing
 - Chat mail

Default OFF

1 [✉] [9] [7] [6] ▶ Press [1] or [2]

INFORMATION

When  is held down for over a second and *Yes* is selected on the screen which can set Only View, the screen switches between the normal display and the Only View display, regardless of this setting. Switching displays on each screen will affect the setting for Only View as well.

Menu 1973

Setting whether to receive attachment automatically

Incoming Msg. Attach.

- For image, melody, i-motion, PDF, tool data, and all others, is attached by default. When not receiving automatically (selecting to receive), set to .
- Tool data** includes the schedule data, bookmark data, and phonebook data.
- Other** includes Word, Excel, PowerPoint files and other files.

Default selected (all)

-     ▶ Select a type of the file to change the setting ▶ Press 

INFORMATION

The images or melodies inserted in the message are received automatically regardless of this setting. The file with set is not received when receiving mail. To receive the file, select the file name on the mail view screen. Even if is set, message text, images inserted in the text, and attachments are received automatically up to 100 Kbytes in total. If the total size exceeds 100 Kbytes, they are selected to be received.

Menu 1974 / Menu 2633 / ▼ 633

Setting whether to play melodies automatically

Attachment Auto-play

You can set whether to play melodies attached to i-mode Mail or Message R/F automatically when the mail or message is displayed.

Default Auto play

-     ▶ Press  or 

INFORMATION

When *Auto play* is set, displaying received mail, sent mail, mail template or Message R/F with a melody attached plays the melody once at the volume set for the call alert volume. When more than one melody is attached, the melodies play one after another. Press  to stop playing.

When Message R/F is displayed automatically, melodies are not played automatically even *Auto play* is set.

Selecting the type of mail to display

Display Type

Only mail of the specified type is displayed. Closing the list resets the setting to *Display all items*.

- For received mail, you can select from *Display all items*, *Unread item only*, *Read item only*, or *Protected item only*.
- For sent mail, you can select *Display all* or *Display protected*.
- You cannot select the display type for unsent mail and received/sent SMS in UIM.

Default Display all items (for received mail)/Display all (for sent mail)

Example Selecting the display type for received mail

-   ▶ Select a folder
 - Sent mail ◀P205
- Menu**   ▶ Press any of  to 

INFORMATION

When *Read item only* is set, protected mail is not displayed.

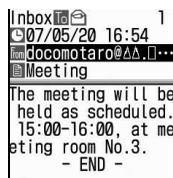
Changing the font size of the mail view screen

Font Size

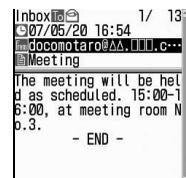
You can change the font size of the displayed message for received mail, sent mail and mail template.

- The change of font size applies to all the mails including received/sent mail and mail template.
- The settings in this function are reflected to *Mail view* of Font Size Setting.

Default Medium (standard)



Large: 24 dots



Medium (standard): 20 dots



Small: 16 dots

Example Changing on the received mail view screen

1  1 ▶ **Select a folder**

- Sent mail ◀P205

2 **Select a mail** ▶  3 1

- When a mail template is displayed, press  4 1.

3 **Press any of**  to 

INFORMATION

The font size can be changed from *All listed* or *Mail view* of Font Size Setting.

Even if the font size is changed, the size of Deco-mail pictogram is not changed.

The new font size of the mail view screen is retained until it is changed.

The font size at the time of composing and editing mail can be changed from *All listed* or *Text input* of Font Size Setting.

Menu 191

Setting operations for incoming mail Mail Alert

You can set the operations that are performed when i-mode Mail or SMS is received.

- The settings of this function are also reflected to Sound Setting, Light Alert Setting and Vibrator Setting.

Default Ring alert: Melody/メロ・メロディア A (Mail, melody A) Light alert: ON/Rotation
Vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10

1  9 1

2 **Select each item to set** ▶ Press 

Ring alert:

When *Melody*, *Movie ringtone* or *Music* is selected, set the ring alert.

- Setting music data ◀P102
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion file ◀P102

Light alert:

Sets whether to light the keys and the lighting pattern.

Vibrate alert:

Sets the vibration for incoming mails.

Ring time (sec):

Sets the sound duration of ring alert (1 to 30 seconds).

INFORMATION

When mail is received from a sender with the incoming mail settings made in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the phonebook settings take precedence. ◀P83

Menu 1971

Setting mail reception notification Display Priority

You can set whether to display the receiving screen and reception result screen, or whether to display the sending screen for auto-send mail when i-mode Mail, SMS, or Message R/F is received during FOMA terminal operation.

Default Show message

1  9 7 1 ▶ Press  or 

Continue operation:

Displays neither the receiving screen, reception result screen nor sending screen for auto-send mail during FOMA terminal operation.

Show message:

Displays the receiving screen, reception result screen and sending screen for auto-send mail even when FOMA terminal is operated.

INFORMATION

When *Continue operation* is set, the receiving screen or reception result screen is not displayed and the mail ring alert is not activated in any mode other than the standby mode (while other function is running). The keys for incoming mails do not light/flash, either.

Even when *Show message* is set, the receiving screen, reception result screen and sending screen for auto-send mail are not displayed in the following cases:

- During a voice call
- During a videophone call
- While activating camera
- During i- ppli operation
- While playing streaming type i-motion
- While alarm clock or alarm is sounding

When All Lock, PLIM Lock, or Public mode (Driving mode) is active, the receiving screen, reception result screen and sending screen for auto-send mail is not displayed and the mail ring alert is not activated, regardless of the setting. When the reception result screen is not displayed, the mail ring alert does not sound. In addition, the keys for incoming mails do not light/flash, either.

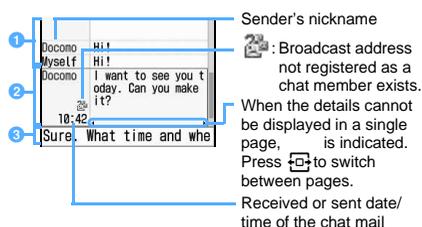
Composing and sending chat mail

Compose Chat Mail

Mail can be sent and received to/from multiple addresses like making conversation. The sent and received mail can be read on the same screen.

- Mail addresses of the receivers must be registered as chat members in advance.
- Chat mail is not available when Receive Option Setting is *ON* or there is no available storage space for received/sent mail.
- When chat mail is sent to a non-compatible terminal, it is received as a mail with the subject "チャットメール (Chat mail)". If a mail with the subject containing "チャットメール" is sent from a registered chat member who uses a non-compatible terminal, FOMA terminal can receive it as chat mail.
- The communication fee for sending and receiving chat mail to/from multiple parties is the same as that for sending broadcast mail.

Chat mail screen



1 Sent/received log

100 items from the latest history can be displayed.

- Press to scroll the log when is displayed in the guide row.
 - To scroll by a page:
 - To move to the first row:
 - To move to the last row:

2 Details field

Displays details of the latest chat mail or the highlighted chat mail. Up to 500 one-byte or 250 two-byte characters can be displayed.

3 Text entry field

Adding chat members

Chat Member Setting

- Up to 5 chat members can be registered. You cannot register the same mail address for multiple members.

1

A confirmation screen appears asking whether to add chat members.

- When a member is already registered, the chat mail screen appears. To add another member, press and go to Step 3.

2 Select *Yes*

3

4 Select *Address* field ▶ Enter a mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters)

- When registering a member whose mail address has a secret code, register the mail address and set the secret code in the phonebook, and then register only the phone number for the chat member.

Selecting from the sent message log:

▶ Select a log

Selecting from the received message log:

▶ Select a log

Searching the phonebook: ▶

Select a party

5 Select *Nickname* field ▶ Enter a nickname (up to 8 one-byte or 4 two-byte characters)

- When the mail address matches the address registered in the phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook (the first 8 one-byte or 4 two-byte characters) is displayed in the *Nickname* field.
- When no nickname is entered, the first 8 characters preceding the @ symbol in the mail address are displayed.

6 Select *Font color* field ▶ Select a color

- The nickname is displayed in the selected color on the chat mail screen.

7

The chat member is displayed.

- To add another member: ▶ Repeat Steps 4 to 7

Composing and sending chat mail

- Chat mail is sent to all the registered members by default. You can also select members when sending, but the setting returns to default when you quit chat mail or change chat member information.
- The sent chat mail is saved in the *Outbox* folder of *Outbox*. However, when the sent mail matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

1  

- When a confirmation screen appears asking whether to add members, select *Yes* and register.

2 Select the text entry field ▶ Enter a message (up to 500 one-byte or 250 two-byte characters)

Copying and pasting text from chat mail log:

① Highlight a chat mail ▶  

Specify the range

- Specifying the range ◀P335

② Select the text entry field ▶ Specify the paste location ▶  Selecting members to send mail:  ▶ Select addresses ▶ 3 Press 

- When the chat mail is sent correctly, the sent chat mail is displayed on the chat mail screen.

Replying to all the broadcast addresses of received mail:   

INFORMATION

Chat mail can be displayed on the chat mail screen by the following operations:

- In the received/sent mail list, highlight a chat mail, press  and select *Display* ▶ *Start chat mail*.
- On the received/sent mail view screen, press  and select *Display* ▶ *Start chat mail*.

If chat mail fails to be sent or is unsent when quitting chat mail, it is saved in the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages*. In this folder, only one chat mail can be saved. If sending of another chat mail fails, the chat mail saved in the *Unsent messages* folder is overwritten. In addition, the chat mail saved in the *Unsent messages* folder is displayed in the text entry field next time chat mail is started. To resend unsent chat mail, start operation from the chat mail screen.

When chat mail has been started

When mail with the subject containing “チャットメール” in one-byte or two-byte characters is received from a registered chat member, a message indicating that the log is updated appears and the received chat mail is added on the chat mail screen.

- When chat mail has been activated, the ring alert or vibrator does not start even if a chat mail is received. The keys for incoming mails do not light/flash, either.
- When chat mail is received from a sender not registered as a chat member, follow the procedure in “When chat mail has not been started” below to display the mail on the chat mail screen.

When chat mail has not been started

Chat mail is saved in the *Inbox* folder of *Inbox* as i-mode Mail. However, when received chat mail matches the criteria set in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

1 Highlight the mail to display as chat mail in the received mail list ▶ Press

- On the received mail view screen, press   .
- If the sender address of the selected mail is not registered as a chat member, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to register it. Select *Yes* to register. ◀P221
- Deco-mail or HTML mail received from PCs cannot be displayed on the chat mail screen.

Receiving chat mail stored in the i-mode Center

1 Press   on the chat mail screen

If there is chat mail stored in the i-mode Center, a message indicating that the log is updated appears and the received chat mail is added on the chat mail screen.

- When  blinks, the log cannot be updated.
- When chat mail is received using Check i-mode Message, i-mode Mail is also received at the same time.

INFORMATION

Even if the message on the chat mail screen contains phone number, mail address or URL, the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To, or i- ppli To function is not available. No attachments are displayed. When you quit chat mail and display the chat mail from *Inbox*, these functions become available.

When you delete chat mail from *Inbox*, the nickname appears as "-----", date/time as "--/--" and text as *Deleted*. on the chat mail screen.

Chat mail received from a registered chat member while chat mail is not started will be displayed on the chat mail screen next time chat mail is started.

The chat mail displayed on the chat mail screen will be marked as read in *Inbox*.

When mail is sent or received from Message i- ppli, the mail is displayed on the chat mail screen when received as chat mail.

Displaying broadcast addresses

Broadcast addresses of received mail can be displayed.

1 Highlight a mail on the chat mail screen ▶ Press

The list of the addresses of received mail is displayed.

- In the field of address registered as a chat member, the registered nickname and mail address appear. In the field of address not registered as a chat member, *Not recorded* and the mail address appear.
- When the mail address is registered in the phonebook, the registered name appears instead of the mail address. Press  to display the mail address.

Adding unregistered broadcast address for chat member: Highlight an address ▶



- Follow the procedure from Step 5 in "Adding chat members". ◀P221

Copying broadcast addresses: Highlight an address ▶

Deleting all the chat mail log

- The chat mail in *Inbox* or *Outbox* is also deleted except for protected mail.

1 on the chat mail screen ▶ Select *Yes*

Editing chat members

1 on the chat mail screen

2 Select a member ▶ Edit

Deleting a member: Highlight a member ▶

  ▶ Select *Yes*

Displaying member details:

①  

②  after checking the details

Adding a member: 

Replacing all the members by mail group:

  ▶ Select a mail group ▶ Select

Yes

3 Press

Setting personal information

You can set your nickname and text color displayed on the chat mail screen.

1 on the chat mail screen

2 Select *Nickname* field ▶ Enter a nickname (up to 8 one-byte or 4 two-byte characters)

- When no nickname is entered, *Myself* is displayed on the chat mail screen.

3 Select *Text color* field ▶ Select a color ▶ Press

Quitting chat mail

1 or on the chat mail screen ▶ Select *No*

Chat mail quits. The previous chat mail log is displayed next time chat mail is started.

- When *Yes* is selected, all the chat mails are deleted. The chat mail in *Inbox* or *Outbox* is also deleted except for protected mail.

Menu 192

Setting operations for incoming chat mail

Chat Mail Alert

Set the operations for incoming chat mail when chat mail has not been started.

- The settings of this function are also reflected to Sound Setting, Light Alert Setting and Vibrator Setting.

Default

Alert setting: Customize

Ring alert: Melody/メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B) Light alert: ON/Rotation
Vibrate alert: OFF
Ring time (sec): 10



2 Select each item to set ▶ Press

Alert setting:

Specifies whether to set the operations for incoming chat mail or follow the settings for Mail Alert.

- When *Customize* is set, the following items can be set.

Ring alert:

When *Melody*, *Movie ringtone* or *Music* is selected, set the ring alert.

- Setting music data
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion file

Light alert:

Sets whether to light the keys and the lighting pattern.

Vibrate alert:

Sets the vibration for incoming chat mails.

Ring time (sec):

Sets the sound duration of ring alert (1 to 30 seconds).

INFORMATION

When more than one mail are received at the same time, this function setting applies only when the last received mail is chat mail.

Even if you set *Sync melody* for *Light alert* or *Vibrate alert*, operation of lighting or vibrator may not occur depending on the melody.

Menu 171

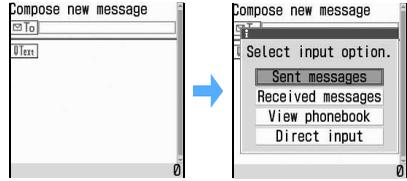
Composing and sending SMS

Compose SMS

- The maximum number of items that can be saved
- If you use one-byte katakana, the receiver may not be able to display them correctly.
- International SMS can be sent and received to/from the parties that use overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. Please visit the DoCoMo website for the countries where the service is provided and available overseas carriers.
- Reading the received/sent/unsent SMS list/view screen

Example Composing and sending a SMS message by entering address directly

1 ▶ **Select** **field**



2 Select *Direct input* ▶ Enter the address (the other party's phone number)

- To send to a party that uses an overseas carrier other than DoCoMo, enter "+" (by holding down for over a second) and the country code plus the party's mobile phone number. Omit the first 0 of the phone number. You can also send by entering "010" and the country code plus the party's mobile phone number (add "010" when replying to a received SMS message from overseas).
- You can enter up to 26 characters in the field. However, up to 20 characters (21 characters if "+" is contained) can be sent as address.

Searching the phonebook: Select *View phonebook* ▶ Select a party

- When multiple phone numbers are registered, select a phone number.

3 Select **▶ Enter the message**

- When the font type is set to *Japanese* in SMS Setting, up to 70 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered. A space is also counted as a character in the message.
- When the font type is set to *English* in SMS Setting, up to 160 one-byte characters can be entered. Alphanumeric and symbols (except for `、`,`、`,` and `°`) can be sent. An one-byte space is counted as a character in the message.
- Line feeds can be inserted in the message. Press to enter a line feed in 5-touch Input Method (except in the one-byte and two-byte numeric modes). A line feed is counted as a character in the message. However, it is replaced by a space on the receiver's terminal.

Inserting a signature:

- Signature must be registered beforehand.

4 Press

Saving without sending:  

- You can edit and send the unsent SMS.
☛P198

INFORMATION

Depending on signal conditions, the type of characters to be sent or the other party's terminal, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.

Even if *Not notify* is set in Caller ID Notification, the caller ID is sent to the receiver when SMS is sent.

If you enter some symbols (| ^ { } [] and ¥) when the font type is English, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced. In this case, you may not be able to send the message even if the number of characters is less than the limit. In this case, you may not be able to send the message even if the number of characters is less than the limit. In this case, reduce the number of characters and send it again.

When the memory is not enough, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, SMS cannot be composed. Delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and/or SMS from *Unsent messages*. ☛P211

Even when SMS has been sent, a model incompatible with SMS reception cannot receive SMS normally.

The font type and whether to receive the delivered report must be set in SMS Setting beforehand. You can also change the settings for the delivered report and storage period while composing SMS.

When transmission is completed correctly, SMS is saved in the *Outbox* folder of *Outbox*. However, when the sent SMS matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder. When the memory is not enough, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest sent mail is overwritten. Be sure to protect sent mail you want to keep.

When transmission fails, an error message appears and SMS is saved in the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages*. You can edit and send the SMS from the *Unsent messages* folder. ☛P198

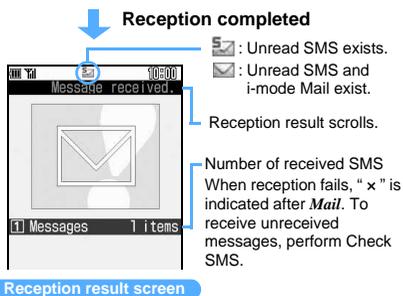
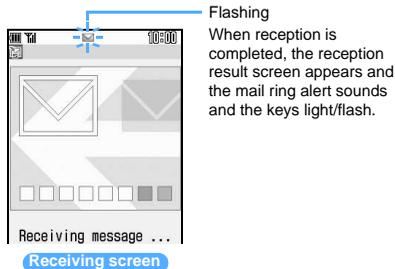
When you set the delivered report to *Request* and send SMS, you will receive a delivered report that notifies you that the message has been received by the other party's FOMA terminal. The delivered report is saved in *Inbox*.

When SMS is received

Receive SMS

- The maximum number of items that can be saved
☛P381

1 An SMS message is received



- Press  while receiving SMS to stop reception.

2 or ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an SMS message

- You can reply to (☛P201) or forward (☛P201) the received SMS. The operation is the same as for i-mode Mail.

INFORMATION

The reception result screen is displayed for about 15 seconds if you do not press any key, or until the ring alert stops if ring time is set to 15 seconds or longer in Mail Alert. To return to the previous screen immediately, press .

While receiving i-mode Mail or Message R/F, or connecting to the Data Center, SMS is not automatically received. Perform Check SMS.

Making SMS settings

SMS Setting

Usually, you do not need to change *SMSC*, *Address* and *Type of Number* settings.

Default Font type: Japanese
SMS report request: Not request
Keep in SMS center: 3 days *SMSC*: DoCoMo
Address: 81903101652
Type of Number: international

1   

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press 

Font type:

Selects Japanese or English language of messages to be sent. The maximum number of characters that can be sent differs depending on the font type.

SMS report request:

Specifies whether to request a delivered report when you send SMS.

Keep in SMS center:

Sets the storage period of sent SMS in the SMS Center in cases the receiver cannot receive the message.

- When *0 day* is set, SMS is resend after the fixed time has passed and deleted from the SMS Center.

SMSC:

Sets SMSC when you use SMS services other than DoCoMo.

- When *Others* is set, select the *Address* field and enter the address (up to 20 one-byte characters).

Type of Number:

Selects either *international* or *unknown*.

- When you select *Others* for *SMSC* and enter only numbers or numbers plus “-” or “#” in the *Address* field, select *unknown*.

When the memory is not enough, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest received mail except unread ones is overwritten. Be sure to protect received mail you want to keep.

- When the mail cannot be overwritten because storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail, reception of SMS is stopped.  or  is indicated on the screen. To receive new messages, you need to display unread mail, change unread mail to read, delete unnecessary mail or cancel mail protection.
- When the UIM already contains 20 messages, SMS may not be received even though there is space available in *Inbox*.  or  is indicated on the screen. Move messages to FOMA terminal (☛P228) or delete them from the UIM (☛P228).

In case that a phone number or URL is described in SMS, a caution appears indicating that the phone number and URL are described when displaying the SMS first. To display SMS, press . You can also set not to display the caution in Scanning Setting. ☛P378 When the received SMS has been set to be saved directly to the UIM, it will be saved directly on the UIM. Note that, when the number of messages in the UIM reaches 20, SMS cannot be received any more. Delete unnecessary messages and perform Check SMS again. The received SMS is saved in *Inbox*.

Short Mail sent from a mova terminal is received by FOMA terminal as SMS.

When SMS is received from a party with the incoming mail settings made in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the settings apply to the operation of the ring alert, vibrator and/or the key. For details on checking with the phonebook, see “Name displays”. ☛P80

- When multiple items of SMS are received at the same time, the operation depends on the conditions set for the last SMS received.

When SMS is received from overseas carriers other than DoCoMo, “+” is added before the sender address. If the sender address prefixed with “+” is registered in the phonebook, the name in the phonebook is displayed.

Checking for SMS

Check SMS

You can make inquiry for any SMS delivered while FOMA terminal was out of service area or turned off.

- Operate the terminal in locations with good signal condition.

1 Press   

INFORMATION

It may take time to receive SMS with Check SMS.

INFORMATION

On the SMS composition screen, press  and select *SMS settings*. In this case, only *SMS report request* and *Keep in SMS center* can be set and the settings are valid only for the SMS being composed.

The settings for *Font type*, *Keep in SMS center*, *SMSC* and *Type of Number* are also stored on the UIM.

Saving SMS to the UIM

Save SMS to UIM

Moving/copying SMS to the UIM

- The maximum number of items that can be saved is P381
- SMS in *Unsent messages* cannot be saved to the UIM.
- When you move or copy sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are moved or copied to *Received SMS* together. You cannot move or copy only delivered reports.

Example Moving a received SMS message to the UIM

1 ▶ Select a folder

- Sent SMS 

2 Highlight an SMS message ▶

Menu   

Moving multiple messages:

Menu    ▶ Select messages ▶



Copying a message: Highlight a message

▶ Menu   

Copying multiple messages:

Menu    ▶ Select messages ▶



3 Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

On the received/sent mail view screen, press  and select *Move/Copy Move to UIM* or *Copy to UIM*.

When the UIM already contains 20 messages, you cannot move or copy additional messages to the UIM. Delete unnecessary messages from the UIM.

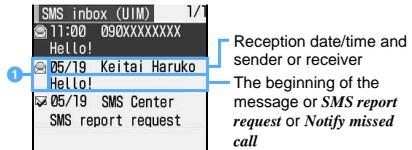
The protection setting is not moved/copied to the UIM.

Displaying SMS in the UIM

Example Displaying received SMS

1

Received SMS is displayed in 2 rows on the received SMS (UIM) list screen.



Reception date/time and sender or receiver

The beginning of the message or *SMS report request* or *Notify missed call*

- 1  : Unread (able to reply)
-  : Unread (unable to reply)
-  : Read (able to reply)
-  : Read (unable to reply)
-  : Delivered report/missed call notice

- The read/unread icon in the list indicates whether SMS in the UIM has been displayed. The status of unread/read before moving or copying is also carried over.
- In the reception date/time field, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
- To display sent SMS:   

2 Select an SMS message



- 1  : Received (able to reply)
-  : Sent
-  : Delivered report/missed call notice
-  : SMS in the UIM
- 2  : Date and time  : Address
-  : Sender
-  : Sender (unable to reply)
-  : Subject (*Received SMS*, *Sent SMS*, *SMS report request*, or *Notify missed call*)

- *SMS Center* is displayed as the sender of delivered report and *DoCoMo SMS* as the sender of missed call notice.
- When the sent SMS is moved or copied to the UIM, the sent date and time are cleared from the SMS in the UIM. However, for the sent SMS with delivered report, the date and time of delivered report is displayed.

INFORMATION

When you reply to/forward or resend SMS in the UIM, the sent SMS is saved in *Outbox* of FOMA terminal.

Moving/copying SMS from the UIM to FOMA terminal

- When you move or copy sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are moved or copied to *Inbox* together. You cannot move or copy only delivered reports.

Example Moving a received SMS message to FOMA terminal

1   

- To move/copy sent SMS:   

2 **Highlight an SMS message** ▶

Moving multiple messages:   

▶ **Select messages** ▶ 

Copying a message: Highlight a message

▶   

Copying multiple messages:   

▶ **Select messages** ▶ 

3  ▶ **Select the destination folder** ▶
Select Yes

INFORMATION

On the received/sent SMS (UIM) view screen, press  and select *Move/Copy* *Move to phone* or *Copy to phone*. When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, you cannot move or copy SMS. Unprotected SMS and/or i-mode Mail are not overwritten. Delete unnecessary mails/messages.

Deleting SMS from the UIM

- When you delete sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are also deleted from the UIM.

Example Deleting a received SMS message

1   

- To delete sent SMS:   

2 **Highlight an SMS message** ▶

Deleting multiple messages:   

▶ **Select messages** ▶ 

Deleting all the messages:   

▶ **Enter the terminal security code**

Deleting all the delivered reports:

   ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**

3 **Select Yes**

INFORMATION

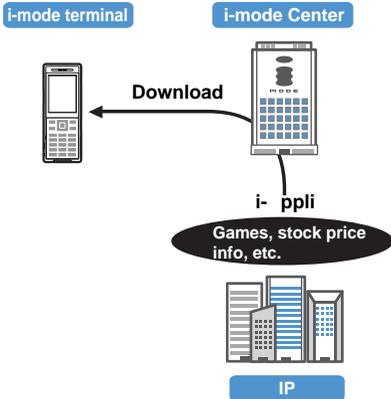
On the received/sent SMS (UIM) view screen, press  and select *Delete*.

i- ppli

i- ppli	230
Downloading i- ppli from sites	231
Starting i- ppli	232
Using preinstalled i- ppli	235
Starting i- ppli with One-key Shortcut	One-key Shortcut 237
Starting i- ppli with Two-key Shortcut	Two-key Shortcut 238
Starting i- ppli automatically	238
Starting i- ppli from sites or mails	i- ppli To 239
Operating the i- ppli standby display	i- ppli Standby Display 239
Managing i- ppli	240
Using various functions from i- ppli	242

i- ppli

Downloading i- ppli software from sites allows more convenient use of i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter called the i-mode terminal). For example, various games can be downloaded to the i-mode terminal for amusement and i- ppli for stock price information can be downloaded for automatically checking stock prices at regular intervals. Map i- ppli downloads only necessary data and allows smooth scrolling. In addition, direct registration to the phonebook and schedule from i- ppli may be made and working with Data Box including saving and obtaining of image may be available with some i- ppli software.



- Downloading i- ppli ➔P231
- Starting i- ppli ➔P232
- Starting i- ppli automatically ➔P238

INFORMATION

Some i- ppli may use the mobile phone or UIM serial number of your i-mode terminal.

Some i- ppli attempts to make connection when running. Such attempts can be disabled by presetting not to make connection. ➔P234

Using saved data

Some i- ppli allows viewing, registering and operating of the data (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedules, images, videos and icons) saved in your i-mode terminal. The following operations can be performed using saved data:

- Registering phonebook entries
- Using icons
- Adding bookmarks
- Saving schedules
- Obtaining images from Data Box
- Saving images and videos in Data Box

INFORMATION

Some i- ppli cannot be used in Privacy Mode (when *Authorized access* is set for *Phonebook & Logs*, *My Picture*, *i-motion*, *Schedule* or *Bookmark*).

Any image or video saved from i- ppli is stored in the *i-mode*, *Deco-mail picture* or *Deco-mail pict* folder of *My Picture*, in the *i-mode* folder of *i-motion*, or within the i- ppli itself.

i- ppli DX

i- ppli DX is more convenient and enjoyable i- ppli. In conjunction with i-mode terminal information (such as mail, call log or phonebook data), i- ppli DX allows you to compose mail on your favorite character screen and inform you of a sender of an incoming call by character's comments when a call is received. Also, i- ppli DX updates desired information on stock price, game in progress or other information further in real time in conjunction with mail.

Using saved data

Some i- ppli DX allows viewing, registering and operating of saved data such as mails, redials, received calls and ring alerts in addition to the saved data available with standard i- ppli (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedules, images, videos and icons). The following operations can be performed using saved data:

- Registering phonebook entries
- Viewing phonebook data
- Adding bookmarks
- Using the Mail menu
- Viewing the latest redial
- Viewing the latest received call
- Viewing the latest unread mail
- Changing ring alerts (phone, mail, Message R/F)
- Obtaining images from Data Box
- Saving images, videos and ring alerts in Data Box
- Changing image settings (standby display, incoming/outgoing call, incoming videophone call, incoming/outgoing mail, Message R/F reception)
- Using icons
- Saving schedules

INFORMATION

With i- ppli DX, communication may be made to confirm the validity of i- ppli regardless of the NW transmission setting of i- ppli. The number of attempts to make communication and the timing depend on i- ppli. Activating i- ppli DX requires Date and Time Setting of FOMA terminal.

Some i- ppli DX cannot be used in Privacy Mode (when *Authorized access* is set for *Phonebook & Logs, Mail, My picture, i-motion, Schedule* or *Bookmark*).

Any image, video and ring alert saved from i- ppli DX is stored in the *i-mode, Deco-mail picture* or *Deco-mail pict* folder of *My Picture*, in the *i-mode* folder of *i-motion* or *Melody*, or within the i- ppli DX itself.

Message i- ppli

Message i- ppli is a type of i- ppli DX that allows more convenient and enjoyable use of i- ppli by providing real-time update of desired information on stock prices, games in progress, etc. through exchanging information by i-mode Mail.

- Mails used in Message i- ppli may not be correctly displayed.

Other convenient functions

i- ppli standby display

On the i- ppli standby display, i- ppli can be used as the standby display screen, which allows directly receiving mails and making phone calls. Also the i- ppli standby display enables you to check the latest news and weather forecast on the screen or to have your favorite character inform you of incoming mails and alarms.

☛P110, P239

- This function is available with i- ppli supporting the i- ppli standby display.

i- ppli auto start

i- ppli can be automatically started at the user-specified time, date, day of week, etc. Some i- ppli allows auto start at the time intervals preset with i- ppli. ☛P238

Shooting with camera

Images can be taken with the i-mode terminal camera from i- ppli. ☛P242

- This function is available with i- ppli that supports camera shooting.

Infrared communication

The data can be exchanged with the devices that are provided with the infrared communication function from i- ppli. It allows enhanced use by interacting with devices provided with the infrared communication function. ☛P242

- This function is available with i- ppli supporting infrared communication.
- Some types of data may not be exchanged depending on the other device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

Infrared remote control

Various devices such as electrical appliances that support infrared remote control can be operated from i- ppli. ☛P277

For example, the preinstalled Gガイド番組表リモコン(G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller) allows using your terminal as an AV remote controller which works with TV program guide. ☛P237

- This function is available with i- ppli supporting infrared remote control. i- ppli that supports the device to control is required.

Downloading i- ppli from sites

- The maximum number of software that can be saved ☛P381
- If i- ppli download has failed due to poor signal quality, etc., the i- ppli will not be saved in FOMA terminal.
- The maximum size of an i- ppli file that can be downloaded is 1 Mbytes.

1 Display the site containing i- ppli ▶ Select i- ppli

The selected i- ppli is downloaded.

- To cancel downloading:  ▶ Select *Yes*

When Software Info Display is set to ON:

i- ppli information is displayed. When you select *Yes*, i- ppli is downloaded.

- To check the detail information of i- ppli to be downloaded: 

When downloading i- ppli that uses the saved data, the serial number of the mobile phone/UIM:

A confirmation screen is displayed. When you select *Yes*, i- ppli is downloaded.

- When *Guide* is displayed in the guide row, the details of the data to be used by i- ppli can be checked by .

When the selected i- ppli is already downloaded:

Already downloaded is displayed. When the new version of i- ppli is released, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to upgrade. When you select *Yes*, i- ppli is downloaded to upgrade.

When the selected i- ppli is already downloaded to a UIM other than the current UIM:

A confirmation screen asking whether to overwrite or not is displayed. Select *Yes* to overwrite the downloaded i- ppli.

2 Select a folder to save

A confirmation screen appears asking whether to use the i- ppli.

- With some i- ppli, the software settings/startup confirmation screen appears for the standby display (*Set stand-by disp.*) or the NW transmission. Select each item to set and select *Yes* or *No*. Selecting *Yes* starts the i- ppli.

For items to set, see Step 3 of "Setting the operating conditions of i- ppli". ◀P234

3 Select *Yes*

The downloaded i- ppli starts.

- To return to the site screen: Select *No*
- When *Set stand-by disp.* is set to *Yes* on the software settings/startup confirmation screen, another confirmation screen appears asking whether to set i- ppli as the standby display. When you select *Yes*, the ticker setting is canceled if *Show ticker* of i-Channel Ticker is set to *Yes*.

INFORMATION

If you cancel downloading or the network connection breaks, i- ppli data downloaded up to that point may be saved. To download the remaining part of i- ppli data, follow Step 4 of "Starting i- ppli". ◀P233

When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, follow the instructions on the screen to delete saved i- ppli. The deleted i- ppli cannot be restored even if downloading has failed.

Downloading Message i- ppli

When Message i- ppli is downloaded, folders for Message i- ppli are automatically created in the lists of *Outbox*, *Inbox* and *Unsent messages*. The automatically created folder is named with the name of Message i- ppli downloaded, which cannot be changed.

- Message i- ppli can be saved up to 5 applications (included in the 100 maximum number of i- ppli applications). If the maximum number of Message i- ppli is exceeded, follow the instructions on the screen to delete an existing Message i- ppli folder (when the folder is deleted, the corresponding i- ppli is also deleted).
- If Message i- ppli that uses the same mail folder has already been saved in FOMA terminal, the i- ppli cannot be downloaded.

INFORMATION

If a Message i- ppli application is tried to be downloaded again while only the relevant Message i- ppli folder remains, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to use the folder. When you select *Yes*, the Message i- ppli is downloaded. If you choose not to use the mail folder, delete the folder before downloading the Message i- ppli.

If mail that supports Message i- ppli to be downloaded has already been received and saved in FOMA terminal, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to move the received mail to the folder that is created at the time of downloading. When you select *Yes*, the received mail is sorted. However, when Privacy Mode is on (with *Hide secret fldrs* set for *Mail*), you cannot sort them.

Viewing i- ppli information when downloading

Software Info Display

Default OFF

1     ▶ Press  or 

Menu 31

Starting i- ppli

1  (for over a second)

2 Select a folder

The software list is displayed.

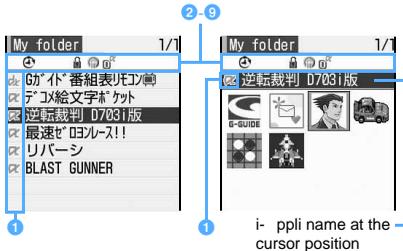
: No i- ppli

: i- ppli present

3 Highlight i- ppli

List display

Thumbnail display



i-ppli name at the cursor position

Software list screen

- 1 (in orange)
 - : Normal i-ppli
 - : i-ppli DX
 - : Message i-ppli
- 2 : i-ppli that can be set for the i-ppli standby display
 - : i-ppli being currently set for the i-ppli standby display
- 3 : i-ppli with Auto Start on
- 4 (half gray and half orange): Partially saved i-ppli
 - : i-ppli at stopped condition by IP
- 5 : i-ppli downloaded from SSL pages
- 6 : Protected i-ppli
- 7 : i-ppli registered in One-key Shortcut
- 8 : i-ppli registered in Two-key Shortcut
- 9 : i-ppli that cannot be used because of the UIM operation restriction

- Each time you press , the list display and the thumbnail display are switched.
- If thumbnail images cannot be obtained, , , or appears.

4 Press

- When *Confirm every session* is set for NW transmission of i-ppli to be started, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to connect.
- If you select an i-ppli application partially downloaded before, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to download the remaining data. Selecting *Yes* starts downloading. When downloading the remaining part has finished, you can start the i-ppli. If the remaining data fails to be downloaded, the partially saved i-ppli may be deleted.

Quitting i-ppli

Quit i-ppli in the procedure specified for each.

- You can also quit i-ppli by pressing and selecting *Yes*.

INFORMATION

Partially saved i-ppli can only be deleted, protected and moved to another folder. Showing its detail information is also possible.

i-ppli is interrupted in the following cases. When you quit the function being used and running, i-ppli is resumed. To resume i-ppli without quitting the current function, press and select *i-ppli*. However, i-ppli may not be resumed by depending on the function running. Some i-ppli may not return to the state before interruption when resumed.

- When there is an incoming call (except when the ringing time of Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service is set to *0 Sec.*)
- When the time set by Timer has passed
- When the time set in the schedule alarm or alarm clock has come
- When you switch to another function

When you are outside the service area or the saved data cannot be used, some i-ppli may not start or not operate correctly.

Images used by i-ppli or the data you entered may be sent to the server via Internet automatically. Images used by i-ppli are such as those shot with the camera activated by the running i-ppli and those obtained through the infrared communication function of the i-ppli.

For some i-ppli, the IP (Information Provider) can access i-ppli saved in the mobile phone and directly stop its use. This disables the i-ppli to be started, upgraded, or set for the standby display. You can only delete it or view the detail information. To use again, please contact the IP to release suspension of i-ppli. For some i-ppli, the IP may send data to i-ppli saved in the mobile phone.

When the IP requests to stop/restart i-ppli or send data to i-ppli, FOMA terminal communicates and blinks. In this case, the communication charge is not required. The i-ppli continues its operation even if you set Key Lock and the display indication disappears while i-ppli is operating.

The sound volume for i-ppli operation can be set by *i-ppli effect sound* of Adjust Volume. However, sound effect is unavailable for some i-ppli.

To i-ppli creators

If i-ppli being created does not operate normally, "trace display" may help. Pressing on the standby display displays the trace. Note that trace information cannot be displayed if i-ppli created to record trace information is not saved.

To delete the trace information, press and select *Yes*.

Displaying the history when operation finished without using saved data Security Error History

When i- ppli ends because of an error such that i- ppli cannot use the saved data, the name of i- ppli, date and time, cause of the security error is recorded.

- Up to 20 errors are recorded in the security error history. When there are more than 20 abnormal exits, the 21st exit is written over the oldest one.

- 1 Press    
Deleting the history:  on the log display screen ▶ Select *Yes*

Displaying i- ppli detail information Detail Info

Detail information such as the name and version of i- ppli can be checked.

- 1  (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder
- 2 Highlight i- ppli ▶ Press 
 - The displayed items differ depending on i- ppli.
 - For i- ppli downloaded from SSL pages, you can check the site certificate by pressing  on the software detail information screen.

Setting the operating conditions of i- ppli Settings

- Items that can be set differ depending on i- ppli.

- 1  (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder
- 2 Highlight i- ppli ▶  
- 3 Select each item to set

Set i- ppli display :

Set whether to set i- ppli which supports i- ppli standby display as your standby display.

- Only one i- ppli application can be set.

Set NW transmission during i- ppli display :

Set whether to allow automatic connection while the i- ppli standby display is operating.

Set NW transmission :

Set whether to allow automatic connection while i- ppli is running.

Use icons :

Set whether to enable i- ppli to use icons for mail, Message R/F, remaining battery level, Silent Mode and received signal level.

Start from browser :

Set whether to permit starting i- ppli (i- ppli To) from sites.

Start from mailer :

Set whether to permit starting i- ppli (i- ppli To) from mails.

Start from Location Service menu :

Set whether to permit starting i- ppli (i- ppli To) from link items for location information in sites and Message R/F.

Start from external :

Set whether to permit starting i- ppli (i- ppli To) from external devices.

*Allow ring tone/image changes by software*1 :*

Set whether to allow i- ppli to change the settings of ring alerts or images on the screen such as the standby display.

*Confirm all changes*1 :*

Set whether i- ppli displays a confirmation screen each time the settings of ring alerts or images are changed.

*Allow access to phonebook/call records by software*1 :*

Set whether to allow i- ppli to refer to the phonebook, redial data and received call history.

*1 This setting is available only for i- ppli DX.

4 Press

- When *Set i- ppli display* is set to *Yes*, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to set i- ppli as the standby display. Selecting *Yes* sets the i- ppli standby display. When you select *Yes*, the ticker setting is canceled if *Show ticker* of i-Channel Ticker is set to *Yes*. If the i- ppli is already set for i- ppli standby display, the confirmation screen does not appear.

INFORMATION

Note that if you set *No* for *Set NW transmission*, i- ppli may not be started and timely information such as stock prices or weather forecast may not be provided by i- ppli.

If *Yes* is set for *Use icons*, information about icons for unread mail, unread Message R/F, remaining battery level, Silent Mode, and icons within service area/outside service area may be sent to IPs through the Internet, which may give the information to a third party. When *Use icons* is set to *No*, i- ppli that requires the icon information may not operate.

Setting the lighting and vibrator during i- ppli running

Display Light/Vibrate Effect

Setting display light

- The i- ppli standby display light operation conforms to the setting of *Normal use of Display light time* of Display Light Setting. ●P116
- While Public mode (Driving mode) is on, the light does not operate while i- ppli is running even if *Software* is set.

Default Terminal setting

1 [Menu] [3] [2] [4] ▶ Press [1] or [2]

Terminal setting :

The setting of *Normal use of Display light time* in Display Light Setting is applied.

Software :

The light comes on according to i- ppli.

INFORMATION

For some i- ppli applications, *Terminal setting* does not take effect even if you set it.

This setting is also reflected to *i- ppli of Display light time* of Display Light Setting. ●P116

Setting vibrator

This setting allows the vibrator operation by i- ppli.

- While Public mode (Driving mode) is on, the vibrator does not operate while i- ppli is running regardless of this setting.

Default ON

1 [Menu] [3] [2] [5] ▶ Press [1] or [2]

INFORMATION

This setting is also reflected to Vibrator Setting. ●P105

Starting another i- ppli application from i- ppli

You can start another i- ppli application from some i- ppli without returning to the software list.

1 Operate i- ppli to start another i- ppli

INFORMATION

Some i- ppli allows you to choose another i- ppli to activate. When a message appears asking you to select i- ppli, press [5] and select one.

Using preinstalled i- ppli

The following i- ppli applications are registered by default:

- Gガイド番組表リモコン(G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)
- デコメ絵文字ポケット (Deco-mail pictograms)
- 逆転裁判 蘇る逆転 D703i版 (Gyakuten Saiban for D703i)
- 最速ゼロヨンレース!! (Zeroyon Drag Race)
- リバーシ (Reversi)
- BLAST GUNNER

Select each i- ppli application from the list to start.

- Some i- ppli names may be different from those on the display.
- If you delete default i- ppli and want to restore it, you can download it from the i-mode site "My D-style". ●P347

逆転裁判 蘇る逆転 D703i版 (Gyakuten Saiban for D703i)

This is a courtroom game to help out the innocent victim as a lawyer. You have to prove the client's innocence by questioning witnesses to expose lies or submitting evidences to the chief justice or prosecutor. Selecting *もっと楽しむ (More fun)* on the title screen lets you know how to access sites for detailed information or how to download images for the standby display.



© CAPCOM 2007

Operation procedure

- [5]/[5] : Send statements/OK.
- [5]/[4][6] : Send a statement during questioning/return
- [Menu] : Open the menu.
- [□] : Open the file or switch files.
- [1] : Question a witness.
- [3] : Submit evidences or switch files.

最速ゼロヨンレース!! (Zeroyon Drag Race)

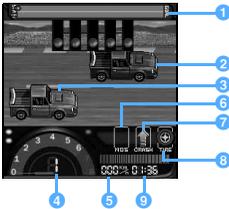
This is a game to win a virtual drag race by tuning up your car. You can play in the following two modes:

レース(Race):

In this mode you play against the computer. If you outrace the enemy car, you will get the prize. When you reach the top of the race ranking, you can get a new car and the right to take part in a higher-rank race. You can use the prize you get to purchase car parts at the shop.

対戦(Match-up):

In this mode you race against the driving data of your friend obtained via infrared communication. Also, you can race against your driving data of the race you won that you saved before.



1 Race status

Blue: Enemy car Red: Your car

2 Enemy car

3 Your car

4 Tachometer/gear change

Indicates engine revolutions or the gear level.

5 Speedometer

6 Nitro

Indicates the remaining number of ultra-acceleration items.

7 Crash

When the indicator color turns red up to the top, the car lifts off the ground and crashes.

8 Tires

When the indicator color turns red up to the top, tires burst.

9 Time

Indicates elapsed time.

Operation procedure

/ : Accelerator

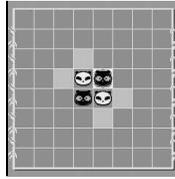
: Gear change

: Fire the nitro

リバーシ (Reversi)

This is an i-ppli version of a famous board game. You can select among 3 levels of difficulties and whether to play first (black stones) or second (white stones). Also you can select the game screen design from ノーマル (Normal) and 珍さん (Chin-san).

- On the menu screen, you can show the score, options and HELP. For details about playing, see HELP.



Chin-san mode

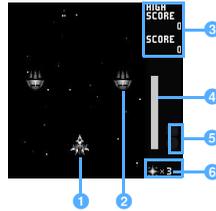
Operation procedure

: Select a square.

: Place a stone.

BLAST GUNNER

This is a shooting game to fight against a large formation of alien spaceships with normal shots, lock-on laser or bomb.



1 Your spaceship

You can move up/down/right/left in the field. When you are hit or shot by the enemy, you get a damage.

2 Enemy

3 High score, score

4 Shield gauge

The gauge decreases every time you get a damage and game is over when the gauge becomes empty.

5 Lock-on lamp

The lamp lights by the number of lock-ons.

6 No. of bombs equipped

When you fire a bomb, it clears all enemies and bombs from the screen.

Operation procedure

/ to , to :

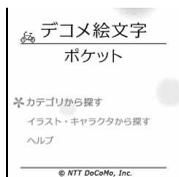
Move to the direction.

: Normal shot (hold it down to shoot continuously)

: Bomb

: Lock on

デコメ絵文字ポケット (Deco-mail pictograms)



デコメ絵文字ポケット is an i- ppli specially designed for Deco-mail pictograms that you can use in i-mode mails in the same way as for regular pictograms. This i- ppli enables you to easily search and save Deco-mail pictograms.

Using such topics as カテゴリ (Category) and イラスト・キャラクター (Illustrated Character), you can easily search for Deco-mail pictograms provided by IP and save them in your mobile phone.

You can also save multiple Deco-mail pictograms at a time. When you find a favorite Deco-mail pictogram, you can read the description about the site that provides the pictogram and access the site.

- デコメ絵文字ポケット is available free of charge; no monthly fee is required. Note, however, that you may be separately charged with an i-mode information fee if you visit a site provided by an IP.
- Packet communication fee is separately required.
- For more information, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

Gガイド番組表リモコン(G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)



- The display shown here represents an example. It differs from the actual display. TV channels according to the home area are displayed.

This is a convenient application, with no monthly subscription fee, containing a TV program table and an AV remote control.

You can simply acquire the analog or digital terrestrial TV program information no matter when or where. The TV program information includes program titles, brief description of program content, starting and ending time.

You can schedule recording of your favorite TV program onto the DVD recorder from a remote place via Internet. This function is available with DVD harddisk recorders that support remote scheduling of recording. Before using this i- ppli, it is necessary to

perform initial settings. In addition, it is possible to search for the program information using keywords such as the TV program genre or your favorite entertainer. You can also operate the TV, video deck and DVD player remotely (some devices do not support this function).

- When using it for the first time, it is necessary to make initial setting and consent to the agreements for use.
- Packet communication fee is separately required.
- For more information, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.
- For remote control operation ▶P277

Remote scheduling of recording

If your DVD recorder supports remote scheduling of recording, you can schedule to record TV programs using the program list of this i- ppli from a remote place via Internet.

For remote scheduling, it is necessary to perform initial settings with this i- ppli.

Performing initial settings

- ① **Connect your DVD recorder to Internet**
 - See the manual of your DVD recorder.
- ② **Start this i- ppli and select リモート録画予約 (Remote scheduling of recording) from the menu.**
 - The guidance appears. Perform initial settings according to the guidance.

Scheduling to record TV programs

After the initial settings is completed, specify your favorite TV program and select リモート録画予約 from the menu. Your FOMA terminal connects via Internet to your DVD recorder at home and schedules to record the program.

- If recording is already scheduled for the same time, a message appears on the program list.
- Packet communication fee is required separately.

Starting i- ppli with One-key Shortcut

One-key Shortcut

Registering i- ppli to One-key Shortcut

- Only one i- ppli application can be registered.

1  (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight i- ppli ▶ Press   

- To cancel: Highlight i- ppli ▶   

Starting i- ppli with One-key Shortcut

- 1 Hold down  for over a second

Starting i- ppli with Two-key Shortcut

Two-key Shortcut

Registering i- ppli to Two-key Shortcut

- Up to 10 i- ppli applications can be registered.

- 1  (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder
- 2 Highlight i- ppli ▶   
 - To cancel: Highlight i- ppli ▶   
- 3 Select the registration destination
 - The icon number ( to ) corresponds to the dial key ( to ) used to start i- ppli.
 - When you select a dial key that has already been assigned an i- ppli application, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite it. Select *Yes* to overwrite the previous registration.

Starting i- ppli with Two-key Shortcut

- 1 Dial key ( to ) ▶ Hold down  for over a second

Displaying the Two-key Shortcut list

 not recorded

- 1 Press    
 - To start: Select i- ppli
 - To display details: Highlight i- ppli ▶ 
 - To cancel registration: Highlight i- ppli ▶   ▶ Select *Yes*

Starting i- ppli automatically

Select whether to use auto starting and set different auto starting conditions for each i- ppli.

Specifying whether to start automatically

Auto Start

 ON

- 1     ▶ Press  or 

Setting the date and time of Auto Start

Auto Start Info Setting

Set Auto Start on/off or the start time for each i- ppli application and display the preset details.

- The conditions that can be set depend on i- ppli.
- Some i- ppli may not be started automatically.
- When Auto Start is set to *OFF*, this setting is not available.

- 1  (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder
- 2 Highlight i- ppli ▶  
- 3 Select each item to set ▶ Press 

User :

Select whether to set conditions of Auto Start.

Time :

Enter the time to automatically start i- ppli.

Repeat :

Set the condition for repetitive auto starting of i- ppli.

Weekly :

Set the day of week for auto starting when *Weekly* is set for *Repeat*.

Date :

Set the date for auto starting when *Onetime* is set for *Repeat*.

Software :

Specify whether to automatically start at the intervals preset for i- ppli.

i- ppli 1 to 4 :

Depending on i- ppli DX, up to 4 conditions of Auto Start can be set while it is operated. Specify whether to enable the settings.

INFORMATION

Even when auto starting is set, i- ppli is not started if the time of activation arrives in one of the following situations. In that case,  appears on the standby display and the i- ppli name, date & time and the reason for failure to start i- ppli are recorded in the Start Failure History (except for the cases marked with*1 below).

- When FOMA terminal power is off*1
- When the UIM restricts operation
- When the UIM cannot be detected

- When Auto Start is set to **OFF***1
- When the interval of auto starting is too short
- During a call or communication
- When a screen other than the standby display is displayed or i- ppli standby display operation is in progress
- When any other function is being used
- In All Lock, PIM Lock or Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)
- When Privacy Mode is on (with **Authorized access** set for i- ppli)
- While the alarm clock sound or schedule reminder is sounding (including when the set time is the same as the time for Auto Start)
- While the timer is in operation
- When i- ppli usage is stopped by the IP

If two or more i- ppli applications are specified to start automatically at the same time, only one application is activated. The failed i- ppli information is recorded in Start Failure History, but  is not displayed on the standby display.

Displaying history when Auto Start of i- ppli fails

Start Failure History

If auto start of i- ppli fails,  appears on the standby display and the i- ppli name, the date and time and the failure reason are recorded.

- Up to 20 start failures are recorded. When there are more than 20 abnormal exits, the 21st exit is written over the oldest one.
- When you display the start failure history or when the next auto start is successful,  on the standby display disappears.

1 Press

Deleting the history:  on the log display screen ▶ Select **Yes**

Starting i- ppli from sites or mails

i- ppli To

Select a link item that can start i- ppli of sites or i-mode mails and then start the i- ppli (i- ppli To).

1 Select a link item enabled to start i- ppli from sites or i-mode mails

2 Select **Yes**

The connection to the site is terminated and i- ppli is started.

INFORMATION

If the i- ppli you attempt to start with i- ppli To is not saved in FOMA terminal, i- ppli cannot be started. Note that some i- ppli may start just after downloaded from sites even if it is not saved.

- For i- ppli that starts just after downloaded from a site, a confirmation screen may be displayed asking whether to make communication while it is activated.
- When you quit i- ppli started just after downloaded from sites, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save i- ppli. Note that some i- ppli may not be saved in FOMA terminal.

If the specified i- ppli is set not to start with i- ppli To, a message is displayed and i- ppli is not started. 

Operating the i- ppli standby display

i- ppli Standby Display

When i- ppli is set for the standby display, you can start i- ppli from the standby display to operate. On the i- ppli standby display  or  is indicated at the top of the screen.

- It is necessary to set i- ppli for the standby display beforehand. 

INFORMATION

When you set i- ppli that performs communication, it may not operate correctly depending on signal conditions, etc.

While All Lock, PIM Lock, Privacy Mode (with i- ppli set to **Authorized access**) or Omakase Lock is active, the i- ppli standby display will be canceled temporarily. If you cancel All Lock, PIM Lock, Omakase Lock, or Privacy Mode, the i- ppli standby display restarts.

If the use of i- ppli set as the i- ppli standby display is stopped by IP, the i- ppli standby display is canceled next time you turn on your FOMA terminal.

While the i- ppli standby display is activated, if an error that makes it difficult to continue the i- ppli standby display occurs, a confirmation screen appears asking whether you will cancel or not. When you select **Yes**, the i- ppli standby display setting is canceled. At this time, the name of i- ppli and end date and time are recorded in Abnormal Exit History.

You cannot connect to a site (Web To) from the i- ppli standby display.

When FOMA terminal is turned on with the i- ppli standby display set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to start the i- ppli standby display. When you select **Yes**, the i- ppli standby display starts. When you select **No**, the i- ppli standby display setting is canceled. If you operate nothing within 5 seconds after the confirmation screen appeared, the i- ppli standby display starts automatically. When the power is turned on by Auto Power ON, the i- ppli standby display automatically starts, without displaying the confirmation screen.

Starting i- ppli of the i- ppli standby display

1 Press **クワ** on the i- ppli standby display

The screen is changed to the i- ppli screen and **ク** or **ワ** blinks at the top of the display.

Quitting i- ppli to return to the i- ppli standby display

1 **ク** while i- ppli is running ▶ Select *End*

i- ppli is ended and the i- ppli standby display is activated. The icon at the top of the display switches from **ク** to **ク**, or from **ワ** to **ワ**.

- The procedure to quit i- ppli and return to the i- ppli standby display depends on the type of i- ppli.
- Even if *End* is selected, the i- ppli standby display setting is not canceled. To cancel, select *Cancel*. **ク** or **ワ** at the top of the display disappears.

INFORMATION

You can also cancel the i- ppli standby display by highlighting i- ppli of the i- ppli standby display in the software list, pressing **Menu**, selecting *i- ppli display* and then selecting *Cancel*.

Displaying the exit history of i- ppli standby display

Abnormal Exit History

When an error that makes it difficult to continue the i- ppli standby display occurs, the name of i- ppli, date and time are recorded.

- Up to 20 abnormal exits are recorded. When there are more than 20 abnormal exits, the 21st exit is written over the oldest one.
- In the normal end, exits are not recorded.

1 Press **Menu** **3** **3** **2**

Deleting the history: **ク** on the log display screen ▶ Select *Yes*

Managing i- ppli

Upgrading i- ppli

Upgrade

When i- ppli has been updated, it can be upgraded.

- i- ppli whose usage is stopped by IP cannot be upgraded.

1 **ク** (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight i- ppli ▶ **Menu** **5** ▶ Select *Yes*

Upgrading starts.

INFORMATION

When you upgrade i- ppli, data such as game scores stored by the i- ppli may be erased.

Some i- ppli may inquire the DoCoMo server about the availability depending on the length of time of use/ number of times of use. If the server gives a notice of i- ppli having been updated, it can be upgraded after confirmation.

Some i- ppli may be upgraded automatically.

Creating/deleting folders

Folders can be created to sort out i- ppli. Also folders can be moved up or down or deleted.

Creating a folder

- Up to 20 folders can be created including *My folder*.

1 **ク** (for over a second)

2 **Menu** **4**

Changing the folder name: Highlight the folder ▶ **Menu** **1**

Moving up or down the folder: Highlight the folder ▶ **Menu** ▶ **5** or **6**

3 Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ▶ Press **ク**

Deleting folders

- Note that the folder cannot be deleted if it contains the protected i- ppli. Cancel the protection, and then delete it.
- If there is only one folder, it cannot be deleted.

1 (for over a second)

2 Highlight a folder ► 2 1

- To delete a folder with any i- ppli stored in it, enter the terminal security code.

3 Select *Yes*

- If there is any Message i- ppli in the folder to be deleted, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the mail folder. Select *Yes* to delete the mail folder and all messages stored in the folder. Select *No* to delete i- ppli only. However, if there is any protected message in the mail folder, you cannot delete the i- ppli or mail folder even when you select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

When the mail folder for Message i- ppli to be deleted is being used (including being displayed in the list), the i- ppli may not be deleted.

When only i- ppli has been deleted and the mail folder used for Message i- ppli is left undeleted, the message can be displayed from the submenu in the folder list of mail. •P205

Protecting i- ppli

- The maximum number of i- ppli that can be protected •P381

1 (for over a second) ► Select a folder

2 Highlight i- ppli ► Press 3 1

i- ppli is protected and  is indicated on the software list.

- To cancel: Highlight i- ppli ►  3 1

Switching the protection of selected items on/off:  3 2 ► Select i- ppli ►



Switching the protection of all the items in the folder on/off:  3 3 ► Enter the terminal security code

Deleting i- ppli

1 (for over a second) ► Select a folder

2 Highlight i- ppli ► 2 1

Deleting selected items:  2 2 ►

Select i- ppli ► 

Deleting all the items in the folder:

 2 3 ► Enter the terminal

security code ► Select *All* or *w/o protect*

3 Select *Yes*

- When you delete Message i- ppli, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete the mail folder as well. Select *Yes* to delete the mail folder and all messages stored in it. Select *No* to delete i- ppli only. However, if there is any protected message in the mail folder, you cannot delete the i- ppli or mail folder even when you select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

When deleting all i- ppli in a folder from the folder list, highlight the folder, press , and select *Delete Delete software*.

The protected i- ppli cannot be deleted by selecting *One item* or *Selected items*. To delete protected i- ppli, cancel its protection first and then delete it. Alternatively, select *All items*, enter the terminal security code, and then delete i- ppli by selecting *All*.

If the folder for Message i- ppli to be deleted is being used (including being displayed in the list), the i- ppli may not be deleted.

When only i- ppli has been deleted and the mail folder used for Message i- ppli is left undeleted, the message can be displayed from the submenu in the folder list of mail. •P205

Moving i- ppli to another folder

1 (for over a second) ► Select a folder

2 Highlight i- ppli ► 4 1

Moving selected items:  4 2 ►

Select i- ppli ► 

Moving all the items in the folder:

 4 3

3 Select the folder to move to ► Select *Yes*

Default **By download time**

1    

2 Press any of  to 

- For *By download time* and *By access time*, i- ppli is sorted by the time set in Date and Time Setting of FOMA terminal.
- For *By name*, the sorted order may not match the order of the Japanese syllabary if two-byte and one-byte characters or alphabetic characters are included in the name of i- ppli.
- For *By access frequency*, the frequency does not include the number of being started as the i- ppli standby display. The access frequency is carried over even when i- ppli version is upgraded.
- For *By software size*, i- ppli applications are sorted in the order of the total size of the software and scratchpad from large to small. However, the sorted order may differ from the order of total sizes calculated from the sizes of software and scratchpad displayed in the detail information.

Checking the number of i- ppli in a folder

Software in Folder

1  (for over a second)

2 Highlight a folder  Press 

- Meaning of the icon 

Checking current settings of i- ppli

Software Information

1  (for over a second)

2 Press 

Storage :

Total size of i- ppli saved is indicated in bar and numeric.

Software count :

Total number of i- ppli saved is displayed.

i- ppli display :

Name and storage folder of i- ppli set as the i- ppli standby display are displayed.

One-key shortcut :

The name and storage folder of i- ppli registered to One-key Shortcut are displayed.

Auto start :

Name, storage folder and start date and time of i- ppli set for the next automatic start are displayed.

Using various functions from i- ppli

- Downloading i- ppli that supports individual functions beforehand is required.
- The operation varies for each i- ppli application and some i- ppli may not be used.

Using the camera from i- ppli

1 Operate i- ppli to use Still Camera/Movie Camera

INFORMATION

Shot images or videos may be automatically sent from i- ppli to the server by communication. When the camera has been activated from i- ppli, a shot image is saved in the *i-mode* folder or the *Deco-mail picture* folder of *My Picture* or within the i- ppli itself. The shot video is saved in the *i-mode* folder of *i-motion* or within the i- ppli itself. Some i- ppli can change the image size or set the frame, etc.

Using Bar Code Reader from i- ppli

1 Operate i- ppli to scan barcodes

- A message that scan results are used and saved in the i- ppli is displayed.

Using infrared communication from i- ppli

- Infrared communication may not be made depending on the other device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

1 Operate i- ppli to perform infrared communication

- i- ppli can also be started by receiving i- ppli starting data via infrared communication.
- If you perform infrared communication while your terminal is connected to a site or sending/receiving mail, the site connection or mail transmission is stopped.

Full Browser

Viewing Internet web pages designed for PC	Full Browser 244
Setting Full Browser	Browser Setting 249

Viewing Internet web pages designed for PC

Full Browser

You can view Internet web pages designed for PCs on FOMA terminal.

- Some web pages may not be downloaded or displayed properly.
- Packet communication fee is required for usage of Full Browser. Full Browser is not supported by the pake-hodai service.

Example Entering the URL of a page to view

1 Enter URL (up to 512 one-byte characters)

- From the next time, the last URL you connected to appears.
- Connection can be stopped if  is pressed while connecting. Also, to stop displaying the page, press  or  while downloading the data.

Viewing the home page: 

- Your FOMA terminal is connected to the web page registered as a home page.
 - P249
- If the home page is not registered yet, home page setting screen appears.

Selecting URL from Bookmark:

 **Select a folder**  **Select a bookmark**

- For registering to bookmark 

Using URL History to view web pages:

 **Select URL**

- URL History contains last 20 URLs you connected to.

Reconnecting to the last page displayed

(Last Visited URL):  

- Some pages may not be displayed. Or a different page from the last visited one may be displayed.

2 **Select *Activate Full Browser?* field** **Select *Yes*** **Select *Set***

- If you select *Display*, notes are displayed. Please read the notes.
- If Access Setting is set to *Yes*, the operation of Step 2 is not needed.

3 when you finish viewing Internet web pages **Select *Yes***

INFORMATION

Some pages may take some time to appear.

The following functions are not supported.

- Viewing Flash movies
- Plug-in
- Playing sound
- Saving screen memos
- Phone To (AV Phone To)

The following icons may appear instead of images.

-  : While data is being downloaded or when Image Display is set not to display images
-  : When the image data is invalid, cannot be found or cannot be received because of being outside of the service area
-  : When the image cannot be displayed because of incorrect URL

Operations available from the folder list of bookmark, bookmark list or URL history list and the input method of URL are the same as for i-mode. 

Some pages may be connected to the network automatically. A confirmation screen appears asking whether to connect to the network for communication. Full Browser can display SSL/TLS pages. SSL/TLS is a safer data communication method that uses certification/encryption technology to protect privacy.

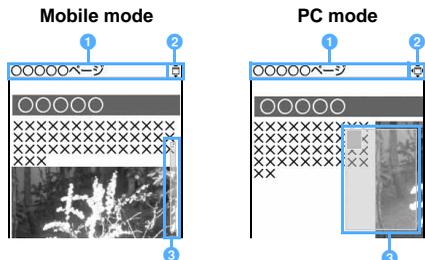
- When the user certificate or original certificate registered in FOMA terminal is needed for SSL/TLS communication, the selection screen for certificate appears.
- During SSL/TLS communication,  appears on the screen.
- To display the certificate of the current page, press  while a SSL/TLS page is displayed and select *Display View certificate*.
- When you close a SSL/TLS page, a confirmation screen appears.

Operation while viewing web pages by Full Browser

The Full Browser screen

The Full Browser screen is available in the mobile mode and the PC mode. In the mobile mode, the layout of a page is adjusted to the width of the FOMA terminal screen. In the PC mode, a web page is displayed without being adjusted to the screen size.

The default is the mobile mode.



1 Page title

-  appears before the title while the data is being downloaded.
- If the page has no title, the URL is displayed.

2 Display mode icon

 : Mobile mode  : PC mode

- In the mobile mode, scroll up and down to view the page.
- In the PC mode, scroll both vertically and horizontally to view the page.

3 View position

When a page is displayed or the screen is scrolled, a bar that indicates the current position of the page appears for a second. (Except for thumbnail display)

Red*1 : Displaying range

Gray : Range not displayed

*1 The color can be changed.

- The width of a frame changes according to the display mode or a page.

Displaying a page divided into frames  P245

Multi-window display  P246

Switching between the mobile mode and the PC mode:

- You cannot change the modes while downloading the data.
- Each time you press the key, the mode switches.
- The setting is saved even after Full Browser ends.

Scrolling:

- In the mobile mode:

 : Scroll up and down

 /  /  /  : Page up

 /  /  /  : Page down

- In the PC mode:

 : Scroll up and down

 : Scroll right and left

 to ,  to 

Scroll by a page to the direction of the key pressed

Showing the previous or next page:

- In the mobile mode: 
- In the PC mode:  / 

Switching between displaying/not displaying the guide row:

- Operation is available only in case that *Full screen view* is set for Screen View Setting.

Reloading the data:

Showing the URL of a page:

- You can copy the URL. Follow the procedure in "Copying the URL".  P171

Showing the URL of a linked page: Highlight the link

- To copy the displayed URL:  Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Copying the URL".  P172

Switching the character encode:

- Each time you press the key, the character encode is switched in the following order: SJIS EUC JIS UTF8.
- Setting auto switch:    
- Characters may not be displayed correctly even if you change character encodes.

Playing animation from the beginning:

Displaying the view position manually:

- To set the color:      to 
- To set not to display:    

Sending the URL via mail:

The mail composition screen appears with the URL of the current page entered in the message text.

Viewing another page:

- To display the home page:  
- To select URL from Bookmark:   
 Select a folder  Select a bookmark
- To enter the URL of a page to view:     Enter URL (up to 512 one-byte characters)  
- To view web pages using URL history:     Select URL

Showing HELP:

INFORMATION

In case of scrolling, hold down the relevant key to scroll continuously.

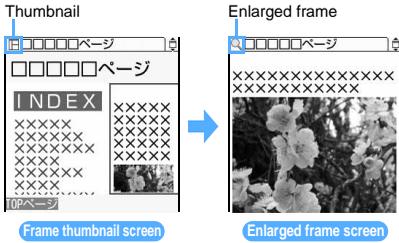
Procedures to select links or use entry fields is the same as on the i-mode site screen. However, you cannot select a numbered item with dial keys.

Displaying a page divided into frames

The frame thumbnail screen appears first. When you select a frame, the enlarged frame screen appears allowing scrolling and selecting items.

- A page divided into many frames may not be displayed. In the multi-window mode, the number of frames that can be displayed is fewer than the standard mode.

1 Select a frame in the frame thumbnail screen



- Press **[F5]** to move the frame. In the PC mode, pressing **[F6]** can also move the frame.
- To return to the frame thumbnail screen: **[F7]**
- A green **[F5]** appears while data is being downloaded for the frame thumbnail screen or for the current frame on the enlarged frame screen. A gray **[F5]** appears while data is being downloaded for another frame on the enlarged frame screen.
- The screen automatically returns to the frame thumbnail screen in some cases such as selecting a link.

INFORMATION

All the page content may not be displayed depending on the frame composition.

On the frame thumbnail screen, the following operations are unavailable:

- Scrolling
 - Showing link destination
 - Saving files of images, PDF data, Word, Excel or PowerPoint
 - Searching
 - View position indication/setting
- The frame which needs certificate is shown in yellow, and the frame in which a trouble is detected by Virus Scan Function is shown in red.

Viewing multiple windows

You can open multiple windows at a time and view the pages by switching windows.

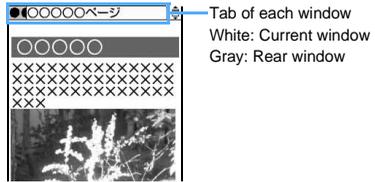
- Up to 5 windows can be open. However, depending on the number of frames or the page content, you cannot open 5 windows at a time.
- Multiple pages cannot be displayed on the same screen at the same time.

Example Displaying the link destination on a separate window

1 Highlight a link on the Full Browser screen

▶ Press **[F5]** **[1]** **[5]**

The page appears on a new window. The previous page remains in the rear window.



- To display the home page: **[F5]** **[1]** **[1]**
- To display web pages using Bookmark, URL entry field or URL History: **[F5]** **[1]** ▶ **[2]** to **[4]**
 - For the subsequent steps, see "Viewing Internet web pages designed for PC". ◀P244
- In the multi-window mode, a confirmation screen for the operation on the rear window may appear. The rear window's tab blinks while the rear window's confirmation screen is displayed.

Switching windows: **[F5]** **[3]** ▶ **Select a window**

Closing a window: **Show the window to close** ▶ **[F7]** ▶ **Select Yes**

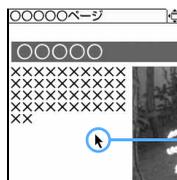
INFORMATION

Some links will open a new window automatically. In the multi-window mode, switching the display mode of a window changes the display mode of all the open windows as well.

Displaying in the pointer mode

You can use the pointer in the same manner as PC for scrolling and selecting items.

1 Press **[F5]** on the Full Browser screen



- Pressing the key again returns to the standard mode.

- Use **[F5]** to move the pointer. Holding it down moves the pointer continuously. You can also move the pointer by pressing this key at an angle.

- When there are undisplayed range, the screen scrolls up, down, right or left automatically when the pointer reached at an end of the screen.
- Highlight a link, entry field, a button or frame by the pointer and press  to select. *Select* appears in the middle of the guide row when selection is available.
- Showing the previous or next page:  / 
- You cannot select a guide row or submenu by the pointer, etc.
- The pointer does not appear on the search screen or image selecting screen.
- The pointer's move may be limited depending on the frame.
- The setting is saved even after Full Browser ends.

Displaying horizontally

You can display the page by turning the screen 90 degrees.

1 Press on the Full Browser screen

- The guide row is not displayed.
- Return to vertical display: Press   again
- The pointer mode will be canceled if you switch between vertical and horizontal display.

Key function

While in horizontal display, the functions of , , , dial keys and scroll direction changes according to the direction of the screen. The following  shows the direction in horizontal display.

- Mobile mode:
 - : Scroll : Forward/Back
 -  /  /  / : Scroll up by a page
 -  /  /  / : Scroll down by a page
- PC mode:
 - : Scroll
 - : Back : Forward
 -  to ,  to : Scroll by a page to the direction of the key

Switching from i-mode to Full Browser

While viewing Internet websites via i-mode, you can switch to Full Browser to view them.

- Some web pages, however, may not be downloaded or displayed properly.

1 Connect Internet websites via i-mode

2 ► Select *Yes*

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Viewing Internet web pages designed for PC". ➤P244
- If you save the settings or press  with Access Setting set to *No*, the i-mode screen does not reappear.

Various operations in the Full Browser screen

Registering in Bookmark

- Maximum number of URLs that can be registered ➤P381
- You cannot register URLs longer than 512 one-byte characters in Bookmark.
- Some pages may not be registered in Bookmark.

1 on the Full Browser screen ► Select the folder to save URL

- For the subsequent steps, follow Step 2 in "Registering in Bookmark" of i-mode. ➤P165

Saving images

The images in GIF or JPEG format can be registered in FOMA terminal.

- Maximum number of images that can be registered ➤P381
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 in GIF format or 1728 x 2304 in JPEG format cannot be saved. Also, some JPEG images may not be saved.
- Image files larger than 300 Kbytes cannot be saved.
- Even if an image file is of valid format and size, it may not be saved depending on pages.
- Background images cannot be saved. Any other data than images cannot be downloaded.

1 on the Full Browser screen ► Select an image

- When the images in GIF or JPEG is selected, the saving screen for image appears. Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Downloading images from sites". ➤P168

INFORMATION

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete saved images. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete. Before deletion, an image can be displayed by pressing  on the image list and detail information of the image can be displayed by pressing .

Downloading files

PDF data, Word, Excel or PowerPoint files can be downloaded.

- The maximum size of file that can be received is 500 Kbytes.
- Maximum number of files that can be saved
➤ P381

1 On the Full Browser screen, select the item for obtaining files.

 is displayed while downloading.

- To cancel downloading:  ▶ Select *Yes*

2 Select *Save*

- To display: Select *Preview*
- To cancel the operation: Select *Back* ▶ Select *No*

3 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) ▶ Press



PDF data is saved in the *i-mode* folder of *My Document*. ➤ P279

The files of Word, Excel, and PowerPoint are saved in folder of *Other*. ➤ P283

- When saving Word, Excel and PowerPoint and two or more folders are in *Other*, a screen for selecting the folder appears. Select the folder to save.

INFORMATION

When there is not enough available storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete saved data. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete. Before deletion, you can view detail information by pressing  on the PDF data list or document list.

Searching for a character string in the page

- Searching is unavailable during data downloading.
- Some pages may not be searched.

1 on the Full Browser screen

The screen switches to the search screen and the character string entry field appears at the bottom of the screen.

2 Enter a character string (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters)

Searching is executed and the words matched to the entered character string is highlighted.

- To search the next matched word: 
- To search the previous matched word: 
- To end searching: 

Setting the detailed conditions:  on the search screen ▶ Select each item to set ▶



- To search for a completely matched one-byte character string, set the search method to *Exact match*.
- To distinguish between upper/lower cases and search, select *Yes* in *Case-sensitive*.
- The setting is saved even after Full Browser ends.

INFORMATION

The search results sometimes overlap the character string entry field. To check the overlapping content, press .

Uploading images

You can upload images of FOMA terminal to the website supporting image uploading.

- Images in GIF and JPEG format can be uploaded. The image file size must be up to 80 Kbytes. If the image file contains more than one image or character string are to be uploaded, the total size is up to 100 Kbytes.
- You cannot upload images not permitted to attach to mail or to output from FOMA terminal (excluding images with file restriction set at your terminal). Any other data than images and character strings cannot be uploaded.
- The uploading method varies depending on web pages.

1 Select the *Browse* button on the page for uploading the image

- The *Browse* button appears when images can be uploaded from FOMA terminal. If you view the same page by PC, you will see a different button in place of *Browse*.

Changing a selected file: Select *Browse* button ▶ Select *Change*

Canceling a selected file: Select *Browse* button ▶ Select *Cancel*

2 Select a folder ▶ Select an image

Setting Full Browser

Browser Setting

- The following i-mode settings are also valid for Full Browser
 - Connection Timeout Setting
 - Host Selection
 - Manage Certificate
 - Display Light Setting
 - Skip Password

Menu 2941

Setting a home page

Home URL

Default not recorded

1  9 4 1

2 Enter a URL (up to 512 one-byte characters)
▶ Press 

INFORMATION

You can also set a home page by pressing  while a web page to be set as a home page is displayed and selecting *Set as home URL* and *Yes*. You cannot register URL longer than 512 one-byte characters.

Setting cookies

Cookie Setting/Deleting

Cookie is the mechanism for temporarily saving the data about a user (the user name, etc.) in FOMA terminal when the user accesses Internet websites and sending the saved data to the same website when the user accesses again. Cookie is used, for example, to automatically display the user-specific page.

- Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of enabling cookies.
- If cookies are disabled, some web pages will not be displayed properly or cannot be used.

Default Valid

1  9 4 2

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press 

Cookie :

When you set this to *Valid*, cookies are always enabled. When setting *Valid(notify)*, a confirmation screen appears before transmission. When you set this to *Invalid*, cookies are always disabled.

Notify :

Select when to display the confirmation screen from among *Sending*, *Receiving*, and *Sending/receiving*, when *Valid(notify)* is set.

Deleting all cookies:  ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

When you change the UIM with another, *Cookie* is set to *Invalid*.

When you change *Cookie* from *Invalid* to *Valid* or *Valid(notify)*, the terminal security code may be required.

A confirmation screen may appear asking whether to delete saved cookies.

You cannot display saved cookies or delete each of them.

Menu 2943

Setting script

Script Setting

Make setting of JavaScript of the Internet web pages.

- JavaScript is a program running on the Internet web pages.
- If you set *Script Setting* to *Invalid*, some web pages may not be displayed correctly.

Default Script Setting: Valid
Window Open Guard: Invalid

1  9 4 3

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press

Script Setting :

Set whether to enable JavaScript.

Window Open Guard :

Specify whether to open a new window in response to a request from a JavaScript program. When you set this to *Invalid*, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to open a new window. Selecting *Yes* on that screen opens a new window. When you set this to *Valid*, a new window does not open.

INFORMATION

Also you can change the *Window Open Guard* setting by pressing  on the Full Browser screen and selecting *Display Window open guard Yes*.

With *Window Open Guard* set to *Valid*, when JavaScript requires to open a new window on the Full Browser screen and the *Window Open Guard* function works,  appears in the position of the display mode icon.

Menu 2944

Setting the display mode Display Mode Setting

Select a display mode (the mobile mode or PC mode) in which Full Browser opens.

 **Mobile mode**

1 ▶ Press or

Menu 2945

Setting whether to display images Image Display

 **Display all**

1

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press

Image :

Specifies whether to display images or animation.

- When *Not display* is set, *Animation* cannot be set.

Animation :

Specifies whether to play animation. When *Not display* is set, the first frame of animation appears.

INFORMATION

You can also make this setting by pressing  on the Full Browser screen and selecting *Display Image settings*.

Menu 2946

Setting whether to use Full Browser

Access Setting

 **No**

1

2 Select *Activate Full Browser?* field ▶ Select *Yes* or *No*

- If you select *Display*, notes are displayed. Please read the notes before you select *Yes*.

3 Select *Set*

INFORMATION

When you change the UIM with another, Access Setting is set to *No*.

Menu 2947

Setting Referer

Referer Setting

You can set whether to send “Referer” (the link source information to show the page from which you accessed the linked page) when you select a link to view the link destination page.

- Select *Send*, *Notify* or *Unsend*. Selecting *Notify* displays a confirmation screen before sending Referer.
- Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending Referer.

 **Send**

1 ▶ Press any of to

Menu 2948

Hiding the guide row from the Full Browser screen

Screen View Setting

Hide the guide row from the Full Browser screen and shows the page content on the full screen.

- On the full screen, you can perform operations in the same manner as the standard screen.

 **With menu icon view**

1

2 Press

- To set the standard screen: 

Displaying/Editing/ Managing Data

Making full use of images

- Displaying images [My Picture](#) 252
- Editing still images 254
- Setting the operating conditions of images [Settings](#) 257
- Saving the still image in the Data Center [Data Security Service](#) 258

Making full use of video/i-motion

- Playing video/i-motion [i-motion](#) 258
- Editing video/i-motion 260
- Setting the operating conditions of video/i-motion [Settings](#) 263

Making full use of Chara-den

- Chara-den 264
- Displaying Chara-den [Chara-den](#) 264
- Recording Chara-den [Record Chara-den](#) 265
- Setting the operating conditions of Chara-den [Settings](#) 266

Making full use of Machi-chara

- Displaying Machi-chara [Machi-chara](#) 266
- Setting the operating conditions of Machi-chara [Settings](#) 267

Making full use of melodies

- Playing melodies [Melody](#) 267
- Setting the operating conditions of melodies [Settings](#) 268

Managing various data

- Using the album 268
- Checking/editing detail information of the data [View/Edit Detail Info](#) 270
- Deleting data 272
- Sorting data [Sort](#) 272
- Checking the memory status of FOMA terminal [Memory Status](#) 272

Making full use of the infrared communication

- About infrared communication 273
- Sending data by infrared communication [Send Ir Data](#) 273
- Receiving data by infrared communication [Receive Ir Data](#) 274
- Activating infrared communication mode
..... [Infrared Communication Mode](#) 276
- Using the infrared remote control function 277
- Setting operations for data exchange [Data Exchange Setting](#) 277

Making full use of Sound Recorder

- Recording sound with Sound Recorder [Sound Recorder](#) 277

Making full use of PDF compatible viewer

- Displaying the PDF data [PDF Viewer](#) 279
- Using bookmarks or marks 282
- Setting the operating conditions of PDF Viewer [Settings](#) 283

Making full use of Document Viewer

- Displaying Word, Excel and PowerPoint files [Document Viewer](#) 283

Displaying images

My Picture

You can display images saved in *My Picture* in Data Box in FOMA terminal.

1 Select a folder

Each folder contains specific images:

Camera :

Still images shot by the camera or Chara-den and still images captured from video/i-motion or PDF data

i-mode :

Images acquired with i-mode, Full Browser, i-mode Mail and i-ppli

Deco-mail picture :

Preinstalled images for Deco-mail and images downloaded from sites or received via i-mode mails

Deco-mail pict :

Deco-mail pictograms preinstalled, downloaded from sites or received via i-mode mails

Item :

Frame images preinstalled by default and frame images/stamp images downloaded from sites

Preinstalled :

Images preinstalled by default

Data transfer :

Images read by Bar Code Reader and images received via data communications

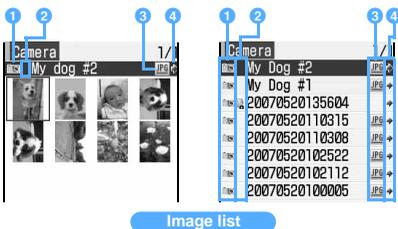
Album :

Images moved from other folders
 • Not displayed by default. To create an Album folder ◀P268

2 Highlight an image

Thumbnail display

Title display



1 Originated

- : Camera
- : Preinstalled
- : Data transfer
- : i-mode
- : Item
- : Chara-den

2 Type of image

No icon: Still image

: Created animation

: Animation/Flash movie

3 File format

: GIF image : JPEG image

: SWF (Flash movie)

No icon: Created animation

4 File restriction

➔ (blue) : Without file restriction

➔ (gray) : With file restriction

- To switch between thumbnail and title displays:



- Images with the UIM operation restriction are displayed with (for Deco-mail pictograms) in the thumbnail display.

- To change display names and other items ◀P270

Sending mail with images attached:

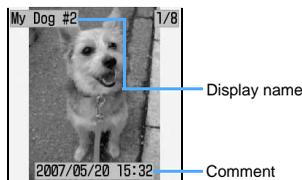
Highlight an image ▶

The mail composition screen is displayed with the selected image attached.

- When the file size of image is under 90 Kbytes, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to paste it in the mail message. Select *Yes* to paste it in the text field and select *No* to attach it to mail.
- For JPEG-format images whose size exceeds QVGA (240 x 320 or 320 x 240), a confirmation screen appears asking whether to convert them to the size for the standby display (QVGA).
- Images that can be attached to mail ◀P194

3 Press

The image is displayed.



- Press to display the previous or next image.
- Animation, Created animation and Flash movies are replayed automatically when being displayed. During playback, the following operations are available:

: Pause/replay

: Retry (replay from the beginning)

: Slow-down playback (only in stop for playing Created animation)

: Full-screen display

Displaying images at the same magnification: to scroll

The display name and the guide row disappear and the image is displayed in its actual size.

- It is available for only the image of which the size exceeds 240 x 320.
- Animation, Created animation and Flash movies cannot be displayed at the same magnification.
- Terminating displaying at the same magnification:

Displaying the image using full-screen display:

The display name and guide row disappears.

- Press to display the previous or next image.
- To quit the full-screen display:

Viewing a slide show

The images in the folder are displayed with switching automatically.

- The speed of switching images or the order depends on Settings.

1

2 Highlight a folder ▶ Press

Slide show is started.

- The folder list returns after displaying all the images in the folder.
- Created animation is not displayed.
- Sound effects of an image are not played.
- To quit halfway:

Setting images to the standby display or phonebook data

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight an image ▶

3 Select an item

Setting to the standby display: ▶

Select *Yes*

- If zooming is available for the image, select *Yes (Same size)* to display it in its actual size or select *Yes (Large size)* to enlarge it to the screen size.
- If the i-ppli standby display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it continuously.
- Setting may be unavailable depending on images.

Registering as new phonebook data:

Updating the existing phonebook data:

▶ Select a party

Setting as call image: ▶ or

Setting as videophone call image, substitute image or on-hold image:

▶ to

- Images whose size exceeds 176 x 144 and images unavailable for output from FOMA terminal can be set only as call image.

Setting as the outgoing message image, incoming message image, received message alert image or message retrieval image for mail: ▶ to

- The outgoing/incoming msg. image or the image set in the reception result screen is also displayed when Message R/F is received or SMS is sent or received.

Setting to the menu icon: or ▶ to or

The selected image is set as a menu icon of *Customized 1* or *Customized 2* of tile display.

- Created animation, Flash movies and item images cannot be set as a menu icon.

Creating animation

You can create animation by selecting and saving still images (up to 6) in the same folder.

- Animation, Created animation, Flash movies and still images with a size of more than 640 x 480 cannot be saved to Created animation.
- Still images saved in Created animation cannot be displayed or edited respectively.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2

To cancel the setting: Highlight the Created animation ▶

3 Select images

The number is displayed on the image in the order of selection.

- To cancel all the selections:

4 ▶ Enter a display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) ▶ Press

In the image list, and the display name are displayed. In the thumbnail display, the first cartoon panel is displayed.

INFORMATION

Still images taken by continuous shooting are saved in the format of Created animation. When you cancel the setting, each image is saved as a separate file. A number such as "-1" and "-2" is appended to the end of each file name.

Editing still images

You can edit still images saved in *My Picture*. The editing items and the maximum editable image size are as follows:

Editing items	Maximum editable image size (dot) *1
<i>Change size</i>	1728 x 2304 (352 x 288 for zoom in/out)
<i>Clip</i>	1728 x 2304 (It is not possible to capture the specified range of still images if it exceeds 1224 x 1632.)
<i>Brightness/Tone</i>	352 x 288
<i>Effects</i>	240 x 320
<i>Reverse/Rotate</i>	480 x 640
<i>Frames</i>	352 x 288
<i>Paste stamp</i>	352 x 288
<i>Paste text</i>	352 x 288
<i>Cut</i>	240 x 320
<i>Size limitation</i>	1728 x 2304
<i>Adjust</i>	352 x 288

*1 When the image cannot be edited because the size of it is too large, it can be reduced to the editable size using *Change size*.

- The following images cannot be edited:
 - Animation, Created animation, Flash movies, item images and images in the *Preinstalled* folder
 - Still images not permitted to attach to mail or to output from FOMA terminal (excluding still images with file restriction set with your terminal)
 - Still images with either the vertical or horizontal size is under 8 dots

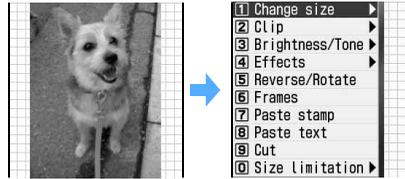
1   ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a still image ▶ 

The still image edit screen appears.

- Adjustment ◀P257

3  Menu



Still image edit screen

Edit menu screen

4 Select an editing item ▶ Edit the still image

- For details about editing, see "Using the edit menu" below.

5  after editing ▶ Select *Save*

Edited still image is saved as a new still image in the same folder.

- Select *As frame/stamp* to save as an image for frame or stamp. Images that can be available as frame/stamp ◀P271
- Images that can be used as Deco-mail pictograms are saved in the *Deco-mail pict* folder.

INFORMATION

Editing of *Brightness/Tone* or *Effects* may display the image smaller. The actual size does not change if you save the image as it is. The image is saved with a proper size.

After editing, the file size of still images may become larger.

When the memory is not enough or the maximum allowable number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete saved images. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete unnecessary images.

Using the edit menu

Changing the size

- Changing the size of still image may deteriorate the image quality.

1  on the edit menu screen

2 Change the image size

Changing it to the specified size:  to



If the horizontal to vertical ratio of specified size and still image is same, the size is changed and the still image edit screen reappears.

If the horizontal to vertical ratio differs, a size frame is displayed. Press / to adjust the position of the size frame, and press to change the area encompassed by the size frame to the specified size.

- Putting the whole still image in the specified size by ignoring the aspect ratio (*Stretch*):
- Putting the entire still image in the specified size by maintaining the aspect ratio (*Fit*):

Zooming in/out:

① to zoom in/out

You can zoom in/out by 5% with horizontal and vertical ratio held.

- Press to zoom out by 20% or press to zoom in by 20%.
- The vertically long still image can be zoomed in up to 288 x 352 and the horizontally long still image can be zoomed in up to 352 x 288 (up to the limit of either size).
- Images can be compressed down to a size having 8 horizontal or vertical dots.

②

Clipping images to desired sizes

You can clip a part of the still image by specifying the size or range.

- When the original still image is less than 16 x 16, clipping is unavailable.

1 on the edit menu screen

2 Clip the still image

Clipping the image to the specified size:

① to

② to adjust the clipping position

- Switching the vertical/horizontal of the clipping frame:
- Changing the clipping size:
- Specifying the clipping range:

③

Specifying the range and clipping:

① to adjust the position of

The position of upper left of the range specification frame is set and is displayed on the lower right of the frame.

② to adjust the position of

The clipping range is set and the range specification frame is displayed in solid line.

- Press instead of to change the position of the upper left again.
- Use after pressing to move the range specification frame.

③

Changing brightness and tone

1 on the edit menu screen

2 Change the brightness and tone

Adjusting the brightness:

① to adjust the brightness

- Maximizing:
- Minimizing:

②

Changing the tone to monotone or sepia:

or

Applying special effects

1 on the edit menu screen

2 Select the type of effect

Soften : Softens the image.

Spherical : Swells the still image spherically from the center.

Emboss : Turns leaden color and emphasizes concavity and convexity.

Spiral : Makes the still image look as if it is spiraling out from the center.

Shiny : Attaches a mark as glistening.

Mosaic : Attaches a mosaic.

Reversing/rotating

1 on the edit menu screen

2 Reverse/rotate the still image

: Reverse up and down

: Reverse left and right

: Rotate 90 degrees to the left

: Rotate 90 degrees to the right

3 Press

Overlaying a frame

- Frames set by default ◀P349

1 on the edit menu screen

The same size frames as the still image being edited are listed.

- Images set as frame option in Edit Detail Info are displayed even if their size differs from that of the still image edited.

2 Select a frame

3 Check the still image

- Switching frames: 
- Rotating a frame 180 degrees: 

4 Press

Pasting stamps

- Stamps set by default ◀P350

1 on the edit menu screen

The smaller size stamps than the still image being edited are listed.

- Images set as stamp option in Edit Detail Info and stamps preset by default are displayed even if their size is larger than that of still image edited.

2 Select a stamp

The selected stamp is displayed in the center of the screen.

3 to move the stamp ▶

A beep sound is heard and the stamp is pasted.

- You can paste stamps in another location continuously.
- Deleting all the pasted stamps: 
- The volume of a beep sound depends on Listen Volume.

4 Press

Pasting characters

Paste Text

1 on the edit menu screen

2 Select each item to set

Text : Enters the text (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters).

Font type : Sets the text type.

Font size : Sets the text size.

Font color : Sets the text color.

Font border color :

Sets the text bordering color.

Background color :

Sets the text background color.

Paste method :

Sets whether to paste all characters as a single text in a place or paste each character separately in different places.

3

The text (in case of *By character* set for *Paste method*, the first character) is displayed in the center of the screen.

4 to move the text ▶

A beep sound is heard and text is pasted.

- You can paste text in another location continuously.
- When *By character* is set for *Paste method*, each pressing of  pastes each character. When the last character is pasted, the first character appears.
- Deleting all the pasted text: 
- The volume of a beep sound depends on Listen Volume.

5 Press

Cutting a desired section out

You can select a color and cut the section of the similar color.

1 on the edit menu screen

2 to place to the color to cut and

The section with a similar color as the color at  is cut out.

- You can cut another area continuously.

3 Press

Limiting file size for saving

You can limit the file size to a size below 90 Kbytes for *Msg attach:Small* and a size below 2 Mbytes for *Msg attach:Large* for saving.

1 on the edit menu screen ▶ Select a size

The image is saved as a new image with a size below the specified size in the same folder.

- Still images with a size larger than 480 x 640 cannot be set as *Msg attach:Small*.
- For still images of 2 Mbytes or less, you cannot set *Msg attach:Large*.

Adjusting brightness and tone balance

- Adjusting may not have much effect depending on the still image.

1 on the still image edit screen

2 to switch the adjustment mode

Close-up : Makes appropriate adjustment for images such as still objects and plants.

Near view : Makes appropriate adjustment for the background.

Distant view : Gives vivid brightness and contrast to a landscape image.

Beautiful skin : Gives an effect to make the skin look white and smooth on a portrait image.

Tanned : Gives an effect to make the skin look tanned on a portrait image.

Pale : Gives an effect to make the skin look pale on a portrait image.

Drunk : Gives an effect to make the skin look ruddy on a portrait image.

- The adjustment mode can also be selected by pressing  and  to .

3 to adjust the level

- Maximizing : 
- Minimizing : 
- The brightness and color tone change depending on the level.

4 Press

Setting the operating conditions of images

Settings

Default Display icons: Yes
Display title: Yes
Display number: Yes Display comments: Yes
Scale up image: No Sound effect: Yes
Auto scroll mode: No
Slide show speed: Normal
Slide show random: No

1 ▶

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press

Display icons :

The thumbnails appear when setting to *Yes*, and the title display appears when setting to *No*.

Display title :

Sets whether to show a display name on the image display screen.

Display number :

Sets whether to display the number of images on the image display screen.

Display comments :

Sets whether to display comments on the image display screen.

Scale up image :

Sets whether to scale up an image smaller than the display area by maintaining its aspect ratio when displaying it.

- Even when set to *Yes*, the image is not scaled up in case of the full-screen display.

Sound effect :

Sets whether to play effect sounds set for images when an image is displayed.

Auto scroll mode :

Under the *Yes* setting, automatic scrolling takes place if you press  when JPEG-format images whose image size exceeds the screen are being displayed.

- Even when the vertical or horizontal size is smaller than that of the screen, the image is not enlarged.
- When the vertical and horizontal sizes of the image have about the same ratio as that of the screen, no scrolling takes place.
- You can press  to stop or restart the ongoing scrolling. Pressing  at the end of operation will not start scrolling any longer.

Slide show speed :

Selects among *Fast*, *Normal* or *Slow*.

Slide show random :

Sets whether to display images randomly in slide show.

Saving the still image in the Data Center

Data Security Service

You can save still images in the Data Center using Data Security Service.

- This service is a pay service and requires a subscription. For more information about the service, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

Saving still images

- The still image that exceeds 100 Kbytes cannot be saved.
- You cannot save images not permitted to attach to mail or to output from FOMA terminal (excluding images with file restriction set to *Yes* at your terminal).
- Created animation, Flash movies, item images, or images in the *Preinstalled* folder cannot be saved.
- You can confirm the log of communicating with the Data Center. ●P98

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 ▶ Select a still image ▶

- Up to 10 data can be selected.

3 Select *Yes* ▶ Enter the terminal security code

Selected still images are saved to the Data Center. When saving is completed, the execution result is displayed.

- The execution result disappears in about 5 seconds and the image list returns. Press  to return to the list immediately.

INFORMATION

In case you have not subscribed to Data Security Service, a screen for indicating that appears.

Restoring still images

Restore still images saved in the Data Center from the sites of the Data Center to FOMA terminal. For more information, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

Playing video/i-motion

i-motion

You can play video/i-motion saved in *i-motion* of Data Box in FOMA terminal.

- Video/i-motion files (MP4 files) with an image size from 48 x 48 to 320 x 240 can be played.

1 ▶ Select a folder

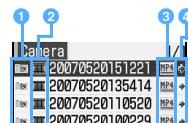
-  **Camera :**
Videos recorded with the camera, sounds recorded with Sound Recorder and video memos
-  **i-mode :**
i-motion acquired in i-mode or i-motion Mail
-  **Preinstalled :**
Videos preinstalled by default
-  **Data transfer :**
Video/i-motion received by data communication
-  **Album :**
Videos/i-motion files moved from other folders
 - Not displayed by default. To create ●P268

2 Highlight a video/i-motion file

Thumbnail display



Title display



Video/i-motion list

1 Originated

-  : Camera
-  : i-mode
-  : Preinstalled
-  : Data transfer
-  : Chara-den
-  : Videophone

2 Replay restriction

-  : No restriction
-  : Restriction on the number of times
-  : Restriction on expiration
-  : Restriction on period

3 File types

-  : MP4
-  : MP4 with bookmark

4 File restriction

- ➔ (blue) : Without file restriction
- ➔ (gray) : With file restriction

- To switch between thumbnail and title displays:



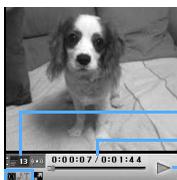
- Sounds recorded with Sound Recorder or video/i-motion only with sound (i-motion without image such as singer's vocals) is displayed as  and video/i-motion with the UIM operation restriction is displayed as  in the thumbnail display.
- To change display names and other items.
 - ☛P270

Sending mail with video/i-motion attached (Compose i-motion mail): Highlight a video/i-motion file

The mail composition screen with the video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- For video/i-motion that can be attached to mail ☛P194

3 Press



The video/i-motion is played.

1 Play volume :

Indicates the current volume.

2 Playing duration :

Indicates the current playing time/full duration in numeric and bar.

3 Playing status

 : in play  : in stop
 : in pause

4 File types

 : only image  : only sound
 : only text  : image + sound
 : image + text  : sound + text
 : image + sound + text

5 Enlargement/reduction

 : enlarged  : reduced

No icon :

Displayed at the same magnification

- Whether to enlarge or not can be set in Settings.
- In case *Size adjustment* is set to *Normal* in Settings, a confirmation message appears when trying to replay the video reduced. Press .

- The following operations are available while playing video/i-motion:

 : Pause/replay, Play from the beginning (after stopping)
 : Adjust volume  : Stop
 : Play at fast speed
 : Rewind and play
 : Return to the video/i-motion list

Setting a bookmark:

If you set a bookmark in a video/i-motion file, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to play from the bookmark when you select that video/i-motion to play from the list next time.

- In case of playing it by pressing  while in pause on the play screen, playing is started from the beginning even when a bookmark is set.
- The number of the bookmark to be set is only one in all the video/i-motion of FOMA terminal. If a bookmark is already set, it is discarded and the new bookmark is set.
- You cannot set in i-motion whose replay restriction is set. In addition, when playing from the phonebook registration screen, mail composition screen, or the setting screen for sound and display, a bookmark cannot be set and playing from a bookmark cannot be performed.

① During playback, at the position to set a bookmark ▶ Select *Yes*

- Playing continuously: 
- To cancel the bookmark:  after stopping the playback

Playing horizontally: while playing video/i-motion

- Each time you press, playing horizontally and vertically are switched.
- For video/i-motion with the ticker, switching is unavailable.

INFORMATION

When saving video/i-motion, acquisition of thumbnail images may not be available due to the effect of other functions. Such video/i-motion is displayed as  in thumbnail display.

When the replay restriction is set

A confirmation screen is displayed before playback starts. Replay restriction types and contents to display are as follows:

Restriction on the number of times

Status	Displayed messages
Playback counts remain	Available to replay x (x/all) time(s). Play?
Maximum number of plays reached	This data can no longer be replayed. Delete?

Restriction on expiration

Status	Displayed messages
Within expiration	Available to replay until year/month/day hour: minutes. Play?
After expiration	Replay period has expired. Delete?

Restriction on period

Status	Displayed messages
Within period	Available to replay from year/month/day hour: minutes to year/month/day hour: minutes. Play?
Before period	Replay period has not yet started.
After period	Replay period has expired. Delete?

- You can check remaining playback counts, replay expiration and playback period in View Detail Info.
- Even if you change the date and time, expiration time and period of restriction cannot be changed.

Setting video/i-motion to the standby display or phonebook data

- Video/i-motion without an image, i-motion whose replay restriction is set and i-motion whose image size is beyond 320 x 240 cannot be set as the standby display.
- Video/i-motion can be set for the phonebook, Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion) or incoming image when the image size is 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF) or 176 x 144 (QCIF). However, only the video/i-motion with only image can be set for the phonebook or incoming image.
- The video/i-motion for which *Available* is set for **Ring alert** and **Receive display** in detail information can be set as Movie ringtone and incoming image. However, the setting is unavailable for the following video/i-motion:
 - Video/i-motion files sent back to your terminal after transferred to a PC or another FOMA terminal using infrared communication or DoCoMo's data link software

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a video/i-motion file ▶

3 Select each item to set

Setting to the standby display: ▶

Select *Yes*

- If zooming is available for the video/i-motion, select *Yes(Same size)* to maintain the image size or select *Yes(Large size)* to enlarge it to the screen size.
- If the i- ppli standby display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it continuously.
- Playing the video/i-motion set as the standby display ▶P109

Registering as new phonebook data:

Updating the existing phonebook data:

▶ Select a party

Setting as Movie ringtone (ring alert):

▶ to

Setting as contact alert (call, mail):

① ▶ or

② Select a party from the phonebook

③ Check the content ▶

Setting as incoming image (voice call, videophone call) or image of the mail

reception result screen: ▶ to

INFORMATION

Some video/i-motion files may not be set as the standby display and other items.

Editing video/i-motion

You can edit video/i-motion saved in *i-motion*.

- The following video/i-motion can be edited:
 - The video shot with your terminal
 - The video/i-motion without file restriction or replay restriction except the video shot with your terminal
- Video/i-motion files registered by default cannot be edited. In addition, some video/i-motion cannot be edited depending on the file format.

Clipping a still image

Capture

You can specify any position while playing video/i-motion and clip as a still image (Capture).

- Tickers are not displayed in the captured still image.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Select a video/i-motion file

The selected video/i-motion is played.

3 at a desired position to capture

- Retrying the capturing:  ▶ Select *Yes*

4 Check the image ▶ Press

The still image is captured and saved in the *Camera* folder of *My Picture*.

- Capturing continuously:  ▶ Repeat Step 3 to 4

Sending mail with the captured still image attached:

The captured still image is saved in the *Camera* folder in *My Picture* and the mail composition screen with the still image attached is displayed.

- If the file size of still image is below 90 Kbytes, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to paste in the text field. Select *Yes* to paste in the mail message and select *No* to attach to mail.

Clipping a part of video/i-motion

Custom Edit

You can clip a part of video/i-motion from the beginning to the desired position.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a video/i-motion file ▶

The custom edit mode is activated and  is displayed.

- When tickers are inserted in video/i-motion, a screen indicating that tickers may be deleted is displayed. Select *Yes* to activate the custom edit mode. In this case, tickers may be deleted depending on the clipping position.

3 (start position) ▶ at the position ending the clipping (end position)



Current file size/Maximum file size

- Press  to retry the operation after pressing  (start position). Press  to cancel clipping.
- If you have played until the end without pressing , clipping is terminated automatically.
- In case the size of video/i-motion file exceeds 2038 Kbytes, clipping ends automatically when reaching 2038 Kbytes regardless of the limit size.

Setting the limit of clipping size:

- This setting is available only when the original file size is larger than 500 Kbytes.

① in the screen before pressing (start position)

② Select *Msg attachment S (500 Kbytes)*, *Msg attachment L (2038 Kbytes)* or *No settings (the size of the original file)*

- When the file size during clipping has reached the set clipping size, clipping ends automatically.
- When the original size of file exceeds 2038 Kbytes, *No settings* is not available.

4 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) ▶ Press



The clipped video/i-motion is saved as new data in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

Playing video/i-motion:

Sending mail with video/i-motion attached:



The clipped video/i-motion is saved and the mail composition screen with the video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail
 - ▶ P194

Clipping by specifying the file size Edit by Size

You can clip a part of video/i-motion from the beginning up to the specified file size.

- The file size which you can specify is from 10 Kbytes to 2038 Kbytes. However, the maximum size varies depending on the video/i-motion.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a video/i-motion file ▶



- When tickers are inserted in video/i-motion, a screen indicating that tickers may be deleted is displayed. Select *Yes* to activate the edit by size mode. In this case, tickers may be deleted depending on the clipping position.

3 Enter the size to clip

Settings to the size that can be attached to mail:  ▶ **Select *Msg attachment S* (500 Kbytes) or *Msg attachment L* (2038 Kbytes)**

- This setting is available only when the original file size is larger than 500 Kbytes.

4 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) ▶ Press



The clipped video/i-motion is saved as new data in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

Playing video/i-motion: 

Sending mail with video/i-motion attached:



The clipped video/i-motion is saved and the mail composition screen with the video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail
▶P194

Inserting tickers Edit Ticker

- The number of tickers that can be inserted differs depending on video/i-motion (up to 10).
- Video/i-motion with inserted tickers cannot be set for Movie ringtone.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a video/i-motion file ▶



- If tickers are already inserted, a confirmation screen asking whether to delete and edit tickers is displayed. If *Yes* is selected, all tickers inserted already are deleted.

Deleting tickers:     ▶

Select *Yes*

All tickers inserted are deleted. Go to Step 9.

3 Select each item to set

Time interval to show :

Set to *User specified* to specify a desired position to insert the ticker.

Specify the number of tickers when setting to *Regular interval*. Tickers of the number specified are inserted at regular intervals within video/i-motion replay duration.

Tickers :

Enters the number of tickers (1 to 10) when setting *Time interval to show* to *Regular interval*.

4

- When *Time interval to show* is set to *User specified*, a confirmation message appears and  is displayed.
- If *Regular interval* has been set for *Time interval to show*, go to Step 7.

5 to start the replay ▶ at the ticker insertion position

Playing is not interrupted. Each time you press

, the inserting position of tickers is set.

- When replay is started, the first inserting position is set at the beginning.
- When playback of a video/i-motion file ends or you have set a total of 10 tickers (including one ticker at the beginning), the settings are automatically ended.
- Ending the insertion position setting halfway:



- To display one ticker from the beginning to the end:  to start the replay ▶ 

6 Select *Yes*

7 Select the ticker entry field ▶ Enter characters (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters)

Modifying tickers:

- 1 Highlight a ticker ▶ 
- 2 Select each item to set ▶ 

Ticker 1 to 10 :

Displays characters entered on the ticker edit screen. You can enter characters.

Font color :

Sets the text color. When it is set to *Default*, white is set.

- The font color has no effect on pictograms.

Background color :

Sets the background color of tickers. When it is set to *Default*, black is set.

Scroll :

- Setting *Scroll in* gradually bring characters into view.
- Setting *Scroll out* gradually sends characters out of view.
- Setting *Scroll in & out* brings into view characters and sends them out of view.

Scroll direction :

Sets the scroll direction when set to other than *None* in *Scroll*.

Word alignment :

Sets the display position of characters.

Font size :

Sets the size of characters.

Under line :

Sets whether to underline the characters.

Blink :

Sets whether to blink the characters.

8

- In case that the file size of video/i-motion without ticker is 500 Kbytes or less, if the file size of video/i-motion with ticker exceeds 500 Kbytes, a message appears meaning that the *Msg attachment S* size has been exceeded. Press .

9 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) ▶ Press



The video/i-motion with tickers is saved as new data in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

Playing video/i-motion: 

Sending mail with video/i-motion attached:



The video/i-motion with tickers is saved and the mail composition screen with video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail
▶ P194

Setting the operating conditions of video/i-motion Settings

Default View thumbnails: Yes
Size adjustment: Normal
Repeat play: ON Backlight: Always on
Volume: Level13

1   ▶  

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press

View thumbnails :

The thumbnails appear when setting to *Yes*, and the title display appears when setting to *No*.

Size adjustment :

If *Zoom* is set, video/i-motion is enlarged/reduced and displayed with aspect ratio of the image held in accordance with display area when the display area and the size of video/i-motion to play are unsuitable. Setting *Normal* does not zoom in/out. However, when video/i-motion with a size larger than the display area is played, it is reduced to fit the area by maintaining the aspect ratio.

Repeat play :

Sets whether to repeat play while playing an album.

Backlight :

When set to *Terminal settings*, it depends on *Display Light Time (Normal use)* in Display Light Setting.

Volume :

Sets the sound volume during play.

INFORMATION

The contents of the setting for *Backlight* is also reflected on *Display Light Time (i-motion)* in Display Light Setting
▶ P116.

Chara-den

Chara-den is a character to display on the other party's screen when you use the videophone. By pressing dial keys during a videophone call, you can move the character and make it express a feeling casually. In addition, you can set Chara-den to the standby display and have Chara-den make specific actions on standby or for missed calls. The still image and video of Chara-den being displayed can be shot and saved.

- Some Chara-den can move their mouths in time with the sounds from the microphone.
- Action of Chara-den consists of Switched to full motion mode (Action mode) and Switched to semi-motion mode (Action of part mode). Some Chara-den have only either of them or no action.



Action: 喜び (Joy)



Action: ハート (Heart)

Menu 56

Displaying Chara-den

Chara-den

- Chara-den set by default ◀P350

1 Select a folder

i-mode :

Chara-den downloaded in i-mode

Preinstalled :

Chara-den preinstalled by default

Folder :

Chara-den moved from other folders

- Not displayed by default. To create ◀P268

2 Highlight a Chara-den image



Chara-den list

1 Originated

: i-mode

: Preinstalled

2 File restriction

➔ (gray): With file restriction

- To change display names and other items ◀P270

Making a videophone call using Chara-den:

① Highlight a Chara-den image ▶

② Enter the phone number ▶

- Phone number can be entered from the phonebook by pressing .
- After entering the phone number, press to set the conditions and make a videophone call. ◀P54

Setting Chara-den to the videophone substitute image: Highlight a Chara-den image ▶

- You can also set by holding down for over a second on the Chara-den display screen.

Setting Chara-den to the standby display:

① Highlight a Chara-den image ▶

② Set the type of action and the interval for action ▶

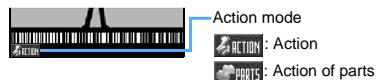
- For details, follow Step ② to ③ in "Setting the action of Chara-den". ◀P109

③ Select Yes(Same size) or Yes(Large size)

- If the i- ppli standby display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it continuously.

3 Press

The Chara-den image is displayed.



- Pressing a dial key performs action in accordance with the number.
- Stopping the action:

Switching between large size and same size display: for large size or for same size

- If a comment is added to a Chara-den image, switch the display to the same size to show the comment.

Switching Chara-den images:

① ▶ Select a folder

② Select a Chara-den image

Displaying the action list:

The key numbers corresponding to the actions available in the current action mode are displayed together with descriptions of the actions.

- Selecting an action activates the Chara-den.
- Highlight an action and press to confirm the details.

Switching between Switched to full motion mode (Action mode) and Switched to semi-motion mode (Action of part mode):
 (for over a second)

INFORMATION

Chara-den cannot be edited or saved by attaching mail or data transfer out of FOMA terminal.

Recording Chara-den

Record Chara-den

- Still images and videos shot are saved in the same file format as still images and videos shot with the camera. Image file saving format ▶ P146

-   ▶ Select a folder
-  Highlight a Chara-den image ▶ 
-  to switch the recording types



Recording type



Video & Voice :

Records Chara-den with sounds from the microphone. For Chara-den that reacts with sounds from the microphone, the mouth in the image moves in time with the sounds.



Only video (w/mic) :

Records only the image. The microphone is only valid for Chara-den that reacts with the sounds and moves its mouth in time with the sounds from the microphone. Sounds are not recorded.



Only video (w/o mic) :

Records only the image. Microphone becomes invalid.



Still image :

Shoots still images

- The quality and size restriction of video can be changed by the Still Image Setting/Video Setting of Record Chara-den.

Switching Chara-den images:

   ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a Chara-den image

4 Execute an action to shoot ▶ Press

In case of shooting still images, the shutter sound is heard and the still image is saved. In case of recording videos, the shutter sound is heard and the shooting is started. Recording is stopped by pressing  or if the size of video file exceeds the limit and the video is saved after the shutter sound is heard.

- The shot still images and recorded video are saved in the *Camera* folder of i-motion.
- Press  during recording video to pause. Press  to restart recording.
- Actions can be executed during recording the video as well.

When Auto save is set to No in Still Image Setting or Video Setting:

A confirmation screen appears. The following operations are available on the confirmation screen:

-  : Save the still image/video
-  : Cancel (Delete the still image/video without saving)
-  : Compose mail
-  : Replay (only video)

Checking the saved still image/video

immediately:  ▶ Select the still image/video

INFORMATION

When there is not enough space to save, or you have exceeded the maximum number, delete unnecessary image/video files following the instruction on the screen.

Setting the operation of still image/video recording

Still Image Setting/Video Setting

Default

Still Image Settings

Quality: Standard Shutter sound: Shutter sound1

Rec.File Restriction: File unrestricted

Auto save: Yes

Display size: Large

Set lighting: Terminal settings

Video Settings

Quality: STD

Size restriction: Msg attach:Small

Shutter sound: Shutter sound1

Rec.File Restriction: File unrestricted

Auto save: Yes

Display size: Large Set lighting: Terminal settings

-   on the Chara-den recording screen

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press

Quality (Still Image Setting) :

Set the quality of still images to shoot. Higher quality requires a larger size of still image files.

Quality (Video Setting) :

Set the quality of video to shoot. Higher quality requires a larger size of video files.

Size restriction (Video Setting only) :

Set the size restrictions of the video to record. When the size of video file exceeds the limit while recording, recording is automatically stopped.

Shutter sound :

Select the shutter sound from shutter sounds 1 to 5.

Rec.File Restriction :

Set whether to restrict the still image/video you send to another mobile phone as mail attachment from being sent to others.

- Downloaded Chara-den with *File restricted* preset cannot be set to *File unrestricted*.

Auto save :

When *Auto save* is set to *Yes*, the shot still image/video is automatically saved. When setting *No*, a confirmation screen is displayed after recording.

Display size :

Specify whether to enlarge Chara-den or to display in the same size.

- The setting takes effect the next time the recording screen is displayed.

Set lighting :

If you set *Terminal settings*, it depends on *Display Light Time (Normal use)* in Display Light Setting. ◀P116

INFORMATION

If you shoot a still image/video of Chara-den for which *File restricted* is set with *Rec.File Restriction* of detail information, the still image/video cannot be edited, transferred or attached to mail (except for the case where you set *File restricted* with your FOMA terminal).

Setting the operating conditions of Chara-den

Settings

Default Display size: Large
Set lighting: Terminal settings

1 ▶

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press

Display size :

Specifies whether to enlarge Chara-den or to display in the same size.

Set lighting :

If you set *Terminal settings*, the display light operation depends on *Display Light Time (Normal use)* in Display Light Setting. ◀P116

Menu 57

Displaying Machi-chara

Machi-chara

- Machi-chara set by default ◀P350

1 ▶ Select a folder

-  **i-mode:**
Machi-chara downloaded in i-mode
-  **Preinstalled:**
Machi-chara preinstalled by default
-  **Folder:**
Machi-chara moved from another folder
 - Not displayed by default. To create ◀P268

2 Select Machi-chara

Thumbnail display



Title display



© NTT DoCoMo/dentsu

Machi-chara list

1 Originated

 : i-mode  : Preinstalled

2 File restriction

▶ (gray): With file restriction

- To switch between thumbnail and title displays:



- For the thumbnail display, Machi-chara is displayed differently depending on the condition: by  (upper half is gray) if part of its data is downloaded; by  if it has no thumbnail images; and by  if the UIM operation restriction is set.
- To change display names 

Setting Machi-chara to the standby display: Highlight Machi-chara  

- Note that you cannot set Machi-chara if part of its data has been downloaded.
- If the display setting of Machi-chara Setting is *OFF*, it is changed to *ON*.
- To cancel:  
 - The display setting of Machi-chara Setting is changed to *OFF*.

Resetting the elapsed time for Machi-chara: Highlight Machi-chara   

Select Yes

The elapsed time information recorded for Machi-chara is reset and the download state returns.

- Note that this is not applicable to Machi-chara if part of its data has been downloaded.

3 Press 

Machi-chara is displayed.

- Press  to display the previous or next item of Machi-chara.
- If you select any Machi-chara that has downloaded part of the data, a confirmation appears asking you whether to download the remaining data. If you select *Yes*, downloading starts.

Setting the operating conditions of Machi-chara

Settings

Sets the display format for the Machi-chara list. The thumbnail display appears when *Display 16 icons* is selected and the title display appears when *List view* is selected.

- 1**       **Press**  or 

Playing melodies

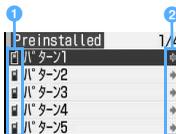
Melody

Play melodies saved in *Melody* of Data Box in FOMA terminal.

1    **Select a folder**

-  *i-mode* :
Melodies acquired in i-mode or i-mode Mail
-  *Preinstalled* :
Melodies preinstalled in FOMA terminal
-  *Mail attach melody* :
Melodies for attaching to mail, which are preset by default
-  *Data transfer* :
Melodies read by Bar Code Reader or melodies received via data communication
-  *Album* :
Melodies moved from other folders
 - Not displayed by default. To create 

2 Highlight a melody



Melody list

1 Originated

-  : i-mode
-  : Preinstalled
-  : Data transfer

2 File restriction

-  (blue) : Without file restriction
-  (gray) : With file restriction

- To change display names and other items 

Sending mail with melodies attached:

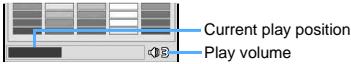
Highlight a melody  

The mail composition screen with the melody attached is displayed.

- If the receiving side is other than the following models, the received melody may not be played properly:
D701i, D701iWM, D702i, D702iBCL, D702iF, D703i, D800iDS, D851iWM, D901i, D901iS, D902i, D902iS and D903i
- Melodies that can be attached to mail 

3 Press

The melody is played.



- The following operations are available while playing a melody:

 : Adjust volume

 : Play the previous/next melody

 /  : Return to the melody list

Setting melodies as ring alert

- Melodies in the *Mail attach melody* folder cannot be set as the ring alert.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a melody ▶

3 Select the type of ring alert

Setting as ring alert for voice call, mail, chat mail, Message R/F or videophone:

 to 

Setting as contact alert (call, mail):

①  or  ▶ Select a party from the phonebook

② Check the content ▶ 

Setting the operating conditions of melodies

Settings

Default Volume: Level 3
Lighting: ON
Lighting pattern: Flash
Vibrate: OFF
Play position: Play all
Play background: Standard

1 ▶

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press

Volume :

Set the volume in playing melodies.

Lighting :

Set whether to light the keys during playing of a melody. When you set *OFF*, *Lighting pattern* cannot be set.

Lighting pattern :

Set the lighting pattern of keys during playing of a melody.

Vibrate :

Set the vibrator pattern in playing melodies.

Play position :

Specify whether to play the whole (*Play all*) or part (*Play portion*) of the melody.

Play background :

Set the image to be displayed on the screen for playing melodies. To set an image in *My Picture*, set to *Select* and select an image.

INFORMATION

Even if *Play portion* is set for *Play position*, partial playing may not be performed for some melodies.

Using the album

For management of each data, create albums (folders) in *My Picture*, *i-motion*, *Melody*, *My Document*, *Chara-den*, *Machi-chara* or *Other* in Data Box of FOMA terminal and sort out the data. The album data in *i-motion* and *Melody* can be replayed at one time.

- In *My Document*, *Chara-den*, *Machi-chara* or *Other*, the album is referred to as "folder".

Creating albums

- You can create up to 100 albums in *My Picture* and up to 10 albums respectively in *i-motion*, *Melody*, *My Document*, *Chara-den*, *Machi-chara* and *Other*.

Example Creating the album in *My Picture*

1

2

Changing the album name: Highlight the album ▶  

Deleting albums:

When deleting the album, the data in the album are also deleted.

① **Highlight the album** ▶  

- When data is saved in the album to delete, enter the terminal security code.

② **Select Yes**

3 Enter the album name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) ▶ Press

- For *Chara-den* or *Machi-chara*, up to 10 one- or two-byte characters can be entered.

INFORMATION

In the folder list of *i-motion/Melody*, press **Menu** and select **Create album, Rename album or Delete album**.

In the folder list of *My Document, Chara-den, Machi-chara* or *Other* press **Menu** and select **Create folder, Rename folder or Delete folder**.

The fixed folder registered by default cannot be renamed or deleted.

The name of **マイフォルダ**(My folder) registered in *Other* by default can be changed and deleted. If, however, the list contains a single folder, you cannot delete the folder.

Moving/copying data to the album

Moving data to the album

You can move data in the fixed folder to an album or move it from album to album.

- Data can be moved from each folder of *My Picture* to the *Deco-mail picture* folder.
- Data saved in the *Preinstalled, Deco-mail pict* or *Mail attach melody* folder cannot be moved.

Example Moving data in *My Picture*

- 1 **Select a folder**
- 2 **Highlight data** ▶ **Menu** **5** **1** **1**
Moving selected items: **Menu** **5** **1** **2**
▶ **Select data** ▶ **Menu**
Moving all the data in folder:
Menu **5** **1** **3**
- 3 **Select the destination album** ▶ **Select Yes**

INFORMATION

In the video/*i-motion* list, press **Menu** and select **Move/Copy Move to album One item, Selected items or All items**.

In the melody list, press **Menu** and select **Move Move to album One item, Selected items or All items**.

In the PDF data list, press **Menu** and select **Move/Copy Move to folder One item, Selected items or All items**.

In the Chara-den or Machi-chara list, press **Menu** and select **Move One item, Selected items or All items**.

In the *Others* document list, press **Menu** and select **Move Move to folder One item, Selected items or All items**.

Returning album data to the fixed folder

- Operation of returning data to the fixed folder is unavailable for the data in *Chara-den, Machi-chara*, or documents in *Other*.

Example Returning album data in *My Picture* to the fixed folder

- 1 **Select an album**
- 2 **Highlight data** ▶ **Menu** **5** **2** **1**
Returning selected items:
Menu **5** **2** **2** ▶ **Select data** ▶ **Menu**
Returning all the data in the album:
Menu **5** **2** **3**
- 3 **Select Yes**

INFORMATION

In the video/*i-motion* list or PDF data list, press **Menu** and select **Move/Copy Return to folder or Restore to folder One item, Selected items or All items**.

In the melody list, press **Menu** and select **Move Restore to folder One item, Selected items or All items**.

Preinstalled images registered in the *Deco-mail picture* folder are moved to the *i-mode* folder by returning data to the fixed folder.

Copying data

- The following data cannot be copied:
 - Created animation, item images, images in the *Preinstalled* folder in *My Picture*
 - Video/*i-motion* whose replay restriction is set or video/*i-motion* downloaded from sites or mails which can be set as the ring alert
 - Melody, Chara-den, Machi-chara, documents in *Other*
 - Data set to *File restricted* in file restriction
- Note that the data whose file restriction is set to *File restricted* with FOMA terminal and data in the *Data transfer* folder are excluded.

Example Copying data in *My Picture*

- 1 **Select a folder**
- 2 **Highlight data** ▶ Press **Menu** **5** **3**
The copied data are saved in the same folder as the original data.

INFORMATION

In the video/*i-motion* list or PDF data list, press **Menu** and select **Move/Copy Copy**.

If data copied in the album is returned to the fixed folder, it moves the original data to the same fixed folder.

Playing the entire album data

You can play i-motion or melody data in an album continuously.

- The fixed folder data registered by default cannot be played.
- i-motion for which replay restrictions are set cannot be played.

1 for i-motion, or for Melody

2 Highlight an album

- The following operations are available while the video/i-motion album is played:

: Pause/replay : Adjust volume

/ : Play the previous or next data item

: Stop : Return to the folder list

- The following operations are available while the melody album is played:

: Adjust volume

: Play the previous/next melody

/ : Return to the folder list

Checking/editing detail information of the data

View/Edit Detail Info

- To reference or change the detail information about music data in *Music* P289

Checking detail information

Example Displaying the image detail information

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight an image ▶ Press

- To scroll by pages: or
- To change detail information:

INFORMATION

In the video/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list, Chara-den list, Machi-chara list or document list of *Other*, press and select *Detail info* *View*.

Note that you cannot display Machi-chara if part of its data has been downloaded.

Changing detail information

Example Changing the image detail information

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight an image ▶

3 Select each item to set ▶ Press

INFORMATION

In the video/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list, Chara-den list, Machi-chara list or document list of *Other*, press and select *Detail info* *Edit*.

Note that you cannot change Machi-chara if part of its data has been downloaded.

For video/i-motion, melody, Chara-den and Machi-chara, selecting *Back to original* returns the display name to the original title preset.

Displayed items and their availability

- Depending on the data, some items cannot be changed even when shown as changeable in the list.

: Changeable : Displayed only : Not displayed

Displayed item	Image	Video/ i-motion	Melody	PDF data	Chara-den	Machi-chara	Document in <i>Other</i>
<i>Display name</i>							
<i>Title (Original)/ Original title</i>	-			-			-
<i>File name</i>							
<i>Type</i>		-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Creator</i>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Copyright</i>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Description</i>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>File restriction</i>							
<i>Rec. file restriction</i>	-	-	-	-		-	-
<i>Format/File format</i>					-	-	
<i>Sound</i>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Display size</i>				-		-	-
<i>File size</i>							
<i>Msg attach size</i>		-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Playing time</i>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Saved date & time</i>							
<i>Use as frame</i>		-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Use as stamp</i>		-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Comment</i>		-	-	-		-	-
<i>Ring alert</i>		-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Receive display</i>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Replay restriction</i>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Originated</i>							

Descriptions of displayed items

Display name :

Title to be displayed on FOMA terminal (Up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte are available except for melody, and up to 50 one- or 25 two-byte characters are available for melody when changing).

Title(Original) :

Original title preset in data

File name :

File name displayed when attaching data to mail (up to 36 one-byte alphanumeric characters, ".", "-", or "_" are available when changing).

- "." cannot be used for the first character of the file name.

Type : Type of image

Creator :

Creator's name (up to 256 characters regardless of one- or two-byte are available when changing)

- The name registered in Own Number appears in **Creator** when you have recorded video using your FOMA terminal. If the name is not registered in Own Number, **Creator** is not set.

Copyright :

The name of the author and the release date of the production (up to 256 characters regardless of one- or two-byte are available when changing)

Description :

Description of video/i-motion (up to 256 characters regardless of one- or two-byte are available when changing)

File restriction :

When you send data to the other party's mobile phone via mail attachment, you can set whether to restrict sending data to other mobile phones from the received party's mobile phone.

- i-motion/melodies downloaded from sites, etc. cannot be changed.

Rec. file restriction :

Whether or not to set file restriction for the still image/video shot with Record Chara-den

Format/File format :

File type ("---" for Flash movie)

Sound :

Sound data type

- AAC is displayed when the sound data type is the HE-AAC or Enhanced aacPlus format.

Display size :

Display size of data (dot) (not displayed for Flash movie)

File size(Bytes) : The file size of data

Msg attach size (Bytes) :

File size suitable for attaching to i-mode Mail

- Displayed only when file attachment is possible.

Playing time :

Playing time of data

Saved date & time :

Date and time when data was saved

Use as frame :

Classification whether the image can be pasted as frame image

- Images larger than 352 x 288, images merged with item images, Animation, Created animation or Flash movie cannot be set to **Yes**.

Use as stamp :

Classification whether the image can be pasted as stamp image

- Images larger than 240 x 320, images merged with item images, Animation, Created animation or Flash movie cannot be set to **Yes**.

Comment :

Description of data (Up to 100 characters regardless of one- or two-byte are available when changing)

Ring alert :

Classification whether the video/i-motion can be set to ring alert

Receive display :

Classification whether the video/i-motion can be set to incoming image

Replay restriction :

Replay restrictions on video/i-motion

Originated :

Origination of data

INFORMATION

Even if **Yes** is set for **Use as frame** or **Use as stamp** in the image detail information, images are saved in the original folder and are not displayed in the **Item** folder.

Ring alert is always set to **Available** for the video recorded with the recording type of **Video + Voice** set with your FOMA terminal, the sound recorded via Sound Recorder or the video/sound clipped from the same video/sound. However, for the video with the display size of 320 x 240 or the video/sound with an inserted ticker, **Ring alert** is set to **Unavailable**.

Deleting data

- The data saved in the *Preinstalled* folder of *My Picture*, *i-motion*, *Melody* or *My Document* or in the *Mail attach melody* folder of *Melody* cannot be deleted.
- To delete music data in *Music* ●P289

Example Deleting data in *My Picture*

- 1   ▶ Select a folder
- 2 Highlight the data ▶   
Deleting selected items:    ▶
Select the data ▶ 
Deleting all the data in a folder:
   ▶ Enter the terminal security code

3 Select Yes

INFORMATION

In the video/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list, Chara-den list, Machi-chara list or document list of *Other*, press  and select *Delete* One item, Selected items or All items.

If data set for the standby display or ring alert are deleted, each setting returns to the default. When data set to the phonebook are deleted, the operation follows the settings of Sound Setting or settings for outgoing/incoming images.

If you delete Created animation, the original images composing Created animation are also deleted.

If the Chara-den, Machi-chara, Deco-mail pictures, Deco-mail pictograms and frames registered by default are deleted, they can be downloaded from the i-mode site My D-style. ●P347

Sorting data

Sort

You can change the order of data of the list screen.

- To sort music data in *Music* ●P289

 **Default** By: Saved date & time
Order: Descending

Example Sorting data in *My Picture*

- 1   ▶ Select a folder
- 2  
- 3 Select each item to set ▶ Press 
By : Sets the sorting method.
Order : Sets the sorting order of data.

INFORMATION

In the video/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list, Chara-den list, Machi-chara list or document list of *Other*, press  and select *Sort*.

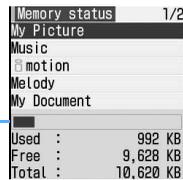
If one-byte and two-byte characters are mixed in the display name, the sorted result may not correspond to Japanese syllabary.

Checking the memory status of FOMA terminal

Memory Status

For each item of data, the memory status for Data Box of FOMA terminal and the data storage memory of i- ppli is displayed.

- 1      ▶ Highlight an item



Memory status	1/2
My Picture	
Music	
i-motion	
Melody	
My Document	
Used :	992 KB
Free :	9,628 KB
Total :	10,620 KB

Memory usage rate

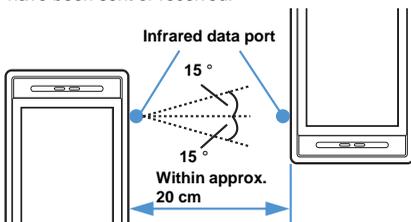
About infrared communication

You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals, mobile phones or PCs provided with an infrared communication function. Also, by using the i- ppli compatible with infrared communication, you can link to devices having an infrared communication function.

- Infrared communication is not available while All Lock, PIM Lock or Self Mode is on.
- Infrared communication and USB connection cannot be performed at the same time.
- Data prohibited from outputting from FOMA terminal cannot be sent/received. Note that the data whose file restriction is set to *File restricted* with the same terminal and data in the *Data transfer* folder are excluded.
- During infrared communication,  and  are displayed on the top of the screen, and the terminal is in data transfer mode (the same status as outside the service area), so phone calls, i-mode connection and data communication are disabled and you cannot switch to other functions by pressing . Also, you cannot use infrared communication during a call, i-mode or data communication because you cannot use the data transfer mode.
- The infrared communication function of FOMA terminal conforms to IrMC 1.1.
- Even if the terminal of the other party conforms to IrMC 1.1, some data may not be sent/received depending on the data type.
- The data including pictograms may not be displayed correctly when sent to other than i-mode terminals. Even when sending to i-mode terminals, the data including pictogram 2 may not be displayed correctly depending on receiving terminals.

Using infrared communication

The maximum communication range is about 20 cm and the angle is within 15 degrees from the center. Keep FOMA terminal pointing at the remote device's infrared data port and do not move it until all the data have been sent or received.



- Infrared communication may not be performed properly in areas of direct sunlight or directly under fluorescent lights.

Sending data by infrared communication

Send Ir Data

You can send data by selecting each item at a time or by sending all items of the specified function data at once. The following data are available for sending:

Data type	Remarks
Phonebook *1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When sending one item, a phonebook entry for which Secret Attribute is set can be sent only when Secret Mode is on. • Own Number data are also sent when sending all is performed. • Phonebook data cannot be sent when Keypad Dial Lock is on. • In <i>Ph.book image sending</i> of Data Exchange Setting, you can set whether to send still images saved in the phonebook data together when sending all. • Images saved in the phonebook data may not be received depending on the receiving device. • The sorting order of the group may not be reflected on the receiving device.
Schedule *1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When sending one item, a schedule entry for which Secret Attribute is set can be sent only when Secret Mode is on. • Date and Time Setting is required.
Received mail *1 Sent mail *1 Unsent mail *1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Attached data in the text (link items that activate i- ppli) are deleted. • Mail exceeding 10,000 bytes may fail to be sent correctly, depending on the receiving device. • Any attachment that has not been obtained yet will not be sent. • If the mail size exceeds 100 Kbytes, the attachment corresponding to the excess will not be sent.
Note *1	—
Bookmark (i-mode/Full Browser) *1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Folder settings may not be reflected depending on the receiving device. • When sending all, bookmarks are sent from the end of the list.
Image	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A display name of up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters can be sent. Characters that exceed the maximum number will be deleted. • Data of over 500 Kbytes cannot be sent.
Video/i-motion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Data of over 500 Kbytes cannot be sent.

Data type	Remarks
Melody	• A title of up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters can be sent.
PDF data	• PDF data which is over 512 Kbytes*2 or downloaded partially cannot be sent.
Own Number	• Images may not be received depending on the receiving device. • Phonebook data cannot be sent when Keypad Dial Lock is on.

*1 Sending all is enabled.

*2 Even when the file size displayed in the detail information exceeds 512 Kbytes, sending is available in case the file size excluding the data of i-mode bookmarks or marks is within 512 Kbytes.

- Data may not be transferred correctly when communication is performed with the terminals other than D703i or the infrared communication devices. Items that cannot be saved by the receiver side are discarded.
- Because of the difference in the data size limit, the receiver may not save images, video/i-motion or melodies that have been sent to FOMA terminal.

Sending single data item

Example Sending a phonebook entry

- 1 Make FOMA terminal of the other party ready to receive**
- 2 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight the phonebook data to send ▶**   
- 3 Select Yes**
 - To cancel sending data: 

INFORMATION

In the bookmark list, received mail list, sent mail list, unsent mail list or note list, press  and select *Send Ir data* *Send*.

On the schedule day view screen or memo list, press  and select *Infrared* *Send Ir data*.

In the image list, video/i-motion list, melody list or PDF data list, press  and select *Send Ir data*.

On the *Own number* screen, press . The name, reading, first phone number and first mail address are sent. To send all items, show the details screen and press , and then select *Send own number*.

Sending all data items

You can send all the data of phonebook, schedule, mail, note and bookmark.

- To send all the data, the same authentication password must be entered both by the sender and receiver. Decide a 4-digit authentication password from 0000 to 9999 in advance.

- 1 Make FOMA terminal of the other party ready to receive**
- 2**    
- 3 Select the data type ▶ Enter the terminal security code**
- 4 Enter the authentication password ▶ Select Yes**
 - To cancel sending data: 

INFORMATION

In the phonebook list or note list, press  and then select *Send Ir data* *Send all*.

In the bookmark list, received mail list, sent mail list or unsent mail list, press  and select *Send all Ir data* or *Send Ir all data*.

On the schedule calendar screen or day view screen, press  and select *Infrared* *Send all Ir data*. When all the data items are sent, the order of data may change in receiver's side.

When pressing     and selecting *Bookmarks*, both the i-mode Bookmark and Full Browser Bookmark data are sent all. In case of operating from the bookmark list of i-mode or Full Browser, the i-mode Bookmark or Full Browser Bookmark data are sent all respectively.

Receiving data by infrared communication

Receive Ir Data

You can receive data by selecting each item to receive one at a time or by receiving all items of the specified function data at once. Received data are saved directly in FOMA terminal, or are saved in FOMA terminal after the data are saved temporarily in *INBOX* of Receive Ir Data and checked. The following data are available for receiving:

Data type	Storage after receiving
Phonebook*1	Phonebook
Schedule*1	Scheduler
Received mail*1	<i>Inbox</i>

Data type	Storage after receiving
Sent mail*1	Outbox
Unsent mail*1	Unsent messages
Note*1	Notepad
Bookmark (i-mode/Full Browser)*1	Bookmark of i-mode/Full Browser
Image	Data transfer folder of My Picture*2
Video/i-motion	Data transfer folder of i-motion
Melody	Data transfer folder of Melody
PDF data	Data transfer folder of My Document
Own Number	Phonebook

*1 Receiving all is enabled.

*2 Images that can be used as Deco-mail pictograms are saved in the *Deco-mail pict* folder.

- Received data are saved in order as follows:
 - Phonebook data and Own Number data are saved in the smallest free phonebook No.
 - Schedules and mails are saved in order of date/time.
 - Notes, images, video/i-motion, melodies and PDF data are added in accordance with the sort settings.
 - Bookmarks are added to the top of the list.
- If you receive all phonebook items, Own Number data except your phone number is overwritten.
- Phonebook data and Own Number data cannot be received when Keypad Dial Lock is set.
- For precautions of saving data, refer to INFORMATION in "Saving received data". ◀P276

Receiving single data item

- You cannot receive data that exceed 512 Kbytes.

1     

The receive method selection screen appears.

2  or 

Confirm & save :

Received data are saved temporarily in INBOX. Cannot be selected if INBOX has no free space. After receiving is finished, the INBOX data list appears.

Save :

Received data is saved in FOMA terminal. After receiving is finished, the receive method selection screen reappears without displaying INBOX.

3 **Select Yes**

Receiving standby condition is activated.

4 **Send a single data item on the sender side**

When *Confirm & save* is selected in Step 2, the INBOX screen appears after receiving data.

For saving method of data, follow the procedure from Step 2 of "Saving received data".

When *Save* is selected, the receive method selection screen reappears after receiving data.

- To cancel receiving data: 

Receiving all data items

You can receive all the data of phonebook, schedule, mail, note and bookmark.

- To receive all the data, the same authentication password must be entered both by the receiver and sender. Decide a 4-digit authentication password from 0000 to 9999 in advance.

1     

The Select All Recv Method screen appears.

2  or 

Confirm & save :

Received data are saved temporarily in INBOX. Cannot be selected if INBOX has no free space. After receiving the data, the INBOX data list is displayed. Add or Overwrite can be selected when saving from INBOX.

- If you select *Confirm & save*, go to Step 4.

Overwrite :

Received data is overwritten and saved in FOMA terminal. After receiving is finished, the receive method selection screen reappears without displaying INBOX.

- Note that the original data in FOMA terminal are all deleted by overwriting and replaced by new data.

3 **Select Yes** ▶ Enter the terminal security code

4 **Enter the authentication password** ▶
Select Yes

Receiving standby condition is activated.

5 **Send all data items on the sender side**

When selecting *Confirm & save* in Step 2, the INBOX screen appears after receiving is finished. For saving method of data, follow the procedure from Step 2 of "Saving received data".

When selecting *Overwrite*, the receive method selection screen reappears after reception.

- To cancel receiving data: 

INFORMATION

It may take time to receive the data of large capacity or a large number.

Saving received data

You can save data stored in *INBOX* temporarily to FOMA terminal.

- If *Confirm & save* is selected when receiving a single data item, or *Overwrite* is selected when receiving all the data items, the INBOX screen appears automatically after finishing receiving.
- The data saved in FOMA terminal are deleted from *INBOX*.

1    

2 Select the data

 /  : Single item/multiple items of phonebook data

 /  /  :
Single item of i-mode Bookmark data/
Full Browser Bookmark data/multiple
items of Bookmark data

 /  : Single item/multiple items of mail data

 /  : Single item/multiple items of schedule data

 /  : Single item/multiple items of notes

 : Image

 : Video/i-motion

 : Melody

 : PDF data

Deleting one item: Highlight the data ▶

  ▶ **Select Yes**

Deleting all items:   ▶ **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ **Select Yes**

3 Select Yes

When selecting multiple items:

① **Enter the terminal security code**

② **Select Add to add data, or select**

Overwrite to overwrite data

- Note that the original data in FOMA terminal are all deleted by selecting *Overwrite* and replaced by new data.

INFORMATION

Depending on the size of data to save, the maximum number of items that can be saved/registered in FOMA terminal may be fewer.

ToDo data (a list function data to manage business) cannot be saved on D703i. When receiving all items of ToDo data and schedule data at once from the model other than D703i, only the schedule data is saved. Note that when all items of only ToDo data are received, all the schedule data registered in D703i are deleted if you select to overwrite the received data.

When the data received all at once are saved by overwriting, the protected data in FOMA terminal are also deleted.

When you select *Overwrite* to save multiple items of Bookmark data, bookmarks of both i-mode and Full Browser are overwritten even if the data to save does not contain both.

The folder name that was set by the other terminal may not be taken over even if you receive all items of mail from FOMA terminal.

If you receive all items of bookmark data from FOMA terminal, the data you will receive covers the entire of the folder created by the other terminal. Depending on the other terminal, however, bookmarks may be saved in the first folder.

Images, video/i-motion or melodies received from a FOMA terminal other than D703i may be saved as notes. When invalid characters are included in the received data, they are replaced by blank spaces or cut away.

Mail data received from the device that can save mail by the folder may be saved in the Message i- ppli folder.

To check the saved mail data, select the Message i- ppli folder in which the data is saved and press  .

Activating infrared communication mode

Infrared Communication Mode

Activate i- ppli by receiving the data to start i- ppli via infrared communication device having the function of starting i- ppli.

- It is necessary to download the specified software from sites, etc. beforehand.
- In case i- ppli is set not to start with the i- ppli To function via an external device, i- ppli cannot be activated.

1       ▶ **Select Yes**

Receiving standby condition is activated.

2 Receive the data to start i- ppli via infrared communication device

i- ppli is activated.

- To cancel receiving data: 

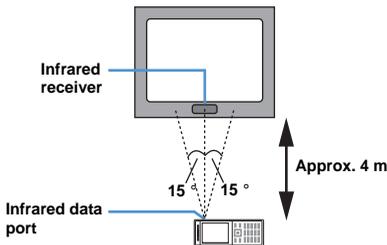
Using the infrared remote control function

FOMA terminal can be used as an infrared remote controller by downloading the i- ppli for infrared remote control.

- Download the i- ppli suited for the individual device.
- If the preset i- ppli “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller) is activated, FOMA terminal can be used as an infrared remote controller for TV, etc. ●P237
- This function is unavailable while Self Mode is on or infrared communication is executed.
- Communication may be influenced by the model of the supported device used and ambient luminance.
- Some equipment cannot be operated even if it is compatible with infrared remote control.

Remote control operation

Perform remote control operation with the infrared data port of FOMA terminal pointed at the infrared receiver of the supported device used (operating procedure differs depending on i- ppli). Angle for remote control is 15 degrees from the center and the distance is about 4 m at the maximum. However, the angle and distance allowed for the operation differs depending on the type of devices to operate and the level of brightness in the environment.



Setting operations for data exchange

Data Exchange Setting

Set operations for data exchange by infrared communication and USB connection.

Default End alert: OFF Auto authentication: OFF
Ph. book image sending: ON

- 1 **[Menu]** **[6]** **[2]** **[4]**
- 2 Select each item to set ▶ Press **[OK]**

End alert :

Specifies whether to sound a communication end tone at the end of communication.

Auto authentication :

Specifies whether to automatically exchange authentication codes with the other party while connecting to USB.

- To set *ON*, enter the terminal security code and the 4 to 8-digit authentication codes for a mobile phone terminal (FOMA terminal) and for PC (the other party), and then press **[OK]**.

Ph. book image sending :

Specifies whether to send images saved in the phonebook along with the all phonebook data when sending all data items.

Recording sound with Sound Recorder

Sound Recorder

Recorded sound can be played on your FOMA terminal. It can also be sent as an i-mode mail attachment or via infrared communication.

- Recorded sound is saved as video/i-motion without image.

File name/File format

The date and time recorded is attached to the file name, display name and the title of the sound file automatically.

(Example) In case of 12:34:56 on May 20, 2007.

20070520123456

The file format is as follows:

Item	Contents
File format	MP4 (MobileMP4)
Encoding method	AMR
Extension	3GP

- After recording, the file name and display name can be changed. ◀P270

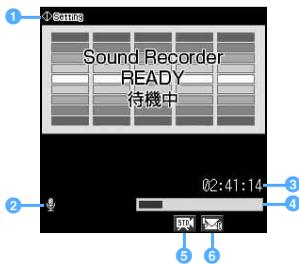
Recording time of sound

The sound recording time varies depending on the settings of quality and size restrictions. The maximum time for a single recording and the total time of recordings that can be saved are as shown below:

- Quality and size restrictions can be set in Recording Setting. ◀P150

Max. recording time	Quality	File size restrictions	
		Msg attach: Small	Msg attach: Large
For one operation	STD	8 min.	32 min.
	HQ	5 min.	21 min.
Total	STD	194 min.	194 min.
	HQ	127 min.	127 min.

Reading the recording screen



1 Setting guide

Use to change settings for recording. ◀P279

2 Type

Indicates to record sound.

3 Counter

<During standby for recording>

Indicates the approximate maximum recording time of sounds that can be saved with the current settings.

<During recording/pause>

Indicates the approximate elapsed/remaining time (duration until the recording stops).

4 Indicator

<During standby for recording>

Indicates the usage rate of the storage area.

<During recording/pause>

Indicates the rate of the recorded sound size to the file size set in size restrictions.

5 Quality ◀P279

6 Size restriction ◀P279

Recording the sound

- Record the sound in as quiet a place as possible with no or little noise.
- Even when *silent* is set for the ring alert volume, Silent Mode or Public mode (Driving mode) is active and so on, the recording confirmation sound (shutter sound) is heard. Also, the volume of the shutter sound cannot be changed.
- While you are using Sound Recorder, the keys and the camera indicator light or flash. You cannot set them not to light or flash. Also you cannot change the lighting pattern.

Status	Key light	Camera indicator
During start time	Lights.	-
On the recording screen	-	Lights.
During recording	Flashes.	Flashes.
During pause	Lights.	Lights.

1

Sound Recorder is activated.

2 or

Recording is started after the shutter sound is heard. appears at the bottom of the screen.

- The sound is recorded from the microphone.
- Press to pause recording. switches to . Recording is resumed by pressing or .

3 or

The shutter sound is heard and recording is finished. A confirmation screen for the recorded sound is displayed.

- If the file size exceeds the limit, recording ends automatically.
- Press to end the recording during pause.
- For auto-saving without displaying a confirmation screen ◀P151

4 Confirm the recorded sound

- To save the sound immediately: Go to Step 5
- To record again without saving:
- To replay the sound:
 - For auto-playing ◀P151

Sending mail with the recorded sound attached:

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the recorded sound. Select *Yes* to save the recorded sound, and the mail composition screen is displayed.

Changing the title: ► Enter the title (up to 31 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) ►

- The changed title is valid after saving the sound.

Inserting a ticker: ► **Select Yes**

The recorded sound is saved and the ticker setting screen is displayed. Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Inserting tickers".
 ◀P262

Displaying the saved sounds in the list:

5 Press or

The recorded sound is saved in the *Camera* folder of *i-motion*.

To check any recorded sound: ►
Select the sound

INFORMATION

Sound Recorder is activated by pressing on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen and selecting *Switch mode* *Sound recorder* as well.

For the usage precaution for Sound Recorder, refer to INFORMATION in "Recording videos". ◀P150

If Sound Recorder is activated from mail, some functions and some setup items are unavailable.

For the procedure of playing the recorded sound, see "Playing video/i-motion". ◀P258

Setting the sound quality

1 on the recording screen to highlight the quality icon (,)

- You can also press to highlight.

2 To highlight the settings ► Press

HQ : The sound quality is enhanced, but the available recording time becomes shorter.

STD : The sound quality is standard.

Restricting the file size

1 on the recording screen to highlight the icon (,) of size restrictions

- You can also press to highlight.

2 To highlight the settings ► Press

- The meaning of each setting item is same as for size restriction for Movie Camera. ◀P155

Displaying the PDF data

PDF Viewer

View the PDF data saved in *My Document* of Data Box in FOMA terminal.

- 辞典機能 (Dictionaries) is preset in the *Preinstalled* folder by default.

1 ► **Select a folder**

i-mode :

PDF data acquired in i-mode, Full Browser or i-mode Mail

Preinstalled :

PDF data preinstalled by default

Data transfer :

PDF data received by the data communication

Folder :

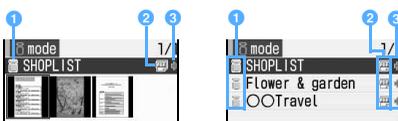
PDF data moved from another folder

- Not displayed by default. To create ◀P268

2 **Highlight the PDF data**

Thumbnail display

Title display



PDF data list

1 **Originated**

: i-mode

: Preinstalled

: Data transfer

2 **File type**

: PDF data downloaded completely

: PDF data downloaded partially

- The part of data not obtained can be downloaded.

: PDF data that failed to be downloaded in case the communication is disconnected in the process, etc.

: PDF data with UIM operation restriction

3 **File restriction**

► (blue) : Without file restriction

► (gray) : With file restriction

- To switch between thumbnail and title displays:

- In case images in PDF data cannot be shown in thumbnail display, the following images appear in thumbnail display:

 : PDF data which has no thumbnail images or PDF data never displayed

 : PDF data downloaded partially

 : PDF data that is unsuccessful in being downloaded.

 : PDF data with UIM operation restriction

- To change display names. ➡P270

Sending mail with PDF data attached:

Highlight PDF data

The mail composition screen with PDF data attached is displayed.

- About PDF data that can be attached to mail
➡P194

3 Press

PDF data is displayed.



Scroll bar (indicating displayed portion of a page)

Status (page No./total number and display magnification)

PDF display screen

- The following operations are available while displaying the PDF data:

 : Scroll (Hold down to scroll continuously.)

 : HELP (description of keys)

 : Previous page  : Next page

 1 : Zoom out  2 : Fit page

 3 : Zoom In  4 : First page

 5 : Search ➡P281  6 : Last page

 7 : Right 90 degrees

 8 : Display link ➡P281

 9 : Capture screen ➡P281

 0 : Document information

- The title, name of the author and file size, etc. can be displayed.

 * : Switches the screen between the standard and full-screen modes

- When the full-screen mode is set, the scroll bar, status and guide row disappear.

 # : Show/hide the toolbar

- It may take some time to display depending on PDF data.
- In case a style is not compatible with PDF Viewer or complicated design is contained in

PDF data, the data may not be displayed correctly.

- In case a password is set for PDF data, enter the password and press .
- When selecting the PDF data (with a file type of ) which failed to be downloaded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to download the rest of the data. If you select **Yes**, downloading starts.
- To download the rest of PDF data (with a file type of ) which was partially downloaded, press   while displaying the PDF data. When the operation to require to download the data is executed such as displaying a page not downloaded, a confirmation screen appears when you try to display the page. Select **Yes** to download (After selecting **Yes** once, the subsequent pages are downloaded without being asked by the confirmation screen).
- The rest of the data may not be downloaded depending on the PDF data.
-  is displayed on a page where the mark is registered.

Terminating the display: Select **Yes**

- In case of having changed the PDF data, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to save or not. Select **Yes** and press  to save. The original PDF data is overwritten.
- When having changed the PDF data, you can save it by pressing   on the PDF display screen as well.

Operations while displaying PDF data

Using the toolbar



Toolbar guidance
Toolbar

1 

The toolbar and the guidance are displayed.

2  to highlight the icon 

 : Zoom out  : Fit page

 : Zoom In  : First page

 : Search  : Last page

 : Right 90 degrees  : Display link

 : Capture screen

 : Document information

- Keypads of  1 to  9 and  0 are assigned for each icon from the left. Icons can be selected also by pressing the relevant keypad.

- While the toolbar guidance is displayed, pressing **[F7]** hides the guidance and the operation of scrolling PDF data, etc. is available. Press **[F7]** to select the toolbar again.
- To hide the toolbar: **[#]**
In case the guidance is displayed, hide the guidance by **[F7]** and then press **[#]**.

Switching the view types

View types can be selected among *Fit page*, *Actual size* and *Fit width*.

① **[Menu]** **[6]** **[2]** ▶ **[1]** to **[3]**

Changing the settings of display information

Set the display information when the standard screen mode is set.

① **[Menu]** **[7]**

② **Select each item to set** ▶ **[□]**

Display properties :

Sets whether to display the page No./total number of pages and display magnification.

Scroll bar :

Sets whether to display the scroll bar.

Specifying magnification to enlarge/reduce the display

① **[Menu]** **[6]** **[3]** ▶ **Enter the magnification (8 to 1000%)**

Switching the page layout

① **[Menu]** **[6]** **[5]** ▶ **[1]** to **[3]**

- You can select from *Single page* (each page is displayed), *Continuous* (pages are displayed continuously) and *Continuous-facing* (2 page-spread is displayed).
- The setting is not available for PDF data containing only one page or downloaded partially.

Specifying a page number to display the page

① **[Menu]** **[1]** **[3]** ▶ **Enter a page number**

Rotating the display

① **[Menu]** **[6]** **[4]** ▶ **[1]** to **[3]**

- The rotation of 90 degrees to right/left and 180 degrees is available.
- To scroll up and down the pages, press **[↑]** regardless of the page orientation.

Search for the character strings

- When all of the PDF data is not downloaded, searching is executed only in the displayed page.

① **[5]** ▶ Select the entry field for the character string ▶ Enter the string (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters)

- To search for a completely matched word, set the search method to *Exact match*.
- For search operations distinguishing upper/lower case, select *Yes* in *Case-sensitive*.

② **[□]**

Searching is executed and the words matching to entered character strings are highlighted.

- To search the phrase following a match: **[☒]**
- To search the phrase preceding a match: **[☑]**
- To end the search: **[Menu]**
- To show HELP: **[□]**

Using the link

To use link items in PDF data, switch the link display to *ON*.

- While the link display is *ON*, the operation of scrolling or moving the page is not available. Operate after displaying the part containing the link item to use.

① **[6]** ▶ **Select the link item**

- To end the link display: **[Menu]**

Saving page images (Capture screen)

The content on the current screen is saved as an image of JPEG format.

- Capturing screen may not be available depending on the PDF data.
- Availability of saved images for output from FOMA terminal depends on the settings of the original PDF data.
- The size of an image captured depends on the size of the screen on which PDF data is displayed.

① **[9]**

The contents displayed on the screen are saved in the *Camera* folder of *My Picture*.

Using bookmarks or marks

The page can be displayed quickly by selecting bookmarks or marks. There are 3 types of bookmarks or marks as follows:

Type	Description
Bookmark	These are preset bookmarks and cannot be added, changed or deleted. There are PDF data not preset.
i-mode bookmark	Can be added later. The description of the page as the bookmark information can be registered, so it can be used as contents or notes, etc.
Mark	Can be added later in the PDF data as i-mode bookmarks. The information cannot be registered. The page number is displayed on the list screen.

- In the i-mode bookmark, the position and the current display status (magnification, the direction of rotation) are also registered. In marks, the position is registered only.
- i-mode bookmarks or marks may be preset depending on PDF data.
- i-mode bookmarks or marks can be registered up to 10 items for each (preset i-mode bookmarks and marks are included). However, registering may be unavailable up to the maximum number depending on PDF data.
- If PDF data is moved to PC and so on, i-mode bookmarks and marks may be deleted.

Using bookmarks

- 1 **Menu** **4** **1** on the PDF data display screen ▶ Select a bookmark

Using i-mode bookmarks

Registering i-mode bookmarks

- 1 Display the page to register i-mode bookmark ▶ **Menu** **4** **2** **2**
- 2 Enter the information of i-mode bookmark (up to 128 one-byte or 64 two-byte characters) ▶ Press **□**

Displaying i-mode bookmarks

- 1 **Menu** **4** **2** **1** on the PDF data display screen ▶ Select the i-mode bookmark

The registered bookmark position in the corresponding page is indicated with the same state (magnification, the direction of rotation) as when you registered.

Editing:

- ① Highlight the i-mode bookmark ▶ **Menu** **1**
- ② Enter the i-mode bookmark information ▶ **□**

Deleting one item:

- ① Highlight an i-mode bookmark ▶ **Menu** **2** **1**
- ② Select *Yes*

Deleting selected items:

- ① **Menu** **2** **2** ▶ Select i-mode bookmarks
- ② **□** ▶ Select *Yes*

Deleting all items:

- ① **Menu** **2** **3**
- ② Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select *Yes*

Using marks

Registering marks

- 1 Display the page to register a mark ▶ Press **Menu** **4** **2** **5**

A mark is registered and displayed in the center of the current display range.

Displaying marks

- 1 **Menu** **4** **2** **4** on the PDF data display screen ▶ Select the mark

The registered mark position in the corresponding page is indicated.

Deleting one item:

- ① Highlight a mark ▶ **Menu** **1**
- ② Select *Yes*

Deleting selected items:

- ① **Menu** **2** ▶ Select marks
- ② **□** ▶ Select *Yes*

Deleting all items:

- ①
- ② Enter the terminal security code ▶
Select *Yes*

Setting the operating conditions of PDF Viewer

Settings

Select the display format for the PDF data list. The thumbnail display appear when setting to *Display 12 icons*, and the title display appears when setting to *List view*.

- 1 ▶ ▶ Press or

Menu58

Displaying Word, Excel and PowerPoint files

Document Viewer

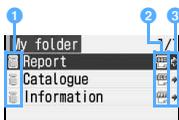
Use Document Viewer to display Word, Excel or PowerPoint files saved in the *Other* folder of Data Box.

- You can obtain documents using Full Browser to download from websites or via i-mode Mail.

1 ▶ Select a folder

- My folder* is registered by default. To create a folder ▶P268

2 Highlight a document



Document list

① Originated

- : Full Browser, i-mode Mail
- : Data transfer

② File type

- : Word : Excel
- : PowerPoint
- : Data with UIM operation restriction

③ File Restriction

- (blue) : Without file restriction
- To change display names ▶P270

Sending mail with documents attached:

Highlight a document ▶

The mail composition screen with the document attached is displayed.

- About documents that can be attached to mail ▶P194

3 Press

A document is displayed.



Status (page number/total number and display magnification)

Document display screen

- The following operations are available while displaying a document:

: Scroll (Hold down to scroll continuously.)

: HELP (description of keys)

: Previous page : Next page

: Zoom out : Fit page

: Zoom in : First page

: Search : Last page

: Rotate 90° clockwise

: Fit the display to width

: Switches between showing and hiding the status

: Switches the screen between the standard and full modes

- When the full-screen mode is set, the guide row disappears.

- Some operations are disabled during reading of data.

Ending the display:

Specifying magnification to enlarge/

reduce the display: ▶ Enter magnification (10 to 1000%)

- You cannot display the documentation at a smaller magnification than Fit Page.

Rotating the display: ▶ to

- The rotation of 90 degrees to right/left and 180 degrees is available.

Specifying a page number to display the page: ▶ Enter a page number

Searching for character strings:

- ①  ▶ Select the entry field for the character string ▶ Enter the string (up to 32 one-byte or 16 two-byte characters)

- To search a completely matched phrase, select *Exact match* in Whole words only Search.

- ② 

Searching is executed and the words matching the entered character string are highlighted.

- To search the phrase following a match:



- To search the phrase preceding a match:



- To end the search: 

- To show HELP: 

INFORMATION

Some document may take some time to appear.
Document with a style not supported or complicated design may not be displayed properly.
You cannot display any document in which the IRM (Information Rights Management) function is set.

Music Playing

How to play music	286
Downloading Chaku-Uta Full [®] from sites	286
Playing music data on Music Player	Music Player 287
Managing or using music data	289
Managing playlists	291

How to play music

You can enjoy music on your FOMA terminal in the following two ways:

- Playing music on Music Player
You can play Chaku-Uta Full[®] downloaded from sites.
- Playing music as i-motion
You can play sound-only i-motion which is obtained in i-mode and saved in Data Box of FOMA terminal. This section explains how to play on Music Player.
 - For how to play i-motion from Data Box ◀P258

Background playing

While you are listening to music by Music Player, you can use the Multitask function to display or create mail or display i-mode site.

- For details about Multitask combinations ◀P360
- In the following cases, playing pauses and resumes upon completion of a call, communication or function.
 - While dialing, receiving, talking or communicating of a voice/videophone call
 - When a mail or Message R/F is received (in case the setting for mail reception and automatic mail transmission is set to *Show message*)
 - When Check i-mode Message is performed
 - When an alarm sounds to notify that the items saved by the Voice Mail service increases
 - When the time set by Timer has passed or the time set for the alarm clock or schedule reminder arrives
 - When a function that cannot be used together with Music Player (such as camera shooting and downloading i- ppli, melody or video/ i-motion) is performed
 - During packet communication with a PC connected
- Playing the music may be interrupted if you use multiple functions at the same time.

Downloading Chaku-Uta Full[®] from sites

- Maximum number of items that can be saved ◀P381
- The size of Chaku-Uta Full[®] you can download is up to 5 Mbytes per item.

1 Display a site ▶ Select Chaku-Uta Full[®]

- To cancel the downloading: [□]

2 Select *Save*

- To play the melody: Select *Play*
For operation during playback ◀P287
- To display detail information: Select *File property*
- To cancel saving: Select *Back* ▶ Select *No*

3 Enter a display name (up to 50 one- or two-byte characters) ▶ [□]

- By default, the title name and artist name of Chaku-Uta Full[®] are used as a display name in the form of "title name-artist name".

INFORMATION

When there is not enough available storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete data saved in FOMA terminal. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the saved music data. Before deleting, you can play the music by pressing [□] on the music data list or view the detail information about the music data by pressing [Menu].

If you cancel downloading or the network connection breaks while downloading a Chaku-Uta Full[®] music, the music is saved incompletely. You can download it again by selecting Chaku-Uta Full[®] in Music Player. Note, however, that some types of Chaku-Uta Full[®] cannot be downloaded again.

Playing music data on Music Player

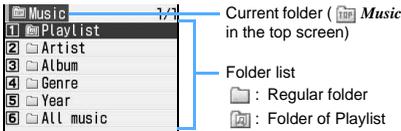
Music Player

Play the music data (Chaku-Uta Full[®]) saved in **Music** of Data Box in FOMA terminal.

- Use the optional Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set. However, you cannot operate Music Player by the switch of the Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set.

1

The top screen of Music Player is displayed.



- If you stopped playing music while music data was being played or paused, activating Music Player next time displays the player screen and plays the stopped music from the beginning.

2 Select a folder

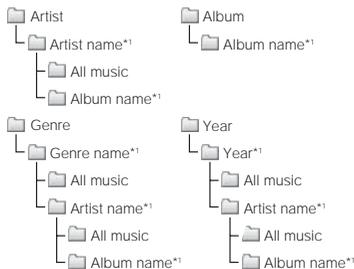
Playlist :

You can play music data by selecting a playlist.

- For managing the playlist 

Artist/Album/Genre/Year :

You can choose and play any of the music data in the folders to which music data are sorted. The folder structure is as shown below.



- *1 The registered name and year of the music data is used as the folder name. If the name or year has not been registered, a folder named **Unknown artist** or **Unknown year** is displayed.

All music :

A list of all music data is displayed. Select this folder to play all musics.

3 Select music data to play

The selected music data is played.

- If you select a Chaku-Uta Full[®] music that was partially downloaded before, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to download the remaining data. If you select **Yes**, downloading starts.

- The following operations are available.

 : Pause/play

 : Adjust volume

 : Return to the beginning of the current music item or return to the previous one

 : Move to the next music item

 (for over a second): Rewind

 (for over a second): Play at fast speed

- Pressing  during playback returns you to the music data list without interrupting the playing, and you can select music data. To return to the player screen, press  in the music data list.
- A confirmation screen appears when you play music data involving a replay restriction. The content of the confirmation screen is the same as that for i-motion. Within an expiration period, however, music data is played with no confirmation screen appearing. 
- The keys light or flash when playing starts or stops, or during fast-speed playing, rewinding or adjusting the volume. You cannot set the key not to light or flash. Also you cannot change the lighting pattern and color.
- The music stops if you display a submenu on a screen other than the player screen during playing of it.

4 Press to stop playback

- Pressing  in the top screen stops Music Player.

The music data list screen

Each time you press **[E]**, the thumbnail display and title display are switched.

Thumbnail display



Title display



1 Originated

: i-mode

2 Status/replay restriction

- : No restriction
- : Partially downloaded data
- : Restriction on the number of times
- : Restriction on expiration
- : Restriction on period

3 File format and Digital Rights Management (DRM)

: Chaku-Uta Full®, DoCoMo

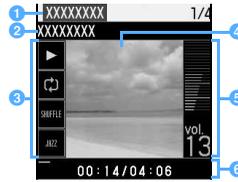
4 File restriction

(gray): With file restriction

• In the thumbnail display, the jacket images registered in music data are shown. The following images appear depending on the music data.

- : Data with no jacket image
- : Partially downloaded data
- : Data with UIM operation restriction

The player screen



1 Artist name

2 Title

3 Mode display area

• Playing status

: Playing : Playing the intro

: In stop

• Shuffle play

: ON : OFF

• Repeat

: All music items

: Single music item

: OFF

• Equalizer

: Normal : Bass 1

: Bass 2 (headset)

: Rock : Jazz

: Vocal : Classic

: Pop : In-a-train

4 Jacket image

If music data contains the image of a jacket, the image is displayed.

5 Volume

6 Play progress bar and the playing time/total playing time

INFORMATION

Note that Music Player consumes a lot of battery power when being used.

When the remaining battery power falls below Level 2, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to continue playing.

Playing the intro

This function plays only the beginning part (for about 7 seconds) of each music item in succession.

1 Highlight a music in the music data list ▶

Press

The intro playing starts at the selected music item.

- To switch to the normal play mode, press while playing the intro.

Changing the order of music items to play Sort

The order of items in the music data list can be changed.

Default By: *Track number* Order: *Ascending*

1 Press **5** in the music data list

- This operation is unavailable with the music data list in a playlist.

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press

By : Sets the sorting method.

Order : Sets the sorting order of data.

Setting the playback method and effect

Settings

Default Show thumbnails: *No* Volume: *Level13*
Repeat play: *Play all*
Shuffle: *OFF*
Equalizer: *Normal*

1 Press **6** in the music data list

- To operate in the music data list of a playlist:

4

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press

Show thumbnails :

Set *Yes* to show the thumbnail display or *No* to show the title display.

Volume :

Set the volume of playing music data.

Repeat play :

Select from *OFF*, *Play one* and *Play all*.

Shuffle :

If you set *ON*, the music data is played in random order.

- If repeat play is set to other than *OFF*, shuffle play is not available.

Equalizer :

- Setting *Bass1* stresses the low-pitched sounds.
- Setting *Bass2(headset)* makes up for deep bass, which tends to be insufficient when you use the headset. When the headset is not connected, the effect is the same as *Normal*.
- Setting *Rock, Jazz, Vocal, Classic, or Pop* causes the music data to be played according to the setting suitable for the property of each genre.
- Setting *In-a-train* reduces sound leaks when you are listening through an earphone.

Managing or using music data

Viewing or changing detail information

[View/Edit Detail Info](#)

Viewing detail information

1 Highlight a music in the music data list ▶

Press **2** **1**

- To switch between the music information, copyright information, file information or availability information:
- To change the detail information:
- If the file information contains a URL, press on the *File* screen and select *Yes* to connect to the site.
- Track number of the music information indicates the music number and total number of musics in the album.
- The file type is indicated as *Music*.
- The *Permit* screen allows you to check the availability of following items.

Item	Description
<i>File restriction</i>	Whether to provide the ability to output music data to the outside of FOMA terminal*1
<i>Replay restriction</i>	Selected replay restriction
<i>Full song ring tone</i>	Whether to provide the ability to set the whole of a music as ring alert, etc.
<i>Point ring tone</i>	Whether to provide the ability to set part of a music as ring alert, etc.
<i>Savable Jacket image</i>	Whether to provide the ability to save a jacket image into FOMA terminal

Item	Description
<i>Savable Image</i>	Whether to provide the ability to save images as the standby display into FOMA terminal
<i>Savable Lyric</i>	Whether to provide the ability to save lyrics into FOMA terminal

*1 With D703i, *File restriction* is always *Yes* and music files cannot be sent to outside of your FOMA terminal.

INFORMATION

The detail information can also be displayed by pressing  **1** on the player screen. However, you cannot change the information.

Changing detail information

1 Highlight a music in the music data list ▶

 **2** **2**

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press

Display name :

Enter the name to be included in the music data list (up to 50 one- or two-byte characters).

Title :

Enter the title to be included on the player screen (up to 128 one- or two-byte characters)

Artist :

Up to 128 one- or two-byte characters can be entered.

Album :

Up to 128 one- or two-byte characters can be entered.

Year :

Enter a 4-digit number.

Genre :

Up to 128 one- or two-byte characters can be entered.

Comment :

Up to 128 one- or two-byte characters can be entered.

Track number :

Enter a 4-digit number.

Total track number :

Enter a 4-digit number.

- When you select *Auto create disp name*, the display name changes to "Title name-Artist name".
- When you select *Back to original* for each item, the setting returns to the default when the music data was downloaded.

Displaying and saving images in music data

If music data contains an image for a jacket, the standby display or lyrics, you can display the image and save it in your FOMA terminal.

- Images in JPEG and GIF format can be displayed. The maximum number of images that can be displayed is one jacket image, two images for standby and 7 images of lyrics.
- Depending on the type of music data, you cannot save the image even if you can display it.
- The image is saved in the *i-mode* folder in *My Picture*.

1 Highlight a music in the music data list ▶

 **2** **3**

2 Press any of **1** to **3**

The image is displayed.

- If there are multiple images, use  to display the previous or next image.
- To display in the full-screen mode:  while displaying an image
 - To quit the full-screen display: 
- To save images:  while displaying an image

Setting music data as ring alert

Music data can be set as ring alert for voice call, videophone call, mail, chat mail or Message R/F.

- Ring alert can be set in two ways: full song ring tone and point ring tone. Full song ring tone enables the whole of a music to be set as the ring alert. Point ring tone enables a predetermined part of a music to be set as the ring alert.
- Music data with a replay restriction or partially downloaded cannot be set as the ring alert.
- Some music data cannot be set as ring alert while others can be set as either the full song ring tone or point ring tone. Refer to View Detail Info to check whether the music item can be set as the ring alert.

Example Setting full song ring tone

1 Highlight a music in the music data list ▶

 **1** ▶ **1** to **8**

2 Press **1**

- Setting as contact alert (call, mail): Select the other party from the phonebook ▶ Confirm the contents ▶ 

Setting point ring tone: [2] ▶ **Select the playback location**

- To play and check: Select the playback location from the list ▶ [M]

Deleting music data

1 Highlight a music in the music data list ▶

[Menu] [4] [1]

- To delete selected items: [Menu] [4] [2] ▶
Select music items ▶ [M]
- To delete all items: [Menu] [4] [3] ▶ Enter the terminal security code
- The music data list in a playlist is not applicable.

2 Select *Yes*

Deleting all music items: [Menu] [1] **on the top screen** ▶ **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ **Select *Yes***

This deletes all music items and playlists.

INFORMATION

If you delete music data that is set as ring alert, etc., the setting returns to its default.

Managing playlists

Create a playlist to add or edit music data.

- Maximum number of items that can be added
▶ P381
- A single playlist can include up to 100 items of music data.
- Partially downloaded music data cannot be added to a playlist.

Creating a playlist

Creating an empty playlist

1 Display the top screen ▶ Select *Playlist*

▶ [Menu] [1]

- If there is no playlist at all, selecting *Playlist* displays a confirmation screen asking whether to create a playlist. Select *Yes* and go to Step 2.

2 Enter a display name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ▶ Press [M]

Creating a playlist after selecting music data to be added

1 Highlight a music in the music data list ▶

[Menu] [3] [1] [1]

- This operation is unavailable with the music data list in a playlist.

Adding selected items: [Menu] [3] [1] [2]

▶ **Select music items** ▶ [M]

Adding all items: [Menu] [3] [1] [3]

2 Enter a display name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ▶ Press [M]

INFORMATION

When the number of playlists exceeds the maximum allowable number, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete saved playlists. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete saved playlists.

Adding music data to a playlist

Music data is registered in a playlist saved in your FOMA terminal.

1 Highlight a music in the music data list ▶

[Menu] [3] [2] [1]

- This operation is unavailable with the music data list in a playlist.

Adding selected items: [Menu] [3] [2] [2]

▶ **Select music items** ▶ [M]

Adding all items: [Menu] [3] [2] [3]

2 Select a playlist to add music data

New music data is added to the end of the existing music data in the playlist.

1 Display the top screen ▶ Select *Playlist*



Playlist screen

Changing display name:

- ① Highlight a playlist ▶ **Menu** **4**
- ② Enter a display name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ▶ **[]**

Deleting a playlist:

- ① Highlight a playlist ▶ **Menu** **3**
- ② Select *Yes*

Copying a playlist: Highlight a playlist ▶

Menu **2**

2 Select a playlist

A list of musics in the playlist is displayed.

- If the playlist contains no music, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to add musics. To add musics, select *Yes*, select a folder, select musics and press **[]**.

3 Edit a playlist

Adding music data: **Menu** **3** **1** **1** ▶

Select a folder ▶ Select music items

- To add selected items: **Menu** **3** **1** **2**
 - ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select music items ▶ **[]**
- To add all music items in a folder: **Menu** **3** **1** **3** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Unselect some music items if necessary ▶ **[]**

Removing music data from a playlist:

- ① Highlight a music item ▶ **Menu** **3** **2** **1**
 - Only the registration of music data is deleted from the playlist. The music data itself remains.
 - To remove selected items: **Menu** **3** **2** **2** ▶ Select music items ▶ **[]**
 - To remove all items: **Menu** **3** **2** **3**
- ② Select *Yes*

Sorting music data:

- ① **Menu** **3** **3**
- ② Highlight a music item to be moved ▶ **[]** or **[]** to move
- ③ **[]** after the sorting is completed

Other Convenient Functions

Multiaccess	Multiaccess	294
Multitask	Multitask	294
Turning power on/off automatically at the specified time	Auto Power ON/OFF	295
Alerting with alarms after the specified time period has passed....	Timer	295
Ringling the alarm clock at the set time	Alarm Clock	296
Setting to turn power on automatically at the time specified for the alarm	Alarm Auto Power ON	297
Managing schedules	Scheduler	298
Registering often-used functions	Custom Menu	304
Registering your own name and mail address	Own Number	306
Recording the voice and image	Voice Memo/Video Memo	307
Checking the call duration and the call cost	Call Duration/Call Cost	308
Resetting the call cost automatically	Reset Call Cost	309
Setting to notify the limit of call cost	Call Cost Limit	310
Using Calculator	Calculator	310
Composing notes	Notepad	311
Using electronic dictionaries		313
Using the Earphone/Microphone with Switch	Earphone/Microphone with Switch	313
Reducing the start-up time after power-on	Quick Start-up	315
Checking current settings of functions	Confirm Settings	315
Resetting functions	Reset	315
Deleting registered data collectively	Delete All Data	316

Multiaccess

Multiaccess

Multiaccess is a function that 3 functions (the voice call, packet communication, SMS) can be used at the same time.

- The icons for the functions in progress are displayed on the task bar.
- The following functions can be used simultaneously:
 - Voice call: 1 line
 - i-mode, i- ppli, i-mode Mail or packet communication with PC connected: 1 line
 - SMS: 1 line
- Multiaccess combinations ◀P358

INFORMATION

During Multiaccess you are charged separately for each communication.

Operations available during Multiaccess

Receiving a voice call during communication

Example Receiving a voice call during i-mode

- Similarly, you can receive a voice call during packet communication with a PC connected.

1 A voice call arrives during i-mode

- The screen displayed when a voice call is received depends on Priority Comm Mode.

2 Press

- To end the call:  in the talking screen
- To quit the site display:  ► Switch to the site screen ►  ► Select **Yes**

Performing communication during a voice call

Example Connecting i-mode during a voice call

1 during a voice call ► Press

- To quit the site display:  in the site screen ► Select **Yes**
- To end the call:  ► Switch to the talking screen ► 



New Task menu

Example Sending i-mode Mail during a voice call

1 during a voice call ► Press

When transmission of i-mode Mail is completed, the talking screen returns.

- To quit the mail composition:  in the mail composition screen
- To end the call:  ► Switch to the talking screen ► 

Multitask

Multitask

Multitask allows you to execute several functions at the same time and perform operations by switching screens.

- The icons for the functions in progress are displayed on the task bar.
- The number of functions that can be performed simultaneously is up to 2. However, the function of *Dial*, *Own number* or *Silent mode ON/OFF* can be activated even when 2 other functions are already active.
- Some functions may be restricted or unable to start simultaneously with one another.
- Multitask combinations ◀P360

Executing a new function

Example Displaying/registering a schedule during a voice call

1 during a voice call ►

2 View or register a schedule

- To quit the schedule:  in the schedule screen
- To end the call:  ► Switch to the talking screen ► 

INFORMATION

If many functions are executed at once, for example, a mail arrives while video or animation is being played or the camera is operated, the image displayed on the screen may not appear smoothly or the sound may be disrupted during play.

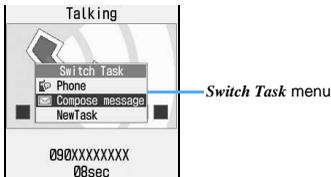
If you press  in the first level of the *New Task* menu, *Own number* is displayed. However, it may not be displayed depending on the current function or condition.

Switching functions to operate

Pressing **☎** while you are using multiple functions, the **Switch Task** menu appears, which allows you to switch screens and perform your desired operation.

Example Switching to the mail composition screen during a voice call

1 **☎** during a voice call ▶ Select **Compose message**



- To return to the talking screen: **☎** ▶ Select **Phone** from the **Switch Task** menu
- You can start a new function by pressing **[Menu]** in the **Switch Task** menu to display the **New Task** menu. Press **[Menu]** again to return to the **Switch Task** menu.

INFORMATION

The item names displayed in the **Switch Task** menu may differ from the menu item names, etc.

Quitting all running operations

You can quit all functions running in Multitask at a time.

1 **☎** **[M]** during Multitask ▶ Select **Yes**

Turning power on/off automatically at the specified time

Auto Power ON/OFF

Default Auto power ON: OFF
Auto power OFF: OFF

Example Setting Auto Power ON

1 **[Menu]** **[8]** **[6]** **[1]** **[2]**

Setting Auto Power OFF:

[Menu] **[8]** **[6]** **[1]** **[3]**

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press **[M]**

Auto power ON :

Set or cancel Auto Power ON.

Time :

Set the time to automatically turn the power on.

- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with 0.

Repeat :

Set Auto Power ON to repeat.

INFORMATION

Even if Auto Power OFF is set to **ON**, when the specified time arrives while FOMA terminal is in any mode except standby, the power is not turned off. The power is turned off after the running function completes each job.

However, if the specified time arrives while the terminal security code entry screen is displayed following the standby display or the PIN1 code or PIN2 code entry screen is displayed when FOMA terminal is turned on, the power is turned off.

Set Auto Power ON to **OFF** in areas where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities and airplanes.

Alerting with alarms after the specified time period has passed

Timer

1 Enter time period ▶ **[M]** or **[Menu]** **[1]**

The countdown screen of the timer appears and countdown starts.

- Enter the period from 1 to 60 minutes. For 1 to 9 minutes, do not enter the preceding 0.
- Countdown continues even if a call or **☎** is pressed to start another function during countdown.
- If you press **[Stop]** or **[M]** during countdown, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to stop countdown. Countdown continues even while the confirmation screen is displayed.

After the specified time has passed

1 The alarm sounds



The alarm (アラーム・メロディ (Alarm, melody)) sounds at the volume set for the call alert volume, and the keys flash. If the vibrator is set for incoming calls in Vibrator Setting, it operates according to the setting.

2 Press to stop the alarm

- Also the alarm stops when a minute has passed without any operation or any key or button other than  or the keylock switch is pressed.

Alarm indication while another function is being used

Function	Alarm indication
During a call	A warning tone sounds. The keys do not flash and the vibrator does not vibrate.
On-hold	The above operation takes place after the end of the on-hold state.
During data transfer*1, while a call is ringing or being dialed, received or terminated	The alarm is issued after the end of the left-mentioned operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the schedule data is received via data communication, the schedule does not operate when the scheduled date and times comes.

*1 Receiving/sending by packet communication is excluded.

Ringing the alarm clock at the set time

Alarm Clock

Setting the alarm clock time and sound

- When Alarm Clock is on, the default settings are as follows; **Time: 00:00, Repeat: None, Snooze: ON**
Alarm sound: Terminal setting, Volume: Terminal setting, Vibrate alert: Terminal setting, Lighting: Terminal setting, Lighting pattern: Terminal setting.
- Up to 9 alarms can be set.

Default not set

1 ► to

-  is displayed on left of a title while setting an alarm.

Canceling: Highlight a title from the alarm clock list ► 

- To set the canceled alarm again: Highlight a title from the alarm clock list ► 

2 Select each item to set

Time :

Enter the time to set an alarm.

Repeat :

Select the repeat setting.

- If **None** is set, the alarm is activated only once.
- If **Every day** is set, the alarm is activated everyday.
- If you select **Day of week**, select **Day/Week** to select the days of the week and press .

Title :

Up to 14 one-byte or 7 two-byte characters can be entered.

Snooze :

- When **Snooze** operation is set to **ON**, the snooze operation repeats 1-minute ringing and 4-minute interval until an alarm clock is stopped for 30 minutes.

3 to switch to **Set sound** screen ► Select and set each item

Alarm sound :

Set the alarm clock sound to be issued at the specified time.

- When **i-motion, Melody, or Music** is selected, set the alarm clock sound.
- Setting music data 
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion when selecting 
- If you select **Terminal setting**, the alarm sound conforms to the setting of Alarm Clock Sound.

Volume :

Set the volume.

- For details of operation when **Set** is selected 
- If you select **Terminal setting**, the alarm volume conforms to the setting for **Alarm clock sound** of Adjust Volume.

4 to switch to **Set others** screen ► Select and set each item

Vibrate alert :

Set the vibration used at the set time.

- If you select **Select**, select a vibrator pattern.
- If you select **Terminal setting**, the vibration conforms to the setting of Vibrator Setting.

Lighting :

Set the whether to light the keys for the set time.

- If you select **Terminal setting**, the lighting pattern conforms to the setting of Light Alert Setting.

Lighting pattern :

Set the lighting pattern of the keys for the set time.

- When you select *Select*, select a lighting pattern.
- If you select *Terminal setting*, the lighting color conforms to the setting of Light Alert Setting.

5 Press

In the standby display,  or  (when a schedule alarm is also set) is displayed.

INFORMATION

If you delete the data specified as an alarm clock sound, *Terminal setting* is assumed.

When the set time comes

1 The alarm clock rings



The alarm clock operates according to the settings. If video/i-motion is set for the alarm clock, it is displayed.

2 Press to stop the alarm

When *Snooze* is set to *ON*

- If you leave an alarm clock ringing for 1 minute or press any keys other than  or the keylock switch while it is ringing, the snooze operation starts. When the alarm clock sound stops during the snooze operation, “スヌーズ中 *Snooze*” is displayed on the screen. (If video/i-motion is set, the first image appears.) If you press , the snooze operation stops.
- When you receive a call while the alarm clock is ringing, the snooze operation starts.

When *Snooze* is set to *OFF*

- If you leave an alarm clock ringing for 1 minute or press any keys other than  or the keylock switch while it is ringing, the alarm clock sound stops.
- When you receive a call while the alarm clock is ringing, the alarm clock sound stops.
- If more than one alarm is set for the same time, the one with the lowest item number in the alarm clock list takes effect.
- For alarm indication while another function is being used P296

When alarm clock does not ring at the set time

- When All Lock or PIM Lock is activated, the alarm clock does not ring.
- When a Chara-den image is displayed at the set time, the alarm may sound a few seconds later.
- When an alarm clock and a schedule alarm are set for the same date and time, the alarm clock operates first and then the schedule alarm is issued. After the schedule alarm operation is finished, the snooze operation is continued when you set the snooze of the alarm clock to *ON*. When you set it to *OFF*, the screen displayed while alarm clock sound stops appears.

Setting to turn power on automatically at the time specified for the alarm Alarm Auto Power ON

Set to automatically turn the power on and issue an schedule alarm or alarm clock sound in case the power is off at the date and time specified by Scheduler or Alarm Clock.

Default **OFF**

1

2 Press

- To set not to turn the power on automatically: 

INFORMATION

Set this function to *OFF* in areas where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities and airplanes.

If Alarm Auto Power ON and PIN1 Code ON/OFF have been set to *ON*, the power is turned on and the alarm sounds before displaying the PIN1 code entry screen when the set date and time for an alarm clock or schedule alarm arrives. When pressing  to stop the alarm, the PIN1 code entry screen appears. At this time, the default melody sounds as the schedule alarm or alarm clock sound even when the downloaded melody, i-motion or music are set for the alarm sound. The default melody is *アラーム・メロディ* (Alarm: melody) for the alarm clock and *アラーム・女性ボイス* (Alarm: female voice) for the schedule alarm.

Managing schedules

Scheduler

Save various schedules. You will be notified of it with the display and/or alarm sound at the set date and time.

Displaying the calendar

The calendar screen allows displaying schedules.

1 Hold down for over a second

2007 / 5	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat
29	30	1	2	3	4	5	
6	7	8	9	10	11	12	
13	14	15	16	17	18	19	
20	21	22	23	24	25	26	
27	28	29	30	31	1	2	
3	4	5	6	7	8	9	

Item icon

The calendar screen appears.

The date is displayed in pink for the current day, blue for Saturday, and red for Sunday and national holidays (the displayed color depends on the setting of Color Scheme).

- For a day with multiple schedules set, the item icon for the schedule planned for the earliest hour is indicated. Even if the time of the item set at the earliest time of the day is passed, the item icon set next is not displayed.
- Press  to move the date. Pressing  displays the day view screen.
- Pressing  displays the previous month and  displays the next month.
- The calendar appears the same as the display format which you used just before.

Specifying a particular day to display:

 **Menu**   in the calendar screen ▶

Enter the year, month, and day

- To return today: **Menu**  
- In the day view screen, press **Menu**  . Pressing **Menu**   restores the current date display.

INFORMATION

The national holidays on the calendar are based on the law to amend the part of the Law Concerning National Holidays (law no. 43, May 20, 2005) (as of December 2006). However, the Vernal Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day may be different from the date in a calendar because they are based on the announcement from an official gazette on February 1 of the previous year. The above law went into effect on January 2007, however, the date and the name of some national holidays and substitute holidays before the end of 2006 are displayed as they are displayed after amendment to the law.

The calendar can display dates between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2060.

Setting display style for the calendar

Calendar View Mode

Default **Scroll mode: Monthly mode**
Display mode: Normal mode

1  (for over a second) ▶ **Menu**  

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press 

Scroll mode :

Set the calendar display mode when you move between dates by pressing .

- Set **Monthly mode** to switch the display every month and set to **Slide mode** to scroll the screen for each week.

Display mode :

Set the beginning of the week.

- Set **Normal mode** to be Sunday and set **Business mode** to be Monday.

Setting days off

Day Off Setting

You can set days off from the office or school. They can be set by specifying the date or day of the week.

- The maximum number of items that can be registered (by specifying dates) ◀P381

Example Setting days off by specifying dates

1  (for over a second)

2 Highlight the date to set to a day off ▶
 Press **Menu**   

The color of the date specified as a day off changes.

- To set a day off to be repeated yearly: Highlight the date to set to days off ▶ **Menu**   

Canceling: Highlight the day to cancel Day Off Setting ▶ **Menu**   

- To cancel all: **Menu**   

Setting days off by specifying the day of the week:

① **Menu**  

②  to  to select the day of the week to set to days off

- **Reset** is indicated in the guide row when a day of the week other than Sunday is selected or the selection of Sunday is canceled. Pressing **Menu** restores the default setting.

③

- If you register the calendar without selecting the day of the week, it returns to the default state.

Setting national holidays Holiday Setting

You can change and add holidays.

- The maximum number of items that can be registered P381

1 (for over a second) ▶

2

Changing: Select the holiday after Step 1
▶ Go to Step 3

Deleting: Highlight the holiday after Step 1
▶ ▶ Select Yes

- You cannot delete holidays set by default.

3 Select each item to set ▶ Press

Holiday :

Enter the holiday name (up to 22 one-byte or 11 two-byte characters).

- You cannot change the holiday name set by default.

Mark on calendar :

Specify whether to display the set holiday.

- If *ON* is set, the color of the day set to the holiday is changed and the name of the holiday which you highlight is displayed next to the date in the calendar screen. In the day view screen, and the name of the holiday is displayed.

Date :

Enter a date to set as a holiday.

- To change the date of holiday set by default, select *Change* and enter the date.

Registering the schedule

You can register multiple schedules for the same day.

- The maximum number of items that can be registered P381

1 (for over a second)

2 Highlight the date on which you want to register the schedule ▶

- In the day view screen, also press .

3 Select each item to set

Schedule	
All day	OFF
Start time	2007/05/20(Sun) 10:00
End time	2007/05/20(Sun) 10:00
Note	

(Item icon) :

Select an icon.

- The selected icon is indicated in the schedule heading.

Schedule (Description input column) :

The description equivalent for the selected icon is displayed. Change the description as required (up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters).

- The entered description is not changed if you replace the icon by another after changing the description.

All day :

Set whether to set the schedule to a day long event without specifying the time.

- If *ON* is set, the time and date display of the schedule is marked with *AllDay* on the day view screen. If *ON* is set for the long-term schedule, the date is followed by *AllDay*.

Start time :

Enter a start date and time for the schedule.

- You can set dates up to December 31, 2060.
- You cannot set the time if you set *All day* to *ON*.

End time :

Enter an end date and time for the schedule.

- If you set this later than the start date (Long-term schedule), is displayed at the upper right of the date set on the calendar screen. Also, appears under the item icon on the day view and schedule details screens.

Note :

Enter schedule details (up to 600 one-byte or 300 two-byte characters).

4 to switch to *Select members* screen

5 Select <*Select member list*> ▶ Select members to register

- Up to 5 members can be registered. You can make a call and also can send mail.
- The first phone number, mail address, URL in the phonebook data is registered.

Deleting: Highlight the member ▶

6 to switch to *Reminder* screen ▶

Select and set each item

Alarm on time (Schedule alarm) :

Set whether to sound an alarm.

- If you select *Yes* and select *i-motion*, *Melody* or *Music*, set the alarm sound.
- Setting music data ▶P102
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion when selecting ▶P102
- If you select *Yes* and *Terminal setting*, the alarm conforms to the setting of Schedule Reminder.

Alarm in advance :

Set whether to sound an alarm prior to the scheduled start time.

- The alarm sound selection method is the same as for *Alarm on time*.

Alarm before time :

Set how many minutes before the scheduled start time you want the alarm to sound.

7 to switch to *Other settings* screen ▶

Select and set each item

Repeat :

Set the details of the repeating schedule.

- When you set a 31st day or February 29 in a leap year as the schedule starting date and *Every month* or *Every year* is selected in the repeat setting, the schedule repeating date becomes the last day for the year/month without the specified date (that is, 30th or February 28).
- If *None* is selected, the schedule alarm is activated only once.
- If *Day of week* is selected, select *Day/Week* field. And select a day of the week when the alarm is sounded, then press .
- When you set a repeat for the schedule (Repeat schedule),  is displayed at the upper right of the date set on the calendar screen. However, the item icon appears only on the first repeating date on the calendar. Also,  appears under the item icon on the day view and schedule details screens.

Image :

Set the image to be displayed on the schedule alarm screen.

- When you select *Yes*, select *Image*, and then select an image. Flash movies cannot be set for images.
- If *No* is selected, the default image is displayed.

8 Press

- When a schedule set with an alarm or advance alarm is registered,  or  (when an alarm clock is also set) is indicated on the standby display.

Registering a schedule from the standby display

1 Enter the date and time (8 digits) to register schedule ▶

The schedule entry screen is displayed.

Example: For 3 p.m. on May 20: Enter "05201500"

- If you enter only hour and minute in 4 digits, the current date is assumed. However, if you enter hour and minute earlier than the current time, the next day is assumed.

2 Register the schedule

INFORMATION

If you delete the data specified as a schedule alarm or alarm in advance, *Terminal setting* is assumed.

It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of the contents of Scheduler.

The DoCoMo keitai datalink and the FOMA USB Cable (optional) can be used to send and save the data to the PC.

When the set time comes

1 The alarm sounds



Schedule alarm screen

The schedule alarm operates according to the settings. If an image or video/i-motion is set for the schedule alarm, it is displayed. If Created animation is set for the image, the first frame is displayed.

2 Press to stop the alarm

- Also the alarm stops when a minute has passed without any operation or any key or button other than  or the keylock switch is pressed. The displayed screen depends on the setting as follows:

Setting	Display
Image	Set image
video/i-motion	First frame

- When multiple schedules are set for the same date/time, you can check other schedules by  after stopping the alarm.

- Press  after the alarm stops and then schedule details screen appears. You can change the contents of the schedule. Follow Step 3 in "Checking saved schedule data".
- For alarm indication while another function is being used  P296
- The schedule does not operate when Privacy Mode is on (with *Schedule* set to *Authorized access*). When Secret Attribute is set, you need to set Secret Mode to enable the schedule. If the schedule alarm is not issued at the set date/time in any cases other than the above, see "When alarm clock does not ring at the set time".
 P297

INFORMATION

The alarm sounds at the volume set by *Schedule reminder* of Adjust Volume.

If a schedule alarm is set in Light Alert Setting or Vibrator Setting, lighting and vibration occur according to the settings.

An alarm in advance, when set, sounds before the schedule start time.

When you set schedule with *All day*, the alarm operates at 00:00 on the set date.

Setting defaults for the schedule alarm

Reminder Option

- If you change the defaults, it may not affect the settings of the registered schedules.

Default all Alarm:Yes

- 1  (for over a second) ▶   
- 2 Select each item to set ▶ Press 

Set by scheduler :

Set the default values of the schedule alarm for registering schedules from the calendar screen.

Set by quick-schedule :

Set the default of the schedule alarm for registering schedules from the standby display.

Checking saved schedule data

You can add, change and delete the schedules.

- 1  (for over a second)
- 2 Select the date of the schedule



Day view screen

- Pressing  in the day view screen switches dates.

Displaying schedules for the specific item only (Display by type):

- ①   
 - To show all items:   
 - In the day view screen, press   . To restore the all items display, press   .

② **Select an item icon**

The selected item icon appears on the upper right of the calendar screen and the day view screen. Only the schedules for which the icon is set are displayed.

- 3 Select the schedule to check



Details screen

Changing:

- ①  in the schedule details screen
 - In the day view screen, highlight a schedule and then press  .
- ② **Change the schedule data** ▶  ▶ **Select Yes**

INFORMATION

If the displayed schedule contains phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions can be used.

Copying/Pasting schedules

- When a long-term or repeat schedule is copied and pasted, the entire schedule is pasted in all the corresponding days.
- The copied schedule is memorized until Scheduler is ended and can be pasted on another date any number of times. However, only one item can be memorized and copying new schedule overwrites the retained item.

1  (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule

2 Highlight the schedule to copy ▶

3 

4 Highlight the date to paste the schedule to ▶ Press  

- In the day view screen, press   .

Composing mail

Schedules can be sent as a mail message.

- The number of schedule items that can be sent depends on the screen operated.

: Available x : Unavailable

Sending type \ Screen	Send selected item	Send selected day/ Send all*1
Calendar screen	x	
Day view screen		
Details screen		x

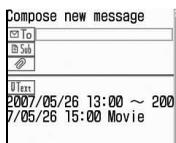
*1 Sends all saved schedules (including past schedules).

- Schedules are entered to a mail message in the Date To format. ●P312
- If schedule data exceeds the mail message capacity, the excessive part will be deleted.
- When schedules are displayed in the display mode by type, only the displayed items are inserted in the mail message.
- To send schedules for which Secret Attribute is set, set Secret Mode on.

Example Sending a schedule from the day view screen

1  (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule

2 Highlight the schedule to send ▶ Press



- To send all schedules registered for the selected day:    
- To send all saved schedules at once:    
- On the calendar screen, press    and then press  or .
- On the schedule details screen, press .

Attaching the schedule data to the mail

You can send the mail attaching 1 schedule data.

- You cannot perform the same operation from the calendar screen.

Example When attaching the schedule data from the day view screen

1  (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule

2 Highlight the schedule to send ▶ Press

- Press    on the schedule details screens.
- For composing/sending i-mode mail ●P189

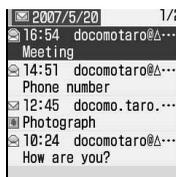
Searching mail

You can search mail sent and received on the day you select by using the schedule.

Example Searching received mail from the calendar screen

1  (for over a second) ▶ Highlight the date in which you want to search mail

2 Press    



- To display sent mail:    

- On the day view screen, press **Menu** **7** **2** **1** to display received mail. To display sent mail, press **Menu** **7** **2** **2**.
- How to view received/sent mail ➔ P205
- To cancel mail search: **Menu** **0**

Deleting schedules

- The number of schedule items that can be deleted depends on the screen operated.

○ : Available x : Unavailable

Deleting type \ Screen	Selected item	One day/ Before date/ Delete all
Calendar screen	x	
Day view screen		
Details screen		x

- If the long-term or repeat schedule is deleted, the schedule is deleted from all the days that include a long-term or repeat schedule in addition to the current day. Even when *Before date* is selected, if a long-term schedule includes the day before, all days of the schedule after the selected date are also deleted.

Example Deleting the schedule from the day view screen

1 **Menu** **7** **2** **1** (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule ▶ **Menu** **3**

2 **1** to **3**

- When *One day* or *Before date* is selected if the long-term schedule including the selected date is registered, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete the long-term schedule too.

Deleting all: **4** ▶ Enter the terminal security code

- If you delete the schedules without setting to Secret Mode, schedules with Secret Attribute set will not be deleted.

3 Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

On the calendar screen, press **Menu** and select *Delete One day, Before date* or *Delete all*.

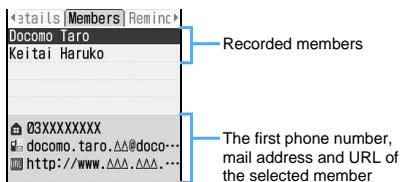
On the details screen, press **Menu** and select *Delete entry*.

Using the member list

Make calls or compose i-mode Mail by selecting a member from the member list recorded in a schedule.

1 **Menu** (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule

2 Select the schedule to use ▶ **Menu** to display the member list screen



- For members with Secret Attribute set, the name and detail information are masked with " * " unless Secret Mode is on. When Privacy Mode is activated (with *Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), the name and detail information of all members are also masked with " * ".

3 Use the Phonebook data

Making a voice/videophone call: Highlight a member ▶ **Menu** for a voice call, or **Menu** for a videophone call

Composing i-mode Mail: Highlight a member ▶ **Menu**

The selected mail address of the member is set for the receiver and the schedule is saved in the message in the Date To format.

- Press **Menu** **5** **2** to send i-mode Mail to all the members.

Displaying a site: Highlight a member ▶ **Menu** **6** ▶ Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

To use the second or subsequent phone number and mail address registered in the phonebook data, select a member from the member list screen to display the phonebook details screen. You can make a call or compose i-mode Mail by highlighting the phone number or mail address. Note that, if i-mode Mail is composed from the phonebook details screen, the schedule is not entered in the message and the Date To function cannot be used.

When you press **Menu** on the member list screen, the member selection screen appears enabling you to add or delete members.

Protecting secret schedules

Secret Attribute

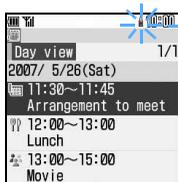
Once Secret Attribute is set, data can be displayed only in Secret Mode.

- Secret Attribute cannot be set or canceled when Secret Mode is not set.

1 Activate Secret Mode

2  (for over a second) on the standby display ▶ Select the date of the schedule

3 Highlight the schedule to set ▶ Press



 blinks when Secret Attribute is set for the highlighted schedule.

- To cancel: Highlight the schedule with Secret Attribute set ▶  
- To set or cancel on the schedule details screen, press  .

INFORMATION

The schedule to which Secret Attribute is set cannot be displayed unless Secret Mode is on. Secret Attribute is automatically set for schedules registered while Secret Mode is on.

Checking the number of registered schedule items

Check No. of Items

1  (for over a second) ▶ Press

INFORMATION

The number of registered items includes the schedules for which Secret Attribute is set.

Registering often-used functions

Custom Menu

In addition to the normal menu displayed by default by pressing , you can create your own menu by registering the functions you often use and menu items like a phonebook data (Custom Menu).

Reading a template

- The 4 types of preset templates are provided.
- When a template is read, all custom menu items are replaced.
- After reading a template, you can add, delete or replace menu items.

Default ON mode

1  

The custom menu is displayed.

- When *Custom* is set for *Default MENU* of Menu Setting, press  on the standby display.

2    ▶  to 

Standard :

Alarm Clock, Dictionaries, Calculator, Notepad, Music Player, Memory Status, Machi-chara Setting, Style Theme, Light Alert Setting

Data/Security :

My Picture, i-motion, My Document, Music Player, Secret Mode, Privacy Mode Setting, Key Lock Timer, All Lock, PIM Lock

ON mode :

My Document, Dictionaries, Calculator, Notepad, Scheduler, Bookmark, Home URL, Sound Recorder

OFF mode :

Software list, Bookmark, My Picture, i-motion, Melody, Still Camera, Movie Camera, Music Player

3 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select *Yes*

- A template is read and set in the custom menu.
- When all menu items in the custom menu have been deleted, the template is read after the terminal security code is entered.

Creating the custom menu

- Up to 9 menu items can be registered in a single level of the custom menu.

1 Read a template

- When you newly register all menu items, delete all the existing items in the custom menu before adding new items. To delete all **☛P306**

2 Add menu items

- When you attempt to overwrite a group, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite. Selecting *Yes* deletes all menu items in the group.

Registering people:

① Highlight a menu item to overwrite **▶**



- To add an item: **Menu** **1** **1**

② Select the person to register

- When the phonebook data with no image or the phonebook data that contains Flash movie or video/i-motion is registered in the custom menu, a pre-registered icon is displayed on the menu screen.

Registering functions:

① Highlight a menu item to overwrite **▶**



- To add an item: **Menu** **1** **2**

- The screen for selecting functions is displayed in the format of the normal menu set in Menu Setting. However, when the normal menu is set to *Animation* or *Simple display*, *Tile display* is applied.

② Highlight the menu item to register **▶**



- A menu item that does not have submenus can be registered by pressing a key corresponding to the item number or by selecting the menu item.

Registering groups:

Create group folders to save phonebook entries and functions grouped by purpose.

① Highlight a menu item to overwrite **▶**



- To add an item: **Menu** **1** **3**

② Enter a group name (up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters) **▶**

Registering in a group:

① Select a group

- When items are already registered in the group, the menu items in the group are displayed. Highlight an item to overwrite or add a new item.

② Select *Phonebook entry, Function or Group* **▶ Register an item**

The item is added to the group and all the menu items in that group are displayed.

- On the third level menu, you cannot create a group.

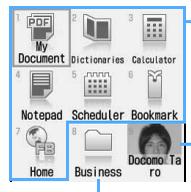
③ Add other menu items

Using the custom menu

You can execute functions registered in the custom menu, and also make a call to a person registered in it.

Example When executing functions

1 Display the custom menu **▶ Select the menu item**



Function

Person (making a call or checking detail information is available)
Group

- When the submenu exists for the selected function, the submenu items are displayed.
- To select a function from a group: Select the group **▶** Select a function in the group

Making a call: Highlight the person **▶  for a voice call, or  for a videophone call**

Composing i-mode Mail: Highlight the person **▶ **

Composing SMS: Highlight the person **▶  (for over a second)**

To execute registered functions quickly

A function registered in the first level of the custom menu can be started by holding down the corresponding dial key (**1** to **9**) for over a second on the standby display. However, when the menu item is a person or group or a menu that has submenus, the function is not activated.

INFORMATION

For a person to whom Secret Attribute is set in the phonebook, the name is displayed as “* * *” unless Secret Mode is on.  is displayed for the icon. Persons cannot be selected when PIM Lock or Privacy Mode is on (with *Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*). The icon changes to  and the name of the person is displayed as “* * *”. When Secret Attribute is set together with PIM Lock or Privacy Mode (with *Phonebook & Logs* set to *Authorized access*), the phone operations and icon display are the same as for PIM Lock or Privacy Mode.

Editing the custom menu

1 Display the custom menu ▶ Highlight a menu item

- To edit menu items in a group: Select a group

2 Perform each operation

Rearranging menu items:   ▶

Select the destination item ▶ Select *Yes*

Changing icons:   ▶ Select an icon

- To restore the icon:   ▶ 

Changing group names:   ▶ Enter the group name ▶ 

Deleting menu items:   ▶ Select *Yes*

- When the group is deleted, menu items in the group are also deleted.

Deleting all items in the custom menu

This operation is performed to create a new custom menu.

1 Display the custom menu ▶ ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select *Yes*

- Pressing  displays the item selection screen.

Registering your own name and mail address

Own Number

Default My phone number: subscribed phone number
Other than that: not recorded

1

Own number
Name
My phone number
090XXXXXXXX
Mail address

- *My phone number* shows the phone number of the UIM inserted in FOMA terminal.

2

3 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select each item to set ▶ Press

Edit own number 1/2
[Name]
[Reading]
[Select/Shoot image]
 090XXXXXXXX
 [Phone number]
 [Mail address]
 [Birthday]

- Press  to switch pages.

- For the setting procedure for each item, follow Step 3 of “Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook”. ◀P81
Note that phonebook No. and group cannot be set.
- The subscribed phone number (*My phone number*) is displayed in the first phone number location. It cannot be changed.

INFORMATION

Changing the mail address in Own Number does not change your i-mode Mail address. Similarly, changing your i-mode Mail address does not change the mail address in Own Number. For details on how to check and change an i-mode Mail address, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

Your phone number (*My phone number*) is registered in the UIM. If you enter other items, they will be registered on FOMA terminal.

Displaying Own Number details

1

2 Enter the terminal security code



- You can switch the display by pressing .
- If Caller ID Setting is enabled for registered phone numbers, appears on the right side of *Own info*.
- On the submenu of the Own Number details screen, the following operations can be performed as with the details screen for the phonebook:
 - Composing Mail P86
 - Composing SMS P86
 - URL access (Displaying sites) P86
 - Call Option*1 P54
 - Copy items P92
 - Caller ID Setting*1 P94
 - Connection Speed*1 P94
 - Mail address exchange P92
 - User information P90
 - View Preference P90

*1 excluding making calls to *My phone number*

Editing registered data: Edit registered data and press

Resetting registered data: Select *Yes*

Recording the voice and image

Voice Memo/Video Memo

Your voice can be recorded in standby as talking note (Standby Voice Memo) or the other party's voice and image can be recorded during a voice or videophone call (Talking Voice Memo/Video Memo).

- Talking Voice Memo and Standby Voice Memo can be recorded up to 30 seconds long for each message and up to 4 messages in total.

- Video Memo can be recorded for up to 30 seconds per message.
For the maximum number of saved video memos P381
- The recorded voice or image of Talking Voice Memo or Video Memo may be disrupted if the signal conditions are poor.
- Guidance messages such as out-of-service area notice or number change information cannot be recorded.

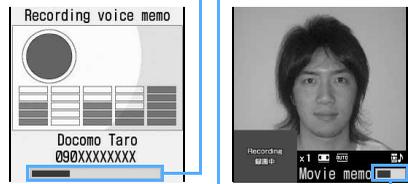
Recording voice or image of the other party while talking

Only the voice of the other party is recorded during a voice call. During a videophone call, the voice and image of the other party is recorded.

1 Hold down for over a second during a call

Recording starts.

An indication of the allowable recording time



Voice Memo during a voice call

Video Memo during a videophone call

- While recording a video memo, image with **Recording 録音中** is sent to the other party.
- Each time you press while recording a video memo, indication is switched between the allowable recording time and the call duration.
- When the remaining time reaches 5 seconds, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of message recording is approaching. A long beep is also heard at the end of the recording (this sound is not heard at the beginning of the recording). However, these beeps are not recorded.
- To stop recording: (for over a second)
- Video memos are saved in the *Camera* folder of *i-motion*.
How to replay the video/i-motion P258

Recording your own voice during standby

1 Press

After about 3 seconds, a beep is heard and the recording starts.

- When the remaining time becomes 5 seconds, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of recording is approaching. A long beep is heard at the end of the recording. This beep is not recorded.
- To cancel recording: , , or

Playing voice memos

1

The voice memo list shows both talking and standby voice memos.



1 Status icon

: Talking memo

No icon : Standby voice memo

2 Talking voice memo during an international call

3 Phone number/Name (when registering phone number in the phone book)

Reason for no caller ID/Standby voice memo

4 Date and time recorded of a voice memo highlighted, phone number/Reason for no caller ID

5 The name of multi-number (when making an application for the Multi Number service)

2 Select a voice memo



An indication of the elapsed playing time

The voice memo is played.

- To stop playback:
- To adjust the volume:
- To switch between on and off of speakerphone:

3 Select *Yes* or *No*

- When you select *Yes*, the voice memo you have heard is deleted.

Deleting a voice memo from the voice memo list: Highlight the voice memo ▶

▶ Select *Yes*

- To delete all: ▶ Select *Yes*

Registering phone number in the phonebook from the voice memo list:

① Highlight the talking voice memo to save ▶

- To add the number to the existing phonebook data: Highlight the talking voice memo to save ▶

② or ▶ Save the name and mail address ◀P81, P83

- To add the data to the existing phonebook data: or ▶ Select a party ▶ Edit phonebook data ◀P91

INFORMATION

Maintain the contents of voice/video memos in some other form. Recorded data may be lost due to failure, repair, change to new model or other handlings of FOMA terminal. If the data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

You can make calls by using talking voice memos.

Highlight a party in the voice memo list and press to make a voice call and to make a videophone call.

Checking the call duration and the call cost

Call Duration/Call Cost

The call duration and the call cost of the last and total of voice/videophone call can be checked.

- The duration includes the voice call, videophone call and 64K data communication, and the both of incoming and outgoing are counted for each.
- The call cost data is counted only for outgoing. However, when calling the toll-free party or the directory assistance service (104), "0 YEN" or "***** YEN" is displayed.
- The call cost is stored in the UIM, so stored total cost is displayed (starting from December 2004) when using the current UIM to FOMA terminal you newly purchased.
- For FOMA terminals released before 901i series, call cost data is stored in the UIM, but cannot be displayed.
- The displayed call duration and call cost can be reset.

- The displayed call duration and call cost are estimates and may be different from the actual. Note that the call cost does not include consumption tax.

Checking the call duration

1 Press **[Menu]** **[8]** **[6]** **[6]** **[1]**

- If the total duration of calls was reset in the past, the duration of the total calls made up to the present after the reset is displayed.

Last call :

The duration of the last voice/videophone call or of the last data communication

Total voice calls :

The total duration of voice calls made

Total videophone calls :

The total duration of videophone calls made

Total data sessions :

The total duration of data communication established

Reset:day&time(Voice) :

The last date and time when *Total voice calls* was reset

Reset:day&time(VP) :

The last date and time when *Total videophone calls* was reset

Reset:day&time(Data) :

The last date and time when *Total data sessions* was reset

Resetting the total calls duration:

① **[Menu]** on the call duration screen ▶

Enter the terminal security code

② **[1]** to **[4]** ▶ Select *Yes*

• To return to the call duration screen: **[Menu]**

Checking the call cost

1 Press **[Menu]** **[8]** **[6]** **[6]** **[2]** **[1]**

- If the total cost of calls was reset in the past, the cost of the total calls made up to the present after the reset is displayed.

Last call cost: Voice :

The cost of the last voice call

Last call cost: VP :

The cost of the last videophone call

Last call cost: Data :

The cost of the last data communication

Total calls cost :

The total cost of voice/videophone call and data communication

Reset: day & time :

The last date and time when *Total calls cost* was reset

Resetting the total call cost: **[Menu]** on the call cost screen ▶ Enter the PIN2 code ▶ Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

The fee for sending Chaku-moji is not included.

No last charge information appears as "***** YEN".

When you switch between the voice and videophone calls during a call, the last call cost shows the total amount of each call respectively. During the operation to switch, no call cost is required.

When the last or total duration of voice/videophone call or data communication exceeds 9,999 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting is restarted from 0 second.

When FOMA terminal is turned off, the last call duration is stored, but the last call cost is displayed as "***** YEN".

The duration of receiving a call and ringing time are not counted.

The call duration and call cost is not counted for i-mode communication and packet communication. For details of those usage fees, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" you received when you subscribed to i-mode.

Resetting the call cost automatically

Reset Call Cost

Total call cost is set to zero automatically on the 1st day of each month.

[Default] OFF

1 **[Menu]** **[8]** **[6]** **[6]** **[2]** **[4]**

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ **[1]**

• To cancel: Enter the terminal security code ▶ **[2]**

3 Enter the PIN2 code

INFORMATION

Even if the setting is *ON*, the setting is canceled when the UIM different from the one used during the setting is inserted and then turn the power on. It doesn't return to the previous setting even if the UIM used when setting it is inserted again.

When the setting is *ON*, the call cost will be reset if you change the date and time to the next month in Date and Time Setting.

When the setting is *ON*, if the terminal is not turned on or if you are talking on the terminal at 00 o'clock of the first day of the month, a reset will take place when you turn the power on or end the call.

If the setting is *ON*, the PIN2 code is required when you turn the power on and the terminal security code is required when you set the date and time.

Setting to notify the limit of call cost

Call Cost Limit

Set the maximum limit of call cost, and when the total call cost exceeds the set amount, it is notified with an alarm or icon.

- The amount shown in Call Cost Limit is only an estimate and should not be regarded as the actual amount for billing.

Default Alert: OFF

1 [Menu] [8] [6] [6] [2] [2]

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select and set each item ▶ Press [OK]

Alert :

Set whether to notify when the total call cost exceeds the set amount.

Limit :

Set the maximum amount of call cost (10 to 100,000 yen, 10 yen unit).

Alert method :

Select the alarm with icon, or the icon only.

Alert sound :

Select an alarm sound from the melody list when *Sound + icon display* is selected in *Alert method*.

- Playing and checking a melody when selecting ◀P102

Alert time :

Specify how many seconds alarm sound should ring (1 to 60 sec.). Available when *Sound + icon display* is selected in *Alert method*.

INFORMATION

If the call cost exceeds the maximum limit while talking or during communication, ¥ is displayed at the top of the display.

When *Sound + icon display* is set for *Alert method*, the alarm sounds and message informing that the call cost exceeds the maximum limit is displayed on the standby display after a call/communication. In the general silent mode, a message appears but the alarm does not sound. In the personalized silent mode, the alarm sounds according to the ring alert volume set for Customize Silent Mode. If the call cost exceeds the limit during a call or communication at 00 o'clock of the first day of the month when Reset Call Cost is set to ON, neither the alarm sounds nor the message appears.

The alarm sounds at the volume set for the call alert volume.

If any key is pressed or other function is started while an alarm is sounding, the alarm sound stops.

Even if the UIM is replaced after Call Cost Limit is set to ON, the setting is stored.

Removing the icon of alert

Hide Call Cost Icon

1 [Menu] [8] [6] [6] [2] [3] ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select Yes

Using Calculator

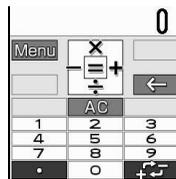
Calculator

You can perform addition, subtraction, multiplication and division (+, -, ×, ÷) on your FOMA terminal.

- Up to 8 digits can be entered.
- You can use Calculator from the entry fields for schedules and notes, and paste the result of a calculation into the entry field of the original screen. ▶P334

1 [Menu] [7] [4]

2 Make a calculation



Calculate using the dial keys (0 to 9) and (+, -, ×, ÷).

- To delete the last digit entered: [C]
- To delete all: [C/A]
- To enter a decimal point: [.]
- To switch the displayed value between the positive and negative: [+/-]

3 Press [Enter]

The calculation result is displayed.

- Pressing [C/A] deletes the calculation result.

Copying the calculation result: [Menu] [1]

- To paste the copied value: [Menu] [2]
- Only one number can be saved. The copied number is saved until copying a new number or FOMA terminal is turned off.
- A copied number can be pasted in the entry field of notes, the mail composition screen, etc. any number of times. You can also copy up to the first 8 one-byte digits of a number in the entry field of notes, the mail composition screen, etc. and paste them on the calculator screen.

- If the note data contains phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To or Web To functions can be used.

Editing notes:

- Follow Step 2 in "Composing notes".

Composing mail from the note:

INFORMATION

To switch between completed/uncompleted items on the notepad view screen, press and select *Completed* or *Uncompleted*.

To edit notes from the notepad list screen, press and select *Edit*.

To compose mail from the notepad list screen, highlight the note to use for a mail message, press and select *Compose message*.

Registering schedules from notes

You can register the content of notes to Scheduler from the submenu in Notepad or from the note written in Date To format.

Registering a schedule from the submenu

- ▶ Select a note ▶

The contents of the note is registered to the item of schedule as shown below:

Note content :

Registered to *Note*. Up to 600 one-byte or 300 two-byte characters can be registered.

Due date : Registered to *Start time/End time*.

If the due date is not to set, the date of schedule is set as current day.

- Category Icon/completed icon/uncompleted icon are not registered.

Registering a schedule from Date To format

Date To format is formed by the letter string below. All items are requisite.

Example

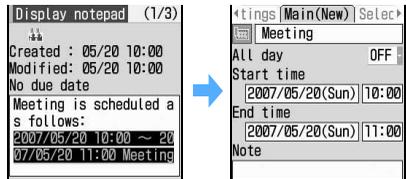


End time Description A linefeed is regarded as the end of a description.

- represents half-sized space. It is not actually displayed.
- Only one-byte characters can be used for date and time. The description can contain up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters. Any character exceeding the maximum number is deleted.
- The year is based on the Christian era and the time is in the 24-hour format. For a month and day from 1 to 9 or an hour and minute from 0 to 9, the preceding 0 can be omitted.

- ▶ Select the note written in Date To format

- Select the string written in Date To format ▶ Save it as schedule



INFORMATION

To register a schedule from the list of notes, highlight a note to save to schedule, press , and select *Add to schedule*.

Deleting notes

-
- Highlight a note ▶ ▶ Select *Yes*

Deleting selected notes: ▶ Select notes ▶

Deleting all notes: ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select *Yes*

Deleting completed notes: ▶ Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

To delete 1 note from the notepad view screen, highlight the note to delete, press , and select *Delete*.

Using electronic dictionaries

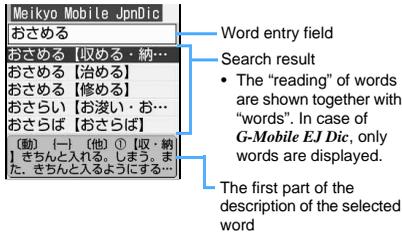
- The following electronic dictionaries are stored:
 - Meikyo Mobile Japanese Dictionary
 - G-Mobile Japanese-English Dictionary
 - G-Mobile English-Japanese Dictionary
- You can also select a word to search for from the search record (a list of words previously searched for). Up to 20 words can be saved in the search record. When you search for more than 20 words, the words exceeding this number will overwrite older words.
- For legends, see 辞典機能 (Dictionaries) stored in the *Preinstalled* folder of *My Document*. ●P279

Example Looking up “修める (cultivate)” in Meikyo Mobile Japanese Dictionary

1 [Menu] [7] [5] ▶ Select *Meikyo Mobile JpnDic*

2 Select the entry field ▶ Enter “おさめる”

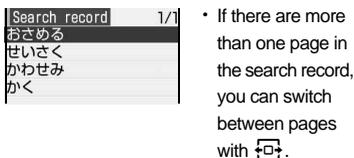
The search result is displayed.



- Up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters can be entered.
- To enter another word to search for while highlighting a word from the search result, press [Enter].
- A long word may be shown incompletely due to layout limitation.
- Some words may not be searched for correctly.

Searching using the search record:

[Menu] [1] ▶ Select a word



- To delete one word: Highlight a word ▶ [Menu] [1] ▶ Select *Yes*
- To delete two or more words: [Menu] [2] ▶ Select words ▶ [Enter] ▶ Select *Yes*

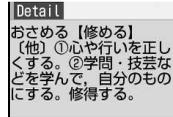
- To delete all words: [Menu] [3] ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select *Yes*

Searching other dictionaries: [Menu] [2] ▶ Select another dictionary ▶ Search

3 Select “おさめる【修める】”

- To switch between pages, press [Left Arrow].

4 Check detail information



- To return to the search screen: [Left Arrow]
- To show the detail information of the previous and next words: [Right Arrow]

Copying:

① [Menu] [1]

② Select a start position of the copying range ▶ Select an end position

- Press [Menu] [Down Arrow] to select all the text.
- Press [Cancel] to cancel the start position for selecting a new position.
- After specifying the start position, pressing [Menu] or [Enter] moves the cursor to the beginning or end of the text.

INFORMATION

To search another dictionary in the detail screen, press [Menu] and select *Search other dict.*

Using the Earphone/Microphone with Switch

Earphone/Microphone with Switch

By connecting the optional Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (including the Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set) to the earphone/microphone jack, it is possible to make or receive calls simply by pressing the switch.

- It is not possible to make a videophone call by pressing the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch.
- Use the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 (optional) for the existing earphone/microphone.

Connecting the Earphone/Microphone with Switch

To connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch to FOMA terminal, open the cover of the earphone/microphone jack and insert the connection plug of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch. ●P25

- Do not wrap the cord of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch around FOMA terminal. Reception level of radio waves may deteriorate.
- When the cord of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch is near to the antenna of FOMA terminal, a noise may be emitted.
- Insert the plug firmly. If it is not inserted completely, there may be audio disruption.

Making voice calls by pressing the switch

By registering a phone number to the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Key Control, it is possible to make a voice call to that number only by pressing the switch on the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch.

1 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear two short beeps

A voice call will be made to the first registered phone number of the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Key Control.

2 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear a short beep to end the call

INFORMATION

If Secret Attribute has been set for the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Key Control, Secret Mode must be activated before operating. Even if Call Waiting Service is subscribed and activated, you cannot make another call during a call by entering the number of a third party and pressing the switch. Be aware that pressing the switch will terminate the first call.

Receiving calls by pressing the switch

1 When a call arrives, hold down the switch for over a second until you hear two short beeps

2 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear a short beep to end the call

INFORMATION

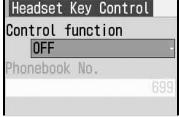
When Call Waiting Service is subscribed and activated, you can receive an incoming voice call during a call by holding down the switch for over a second.

Setting the earphone/microphone switch operation

Headset Key Control

Set the number you call using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch by selecting the phonebook No. of the FOMA terminal phonebook.

Default OFF

- 1     
- 2 Select **Control function** field ▶ 

 - To cancel:  ▶ 
- 3 Select **Phonebook No.** field
- 4 Select the receiver ▶ Press 

INFORMATION

When the phonebook data of the Phonebook No. set by this function is deleted or overwritten with other data, or the Phonebook No. is changed, this setting is canceled.

Answering a call automatically with the earphone/microphone connected

Auto Answer

When using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch, this sets whether to receive an incoming call automatically.

When a voice or videophone call is automatically received, the voice of the other party is heard from the connected earphone/microphone.

- If an incoming call is received during a call, this function is not activated.
- This function does not work in Public mode (Driving mode).

Default OFF

- 1     
- 2 Select **Auto answering** field ▶ 
 - To cancel:  ▶ 
- 3 Select **Delayed time(Sec)** field ▶ Enter the time (0 to 120 sec) before answering automatically ▶ Press 

INFORMATION

When a videophone call is answered by Auto Answer, the substitute image set in Videophone Image Setting is sent and a videophone call is automatically started.

When this function and Answer Machine, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service are set simultaneously, the set ringing time determines which function will be used.

The same time period cannot be set for both the delayed time of Auto Answer and the response time of Answer Machine.

When the value set for the delayed time is within the time set by Mute Ring Time Setting, Auto Answer does not answer a call coming from a party not saved in the phonebook.

Hearing the ring alert only through the earphone

Alert Preference

When connecting the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch, you can set to hear the ring alert only through the earphone of the headset.

Default Headset only

1

2 Press

- To hear the ring alert both through the earphone and the speaker:

INFORMATION

Even when you set to *Headset only*, you will also hear the ring tone through the speaker when 20 seconds pass without answering a call.

Reducing the start-up time after power-on

Quick Start-up

Default ON

1

2 Press

- To cancel:

INFORMATION

Even when you set to *ON*, it takes the normal time to start up in the following cases:

- When the remaining battery level is 2 or lower
- When the battery pack is replaced
- When 24 hours pass after the power was turned off

It may also take the normal time to start up after you turn the power off with any other screen than the standby display or while is being displayed just after power-on.

Checking current settings of functions

Confirm Settings

- During PIM Lock, the specific setting of the item being locked is displayed as “---”.

1

Current setting for the mode is displayed.

2 to confirm the settings

- Press to switch between pages.

Resetting functions

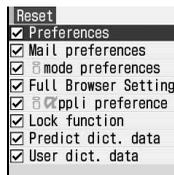
Reset

This resets functions to their default settings.

- For the functions to be returned to the default settings by resetting, see “Menu list”. The following functions and data, though not mentioned in “Menu list”, are also reset to the default settings:
 - When *Preferences* is selected: Silent Mode, Public mode (Driving mode), Call cost icon, Input history of face marks, Input history of symbols and pictograms
 - When *Full Brower Settings* is selected: Cookie information, Pointer mode, View position setting, Search setting
 - When *Predict dict. data* is selected: Data recorded using the input prediction function

1

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select the item



3 ▶ Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

If you reset functions to their default settings, both *ON mode/OFF mode* will be reset.

If you reset *i-mode preferences*, i-channel information will not be displayed in a ticker on the standby display. When this happens, if the i-channel information is automatically updated or if you press  on the standby display to display the channel list, the latest information is received and you can display it in a ticker on the standby display.

Deleting registered data collectively

Delete All Data

Deletes the saved data and returns the settings of the functions to the default.

- Protected data are also deleted.
- Delete All Data should be done with battery fully charged. If the battery power is not enough, the data may not be deleted collectively.
- The following data preinstalled by default are deleted:
 - i- ppli
 - Chara-den
 - Images in the *Deco-mail picture*, *Deco-mail pict* and *Item* folders in Data Box
 - Machi-chara
- The following data saved or registered are deleted:
 - Chaku-moji message (including sent message log)
 - Mail template
 - Mail group
 - Bookmark
 - Entered URL
 - URL history
 - Screen memo
 - Last visited URL
 - i-channel (received info)
 - i- ppli
 - i- ppli display history
 - Phonebook data
 - Phonebook communication log of Data Security Service
 - Received call history
 - Redial data
 - Voice memo
 - Data read by Bar Code Reader
 - Notepad
 - Call duration
 - Saved word/fixed phrase
 - Registered USSD
 - Recorded answering message
 - Own Number data (except for *My phone number*)
 - Search record of dictionaries
 - Created folders/albums
 - Message R/F
 - i-mode Mail
 - Chat mail
 - SMS message
 - Recorded message (including the greeting)
 - Data in folders other than the *Preinstalled* and *Mail attach melody* folders in Data Box
 - Downloaded dictionaries
 - Schedule
 - Machi-chara
 - Original certificate

- The functions*1 to be returned to the default by Reset and the following functions return to the default:
 - Sort Criteria
 - Answer Machine
 - Settings made in the chat mail screen
 - Still Camera
 - Movie Camera
 - Sound Recorder
 - Terminal security code
 - Privacy Mode Setting
 - Data and Time Setting
 - External Device
 - Reset Call Cost
 - Arrival call act
 - Menu Setting
 - Changed folder name
 - Custom Menu
 - i-mode Shortcut for bookmark
 - Settings made in the i- ppli software list screen
 - Settings made in the phonebook screen
 - *Sync setting* of Data Security Service
 - Settings made with Scheduler
 - Settings for *My Picture/i-motion/Melody/My Document/Chara-den*
 - Data Exchange Setting by infrared communication
 - Settings for Music Player
 - Alarm Clock
 - Software Update (Reserved Update)
- *1 SMS settings other than *SMS report request* and the settings in Manage Certificate other than CA certificate 1 to 11 will not return to the default.

- 1      ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select *Yes*
Data are deleted collectively during reboot.

INFORMATION

The following data will not be deleted. The default settings cannot be restored either.

- The data saved, registered or set in the UIM
- Data communication setting set via a PC
- Mails in *ドコモからのお知らせ* (Information from DoCoMo)  (The deleted mail will be restored.)

If there are large capacity data to be deleted, about 1 minute may be required to reboot. Be careful not to turn off the power before completing the operation.

If you perform Delete All Data, i-channel information will not be displayed in a ticker on the standby display. If the i-channel information is automatically updated or if you press  on the standby display to display the channel list, the latest information is received and you can display it in a ticker on the standby display.

If the data or i- ppli preinstalled by default are deleted, they can be downloaded from i-mode site "My D-style" (P347). Packet communication fee is required separately to download.

Network Services

Network services available using FOMA terminal	Network Service	318
Using Voice Mail Service	Voice Mail	318
Using Call Waiting Service	Call Waiting	319
Using Call Forwarding Service	Call Forwarding	320
Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Nuisance Call Blocking	321
Using Caller ID Request Service	Caller ID Request	321
Using Dual Network Service	Dual Network	321
Switching languages for the guidance	English Guidance	322
Using Service Dialing Number	Service Dialing Number	322
Setting actions to receive incoming calls during a call		322
Setting Remote Control	Remote Control	323
Using Multi Number	Multi Number	323
Using OFFICEED	OFFICEED	324
Registering new network services	Added Service (Register USSD)	324

In this manual, the description of each network service is explained by the operation procedure using the menu of FOMA terminal. For details, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network Services]”.

Network services available using FOMA terminal

Network Service

You can use network services provided by DoCoMo listed below on your FOMA terminal. For overview and usage of each service, see each page in the table below.

Service	Application	Monthly fee	Page
Voice Mail Service	Required	Charged	P318
Call Waiting Service	Required	Charged	P319
Call Forwarding Service	Required	Free	P320
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Required	Free	P321
Caller ID Request Service	Not required	Free	P321
Dual Network Service	Required	Charged	P321
English Guidance	Not required	Free	P322
Multi Number	Required	Charged	P323
Public mode (Driving mode)	Not required	Free	P66
Public mode (power off)	Not required	Free	P67
OFFICEED	Required	Charged	P324

- Network services are not available when you are outside the service area or the area where radio waves reach.
- For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
- For applications and inquiries, contact the DoCoMo Information Center listed on the back cover of this manual.
- Application is required for using the OFFICEED service. For more information, visit the DoCoMo website for business customers at <http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/> (in Japanese only).

Using Voice Mail Service

Voice Mail

This service answers incoming voice/videophone calls with an answering message and lets callers leave their message to store in the Voice Mail Service Center even when you are in an area where radio waves do not reach, turn off your FOMA terminal or cannot answer the call.

- When both Answer Machine (P68) and Voice Mail Service are used simultaneously, set the ringing time for Voice Mail Service shorter than the response time for Answer Machine to give priority to Voice Mail Service.
- When Voice Mail Service is activated, unanswered voice/videophone calls are recorded as *Missed calls* in the received call history and  1 (with the number of messages) is indicated on the standby display.

Basic flow of Voice Mail Service

- Step 1** : Activate the service
- Step 2** : The caller records a voice/videophone message
- Step 3** : Play back the voice/videophone message

Operation procedure

1    

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Activate	   Select Yes  Select Yes  Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec)
Set ring time	   Select Yes  Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec)
Deactivate	   Select Yes
Check setting	   Select Yes • You can change the setting by the submenu. Activate Voice Mail :   Deactivate Voice Mail :   Set Ring Time :  
Play messages	When a new message arrives,  1 (with the number of messages) is indicated on the standby display.    Select Yes  Follow the voice guidance
Voice Mail setting	   Select Yes  Follow the voice guidance
Check messages	   Select Yes When a new message arrives,  1 (with the number of messages) is indicated on the standby display.

Item	Operation procedure
Tone/Vibration message notification Default Voice Mail alert: ON Notification melody: メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B)	You can set an alert tone to sound when the caller left a new message, or when the number of messages has increased at the time you perform <i>Check messages</i> . ①  ▶ Select Voice Mail alert field ②  • To disable the alert tone:  ▶ Go to Step ④ ③ Select Notification melody field ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a melody ④ 
Notify missed call; Activate	When FOMA terminal is turned on or within the service area, this function notifies you of the calls received with FOMA terminal turned off or outside the service area using SMS.   ▶ Select Yes ▶ Select Yes/No Yes: Notifies only the incoming calls with caller ID. No: Notifies all the incoming calls.
Notify missed call; Deactivate	  ▶ Select Yes
Notify missed call; Check setting	  ▶ Select Yes
Hide Voice Mail icon	 ▶ Select Yes The icon that indicates the number of voice messages disappears.

INFORMATION

New messages can be played quickly from the standby display. ◀P31

The 32K videophone call is not supported by Voice Mail Service.

The number of messages displayed shows the number of new messages provided by guidance when the messages are played, which does not include the number of saved voice messages.

Dial "1412" during a voice call to use Voice Mail Service on the videophone.

When you are connecting to the Voice Mail Service Center while sending Chara-den on the videophone, switch to Send DTMF by selecting from the submenu to operate this service. ◀P48

When a new message is kept by videophone call, you are informed it by SMS.

Using Call Waiting Service

Call Waiting

Call Waiting Service notifies you of incoming calls with the call waiting ring alert while you are on a call. You can put the active call on hold while you answer the other incoming call. Also you can make another call while putting the current call on hold.

- You need to set *Arrival call act* (▶P322) to *Answer* before using Call Waiting Service. When *Arrival call act* is set to any items other than *Answer*, you cannot respond the incoming voice calls during a voice call even after setting up Call Waiting Service.

1     

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
<i>Activate</i>	 ▶ Select Yes
<i>Deactivate</i>	 ▶ Select Yes
<i>Check setting</i>	 ▶ Select Yes

Putting the current call on hold to answer an incoming call:

1 during a call

The current call is put on hold and the second call can be answered.

- Multi connecting* appears on the screen.
- To switch the other parties: 
- You can put your current call on hold by pressing . Press  again to release the hold.
- To end the call on hold:   during Call Waiting (multi-connection)

2 Press when you finish talking to the other party

The call is ended and the ring alert sounds.

- To resume talks with the other party on hold:



Answering an incoming call after finishing the current call

1 during a call

A ring alert sounds to indicate there is an incoming call.

2 Press

You can receive a new call.

Holding the current call and making another call

1 Enter the phone number during a call

- You can select the other party's phone number from the received call history by pressing , from the redial data by pressing , or from the phonebook by pressing  instead of entering the phone number.

2

Your current call is automatically put on hold and you can begin talking to the other party you called.

- Multi connecting* appears on the screen.
- To switch the other parties: 
- You can put your current call on hold by pressing . Press  again to release the hold.
- To end the call on hold:   during Call Waiting (multi-connection)

3 Press when you finish talking to the other party you called

The call is ended and the ring alert sounds.

- To resume talks with the other party on hold: 

INFORMATION

During multi-connection, you cannot receive another incoming call. Unanswered calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.

Using Call Forwarding Service

Call Forwarding

Call Forwarding Service forwards automatically incoming voice/videophone calls to another phone number even when you are in an area where radio waves do not reach, turn off your FOMA terminal or cannot answer the call within the ringing time you have set.

- When both Answer Machine (P68) and Call Forwarding Service are used simultaneously, set the ringing time for Call Forwarding Service shorter than the response time for Answer Machine to give priority to Call Forwarding Service.
- When Call Forwarding Service is activated, unanswered voice/videophone calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history and  1 (with the number of messages) is indicated on the standby display.

Basic flow of Call Forwarding Service

Step 1 : Set the forwarding destination phone number

Step 2 : Activate Call Forwarding Service

Step 3 : Calls come in to your FOMA terminal

Step 4 : The unanswered calls are automatically forwarded to the previously specified destination

Operation procedure

1     

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
<i>Activate</i>	 ▶ Select Yes ▶ Select Yes ▶ Enter the forwarding destination phone number (up to 26 digits) ▶  ▶ Select Yes ▶ Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Before selecting the entry field for a phone number, you can set the phone number from the phonebook by pressing , from the redial data by pressing , or from the received call history by pressing .
<i>Deactivate</i>	 ▶ Select Yes
<i>Register The Forwarding Number</i>	 ▶ Enter the forwarding destination number ▶  ▶ Select Yes
<i>Setting if forwarding number busy</i>	Set Voice Mail Service to handle calls when the forwarding destination is busy.  ▶ Select Yes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To cancel the setting: Select No
<i>Check setting</i>	 ▶ Select Yes

Setting the guidance on/off

1      ▶ Follow the voice guidance

Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service

Nuisance Call Blocking

You can register to avoid receiving nuisance calls such as crank calls. After registering a phone number as nuisance caller, you can automatically reject the call from the phone number and you can answer it with voice guidance.

- The calls from the phone numbers registered as nuisance callers are not recorded in the received call history and your FOMA terminal dose not ring even when you receive them.

1 **Menu** **8** **7** **6** **3**

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
<i>Register the caller</i>	The phone number of the last call response is registered as nuisance caller. The phone numbers you did not answer such as missed calls cannot be registered. 1 ▶ Select Yes
<i>Register selected No</i>	2 ▶ Select Yes ▶ Enter the phone number to reject (up to 22 digits) ▶ OK ▶ Select Yes • Before selecting the entry field for a phone number, you can set the phone number from the phonebook by pressing Menu , from the redial data by pressing ☒ , or from the received call history by pressing ☒ .
<i>Delete all entries</i>	3 ▶ Select Yes
<i>Delete last entry</i>	The last registered phone number is deleted. Repeating the same operation, you can delete the registered phone number one by one from the last. 4 ▶ Select Yes
<i>Check the number of entries</i>	5 ▶ Select Yes

Using Caller ID Request Service

Caller ID Request

For incoming voice/videophone calls without the caller ID, you can answer with the voice guidance to request the callers to notify their caller ID and then automatically end the call.

- The calls which have been blocked by Caller ID Request Service are not recorded in the received call history and **1** (with the number of messages) is not displayed on the standby display.

1 **Menu** **8** **7** **4** **2**

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
<i>Activate</i>	1 ▶ Select Yes
<i>Deactivate</i>	2 ▶ Select Yes
<i>Check setting</i>	3 ▶ Select Yes

Using Dual Network Service

Dual Network

This service allows you to use a mova terminal with the phone number of your FOMA terminal. You may choose to use FOMA or mova terminal depending on which service area you are in.

- FOMA terminal and mova terminal cannot be used at the same time.
- You can perform operation to switch Dual Network Service from the FOMA or mova terminal which is not available for the service.

Activating mova terminal

- 1 Dial "1540" on the mova terminal
- 2 Follow the voice guidance

Activating FOMA terminal

Switch Dual Network Service that is being used by the mova terminal to FOMA terminal.

1 **Menu** **8** **7** **6** **5**

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
<i>Dual Network Switching</i>	1 ▶ Select Yes ▶ Enter the network security code
<i>Check setting</i>	2 ▶ Select Yes

Switching languages for the guidance

English Guidance

You can set the voice guidance on setting network services such as Voice Mail Service or for informing that you are outside service area to English.

1 **Menu** **8** **7** **6** **4**

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Guidance setting	<p>① 1 ▶ Select Yes</p> <p>② 1 or 2</p> <p><i>Japanese:</i> Sets the guidance for you to hear at the time of calling to Japanese.</p> <p><i>English:</i> Sets the guidance for you to hear at the time of calling to English.</p> <p>③ Select Yes ▶ 1 to 3</p> <p><i>Japanese:</i> Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to Japanese.</p> <p><i>Japanese+English:</i> Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to Japanese followed by English.</p> <p><i>English+Japanese:</i> Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to English followed by Japanese.</p>
Check setting	2 ▶ Select Yes

Using Service Dialing Number

Service Dialing Number

With Service Dialing Number, you can make a call to DoCoMo for Repairs or DoCoMo for General Inquiries.

- Different item or no item may be displayed on your FOMA terminal depending on the type of UIM.

1 **Menu** **8** **7** **6** **6**

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
ドコモ故障問合せ (DoCoMo for Repairs)	<p>1 ▶ Select Yes</p> <p>A call is made to DoCoMo for Repairs.</p>

Item	Operation procedure
ドコモ総合案内・ 受付 (DoCoMo for General Inquiries)	<p>2 ▶ Select Yes</p> <p>A call is made to the DoCoMo Information Center.</p>

Setting actions to receive incoming calls during a call

If you have subscribed to Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service and Call Waiting Service, you can set which service you use to respond the incoming voice/videophone calls or 64K data communication while you are on a call.

- When this function is set to *Answer* or *Voice Mail*, it is not activated even if you receive 64K data communication during a call.
- When this function is set to *Answer*, it is not activated even if you receive a videophone call during a call.
- If you have not subscribed to Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service and Call Waiting Service yet, you cannot respond the incoming calls while you are on a call.
- To use *Arrival call act*, you need to set *Set arrival act* to *Activate*.

1 **Menu** **8** **7** **6**

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
<i>Arrival call act</i> Default <i>Answer</i>	<p>Set how incoming calls are handled while talking on the phone.</p> <p>9 ▶ 1 to 4</p> <p><i>Answer:</i> If Call Waiting Service is set to <i>Activate</i>, it is activated. If Call Waiting Service is set to <i>Deactivate</i>, following operations are available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • You can finish a voice call or 64K data communication and then answer the incoming voice call. • You can use Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service for voice calls during a voice call or reject receiving them from the submenu. • If Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is set to <i>Activate</i>, each service is activated. <p><i>Voice Mail:</i> Incoming voice/videophone calls received during a call or 64K data communication are handled by Voice Mail Service.</p>

Item	Operation procedure
Arrival call act Default Answer	Call Forwarding: Incoming voice/videophone calls or 64K data communication received during a call or 64K data communication are forwarded. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The 64K data communication received during a 64K data communication cannot be forwarded. Call Rejection: Incoming voice/videophone calls or 64K data communication received during a call or 64K data communication are rejected.
Set arrival act; Activate	Activate the response method selected by Arrival call act. [8] [1] ▶ Select Yes
Set arrival act; Deactivate	[8] [2] ▶ Select Yes
Set arrival act; Check setting	[8] [3] ▶ Select Yes

INFORMATION

Even if **Arrival call act** is set to any of the above, calls will be recorded in the received call history.

Setting Remote Control

Remote Control

This service allows you to control Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service from touch-tone general subscriber phones, payphones or DoCoMo mobile phones.

1 [Menu] [8] [7] [6] [2]

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Activate	[1] ▶ Select Yes
Deactivate	[2] ▶ Select Yes
Check setting	[3] ▶ Select Yes

Using Multi Number

Multi Number

Up to 2 additional numbers (**Additional No1** and **Additional No2**) can be used besides **Basic Number** for the phone number of your FOMA terminal.

- If you pull out the UIM or replace it by another UIM, the settings for Multi Number saved in FOMA terminal (name, phone number etc.) may be deleted. In this case, however, you can register them again.
- The names corresponding to the multi-numbers (**Basic Number/Additional No1/Additional No2**) are displayed on the screen while you are dialing/receiving calls.
- When you make a call from the redial data or received call history, the multi-numbers which have been used for the previous incoming/outgoing calls are displayed and you make the call from the numbers.

1 [Menu] [8] [7] [6] [7]

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Set Multi Number	You can set a number for making calls by switching multi-numbers in this setting. [1] ▶ [1] to [3] ▶ Select Yes
Check setting	[2] ▶ Select Yes
Number Setting Default Basic Number: 基本契約番号/ my phone number Additional No1: 付加番号 1 /Not recorded Additional No2: 付加番号 2/Not recorded Multi number call: Disable	Set the phone number subscribed to Multi Number. [3] ▶ Select each item to set ▶ [0] Name: Setting is available for each Additional No1/Additional No2 (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters). For Basic Number , the name set in Own Number is displayed. Phone number: Set the subscribed phone number in Additional No1/Additional No2 . Multi number call: If set to Enable , you can make a call by selecting the number to be shown to the receiver from the submenu.
Incoming calls melody setting Default OFF	Set the ring alert etc. for each additional number. [4] ▶ [1] or [2] ▶ Select each item to set ▶ [0] Individual setting: Select whether to set the incoming call setting individually. Ring alert, Show image: Setting procedure ◀P63

Making calls by selecting the number to notify the other party

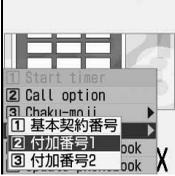
When making a call, you can select the number you want to show to the other party.

- When **Multi number call** is set to **Disable** in **Number Setting**, multi-numbers cannot be selected.

1 Enter a phone number ▶ **Menu** **4**

- To make a call from the redial data: **☎** ▶
Highlight a party ▶ **Menu** **3**
- To make a call from the received call history:
☎ ▶ Highlight a party ▶ **Menu** **3**

2 **1** to **3** ▶ Press **Menu**



INFORMATION

In the redial data, the names corresponding to the multi numbers used when dialing are displayed.

In the received call history, the names corresponding to the received multi-numbers are displayed.

When making a call from the redial data or received call history and the name corresponding to the multi-number which was used for dialing/receiving is not displayed, the multi-number specified in *Set Multi Number* will be used.

Using OFFICEED

OFFICEED

OFFICEED is the flat rate service in a group provided by specified IMCS (Inbuilding Mobile Communication System). You need to separately subscribe to use OFFICEED. For more information, visit the DoCoMo website for business customers at <http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/> (in Japanese only).

1 **Menu** **8** **7** **5**

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Area display setting Default OFF	Set whether to display OFFICEED on the standby display when you are in the OFFICEED service area. 1 ▶ 1 or 2
Start forwarding	2 ▶ Select Yes
Stop forwarding	3 ▶ Select Yes
Check fwd setting	4 ▶ Select Yes

Registering new network services

Added Service (Register USSD)

When a new network service is added by DoCoMo, you can use the service by registering it in the menu.

1 **Menu** **8** **7** **6** **1**

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Register USSD	<p>Registering: 1 ▶ Highlight the number to record/change the service ▶ ☎ ▶ Select USSD code field ▶ Enter the USSD code ▶ Select Name field ▶ Enter the service name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) ▶ ☎</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Up to 10 services can be registered. • Enter the service code provided by DoCoMo in the USSD code field. The service code is a code used to make the settings for network services. It is registered as the USSD code in FOMA terminal. <p>Using the services: 1 ▶ 1 to 3</p> <p>The registered code is transmitted to the Service Center.</p> <p>Deleting the registered services: 1 ▶ Highlight a service ▶ Menu 1 (To delete all the services: Menu 2) ▶ Select Yes</p>
Record reply message	<p>Register the message corresponding to the code that will be returned from the Service Center when an added service is executed. This message is displayed when the recorded code is returned as a reply.</p> <p>Registering: 2 ▶ 1 to 8 ▶ Select USSD code field ▶ Enter the USSD code ▶ Select Reply message field ▶ Enter the message (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) ▶ ☎</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Up to 10 messages can be registered. <p>Deleting the registered messages: 2 ▶ Highlight a message ▶ Menu 1 (To delete all the messages: Menu 2) ▶ Select Yes</p>

Data Communication

Data communication	326
Before usage	326
Flow of setup for data communication	327
AT command	328
CD-ROM	328
DoCoMo keitai datalink	328

For data communication, see the PDF version of “Manual for Data Communication” in CD-ROM provided for details. To see the PDF version of “Manual for Data Communication”, Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, please install Adobe Reader in CD-ROM mentioned above beforehand. For details on how to use, refer to the Help menu of Adobe Reader.

Data communication

The data communication modes available from FOMA terminal and hints on use are explained.

- FOMA terminal does not support fax communication or the Remote Wakeup.
- Data communication can be executed by connecting FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's PDA, "musea", "sigmarion" or "sigmarion". To use "musea" or "sigmarion", update is required. For details on update, etc., visit the DoCoMo website.
- This FOMA terminal does not support IP connection.

Supported data communication via FOMA terminal

FOMA terminal supports 3 communication modes: packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer.

These communications become available by installing the related software onto a PC from the attached CD-ROM, connecting FOMA terminal to the PC and making required settings.

Packet communication

Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which make it suitable for high-speed exchange of relatively small amounts of data such as sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible.

High-speed packet communication provides a maximum reception speed of 384 kbps and a maximum transmission speed of 64 kbps by using access points that support packet communication on FOMA, such as DoCoMo's "mopera U / mopera" Internet connection service. These are offered by the best-effort connection which allows transmission speed to vary with the environment and the rate of congestion.

Note that communications of large-size data such as for viewing and downloading websites containing images will require high charges.

64K data communication

The 64K data communications allow data transfer/reception at stable communication rate of 64 kbps. Communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, which make it suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents. You need to use

access points that support FOMA 64K data communication such as DoCoMo's "mopera U / mopera" Internet connection service or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps access points.

Note that communicating for long time will require high charges.

Data transfer

It is the mode of non-charged communication in which various data including the phonebook, mails and bookmarks are transferred/exchanged.

- Data can be transferred to another FOMA terminal, mobile phone or PC via the infrared communication as well.

Before usage

Checking operating environment

For data communication, the operating environment of PC is as follows:

Item	Requirements
PC*1	PC/AT compatible computer
OS*2	The Japanese version of Windows 2000 or XP
Memory requirements	Windows 2000: 64 MB or more Windows XP: 128 MB or more
Hard disk capacity	5 MB or more free disk space

*1 USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) is required.

*2 The operation from OS upgrading is not covered by the warranty.

INFORMATION

Note that utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. Furthermore, operation will not be guaranteed in an environment other than that described above or by upgrading the OS and DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for operation under such conditions.

Required devices

The following hardware and software are required in addition to FOMA terminal and a PC:

- FOMA USB Cable (optional) or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional)
- Attached CD-ROM "CD-ROM for FOMA D703i"

INFORMATION

Purchase a dedicated "FOMA USB Cable" or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 for a USB cable*1. A USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector does not fit.

*1 In this manual, FOMA USB Cable is used for explanation.

Usage precautions

Internet service provider usage charge

When using the Internet from PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (hereinafter called provider) is generally required. This charge is paid directly to the provider, and is separate from the FOMA service charge. For more information on usage charges, contact your provider.

- DoCoMo provides 2 Internet connection services: mopera U and mopera. The mopera U service requires subscription and a monthly fee. It allows you to use broadband Internet connection services. There is also a plan that requires a monthly fee only when you use the service. The mopera service allows you to access the Internet without subscription and monthly fee. You can make a connection with Internet immediately. For details on charges, etc., visit the DoCoMo website.

Setting the dialup connection (provider, etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps data communication.

- You cannot connect to access points of PHS 64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS or DoPa.

User authentication during network access

Some dialup connections require user authentication (ID and password) before a connection can be established. If user authentication is required, you must use your communication software or dialup network to enter your ID and password before connection. Your ID and password will be assigned by the provider or network administrator of in-house LAN, etc. For more information, contact your provider or network administrator.

Access authentication when using PC browser

To authenticate FirstPass (user certificate), you must install FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and configure it. For details, see “[簡易操作マニュアル\(Simple User's Manual\) \(FirstPassManual.pdf\)](#)” in the CD-ROM.

To view “[簡易操作マニュアル\(Simple User's Manual\) \(FirstPassManual.pdf\)](#)”, Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If Adobe Reader is not

installed in your PC, please install Adobe Reader in CD-ROM mentioned above beforehand. For details on how to use, refer to the Help menu of Adobe Reader.

Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication from FOMA terminal, the following conditions must be satisfied.

- The PCs which may use the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- You must be within the FOMA service area.
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications.
- 64K data communication requires an access point that supports FOMA 64K or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps data communication.

However, even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy, or the signal quality is poor.

Glossary of data communication

Administrator privilege

A user level that provides complete access to all OS functions in Windows XP and 2000. There must be at least 1 user that has administrator privileges for each PC. A user that has no administrator privileges is not normally allowed to install/uninstall drivers and software.

APN (Access Point Name)

String to identify a provider, etc. to connect by packet communication. The APN for mopera U is “mopera.net” and mopera is “mopera.ne.jp”. cid (Context Identifier)

The registration number when writing packet communication dialup connection (APN) information to FOMA terminal. 10 numbers from 1 to 10 are available for FOMA terminal.

By default, “mopera.ne.jp” is registered in cid1, and “mopera.net” in cid3.

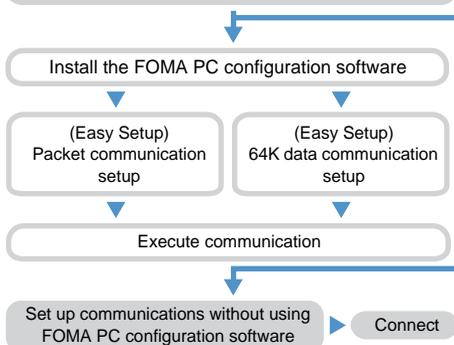
W-TCP

A TCP parameter designed to fully utilize TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communications in a FOMA network. This communication setting is essential to enable full use of FOMA terminal capability.

Flow of setup for data communication

The setup work needed to connect FOMA terminal to a PC to perform packet or 64K data communication is as follows:

- ① Install the communication configuration file
- ② Connect FOMA terminal to a PC
- ③ Check the communication configuration file



Communication configuration file (driver)

Install the communication configuration file on a PC from the attached CD-ROM, before connecting FOMA terminal to a PC to perform packet or 64K data communication.

FOMA PC configuration software

When the FOMA PC configuration software (found on the attached CD-ROM) is installed on a PC, a number of settings required for packet communication or 64K data communication via connection between FOMA terminal and PC can be made from the PC by simple operation.

AT command

AT commands are commands for setting FOMA terminal functions using a PC.

FOMA terminals comply with AT commands and support some extended commands and proprietary AT commands.

For details of AT command, see “Manual for Data Communication” in CD-ROM provided.

CD-ROM

The attached CD-ROM contains the software used for the data communication via FOMA

terminal and the PDF version of “Manual for Data Communication” and “Kuten Code List”.

For details, refer to the attached CD-ROM.

Contained software/ PDF

- D703i communication configuration file
- FOMA PC configuration software
- Guidance of DoCoMo keitai datalink
- FirstPass PC software
- PDF version of “Manual for Data Communication”
- PDF version of Kuten Code List
- Adobe® Reader® 7.0
- Guidance of mopera U

When the warning screen appears

When the attached CD-ROM is inserted into the PC, the following warning screen may appear.

This warning is displayed according to the security setting of Microsoft Internet Explorer, but this will not cause a problem. Click **はい** (Yes).

- The screen shown below is the case of using Windows XP. It may differ depending on the PC environment.



DoCoMo keitai datalink

“DoCoMo keitai datalink” is a software which edits the data of the phonebook or mail messages in your mobile phone after back-up to PC. It is provided on the DoCoMo website and you can see the website below for details and downloading. In addition, you can access the website below from the attached CD-ROM as well.

<http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp/> (in Japanese only)

For details on how to download, transferable data, operation environment, installation, operating procedure and restrictions, refer to the website above.

Besides, for the operating procedure after installation, refer to Help within the software. In addition, the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is required to use DoCoMo keitai datalink.

Character Entry

Entering characters	330
Entering characters using 5-touch Input Method	5-touch Input Method 331
Registering fixed phrases	Save Phrase 335
Copying/cutting and pasting characters	Copy Character 335
Entering characters using codes	KUTEN Code Input 336
Registering frequently used words	Save Word 336
Using the downloaded dictionary	Downloaded Dictionary 337
Entering characters using Slot Input Method	Slot Input Method 337
Setting input method	Input Method Setting 338

For Kuten Code List, see the list in PDF format in the supplied CD-ROM. To view Kuten Code List (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If it is not installed in your PC, you can install from the supplied CD-ROM.

Entering characters

FOMA terminal has many functions such as phonebook and mail that require entering characters.

- There are "5-touch Input Method" and "Slot Input Method" for entering characters. In 5-touch Input Method, several characters are assigned to each key, and at each press the character switches. ◀P350
- In Slot Input Method, select characters from the upper and lower slots on the input board. ◀P337
- The character types which can be entered varies by each method:

○ : Available x : Unavailable - : No character

Input method \ Character type	5-touch Input Method		Slot Input Method	
	One-byte	Two-byte	One-byte	Two-byte
Hiragana/kanji	—		—	
Katakana				x
Alphabets				x
Numeric				x
Symbols				
Pictograms	—		—	

- There are 2 character types: one-byte characters and two-byte characters. 1 two-byte character, 1 two-byte blank or line feed is counted as 2 one-byte characters. For one-byte characters, voiced sound and semi-voiced sound characters are also counted as 1 character.
- Use KUTEN Code Input to enter characters whose readings you do not know.
- JIS level 1 and level 2 characters can be entered.
- Complex characters may be displayed in a changed or simplified form.
- In this manual, to enter characters including the operation of pressing  is referred to as "enter".

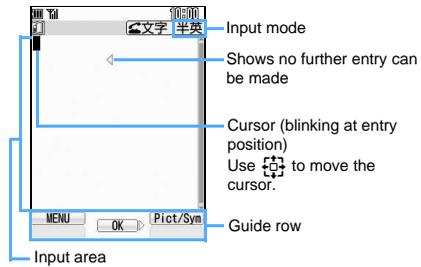
Character entry screen

There are 2 types of character entry methods: "full-screen entry" and "in-line entry".

- Some entry fields may only be able to use either character entry method.
- When pasted characters or fixed phrases are entered exceedingly, they are truncated and fit to the input characters limit.

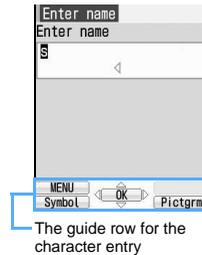
Full-screen entry

Highlight the entry field and press  to display the full-screen entry area.



In-line entry

Highlight the entry field and press  to  and  to enable character entry directly. In hiragana or two-byte katakana mode, the character is fixed by pressing .



Changing input modes

Example Switching from one-byte alphabet mode to two-byte alphabet mode

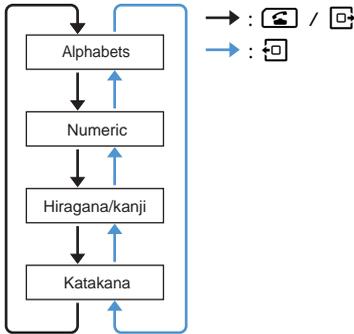
1 Press on the character entry screen



Input mode (current status)	Input mode (the input mode being selected is highlighted)
漢字 : Hiragana/kanji	漢 : Hiragana/kanji
全加 : Two-byte katakana*1	ア : Two-byte katakana*1
全英 : Two-byte alphabets*1	A : Two-byte alphabets*1
全数 : Two-byte numeric*1	1 : Two-byte numeric*1
半加 : One-byte katakana	77 : One-byte katakana
半英 : One-byte alphabets	Aa : One-byte alphabets
半数 : One-byte numeric*1	12 : One-byte numeric*1

*1 Switching cannot be made in Slot Input Method.

2 Press or repeatedly to highlight "Aa"



3 to highlight "A" ▶ Press

INFORMATION

The available input modes are different depending on the character entry screen.

全かな is displayed for input mode when only hiragana can be entered.

Entering characters using 5-touch Input Method

5-touch Input Method

Entering characters

Kana/Kanji Conversion

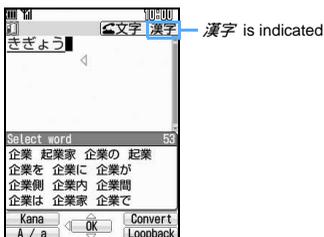
Example Entering "企業" in the phonebook

1 Highlight *Enter name field* ▶

The character entry screen is displayed.

- In English display, the alphabet mode is displayed first. Press  repeatedly to change to the hiragana/kanji mode.

2 Enter "きぎょう"



"き" Press  twice.

Press  to move the cursor 1 position to the right. (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by the automatic cursor function.)

"ぎ" Press  twice ▶ 

"よ" Press  3 times ▶ 

"う" Press  3 times

- Press  to delete the entry when you have pressed a wrong key.
- To enter " " and " " : Enter the character ▶  For example, after entering "ほ", each pressing of  changes the character to: ほ ほ ほ. For characters that do not accept " " or " ", they are entered as two-byte characters.
- To change upper/lower case, press .

Returning to the previous character:

Pressing  immediately after entering a character brings back to the previous character. The character appears in the reverse order of character switching every time  is pressed. (e.g. ... 1 お え う い あ 1 ...) However, when voiced or semi-voiced sounds are entered or upper and lower cases are changed, you cannot switch characters.

Fixing hiragana without conversion:

Go to Step 4 after entering the hiragana.

Converting to katakana or alphanumeric:

Pressing  displays the list of conversion options in katakana (one-byte/two-byte), alphabets or numeric characters (one-byte/two-byte). Highlight a conversion option and go to Step 4.

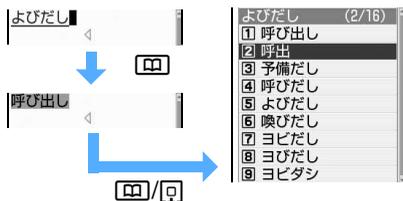
3



-  also converts text to kana/kanji when predictive conversion options are not displayed. Predictive conversion ◀P332
- Press  to restore the entry before conversion.

Displaying the list of conversion options:

When pressing  fails to display the desired character, a list of conversion options is displayed by pressing  or  again. If the list of conversion options has multiple pages, you can switch to the next page and the previous page by pressing  and , respectively. Select a conversion option by  and press , or press the key for the number of each option.



4

The characters are fixed.

- When **Input prediction** of Input Method Setting is **ON**, select **閉じる** (Close).

Inserting characters:

Move the cursor to the insertion point by and enter the character. The entered character is inserted at the cursor position.

Deleting characters:

- When the cursor is inside an entered character string (Example: ドコモ太郎)
 - Press to delete a character at the cursor position.
 - Press for over a second to delete the character at the cursor position and all following characters.
- When the cursor is at the end of an entered character string (Example: ドコモ太郎)
 - Press to delete the character at the left of the cursor position.
 - Press for over a second to delete all entered characters.

Entering line feed:

- Press .
- Some entry fields may not permit a line feed.

5 Press

Character entry is exited.

INFORMATION

In the following input modes, when the specified time elapses without pressing any key in inputting, the automatic cursor function will automatically move the cursor to the right. You can change the time setting for move and disable the automatic cursor function. ◀P338

- One-byte/two-byte alphabets
- Hiragana/kanji
- One-byte/two-byte katakana

You can perform the following operations after the automatic cursor function has moved the cursor to the right.

- : Add voiced/semi-voiced sound
- : Switch between upper/lower cases
- : Return to the previous character

Block conversion of multiple clauses

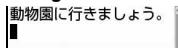
- Up to 24 two-byte characters can be converted.

Example Entering “動物園に行きましょう。”

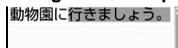
1 Enter characters



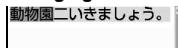
Fixing all characters:



Fixing converted portion:



Changing conversion range:



When pressing

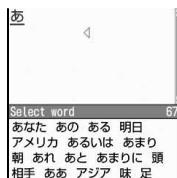
Entering characters using input prediction function

The input prediction function is to display a list of predictive conversion options that match the initial part of the reading when characters are entered. This function automatically registers previously entered characters as predictive dictionary data; you can easily enter the same characters next time, quickly by entering only the first part.

- The following words and character strings are displayed as options:
 - Standard words
 - Words entered by kana/kanji conversion
 - Character string converted and entered by Downloaded Dictionary
 - Character strings registered by Save Word
- Only the hiragana/kanji mode can be used in predictive conversion. However, predictive conversion is not available during in-line entry and when entering with Slot Input Method.

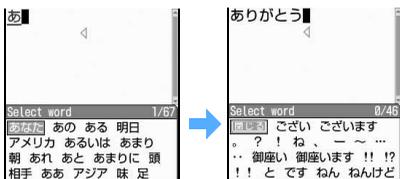
1 Enter characters

A list of predictive conversion options is displayed.



- The more characters are entered, the less the number of predictive conversion options are available.

2 to highlight an option



- While the predictive conversion option is highlighted, the following operations are enabled:
 - / : Switch to the previous/next page
 - : Enable Kana/Kanji Conversion (Predictive conversion options disappear)

3 Select **閉じる**

The predictive conversion options disappear.

Resetting the predictive dictionary data

Resetting the predictive dictionary data which is registered as the predictive conversion options.

- Enter the terminal security code Select **Yes**

Entering face marks and fixed phrases

Enter face marks, previously registered sentences, or pictogram words.

Example Entering face marks

- on the character entry screen** Select **Pict/Symbol/Smiley**

To enter fixed phrases: Select **Phrase/Kuten/Quote**

- to

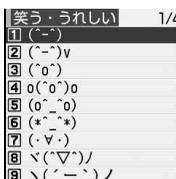
For fixed phrases: to



- You can select by pressing when input history for face marks is available.
- When a fixed phrase has been created, you can select by pressing .

3 Press any of to

For fixed phrase: to



To check details: Highlight a fixed phrase

- For input history of face marks, up to 18 items can be displayed. When the number of items exceeds the maximum number, the oldest one will be deleted.

INFORMATION

Face marks can be entered by entering the readings in kana/kanji mode. List of fixed phrases

Entering pictograms and symbols

1 on the character entry screen

List of pictogram 1 is displayed.



Input history area (displayed only on the first pages of pictogram 1 and 2, or one-byte and two-byte symbols.)

- Each pressing of changes the mode as follows: Pictogram 2 pictogram D pictogram 1. However, pictogram D is displayed only for entry screen for mail message and signature edit.
- To enter one-byte symbols, press . Pressing again switches to two-byte symbols. Only available symbols are listed.
- Pressing or can switch pages.
- To exit entering from the list:
- Up to 10 pictograms (except for pictogram D) or symbols can be displayed at the input history area. When the characters exceed the maximum number, the oldest one will be deleted.
- Pictogram D is displayed when registered in the *Deco-mail pict* folder of *My Picture*.

2 Select pictograms/symbols

- Selecting pictogram D closes the list of pictogram D.

INFORMATION

You can also enter by pressing **Menu** and selecting **Pict/Symbol/Smiley Pictogram or Symbol** on the character entry screen.

- Press **Menu** on the list screen of pictograms or symbols to switch between pictogram 1, 2 and D (for character entry screen for mail message and signature edit only) or between one-byte and two-byte symbols.
- The continuous input area appears above the input history area, by pressing **□** on the list screen of pictograms or symbols, except pictogram D, and up to 10 pictograms can be entered and up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte symbols can be entered continuously. Press **□** to fix the characters. However, pictogram D cannot be entered continuously, and if you select pictogram D, all the characters are fixed. Also, when the left element in the following brackets is selected, the right element is also automatically selected: e.g. selecting “{” also selects “}”.

[] { } 「 」 () [] { } 《 》 「 」
【 】

Some symbols can be converted by entering readings in kana/kanji mode.

Readings	Symbols you can enter
ぎりしあ	Greek characters
ろしあ	Russian characters
すうじ	① to ⑳, to
けいせん	Ruled line symbols
きごう	Two-byte symbols other than above

Pictogram can be converted by entering readings in kana/kanji mode. ➡P356

Pictograms and symbols entered may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication, etc. When you insert pictogram D to the entry screen for mail message, it will be Deco-mail.

Quoting data to enter characters

You can enter characters by quoting phonebook data, Own Number information, the result of calculation with Calculator or text information of the data scanned with Bar Code Reader.

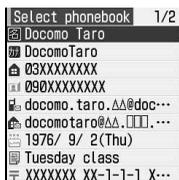
- On the character entry screen in which you cannot quote data, operation cannot be made since menu items are displayed in a light color, or not displayed.

Quoting phonebook data

- Switch the character entry screen to full-screen entry.
- The phonebook data is unable to be quoted on the character entry screen of the phonebook.

- 1 **Menu** on the character entry screen ▶
Select **Phrase/Kuten/Quote** ▶ **3** ▶
Select **phonebook data**

2 Select the entry



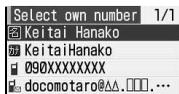
- When the contents are too long, they may be displayed shortly. To check, highlight the content and press **□**. It can be quoted by pressing **□**.

Quoting Own Number data

- The Own Number data is unable to be quoted on the character entry screen of Own Number.

- 1 **Menu** on the character entry screen ▶
Select **Phrase/Kuten/Quote** ▶ **4**

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select the Own Number information



- When the contents are too long, they may be displayed shortly. To check, highlight the content and press **□**. It can be quoted by pressing **□**.

Quoting a result calculated with Calculator

- The result can be quoted only on the character entry screen of Scheduler and Notepad.

- 1 **Menu** on the character entry screen ▶
Select **Phrase/Kuten/Quote** ▶ **5**

2 Make calculation ▶ Press **□**

Quoting data scanned with Bar Code Reader

- The data can be quoted on the URL entry screen or the character entry screen displayed during i-mode or Full Browser.

- 1 **Menu** on the character entry screen ▶
Select **Phrase/Kuten/Quote** ▶ **5**

Bar Code Reader starts with the macro mode.

2 Scan JAN code or QR code

3 Press

The string of the scanned data is entered.

Registering fixed phrases

Save Phrase

- Up to 50 phrases can be saved.

1

2 Select <New phrase>

The fixed phrase edit screen appears.

- To edit the registered fixed phrase: Select a fixed phrase to edit.
- To check the registered fixed phrase: Highlight a fixed phrase on the list . You can edit by pressing .

Deleting fixed phrases: Highlight a fixed phrase to delete  **Select Yes**

3 Select *Message* field Enter the fixed phrase (up to 128 one-byte or 64 two-byte characters)

4 Press

Fixed phrases are registered in *My phrase*.

- When you edit a registered fixed phrase, a confirmation screen appears. Select *Yes* to overwrite or *No* to cancel the operation.

INFORMATION

If a character string contains blank spaces, it is processed as follows:

- Blank spaces only:
 - Cannot be registered as a fixed phrase
- Blank spaces before and after a character string:
 - Blank spaces after a character string is invalid
- Blank spaces between characters:
 - Blank spaces are also valid

Registering during character entry

Select entered characters and register as a fixed phrase.

1 on the character entry screen Select *Save word/phrase*

2 Place the cursor at the start point

- To select the whole sentence:    Go to Step 4
- To select whole sentence on the entry screen for mail message:   Go to Step 4

3 Place the cursor at the end point

The characters in the selected range are displayed on the fixed phrase edit screen.

- To select from the start point to the beginning:  
- To select from the start point to the end:  

4 Press

INFORMATION

When you perform the above procedure without entering any characters, the fixed phrase edit screen appears immediately.

When 50 fixed phrases have already been registered, the list of registered fixed phrases is displayed. To register a new item, you must either delete a phrase from this list or edit a registered phrase.

If a character string selected above contains blank spaces, it is processed as follows:

- Blank spaces only:
 - Cannot be registered as a fixed phrase
- Blank spaces before and after a character string:
 - Only character string is valid
- Blank spaces between characters:
 - Blank spaces are also valid

Copying/cutting and pasting characters

Copy Character

Characters copied or cut from a character entry screen are pasted elsewhere. They can also be pasted into another character entry screen.

- Copied and cut characters are retained until new item is copied/cut or FOMA terminal is turned off, and you can paste them in other locations any number of times.

Copying/cutting characters

Example Copying characters

1 on the character entry screen

- To cut the characters:  
- On the entry screen for mail message, press  and select *Copy* or *Cut*.

2 Place the cursor at the start point ▶

- To select the whole sentence:  
- To select whole sentence on the entry screen for mail message: 

3 Place the cursor at the end point ▶ Press



The characters in the selected range are copied.

- To select from the start point to the beginning:
 
- To select from the start point to the end:  

Pasting characters

- When the pasted phrase exceeds the number of characters permitted in the edited sentence, a message appears indicating that all characters will not be able to be pasted. When you select *Yes*, the allowable number of characters is pasted.

1 Place the cursor at the location to paste on the character entry screen ▶ Press



- On the entry screen for mail message, press  and select *Paste*.

INFORMATION

When the type of the copied/cut characters does not match with the character type used in the destination field, pasting is disabled. For example, hiragana or kanji cannot be pasted into the mail address field.

When a character string containing a line feed is pasted into an entry screen that cannot contain any line feeds, the line feed is replaced by a blank.

Entering characters using codes

KUTEN Code Input

Characters, numbers and symbols on the Kuten code list are entered using 4-digit code.

- For codes, see Kuten Code List in PDF format in the supplied CD-ROM.

Example Entering “携” (code number 2340)

1 on the character entry screen ▶ Select *Phrase/Kuten/Quote* ▶

2 Enter the 4-digit code (in this case)

Registering frequently used words

Save Word

Using registered readings makes it easy to convert characters.

- Up to 200 words can be saved.

1

2 Select *<New word>*

- To edit the registered word: Select a word to edit
- To check the registered word: Highlight a word ▶



You can edit it by pressing .

Deleting words:

① **Highlight a word to delete** ▶ 

② **Select *Delete***

- To delete all: Select *Delete all*

3 Select *Word* field ▶ Enter the word to register (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters)

4 Select *Reading* field ▶ Enter the reading (up to 8 two-byte characters)

- You can enter only hiragana.

5 Press

- A confirmation screen appears when editing registered words. Select *Overwrite* to replace the original word. To register a new word, keeping original word intact, select *New*.

Registering during character entry

You can select entered characters and register them as a word.

1 on the character entry screen ▶ Select *Save word/phrase* ▶

2 Place the cursor at the start point ▶

- To select the whole sentence:   ▶ Go to Step 4
- To select whole sentence on the entry screen for mail message:  ▶ Go to Step 4

3 Place the cursor at the end point ▶

The characters in the selected range is displayed in the *Word* field.

- To select from the start point to the beginning:



- To select from the start point to the end:



4 Enter the reading to register

- Follow the procedure from Step 4 in "Registering frequently used words". ◀P336

INFORMATION

When you perform the above procedure without entering any characters, the word edit screen appears immediately.

When you save the character string containing a line feed during character entry, a line feed is replaced by a blank. Readings that contain characters other than hiragana, prolonged sound, voiced or semi-voiced sound characters cannot be registered.

When the following characters are the initial part of the reading, it cannot be registered.

を, ん, あ, い, う, え, お, つ, や, ゆ, よ, わ, “ー” (prolonged sound), “゛” (voiced sound), “゜” (semi-voiced sound)

Blank spaces can be entered for reading, but deleted after registered.

Up to 5 words with the same reading can be registered. To register additional words, change the reading of new words. When 200 words have already been registered, the list of registered words is displayed. To register a new item, you must either delete a word from this list or edit a registered word.

Using the downloaded dictionary

Downloaded Dictionary

Make the dictionaries downloaded from i-mode site, etc., available to use for conversion.

- Up to 5 dictionaries can be used.
- Downloading procedure for dictionaries ◀P169

1 [Menu] [8] [6] [2] [2] ▶ Select the dictionary to use ▶ Press [OK]

is indicated to the dictionary which you can use.

Displaying the information of the downloaded dictionary:

[Menu] [8] [6] [2] [2] ▶ Highlight the dictionary ▶ [OK]

Deleting the downloaded dictionary:

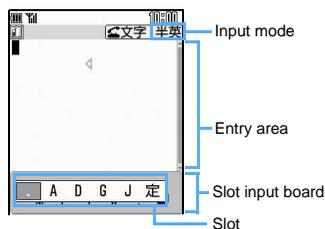
[Menu] [8] [6] [2] [2] ▶ Highlight the dictionary ▶ [F1] ▶ Select Yes

Entering characters using Slot Input Method

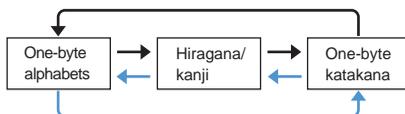
Slot Input Method

You use to select characters displayed on the slot input board (upper/lower slot).

- Slot Input Method must be set up before using this function. ◀P338
- The predictive conversion function cannot be used in Slot Input Method.
- List of input slots and character assignments ◀P351



- After pressing , the input mode switches as shown below by the following operations:



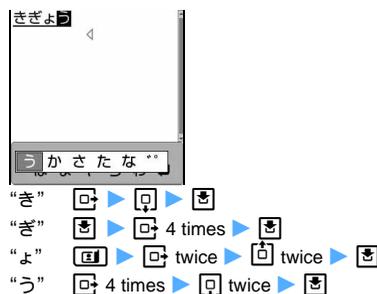
→ : / → :

- Even when *Use Slot input* is set, *Use 5-touch* screen will appear during in-line entry.
- When you are using the slot input board and want to use the entry area (for deleting characters, moving the cursor, etc.), press [OK]. Press [OK] again to use the slot input board.

Example Entering “企業” in the phonebook

1 Select Enter name field ▶ Enter “きぎょう”

- In English display, the alphabet mode is displayed first. Press to change to the hiragana/kanji mode.



- To switch upper slot/lower slot: 
- To fix the characters as hiragana:  New characters can be added. To exit the character entry, go to Step 4.
- On the entry screen for mail message, slot input board appears if you enter  to ,  or .

2

The characters are converted.



- Characters are converted in the same way as in 5-touch Input Method.
- To return converted characters to the state they had before conversion and continue entering characters, press 

3

- The characters are fixed.
- New characters can be added.

4 ▶ Press

Character entry is exited.

- You can also perform the same operation by pressing  and selecting *Exit*.

Changing the setting during character entry

- The changes cannot be made before characters are fixed or on the Deco-mail decoration selection screen.
- Only the automatic cursor function can be changed during in-line entry.

1 on the character entry screen ▶

Select *Set input method*

2 Press any of to

- To switch between *Use 5-touch/Use Kana input* and *Use Slot input*: 
- To switch between *Prediction ON* and *Prediction OFF*: 
- To set the time period before the cursor automatically moves:  ▶  to 

Setting input method

Input Method Setting

 **Default** Input method: 5-touch Input prediction: ON
Auto cursor: Normal

1

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press

Input method :

Specifies *5-touch* or *Slot*.

- When *Slot* is set, items below are disabled.

Input prediction :

Specifies whether to display predictive conversion options.

Auto cursor :

Sets the time period before the cursor automatically moves to the right.

- Setting *Slow* moves the cursor in about 1.5 seconds.
- Setting *Normal* moves the cursor in about 1 second.
- Setting *Fast* moves the cursor in about 0.5 seconds.

Appendix/Data Interchange/ Troubleshooting

Menu list	340
Data set by default	347
List of dial keys and character assignments (5-touch Input Method)	350
List of input slots and character assignments (Slot Input Method)	351
List of fixed phrases	351
List of face marks	353
List of symbols	355
List of pictograms	356
Combination of operations during Multiaccess	358
Combination of functions during Multitask	360
Services available for FOMA terminal	363
Options and related devices	363
Data Interchange using external devices	
About Video playing software	364
Troubleshooting	
Troubleshooting	364
Example of Error messages	Error Message 366
Warranty and After-Sales Service	372
Diagnostic site of i-mode trouble	373
Updating software	Software Update 374
Protecting FOMA terminal from hazardous data	Virus Scan Function 378
Main specification	380
Number of saved, registered and protected items in D703i	381
SAR certification information	382

Menu list

- The menu differs depending on the menu display style (Menu Setting).
 - One-byte and two-byte characters shown on the display may differ from those below.
- : When the settings have been changed, the default settings are not restored by performing Reset.

1 Mail

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Inbox	_____	P205
2 Compose message	_____	P189
3 Chat mail	_____	P221
4 Unsent messages	_____	P205
5 Outbox	_____	P205
6 Check new message		
1 i-mode message	_____	P201
2 SMS	_____	P226
3 Receive option	_____	P200
4 Message retrieval	selected (all)	P217
7 SMS		
1 Compose SMS	_____	P224
2 Received SMS	_____	P227
3 Sent SMS	_____	P227
4 SMS settings	Font type: Japanese SMS report request: Not request Keep in SMS center: 3 days SMSC: DoCoMo Address: 81903101652 Type of Number: international	P226
8 Read templates	_____	P196
9 Mail settings		
1 Mail alert	[ON mode] Ring alert: Melody / メール・メロディ A (Mail, melody A) Light alert: ON/Rotation Vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10 [OFF mode] Ring alert: Melody / メール・メロディ A (Mail, melody A) Light alert: ON/Rotation Vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P220
2 Chat mail alert	Alert setting: Customize Ring alert: Melody/ メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B) Light alert: ON/Rotation Vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P223
3 Sort criteria	ON (all)	P214
4 Signature	Auto add: ON Edit signature: not recorded	P216

Menu item	Default	Page
9 Mail settings		
5 Reply setting		
1 Reply format	Quote: Yes Quote characters: >	P218
2 Activate quick reply	ON	P218
3 Quick reply template	OKです。(OK) NGです。(No good) ありがとうございます!(Thank you!) ゴメンなさい!(Sorry!) 後ほど連絡します。 (Get in touch later.)	P218
6 Mail group	_____	P217
7 Display settings		
1 Display priority	Show message	P220
2 Receive option	OFF	P217
3 Incoming msg. attach	selected (all)	P219
4 Attachment auto-play	Auto play	P219
5 Message list	Display 2 rows	P218
6 Only view	OFF	P218

2 i-mode

Menu item	Default	Page
1 iMenu	_____	P160
2 Bookmark	_____	P165
3 Go to location		
1 Enter URL	_____	P164
2 URL history	_____	P164
3 Last visited URL	_____	P161
4 Screen memo	_____	P167
5 i-mode message	_____	P201
6 MessageR&F		
1 MessageR	_____	P175
2 MessageF	_____	P175
3 Message settings		
1 Auto-display	MessageR preferred	P175
2 Message retrieval	selected (all)	P217
3 Attachment auto-play	Auto play	P219
4 Message alert		
1 MessageR	Ring alert: Melody/ メール・メロディ C (Mail, melody C) Light alert: ON/Rotation Vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P175
2 MessageF		

Menu item	Default	Page
7 i-Channel		
1 i-Channel list	_____	P183
2 i-Channel ticker	Show ticker: Yes Ticker speed: Normal	P183
3 Reset i-Channel	_____	P184
8 i-mode settings		
1 i-mode shortcuts	Not recorded	P166
2 Connection timeout	60 seconds	P172
3 Display light	Terminal setting	P174
4 Certificate		
1 Manage certificate*1	all valid	P177
2 Certificate download	_____	P178
3 Certificate host	DoCoMo	P179
4 Skip password	Yes	P178
5 Image & Effect	Image, Animation: Display Use phone information: Yes Sound effect setting: ON	P173
6 i-motion	Auto replay setting: Auto Play ON i-motion type setting: Normal type	P181
7 Host selection	i-mode(UIM)	P172
9 Full Browser		
1 Home	_____	P244
2 Bookmark	_____	
3 Go to location		
1 Enter URL	_____	
2 URL history	_____	
3 Last URL	_____	
4 Browser settings		
1 Home URL	not recorded	P249
2 Cookie set/delete	Valid	P249
3 Script setting	Script Setting: Valid Window Open Guard: Invalid	P249
4 Display mode setting	Mobile mode	P250
5 Image display	Display (all)	P250
6 Access setting	No	P250
7 Referer setting	Send	P250
8 Screen view setting	With menu icon view	P250

3 i- ppli

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Software list	_____	P232
2 i- ppli settings		
1 Sort software	By download time	P242
2 Auto start	ON	P238
3 Software info disp.	OFF	P232
4 Display light	Terminal setting	P235
5 Vibrate effect	ON	P235
6 i- ppli shortcuts	Not recorded	P238
3 Display history	_____	P234 P239 P240

4 Phonebook & Logs

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Phonebook	Show all names	P85
2 Phonebook new entry	_____	P81
3 Phonebook(UIM) new entry	_____	P83
4 Received calls	_____	P50
5 Redial	_____	P50
6 Ans.Machine & Voice memo		
1 Answer machine	Deactivate	P68
2 Recorded messages	_____	P70
3 Record voice memo	_____	P308
4 Voice memos	_____	P308
7 Mail logs		
1 Sent msg log	_____	P213
2 Received msg log	_____	P213
8 Own number	My phone number: subscribed phone number Other than that: not recorded	P42 P306

5 Data Box

Menu item	Default	Page
1 My Picture	_____	P252
2 Music	_____	P287
3 i-motion	_____	P258
4 Melody	_____	P267
5 My Document	_____	P279
6 Chara-den	_____	P264
7 Machi-chara	_____	P266
8 Other	_____	P283

6 LifeKit

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Bar code reader	_____	P156
2 Ir/PC connection		
1 Receive Ir data	_____	P274
2 Send all Ir data	_____	P274
3 Save received data	_____	P276
4 Data exchange settings	End alert: OFF Auto authentication: OFF Ph.book image sending: ON	P277
3 Camera		
1 Still camera	_____	P147
2 Movie camera	_____	P149
4 Sound recorder	_____	P277
5 Data Center		
1 Access Data Center	_____	P97
2 Synchronization log	_____	P98
3 Sync setting	OFF	P98

*1 Certificates saved in the UIM are also reset to the default (all valid) by performing Reset.

7 Stationery

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Scheduler	_____	P298
2 Notepad	_____	P311
3 Alarm clock	not set	P296
4 Calculator	_____	P310
5 Dictionaries	_____	P313

8 Settings & NW services

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Alerts & Sounds		
1 Set sound		
1 Call ring alert		
1 Call ring alert	[ON mode] Melody/Vivaldism [OFF mode] Melody/Vivaldism	P101
2 V.phone ring alert	Melody/電話・メロディ A (Phone, melody A)	
3 Anonymous caller	Disable settings (all)	P139
2 Mail/Msg ring alert		
1 Mail ring alert	[ON mode] Melody/メール・メロディ A (Mail, melody A) [OFF mode] Melody/メール・メロディ A (Mail, melody A)	P101
2 Chat M ring alert	Melody/メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B)	
3 Msg.R ring alert	Melody/メール・メロディ C (Mail, melody C)	
4 Msg.F ring alert	Melody/メール・メロディ C (Mail, melody C)	
3 Alarm sound		
1 Alarm clock sound	Melody/アラーム・メロディ (Alarm, melody)	P103
2 Schedule reminder	Alarm on time: Melody/アラーム・女性ボイス (Alarm, female voice) Alarm in advance: Melody/パターン4 (Pattern 4)	
4 System sound		
1 Keypad sound	Keypad sound1	P104
2 Shutter sound	Shutter sound1	P104
3 Movie camera sound	Shutter sound1	
5 Charge alert	ON	P106
6 Call session		
1 Status message	Standard	P65
2 On-hold tone	保留音・ボイス (On-hold tone, voice)	P65
3 Quality alarm	High alarm	P106
4 Reconnect alarm	High alarm	P58
5 Low Battery alert	ON	P39

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Alerts & Sounds		
2 Adjust volume		
1 Call alert volume	[ON mode] Level 4 [OFF mode] Level 4	P62
2 Mail/Msg alert vol.	[ON mode] Level 4 [OFF mode] Level 4	
3 Listen volume	[ON mode] Level 4 [OFF mode] Level 4	
4 Alarm volume		
1 Alarm clock sound	Level 4	P62
2 Schedule reminder	Level 4	
5 i- ppli effect sound	Level 4	
3 Vibrate alert/effect		
1 Call vibrate alert		
1 Call vibrate alert	[ON mode] OFF [OFF mode] OFF	P105
2 V.phone vibrate alert	OFF	
2 Mail/Msg vibrate alert		
1 Mail vibrate alert	[ON mode] OFF [OFF mode] OFF	P105
2 Chat M vibrate alert	OFF	
3 Msg.R vibrate alert	OFF	
4 Msg.F vibrate alert	OFF	
3 Alarm vibrate		
1 Alarm clock	OFF	P105
2 Schedule reminder	OFF	
4 i- ppli effect	ON	P105
4 Silent mode	General	P107
5 Set mute ring time	OFF	P140
2 Display		
1 Stand-by display		
1 Image/i- ppli	[ON mode] use Style Theme setting [OFF mode] use Style Theme setting	P108

Menu item	Default	Page
2] Display		
1] Stand-by display		
2] Clock format	[ON mode] Style: use Style Theme setting Time format: 24 hour Clock layout: use Style Theme setting Day: English [OFF mode] Style: use Style Theme setting Time format: 24 hour Clock layout: use Style Theme setting Day: English	P123
3] Battery icon	[ON mode] use Style Theme setting [OFF mode] use Style Theme setting	P119
4] Signal level icon	[ON mode] use Style Theme setting [OFF mode] use Style Theme setting	P119
5] Info/calendar layout	[ON mode] Hide layout [OFF mode] Hide layout	P111
6] i-Channel ticker	Show ticker: Yes Ticker speed: Normal	P183
2] Menu preference		
1] Menu setting*2		
	[ON mode] Normal: Animation Custom: Tile display Describe function: ON Type of animation: use Style Theme setting Icon display effect: OFF Default MENU: Normal Active shortcut: Custom [OFF mode] Normal: Animation Custom: Tile display Describe function: ON Type of animation: use Style Theme setting Icon display effect: OFF Default MENU: Normal Active shortcut: Custom	P117
2] Customize shortcut	[ON mode] ON mode [OFF mode] OFF mode	P304
3] Color & Action image		
1] Color scheme		
	[ON mode] use Style Theme setting [OFF mode] use Style Theme setting	P117
2] Call image		
1] Outgoing call	Display image: Default	P113
2] Incoming call	[ON mode] Standard image [OFF mode] Standard image	P114

Menu item	Default	Page
2] Display		
3] Color & Action image		
2] Call image		
3] Videophone dialing	Display image: Default	P113
4] Videophone receiving	Standard image	P114
5] Contact image	ON	P114
6] Anonymous caller	Disable settings (all)	P139
3] Mail image		
1] Outgoing message	Display image: Default	P115
2] Incoming message	Display image: Default	P115
3] Image message alert	[ON mode] Default [OFF mode] Default	P115
4] Message retrieval	Display image: Default	P115
4] Receive display	Caller's phone number: Display Caller's name: Standard Receive mail/message: Display	P115
5] Videophone image	Substitute image: Default Chara-den Answer machine image, On-hold image, Movie memo image: Default	P76
4] Display light		
1] Display light time	Normal use: 10 sec AC adapter connected, i-mode session: Terminal setting Camera session, Movie camera session, i-motion: Always on i- ppli: Terminal setting	P116
2] Light area	Display + Key	P116
3] Brightness	Normal	P116
5] Light alert		
1] Light alert	[ON mode] Incoming call: ON/Blinking Incoming Mail: ON/Rotation [OFF mode] Incoming call: ON/Blinking Incoming Mail: ON/Rotation [Common] Incoming Videophone: ON/Blinking Incoming Message R, Incoming Message F, Incoming Chat Mail: ON/Rotation	P121
2] Alarm/Other light	Alarm clock: ON/Up & down Schedule: ON/Cross Play melody: ON/Flash	P121
6] Indicator light	ON	P122

*2 If Reset is performed, *Normal*, *Type of animation* and *Type of tile icons (Customized 1, Customized 2)* return to the default settings.

Menu item	Default	Page
2] Display		
7] Font & Language		
1] Font size	[ON mode] Standard (all) [OFF mode] Standard (all)	P122
2] Select language	Japanese	P40
8] Style theme	[ON mode] Carbon Black: Black&White Frozen White: BarCode Bright Red: WhiteArrow [OFF mode] Carbon Black: Leaf Frozen White: Resort Bright Red: Cocktail	P120
9] Machi-chara setting	ON/ドコモダケ (docomodake)	P120
3] Security & Locks		
1] Locks		
1] All lock	not set	P130
2] PIM lock	OFF	P132
3] Keypad dial lock	OFF	P133
4] Key lock timer	OFF	P136
2] Privacy mode	Phonebook & Logs, Mail, My Picture, i-motion, Schedule, My Document, i- ppli, Bookmark, Screen memo, Notepad: Show all Auto start: OFF	P134
3] Secret mode	not set	P137
4] UIM	PIN code, PIN2 code: 0000 PIN code ON/OFF: OFF	P128
5] Change security code	0000	P127
6] Scanning function		
1] Update	_____	P379
2] Set auto-update	_____	P378
3] Set scan	Valid (all)	P378
4] Version	_____	P380
4] Call & Answer		
1] Sound & Image		
1] Outgoing call	Display image: Default	P113
2] Call alert	[ON mode] Ring alert: Melody/Vivaldism Show image: Standard image Vibrate alert: OFF Light alert: ON/Blinking [OFF mode] Ring alert: Melody/Vivaldism Show image: Standard image Vibrate alert: OFF Light alert: ON/Blinking	P63
2] Anonymous caller	Disable settings (all)	P139
3] Any key answer	ON	P61

Menu item	Default	Page
4] Call & Answer		
4] Headset		
1] Alert preference	Headset only	P315
2] Auto answer	OFF	P314
3] Headset key control	OFF	P314
5] Reject/Accept call		
1] Specified caller	Cancel settings	P137
2] Unregistered caller	OFF	P141
6] Make/Receive call		
1] Priority comm mode	No Set Up	P64
2] Prefix dialing	009130010	P57
3] Sub address	ON	P57
7] Noise reduction	ON	P58
8] Self mode	OFF	P132
5] Videophone		
1] V.phone dialing img.	Display image: Default	P113
2] Videophone alert	Ring alert: Melody/電話・メロディ A(Phone, melody A) Show image: Standard image Vibrate alert: OFF Light alert: ON/Blinking	P63
3] Operation	Auto redial as voice: OFF Display setting: Both sides Sub screen: My side Screen size: Large Visual preference: Normal Display light: Always on(normal) Speakerphone: ON	P75
4] DataSession arv. act	V.phone priority	P77
5] Image setting	Substitute image: Default Chara-den Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image, Movie memo image: Default	P76
6] External device	Terminal	P78
7] Notify switchable mode		
1] Indication ON	active	P77
2] Indication OFF	_____	P77
3] Check Indication	_____	P77
6] Other		
1] Clock		
1] Date & time*3	Auto time adjust: ON Offset: +. 00h00m	P41
2] Auto power ON	OFF	P295
3] Auto power OFF	OFF	P295

*3 Date and time remain unchanged after performing Reset.

Menu item	Default	Page
6 Other		
1 Clock		
4 Clock display format	[ON mode] Style: use Style Theme setting Time format: 24 hour Clock layout: use Style Theme setting Day: English [OFF mode] Style: use Style Theme setting Time format: 24 hour Clock layout: use Style Theme setting Day: English	P123
5 Alarm auto power ON	OFF	P297
2 Other		
1 Save word	_____	P336
2 DL dictionary	_____	P337
3 Reset prediction	_____	P333
4 Save phrase	_____	P335
5 Text input method	Input method: 5-touch Input prediction: ON Auto cursor: Normal	P338
3 Font size	[ON mode] Standard (all) [OFF mode] Standard (all)	P122
4 Software update	_____	P375
5 Quick start-up	ON	P315
6 Info. & Reset		
1 Call duration	_____	P309
2 Call cost		
1 Last call cost	_____	P309
2 Call cost limit	Alert: OFF	P310
3 Hide call cost icon	_____	P310
4 Reset call cost	OFF	P309
3 Memory status	_____	P272
4 Confirm	_____	P315
5 Battery level	_____	P39
6 Reset	_____	P315
7 Delete all data	_____	P316
7 NW Services		
1 Voice Mail		
1 Voice Mail service		
1 Activate	_____	P318
2 Set ring time	_____	
3 Deactivate	_____	
4 Check setting	_____	
5 Play messages	_____	
6 Voice Mail setting	_____	
7 Check messages	_____	
2 Tone/Vibration message notification	Voice Mail alert: ON Notification melody: メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B)	

Menu item	Default	Page
7 NW Services		
1 Voice Mail		
3 Notify missed call		
1 Activate	_____	P319
2 Deactivate	_____	
3 Check setting	_____	
4 Hide Voice Mail icon	_____	P319
2 Call waiting/forward		
1 Call waiting		
1 Activate	_____	P319
2 Deactivate	_____	
3 Check setting	_____	
2 Call forwarding		
1 Activate	_____	P320
2 Deactivate	_____	
3 Register The Forwarding Number	_____	
4 Setting if forwarding number busy	_____	
5 Check setting	_____	
3 Chaku-moji		
1 Create message	_____	P52
2 Message display settings	Only with Caller ID	P53
4 Caller ID		
1 Caller ID notification		
1 Activate/Deactivate	_____	P42
2 Check setting	_____	P42
2 Caller ID request		
1 Activate	_____	P321
2 Deactivate	_____	
3 Check setting	_____	
5 OFFICEED		
1 Area display setting	OFF	P324
2 Start forwarding	_____	
3 Stop forwarding	_____	
4 Check fwd setting	_____	
6 Other		
1 Additional service		
1 Register USSD	_____	P324
2 Record reply message	_____	
2 Remote control		
1 Activate	_____	P323
2 Deactivate	_____	
3 Check setting	_____	

Menu item	Default	Page
7] NW Services		
6] Other		
3] Nuisance call barring		
1] Register the caller	_____	P321
2] Register selected No	_____	
3] Delete all entries	_____	
4] Delete last entry	_____	
5] Check the number of entries	_____	
4] English guidance		
1] Guidance setting	_____	P322
2] Check setting	_____	
5] Dual network		
1] Dual Network Switching	_____	P321
2] Check setting	_____	
6] Service numbers		
1] ドコモ故障問合せ (DoCoMo for Repairs)	_____	P322
2] ドコモ総合案内・受付 (DoCoMo for General Inquiries)	_____	

Menu item	Default	Page
7] NW Services		
6] Other		
7] Multi number		
1] Set Multi Number	_____	P323
2] Check setting	_____	
3] Number Setting	Basic Number: 基本契約番号 (Basic Number)/my phone number Additional No1: 付加番号1 (Additional Number 1)/ Not recorded Additional No2: 付加番号2 (Additional Number 2)/ Not recorded Multi number call: Disable	
4] Incoming calls melody setting	OFF	
8] Set arrival act		
1] Activate	_____	P322
2] Deactivate	_____	
3] Check setting	_____	
9] Arrival call act	Answer	
8] Int'l call assist		
1] Auto switch	Intn'l prefix: ON	P56
2] Auto assist setting	Name: World Call, Intn'l prefix No.: 009130010	P56

9] Music Player

Menu item	Default	Page
Music player	_____	P287

0] Own number

Menu item	Default	Page
Own number	My phone number: subscribed phone number Other than that: not recorded	P42 P306

Menu list of the simple menu

1] でんわ	
1] 電話帳検索	
2] 電話帳登録	
3] リダイヤル	
4] 着信履歴	
5] 伝言メモ一覧	
6] メール送受信履歴	
7] 自局番号	
2] メール	
1] 受信メール	
2] 送信メール	
3] 未送信メール	
4] 新規メール	
5] i モード問合せ	

3] カメラ	
1] カメラ	
2] マイピクチャ	
3] 待受画面設定	
4] i モード	
1] i メニュー (Menu)	
2] ブックマーク	
3] ラストURL	
4] 画面メモ	
5] i チャネル一覧	
6] テロップ表示設定	

5] i アプリ	
1] ソフト一覧	
2] 待受画面設定	
3] i アプリ設定	
6] データBOX	
1] マイピクチャ	
2] i モーション	
3] メロディ	
4] マイドキュメント	
5] キャラ電	

7] 設定/ステーションリー	
1] 音ノバイブ	
2] ディスプレイ	
3] 目覚まし	
4] 電卓	
5] 伝言メモ設定	
6] 情報表示/リセット	
7] 留守番電話	
10] 自局番号	

Data set by default

- In case of deleting the following data, you can download from the i-mode site "My D-style".
 - Image for Deco-Mail picture
 - Deco-mail pictogram
 - Frame
 - Chara-den
 - Machi-chara

How to access i-mode site "My D-style" (in Japanese only)

To access "My D-style", select **iMenu** メニュー / 検索(Menu/search) ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) (as of December 2006).

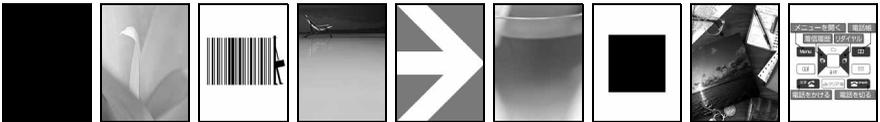
Scanning QR code shown right with Bar Code Reader allows you to connect to "My D-style".



QR code for website access

Image/i-motion for the standby display

Image



Black Leaf Bar code Deck chair White arrow Cocktail Square Desktop Guidance*1

i-motion



Square



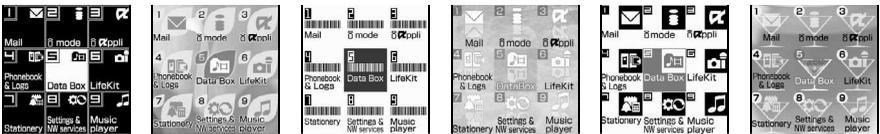
バー・コードさん*2
(Mr.Bar code)

*1 If *Style* is set to *Digital 2* or *Digital 3* and *Clock layout* is set to *Top* in Clock Display Format, the clock does not overlap with the key guidance.

*2 It can also be set to Movie ringtone.

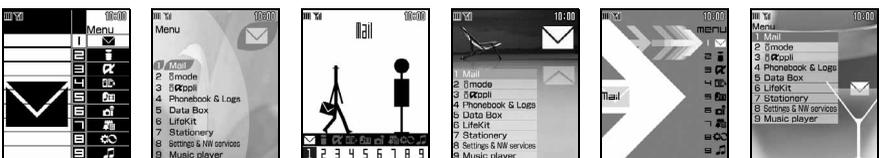
Normal menu

Tile display



Type1 Type2 Type3 Type4 Type5 Type6

Animation

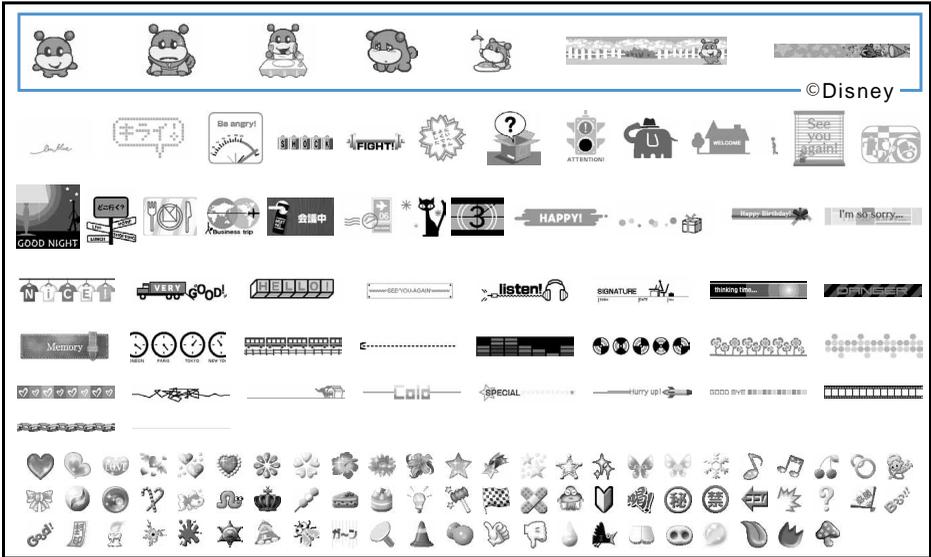


Type1 Type2 Type3 Type4 Type5 Type6

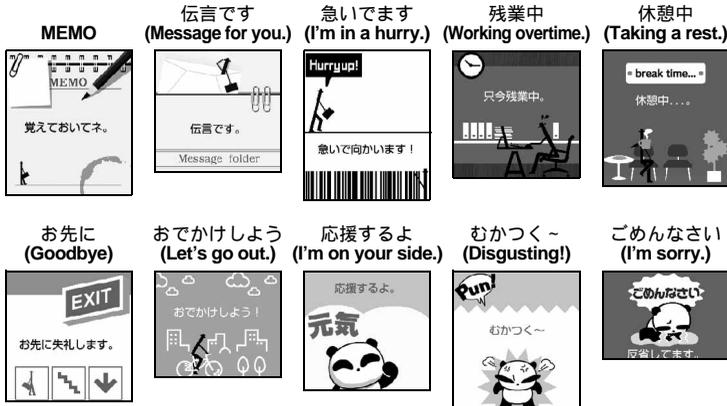
Image for Deco-Mail picture

The following images are stored in the *Deco-mail picture* folder of *My Picture* in Data Box.

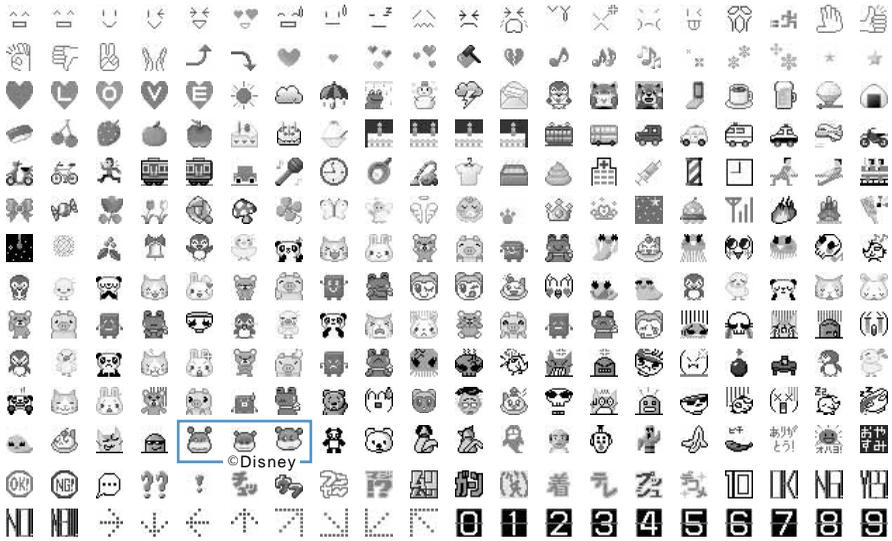
- The design of some images may be unclear when the background color is set to white.
- Some of the following images may be different from those on the screen, because the background color is changed to make the design clear. Also the size of the image is different from that of the image to be inserted actually.



Mail template



Deco-mail pictogram

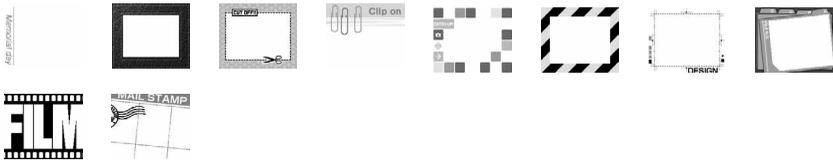


Frame

Size for standby (240 x 320)



QCIF size (176 x 144)



Stamp



Chara-den

Dimo



パー・コードさん
(Mr. Bar code)



Machi-chara

ドコモダケ
(docomodake)



© NTT DoCoMo/dentsu

シャチ
(Orca)



スケボーマン
(Skateboarder)



List of dial keys and character assignments (5-touch Input Method)

Key	Hiragana/kanji mode (two-byte)*1	Katakana mode (one-byte/two-byte)*1	Alphabet mode (one-byte/two-byte)*1	Numeric mode (one-byte/two-byte)*3
[1]	あいうえお 1	アイウエオ 1	. / @ *2 - : _ [ ¥ ] ^ ` { | } 1	1
[2]	かきくけこ 2	カキクケコ 2	a b c 2	2
[3]	さしすせそ 3	サシスセソ 3	d e f 3	3
[4]	たちつてと 4	タチツテト 4	g h i 4	4
[5]	なにぬねの 5	ナニヌネノ 5	j k l 5	5
[6]	はひふへほ 6	ハヒフヘホ 6	m n o 6	6
[7]	まみむめも 7	マミムメモ 7	p q r s 7	7
[8]	やゆよ 8	ヤユヨ 8	t u v 8	8
[9]	らりるれろ 9	ラリルレロ 9	w x y z 9	9
[0]	わをんー、。 ・? ! 「 」 0	ワ4 ランー、。 ・? ! 「 」 0	! " # \$ % & ' () * + , ; < = > ? 0	0 +*5
[*]	.	.	The following character strings can be entered only in one-byte alphabet mode: @docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm	* P*5
[#]*6	Line feed	Line feed	Line feed	# T*5

: Indicates blank space. ■ : Press [] after entering a character to switch between upper and lower cases.

*1 Numeric characters other than those entered in the two-byte numeric mode are entered as one-byte characters.

*2 This character is entered as "~" in the one-byte alphabet mode.

3 In numeric mode, "", "#", "P", "T" and "+" can only be entered in the entry field that supports them.

*4 Upper and lower cases are switched in case of two-byte characters only.

*5 Hold down the relevant key for over a second to enter the character.

*6 Line feed may not be possible depending on the entry field.

List of input slots and character assignments (Slot Input Method)

Input slot		Hiragana/kanji mode (two-byte)		Input slot		Katakana mode (one-byte)		Input slot		Alphanumeric mode (one-byte)	
Upper slot	あ	あいうえおあいうえお 1		Upper slot	ア	アイウエオアイウエオ1		Upper slot	.	./@~ :_[]'^{| }1	
	か	かきくけこ 2			カ	カキクケコ2			A	ABC abc 2	
	さ	さしすせそ 3			サ	サシスセソ3			D	DEF def 3	
	た	たちつとっ 4			タ	タチツテトッ4			G	GHI ghi 4	
	な	なにぬねの 5			ナ	ナニヌネノ5			J	JKL jkl 5	
..	..		-	- ..		定	@docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm				
Lower slot	は	はひふへほ 6		Lower slot	ハ	ハヒフヘホ6		Lower slot	M	MNO mno 6	
	ま	まみむめも 7			マ	マミムメモ7			P	PQRS p q r s 7	
	や	やゆよやゅよ 8			ヤ	ヤユヨヤユヨ8			T	TUV tuv 8	
	ら	らりるれるる 9			ラ	ラリルレロ9			W	WXYZ wxyz 9	
	わ	わをんー、。?!「」 0			ワ	ワランー、。?!「」 0			!	!#\$%&'()*+; <=>? 0	
	↵	Line feed			↵	Line feed			↵	Line feed	

: Indicates two-byte space in hiragana/kanji mode and one-byte space in katakana, alphanumeric mode.

- “ ” and “ ” are switched with every press of  in hiragana/kanji mode.
- Numeric characters are displayed as one-byte characters.

List of fixed phrases

Common (20 items)

おはよう	おやすみ
おはよー！今日も一日がんばりましょう。	昨日は、とっても楽しかったです。どうもありがとうございます。
連絡下さい。	今から電話してもいいですか？
ごめんなさい、遅れます。	今日は 日です。早く帰って来てね。
まで迎えに来て！お願いします。	について知っている人は までに に教えて下さい。
もう少し待ってて！	留守電にメッセージをお願いします。
いってらっしゃい。	ただいま電話にできることができません。メールでご用件をお知らせ下さい。
で待ってます。	今日は外で食べて帰ります。ご飯はいりません。
集合時間は、集合場所は です。	メールありがとうございます。
今日は外で食べて帰ります。ご飯はいりません。	最近の の写真です。

Pleasure (20 items)

今なにしているの？電話かメールを下さい。	どこか、遊びに行こーよ！
電話ちょうだい！電話番号は です。	おくれちゃう、ゴメン！
どこにいるの？	集合！
時間だよーん！！	トラブル発生！！
会いたい！	大好き！
みんなで飲みませんか？ に 。	今日 に、へ行きませんか？
の待ち合わせ時間と場所、決めようよ。	に行かない？
のメンバー募集！詳しくは まで連絡下さい。	
今度みんなで へ行きますよ。 までで、都合の良い日を教えて下さい。	

今度みんなで へ行きましょう。いいところがありましたら、お知らせ下さい。	
しませんか?日時: 、場所: 。出欠をご連絡下さい。	
メッセージ下さい!!	の時の写真だよ。

Business (20 items)

本日の 会議は、 となりました。	本日の 訪問は、 となりました。
へ直行します。	へ直帰します。
電車遅延のため、 遅れます。	至急TEL下さい。
予定変更! TEL下さい。	待ち合わせ変更! 場所: 、時間:
頃まで、携帯電話の電源を切ります。	振込口座: 銀行 支店、口座番号 、名義 人名 です。
の件、よろしく願い致します。	
今日、一杯どうですか? 連絡下さい。	FAX確認願います。
次の指示を待て。	変更します。
延期します。	中止します。
での写真送ります。	今わかりません。
あとで連絡します。	

Answer (20 items)

Thank you!	Good!	OKです。	NGです。
いいよ。	行きます。	了解。	ダメ!
ごめんネ...	すみません、無理です。	本当?	おまかせっ!!
関係ないね!	うらやましー。	お疲れさま。	反対。
賛成。	待ってました!	それは残念。	写真届きました。

Others (20 items)

またねー!	今どこ?	お誕生日おめでとう。	おめでとう。
まじでー!?	まかせなさい!!	キャンセル。	いってきます。
頑張って!	ありがとう!	www.	.ne.jp
.co.jp	.or.jp	.ac.jp	.net
.com	.org	.html	http://

Pictogram words (20 items)

Pictogram words	Meaning	Pictogram words	Meaning	Pictogram words	Meaning
☺	ハロー! / またね (Hello! / See you.)	☺↑	ごきげん(High spirits)	☺	ピース(Peace)
☺♪	るんるん (Cheerful)	☹↓	落ち込む (Depressed)	☹	どうしよう (At a loss)
×=3	ぶんぶん(Huff)	☹×	怒ってるぞ(Fury)	☹♥	メロメロ (Crazy about)
☹	パニック(Panic)	☹zzz	寝ます(Sleep)	☹♥	チュッ! (Kissing)
♥♥♥	ラブラブ(Love)	☹=3=3=3	ダッシュ(Dash)	☹	えっ何? (What?)
📷	写真を撮る (Take a picture)	☺	がんばれ! (Good luck!)	☹	独りぼっち(Alone)
🎤	カラオケ(Karaoke)	⚽	サッカー(Soccer)		

• Pictogram words are not displayed by entering the meaning.

My phrase (up to 50 items)

• The registered fixed phrases are displayed.

List of face marks

Entering one of the following readings in hiragana/kanji mode allows you to convert it. Entering “かお” or “かおもじ” also allows converting for face marks shown as .

挨拶・返事(Greetings/Answer)

Face mark	Readings
(^-)/^^	ばい あいさつ
(^^)/^	ばいばい あいさつ
(^-)/~	ばいばい あいさつ
v(^_^) byebye!!	ばいばい あいさつ
(^^)/	おーい じゃあ どーも よろしく あいさつ
(^-)/	おーい じゃあ どーも よろしく あいさつ
(^^)/^^~	ばいばい あいさつ
(^-)/	おーい あいさつ
(//^-//)j^	にこっ あいさつ
~('-'*)	やあ あいさつ
(*^-)/	ちわっ あいさつ
v(^ω`='ω`)/	おはよう あいさつ
(o^-')b	ぐっ ぐー へんじ
(≥ω≤)b	ぐっ ぐー へんじ
(・v・n)	はい へんじ
(^-*)ok	おっけー へんじ
(^-')>了解!	りょうかい へんじ
(o^-o)/	やあ あいさつ
(=°ω°)/	やあ あいさつ

笑う・うれしい(Smile/Glad)

Face mark	Readings
(^-)	にこっ わらう
(^-)v	にこっ うれしい
(^o)	うほほにこっ わーい うれしい
o(^o)o	うきうき うれしい
(o^-o)	にこっ うれしい
(*^-*)	にこっ うれしい
(・v・)	きたー にこっ わらう
v(^▽^)/	わーい うれしい
\(^-^)/	わーい うれしい
(*▽*)	にこっ うれしい
(☆▽☆)	きらーん うれしい
(^^)v	やったね びーす にこっ ぶい うれしい
(=^-^-)=	にこっ うれしい
(^v^)	にこっ うれしい
(≥v≤)	うれしい
;))	にこっ すまいる わらう

Face mark	Readings
v(^o)	びーす うれしい
(^3)/チツ	ちゅっ にこっ わらう
((o(^-^o))	わくわく うれしい
(^^)	にこっ わらう
v(^o)	いえい ぶい びーす うれしい
(^-)v	やったね びーす にこっ ぶい うれしい
(^-)	にこっ わらう
(^o)	わーい わらう
(^o)/	おーい ばーい わらう
(^o)v	やったね びーす にこっ ぶい わらう
)^o(	ほっぺがおちる わらう
\(^o)/	わーい わらう
;-)	にこっ すまいる わらう
\(≥▽≤)/	きゃー うれしい
d=(^o)=b	ぐー うれしい
e=v(*^-^)/	きゃー うれしい
(@^o@)	うれしい
(^ 卍 ^)	むふふ うれしい

照れる・怒る(Shy/Angry)

Face mark	Readings
(^^>	ぼりぼり てれる
f(^-)	てへ てれる
(#^-#)	にこっ ぼっ てれる
(*^-*)	えっ てれる
(//▽//)	てれ てれる
(*^-')	てっ てれる
(=°ω°=)	てっ てれる
(*^d^*)	こまる てれ てれる
∴p	てっ てれる
(^▽')	うふふ てれる
\(*^d^)/	こら ごるあ ごるあ おこる
o-_-)=o☆	ばんち おこる
(/=-)/~|_|	ちゃぶだい おこる
(-_-#)	こらっ おこる
∴-(	ふまん おこる
ψ(^◇^')ψ	こら おこる

Face mark	Readings
(ノ`△´)ノ	こらっ おこる
(●`ε´●)	ぶんぶん むかつ おこる

泣く・悲しい(Cry/Sorrow)

Face mark	Readings
(>_<)	あいた いたい いてー ひえー なく
(T^T)	うるうる なく
(T_T)	しくしく なく
(/_;)	しくしく なく
(+_+)	びくっ かなしい
(x_x;)	がっくり かなしい
(/_、)	くすん なく
(◇_◇`)	ぐすん なく
○|_|_	がっくし かなしい
(´・ω´)	しょぼん かなしい
(;0;)	しくしく なく
(>_<。)	なく
(;_;)	しくしく なく
(T-T)	なき うるうる なく
(TOT)	なき うるうる なく
(/_。)	いたい なく
:<	なく かなしい
(;´◇⊂)	なき ぐすん なく
°・(ノ◇)`°・	えーん なく

驚き(Surprised)

Face mark	Readings
(*_*)	びくっ おどろき
(・?)	めがてん おどろき
(・;)	めがてん おどろき
(°-°)	うーん おどろき
@_@	びくっ おどろき
(-;)	ぎくっ おどろき
(-☆)	きらーん おどろき
(□□;!!)	がーん おどろき
(° o° ;)	ぼかーん おどろき
Σ(□□)!	びっくり がーん ぎく おどろき
(◇◇;)	えっ おどろき
\ (° □° ;) ノ	えっ おどろき
(;° □°)	えっ おどろき
(((((° ◇° ;))))	がががく おどろき
(=_;)	ぎくっ てつや おどろき
(・;)	めがてん おどろき
(°o°)	ぎくっ ぎょ おどろき
(°o°;	ぎくっ ぎょ おどろき
@_@。	びくっ ぎょっ おどろき

Face mark	Readings
(°◇°)	ぼかーん おどろき
(°_°)	うーん おどろき
(・;)	めがてん おどろき
(・、)	めがてん おどろき
(・;)	めがてん おどろき
(・o・)	めがてん おどろき
(°o°)/	おおー びっくり おどろき
(°o°;;)	ぎくっ おどろき
Σ(°□°;)	がーん おどろき

疑問・焦り(Question/Impatient)

Face mark	Readings
(^^;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(?_?)	なぜ ぎもん
(-_-;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
w=(°o°)=w	ばたばた ぎもん
σ(°^;)?	えっ ぎもん
(;¬¬)ゞ-	じー ぎもん
0(><);(><)0	あたふた あせり
(° ◇° ; ≡ ; ° ◇°)	あたふた あせり
^^;	ぎくっ あせり
(^^;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(^_;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(^-;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(~_~;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(¥¥;)	ぎくっ あせ ぎもん
(*_*;)	びくっ あせり
^_~;	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(?_?;	ぎくっ なぜ ぎもん
ε=└(´・`)-┘	にげる あせり
(° ▽° ;)	ぎくっ あせ えっ あせり
((○(>_<)○))	じたばた あせり
(;° 0°)	ぎくっ あせ あせり

その他(Others)

Face mark	Readings
(^▽^@)♪♪♪	うたう
(´◇´)ゞ	りょうかい おっけー らじゃ
m(_)m	ぺこり
_(_)_	ぺこり
<(_)>	ありがと おねがい ごめん ぺこり
≡≡≡Λ(*--)/	いそぐ にげる
(^_^;)))))))))コソコソ	こそこそ
p(^-^)q	がんばれ ふぁいと
;)	ういんく
(^-)	ういんく

List of pictograms

Entering one of the following readings in hiragana/kanji mode allows you to convert it.

- Entering “えもじ” also allows converting for Pictogram 1.
- Entering “えもじに” also allows converting for Pictogram 2.
- In case of sending i-mode Mail including pictograms to mobile phones by other companies (au/SoftBank/Tu-Ka), they are converted to similar pictograms on the recipient’s phones automatically.
 - Pictograms may not be displayed correctly depending on the model or function of the mobile phone used by the recipient.
 - In case there are no corresponding pictograms in the recipient’s, they are converted to any character or “= ”.
- Pictogram 2 used in mail may not be displayed correctly on some other terminals.
- When you send SMS, ♡ is replaced by ♥ and pictograms other than ♡, ♥ or ☺ are replaced by one-byte space.

Pictogram 1

Pictogram	Readings
♡	はーと
♥	はーと
💖	しつれん はーと
💕	はーと
😊	うれしい にこ かお
😬	おこる いかり むか かお
😄	がっかり かなしい かお
😁	かなしい かお
😃	ふらふら かお
😄	いぬ どうぶつ
😆	ねこ どうぶつ
☀	はれ てんき たいよう
☁	くもり てんき くも
☂	あめ てんき かさ
☃	ゆき てんき
⚡	かみなり てんき
🌩	たいふう てんき うずまき
☀	きり てんき
👉	こさめ てんき かさ
🎵	るんるん おんぶ おんがく
🎶	むーど おんぶ おんがく
👪	おんせん ふろ おふる
👩	かわいい はな
👧	きすまーく きす くち
💎	ぴかぴか きらきら
💡	ひらめき でんきゆう ぴかぴか
👉	むか いかり おこる
👨	ばんち てー
👦	ばくだん

Pictogram	Readings
zzz	ねむい ねむり すいみん ねる
!	びっくり
!?	びっくり はてな
!!	びっくり
Σ	どん しょうげき
㊄	あせ
㊄	あせ
㊄	だっしゅ
㊄	ちょうおん
㊄	ちょうおん
OK	けってい おーけー おっけー
↗	みぎうえ みぎななめうえ やじるし
↘	みぎした みぎななめした やじるし
↖	ひだりうえ ひだりなな めうえ やじるし
↙	ひだりした ひだりなな めした やじるし
↶	ぐっど やじるし
↷	ばっど やじるし
👁	め
👂	みみ
👃	ぐー て
👄	ちよき ぶい びーす て
👋	ばー て
👉	あし
♥	はーと とらんぶ
♠	すべーど とらんぶ
♠	だいや とらんぶ

Pictogram	Readings
♣	くらぶ くるーばー とらんぶ
📧	でんしゃ のりもの てつどう
M	ちかてつ のりもの
🚗	しんかんせん のりもの
🚗	くるま のりもの じどうしゃ
🚗	くるま のりもの じどうしゃ
🚗	ばす くるま のりもの
🌳	ふね のりもの
🚗	ひこうき のりもの くうこう
🚗	りぞーと よっと のりもの
🚗	くりすます つりー
🏠	いえ じたく
🏠	びる かいしゃ
🏠	ゆうびんきょく ゆうびん
🏠	びょういん
🏠	ぎんこう
🏠	えーていーえむ ぎんこう
🏠	ほてる
🏠	こんびにえんすすとあ こんびに
🏠	がそりんすたんど がそりん がすすた がそすた
🏠	ちゅうしゃじょう ばーきんく ばーく
🏠	しんごう
🏠	といれ
🏠	れすとらん しょくじ ごはん

Pictogram	Readings
	きつさてん こーひー かつぶ かふえ
	ばー かくてる さけ
	びーる さけ
	ふぁーすとふーど はんばーがー
	ぶていっく くつ ひーる
	びよういん はさみ とこや
	からおけ まいく
	えいが
	ゆうえんち もくば
	おんがく へっどほん
	あーと
	えんげき
	いべんと
	ちけつと きつぷ
	すぼ一つ しゃつ
	やきゅう すぼ一つ ぼーる
	ごるふ すぼ一つ
	てにす すぼ一つ
	さっかー すぼ一つ ぼーる
	すきー すぼ一つ
	ばすけつとぼーる ばすけ ばすけつと すぼ一つ
	もーたーすぼ一つ ふらっく はた すぼ一つ
	ぼけつとべる ぼけべる
	きつえん たばこ
	きんえん たばこ
	かめら
	かばん ばつぐ
	ほん
	りほん
	ぶれぜんと
	ばーすでー ろうそく たんじょうび

Pictogram	Readings
	でんわ
	でんわ けいたいでんわ けいたい けーたい
	めーる
	めも
	てれび
	げーむ
	しーでいー おんがく
	くつ すにーがー
	めがね
	くるまいす
	おひつじざ せいざ
	おうしざ せいざ
	ふたござ せいざ
	かにざ せいざ
	ししざ せいざ
	おとめざ せいざ
	てんびんざ せいざ
	さそりざ せいざ
	いてざ せいざ
	やぎざ せいざ
	みずがめざ せいざ
	うおざ せいざ
	しんげつ つき
	つき
	はんげつ つき
	みかづき つき
	まんげつ つき
	でんわ けいたいでんわ けいたい けーたい
	めーる
	ふぁっくす
	あいもーど
	あいもーど
	どこも
	どこも

Pictogram	Readings
	ゆうりょう えん おかね かね
	むりょう ふりー
	あいでいー
	ばすわーど かぎ ろっく
	りたーん えんたー
	くりあ
	さーち むしめがね
	にゅー
	いちじょうほう はた ふらっく
	ふりーだいやる
	しゃーぶだいやる
	もばきゅー
	いち すうじ
	に すうじ
	さん すうじ
	よん し すうじ
	ご すうじ
	ろく すうじ
	なな しち すうじ
	はち すうじ
	きゅー きゅう く すうじ
	ぜろ れい すうじ
	かちんこ えいが
	ふくろ
	ぺん
	ひとかけ ひと
	いす
	よる つき
	すーん
	おん
	えんど おわり
	とけい じかん

Pictogram 2

Pictogram	Readings
	じてんしゃ のりもの
	れんち こうぐ しゅうり
	ばそこん ぴーしー
	えんびつ
	くりつぷ

Pictogram	Readings
	さゆう やじるし
	じょうげ やじるし
	りさいくる
	えぬじー
	まるひ ひみつ

Pictogram	Readings
	きんし
	くうしつ くうせき くうしゃ あき
	ごうかく
	まんしつ まんせき まんしゃ まん

Pictogram	Readings
	きけん けいこく びっくり
	こびーらいと しー
	とれーどまーく ていーえむ
	れじすたーどとれーど まーく あーる
	あいあがり
	あいあがり
	どるぶくる おかね かね
	うでどけい とけい じかん
	すなどけい とけい
	おにぎり おむすび
	しょーとけーき けーき
	ばん
	どんぶり らーめん
	ゆのみ おちゃ
	とっくり にほんしゅ さけ
	わいんぐらす わいん さけ
	ばなな くだもの
	りんご くだもの
	さくらんぼ くだもの
	くろーばー よつば は はっぱ
	ちゅーりつぷ はな

Pictogram	Readings
	め は はっぱ
	もみじ は はっぱ
	さくら はな
	かたつむり どうぶつ
	ひよこ とり どうぶつ
	べんぎん どうぶつ
	さかな どうぶつ
	うま どうぶつ
	ぶた どうぶつ
	ていーしゃつ しゃつ
	じーんず じーばん ずばん
	けしょう くちべに
	ゆびわ りんぐ
	おうかん
	ちゃべる べる あらーむ
	どあ とびら
	がっこう
	なみ うみ
	ふじさん やま
	すのぼ すのーぼーど
	はしる ひと だっしゅ
	うーん かお
	ほっ にこ かお

Pictogram	Readings
	あせ かお
	あせ かお
	むっ むか かお
	ほけ かお
	はーと かお
	あつかんペー ペー かお
	ういんく かお
	うれしい にこ かお
	がまん かお
	ねこ どうぶつ かお
	えーん かなしい なく かお
	なみだ かなしい なく かお
	うまい おいしい かお
	うっしっし うれしい かお
	げっそり さげび かお
	おーけー ぐっど て おっけー
	らぶれたー てがみ めーる
	さいふ おかね かね

Combination of operations during Multiaccess

The following table shows whether or not a process that is generated or to be performed can be operated when any other operation is in progress:

Processes that occur or are performed	Voice call		Videophone call		i-mode	Full Browser	i-mode Mail	
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Connect	Connect	Send	Receive
During a voice call	*1	*1, 2	x	*3				*4
During a videophone call	x	*3	x	*3	x	x	x	x
During i-mode			*5	*6	x	*5		
Connecting to Full Browser			*7	*6	x	x	*7	
During i-mode Mail reception/transmission			*5	*6		*8	*9	*9
During SMS reception/transmission							*9	*9
During i- ppli operation	*10	*10	*10	*10	x	x		*4
During packet communication connecting to PC			x	x *11	x	x	x	x
During 64K data communication	x	*2, 12	x	*3	x	x	x	x
During connecting to the Data Center	*13		*14	*6	x	x	x	x

Processes that occur or are performed	SMS		Packet communication connecting to PC		64K data communication		Data transmission (Infrared communication)	
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive
Current status								
During a voice call		*4			x	*3	x	x
During a videophone call	x	*4	x	x	x	*3	x	x
During i-mode			x	x	x	x *11	x	x
Connecting to Full Browser			x	x	x	x *11	x	x
During i-mode Mail reception/transmission	*9	*9	x	x	x	x *11	x	x
During SMS reception/transmission	*9	*9			*15		x	x
During i- ppli operation		*4						x
During packet communication connecting to PC	*16		x	x	x	x *11	x	x
During 64K data communication	x	*4	x	x	x	*3	x	x
During connecting to the Data Center	x	x	x	x	x	x *11	x	x

○ : Another communication is available. : Another communication is available depending on conditions.
x : Another communication is unavailable.

- * In case a videophone call is made connecting with the external device, the operation during 64K data communication is applied.
- * During i-mode (i-mode connection) includes i-channel communication (except receiving information).
- * Receiving i-mode Mail includes receiving Message R/F and receiving the information of i-channel.
- *1 In case Call Waiting Service is active, you can make a call to another party or receive from another party during a call.
- *2 Subscribers to Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service can also use these services.
- *3 In case Call Waiting Service or Call Forwarding Service is active, the call is recorded as missed call in the received call history. In addition, when *Set arrival act* is activated, the call is recorded as missed call in the received call history even if Call Waiting Service or Call Forwarding Service is deactivated.
- *4 The ring alert does not sound.
- *5 i-mode communication is disconnected if active.
- *6 Depends on the setting of Data Session Arrival Act.
- *7 In case of connecting to Full Browser, Full Browser connection is disconnected.
- *8 Connecting is available after finishing sending/receiving i-mode Mail.
- *9 Sending while sending or receiving while receiving cannot be performed. Sending and receiving may not be allowed at the same time.
- *10 Melody of i- ppli is stopped. When i- ppli is using i-mode, i-mode is disconnected.
- *11 The call is recorded as missed call in the received call history.
- *12 In case Call Waiting Service is active, you can select answering a call after finishing the current communication or rejecting the incoming call.
- *13 In case of connecting to the Data Center, dialing via the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is not available.
- *14 Communication to the Data Center is disconnected if active.
- *15 Sending may not be available during sending SMS.
- *16 You can compose and send SMS from the phonebook.

: can be selected x : cannot be selected

Function in progress	New Task menu item	2 i-mode					3 i-ppli	4 Phonebook & Logs						5 Data Box							
	7 i-Channel list	8 Browser settings					1 Phonebook	1 Received calls		3 Redial		4 Ans. machine/V. memo		5 Mail logs		6 Own number	1 Image	2 Music	3 i-motion	4 Melody	5 My Document
		1 Home	2 Bookmark	3 Enter URL	4 URL history	5 Last URL		1	2	1	2	3	1	2	1	2	1	2	3	4	5
Phone call																					
Dial input																					
Videophone call	x	x	x	x	x	x		x	x	x	x	x	x			x	x	x	x	x	
64K data communication	x	x	x	x	x	x															
PPP data communication	x	x	x	x	x	x															
Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages/Received or Sent SMS (UIM)/Read mail templates																					
Compose i-mode Mail/SMS																					
Chat mail																					
Message R/F list screen							x														
Message R/F view screen	x	x	x	x	x	x	x														
Check i-mode Message																					
Check SMS																					
iMenu/i-Channel	x	x	x	x	x	x	x														
Full Browser	x	x	x	x	x	x	x										x				
Enter URL/URL history/Bookmark/Last Visited URL	x	x	x	x	x	x	x														
Screen Memo list screen	x	x	x	x	x	x	x														
Screen Memo display screen	x	x	x	x	x	x	x														
i-ppli/Software list	x	x	x	x	x	x	x										x	x	x	x	
i-ppli download	x	x	x	x	x	x	x										x	x	x	x	
i-motion (Play video/music)																					
Melody																					
My Picture																					
My Document																					
Chara-den																					
Machi-chara																					
Others																					
Still Camera																					
Movie Camera/Sound Recorder																					
Bar Code Reader																					
Music Player		x	x	x	x	x	x														
Phonebook																					
Notepad																					
Scheduler																					
Calculator																					
Dictionaries																					
Received Calls/Redial																					
Sent Msg. Log/Received Msg. Log																					
Own Number																					
Receiving i-mode Mail																					
Receiving SMS																					
Answer Machine/Voice Memo																					
Alarm clock/Schedule alarm																					
Timer																					
Videophone call by external device	x	x	x	x	x	x															
Connecting to the Data Center	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
Display communication log in Phonebook																					

: can be selected x : cannot be selected

New Task menu item	5 Data Box			6 LifeKit			7 Stationery			8 Adjust volume			9 Music player	# Silent mode ON/OFF	
	6 Chara-den	7 Machi-chara	8 Other	1 Bar code reader	2 Camera	3 Movie Camera	4 Sound recorder	1 Scheduler	2 Notepad	3 Calculator	4 Dictionaries	1 Call alert volume			2 Mail/Msg alert vol.	3 i- ppli effect sound
Function in progress															
Phone call							x	x				x		x	x
Dial input															x
Videophone call										x		x			x
64K data communication							x	x				x			x
PPP data communication															x
Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages/ Received or Sent SMS (UIM)/ Read mail templates															
Compose i-mode Mail/SMS															
Chat mail															
Message R/F list screen															
Message R/F view screen															
Check i-mode Message															
Check SMS															
iMenu/i-Channel															
Full Browser															x
Enter URL/URL history/Bookmark/Last Visited URL															
Screen Memo list screen															
Screen Memo display screen															
i- ppli/Software list		x	x	x											x
i- ppli download		x	x	x											x
i-motion (Play video/music)		x			x	x	x	x							x
Melody															x
My Picture		x			x	x	x	x							
My Document															x
Chara-den		x			x	x	x	x							x
Machi-chara			x		x										
Other			x												
Still Camera		x			x	x	x	x							x
Movie Camera/Sound Recorder		x			x	x	x	x							x
Bar Code Reader		x			x	x	x	x							
Music Player		x			x	x	x	x							x
Phonebook															
Notepad		x							x						
Scheduler									x						
Calculator										x					
Dictionaries											x				
Received Calls/Redial															
Sent Msg. Log/Received Msg. Log															
Own Number															
Receiving i-mode Mail															
Receiving SMS															
Answer Machine/Voice Memo								x	x						x
Alarm clock/Schedule alarm															x
Timer															
Videophone call by external device		x					x	x				x			x
Connecting to the Data Center			x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Display communication log in Phonebook		x													

• Some functions which can be selected may be unavailable depending on the status of activating or lock settings, etc.

Services available for FOMA terminal

Service	Phone number
Collect call (calls charged to receiver)	106 (no area code)
Directory assistance for general subscriber phones and for DoCoMo's mobile phones (charges apply) (unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)	104 (no area code)
Telegrams (charges apply) 8 a.m. to 10 p.m.	115 (no area code)
Time (charges apply)	117 (no area code)
Weather (charges apply)	Area code + 177
Police emergencies	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance	119 (no area code)
Marine emergencies and accident reports	118 (no area code)
Disaster Voice Mail Service (charges apply)	171 (no area code)

INFORMATION

If you use the collect call service (106), the call charge is billed to the receiver together with a commission of 90 yen (94.5 yen with tax included) per call. (as of December 2006)

If you use the directory assistance service (104), a service charge of 100 yen (105 yen with tax included) is billed together with the call charge. Note that this service is available free from charge for those who are under special conditions. For further information, inquire at 116 (NTT sales center) from a general subscriber phone. (as of December 2006)

Note that calls to 110, 119 or 118 from FOMA terminal cannot be located. Since the police or fire department authorities may call you to confirm, inform them that you are calling from a mobile phone, give your number and detailed information of your whereabouts. To make sure that you are not cut off during the call, stay in one place when you make the call and do not turn off the phone after the call, but keep it on for about 10 minutes.

Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected to the local police or fire department. Use a public payphone or general subscriber phone if you cannot get in touch with the local authorities.

A general subscriber phone, when it is set for "Call Forwarding", can forward an incoming call to a mobile phone. In this case, even when the receiver's side is busy, is outside the service area, or is turned off, the caller may still hear ringing alert. It is due to some optional setting applied to the general subscriber or mobile phone's side.

You may not be able to call 116 (NTT sales center), Dial Q², Message Dial and make credit card calls. However, credit card calls can be made from a general subscriber phone/pay phone to FOMA terminal.

Options and related devices

Combining FOMA terminal with optional accessories supports a wide variety of uses from personal use to business use. Some products are unavailable depending on the region. For details, contact DoCoMo Shops.

For details about the optional accessories, refer to the instruction manual for each device.

- Battery Pack D08
- Back Cover D15
- Desktop Holder D11
- FOMA AC Adapter P01
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use*1
- FOMA DC Adapter 01
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/P02
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- Earphone Plug Adapter P001
- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001*2/P002*2
- Stereo Earphone Set P001*2
- Earphone Terminal P001*2
- FOMA USB Cable
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna (Stand Type)
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01*3
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- In-Car Holder 01
- Carry Case L 01
- Bone conduction microphone/receiver

*1 When using your FOMA terminal overseas, you need a conversion plug adapter meeting the specifications for the country to which you are to visit.

*2 The Earphone Plug Adapter P001 is required.

*3 FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 is required for USB connection/charging with FOMA D703i.

About Video playing software

Playing videos (MP4 file) on a PC requires QuickTime Player (free of charge) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP), which is provided by Apple Computer Inc.

QuickTime Player can be downloaded from the website below:

<http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/>

- For details including the operating environment, downloading procedure and operation instructions, visit the website shown above.
- Downloading the software requires a PC with Internet access. Communication charges are separately required for downloading.

Troubleshooting

Check if updating software is required first and perform Software Update if necessary. ◀P374

Power supply and charging

FOMA terminal cannot be turned on (the terminal cannot be used).

- Is the battery pack connected properly? ▶P35
- Is the battery depleted? ▶P39
- When the FOMA terminal is on when using Dual Network Service, the FOMA terminal service is not available. Check whether or not FOMA terminal is on. For details, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network Services]”.

The icon on the top of the display flashes and a rapid beep alarm is heard.

The battery is almost discharged. Charge the battery. ▶P36, P39

FOMA terminal cannot be charged.

- Is the battery pack connected properly? ▶P35
- Is the charger terminal dirty? Clean the terminal with dry cotton swab, etc.
- Is the AC adapter (optional) connector securely inserted to the FOMA terminal’s jack or the Desktop Holder (optional) connection terminal? ▶P37
- Is FOMA terminal correctly mounted on the Desktop Holder (optional)? ▶P38
- In case the temperature of FOMA terminal is high, charging may not work. When some functions are used, terminate them and charge again later after the temperature of FOMA terminal is low.

The charging indicator flashes in red during charging.

End any calls or communications immediately. Disconnect the optional AC adapter (Desktop Holder) or DC adapter from FOMA terminal. Then connect all the devices correctly and start over. ▶P36, P37
If the problem still persists, contact “Repairs” listed on the back of this manual.

Phone call

Please wait for a while is displayed and does not go out.



- The voice line/packet communication equipment is damaged or the voice line network/packet communication network is so congested. Please retry later. The message can be deleted by pressing a dial key.

- You can call the number 110,119 and 118. However the call may not be connected depending on the status.

Calls cannot be made using the dial keys.

- Have you set All Lock? ▶P130
- Have you set Keypad Dial Lock? ▶P133
- Have you set Self Mode? ▶P132
- Have you set Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)? ▶P131

 (outside service area) is indicated on the display and you hear busy signals.

Are you outside the service area or in an area with poor signal strength? ▶P40

After dialing a number, you hear busy signals and cannot establish your call.

- Have you dialed the area code?
- Did you hear the dial tone before entering a phone number?
- Is  indicated? ▶P40

The ring alert does not sound.

- Is the ring alert volume set to *silent*? ▶P62
- Is the following function set?
 - Reject/Accept Call ▶P137
 - Anonymous Caller ▶P139
 - Mute Ring Time Setting ▶P140
 - Reject Unregistered Caller ▶P141
- Have you set Public mode (Driving mode)? ▶P66
- Have you set Silent Mode? ▶P107
- Have you set All Lock? ▶P130
- Have you set Self Mode? ▶P132
- Is the ringing time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service set to 0 Sec.? ▶P318, P320

An incoming voice call cannot be responded with the Any Key Answer function.

Is Any Key Answer set to **OFF**? ➡P61

During a voice call, the other party's voice is hard to listen or too loud.

Has the earpiece volume setting been changed? Adjust it appropriately. ➡P62

When there is an incoming call, a name recorded in the phonebook is not displayed or the ring alert registered in the phonebook is not generated.

- Is the phone number notified by the other party? ➡P60
- Does the phone number of the other party match the phone number registered in the phonebook?
- Is more than one phone number registered in the same FOMA terminal phonebook or is the same phone number registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook? ➡P80
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➡P134

When there is an incoming call, a ring alert not set sounds.

- The ring alert set in multiple functions sounds depending on the priority levels. ➡P103
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➡P134

When there is an incoming call, an image not set appears.

- When video/i-motion containing sound and image is set as ring alert for Call Alert, the set video/i-motion is used as the image.
- When call images are set in multiple functions, the image appears depending on the priority levels ➡P114
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➡P134

When there is an incoming call, the keys light/flash in a lighting pattern not set.

- If a lighting pattern is set for multiple functions, the keys light/flash depending on the priority levels. ➡P122
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➡P134

Settings and operations

Key icon is displayed instead of menu icon and icon cannot be selected.

In case some functions cannot be activated because of various lock functions or the UIM not inserted, their icons change to  and cannot be selected.

The keypad sound is not generated.

- Is Keypad Sound set to **OFF**? ➡P104
- Have you set Silent Mode? ➡P107

A message **Insert UIM.** is displayed when FOMA terminal is powered on.

The UIM may not be properly attached or may be damaged. Check to see if the UIM is properly attached. ➡P32

All locked. appears on the display.

All Lock is set. Cancel All Lock. ➡P130

Omakase Lock active. is displayed and cannot operate the terminal.

Omakase Lock (Remote Lock) is set. ➡P131

Nothing is indicated on the display.

- Is **Normal use of Display light time** in Display Light Setting set to other than **Always**? Screen display disappears after about 90 seconds have elapsed without any operation. ➡P116
- Display reappears by any key operation.
- Have you set Key Lock? Display on the screen disappears while Key Lock is on. ➡P136

The display is indicated by a dim color and hard to be viewed.

Is Only View set to **ON**? ➡P218

Pressing keys has no effect.

The keys cannot be used because Key Lock is set. Cancel Key Lock. ➡P136

The day of the week appears in Japanese.

- Is **Day for Clock Display Format** set to **Japanese**? ➡P123
- Is **Select Language** set to **日本語** (Japanese)? ➡P40

The display is dim.

Is **Brightness** in Display Light Setting set to **Low**? ➡P116

The lighting for the display and dial keys does not go on.

- Is **Normal use of Display light time** in Display Light Setting set to **0 sec**? ➡P116
- Have you set Key Lock? ➡P136

When Auto Power ON is set, FOMA terminal cannot be turned on at the specified time.

If the power is turned off in a manner other than the power-off operation or Auto Power OFF function (battery pack came off, for example), this function is not activated.

Even if Alarm Clock or the schedule is set, the alarm does not operate at the specified date and time when the power is turned off.

- If the power is turned off in a manner other than the power-off operation or Auto Power OFF function (battery pack came off, for example), this function is not activated.
- Set Alarm Auto Power ON to **ON**. ➡P297

Call cost has not been charged.

The total cost for the UIM may exceed the limit (about 16,770,000 yen).

You can reset to 0 yen. ➡P309

Mail and data

Still images and video taken with the camera are blurred.

When shooting an object nearby, use macro mode and switch to normal mode when shooting an object at a distance. ➡P152

Names are not displayed or ring alert does not sound at the time of mail reception even though they have been registered in the phonebook.

- Does the mail address or number of the other party match that registered in the phonebook?
Register correct phone numbers and mail address in the phonebook. ➡P80
- Is more than one mail address or phone number registered in the same FOMA terminal phonebook, or is the same mail address or the phone number registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook? ➡P80
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➡P134

Mail reception is announced by other ring alert than that set for incoming mail.

- When the mail ring alert is set for multiple functions, the ring alert sounds depending on the priority levels. ➡P103
- When multiple mails are received at the same time, the mail ring alert sounds depending on the conditions set for the last mail received.
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➡P134

When mail is received, the keys light/flash in other lighting pattern than those set for incoming mail.

- When the incoming mail lighting pattern is set for multiple functions, the keys light/flash depending on the priority levels. ➡P122
- When multiple mails are received at the same time, the keys light or flash in the incoming mail lighting pattern corresponding to the last mail received.
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➡P134

The image and video is displayed as  and .

If the data has been destroyed, it cannot be correctly displayed and  or  appears.

Example of Error messages

Error Message

Main error messages displayed on FOMA terminal are shown in the alphabetical order as follows:

- The "(number)" or "(XXX)" in error messages is a code used to distinguish the error sent from the i-mode Center.

Address is not valid. (451)

Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or SMS messages. Make sure if the address is correct.

Another application running. Unable to start this application.

Please retry after the running function is finished.

Authentication interrupted.

Displayed when you stop authentication on the screen.

Authentication type is not supported. (401)

The authentication type is not supported and connection to the specified i-mode sites or websites are disabled.

Cannot execute because of other tasks.

- Stop all other functions running before executing.
- Cannot be executed because the pattern definition is being updated. Execute after completing updating.

Can not open any more window.

Cannot open a new window because the number of windows or frames is too many. It may be displayed when closing the open windows.

Certificate is rejected.(tampered)

The site certificate is altered. Connection is suspended.

Chat mail data damaged. Restore default settings?

The data of chat mail contains error. Select **Yes** to return to the default setting. Select **No** to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

Check address.

Failed to transmit SMS. Make sure if the address is correct.

Check address.

The mail address in the mail group contains error or no mail address is entered. Check the mail address.

Check SMS center setting.

SMS setting at *SMSC* is incorrect. Check the setting. ➡P226

Connection failed.

Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

Connection failed. (403)

Failed to connect due to some cause such as connection to the specified i-mode sites or websites were rejected.

Connection failed. (503)

Failed to connect because of the maintenance of the server or congestion of the line. Please retry after a while.

Connection failed. (562)

Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

Connection interrupted.

Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. If the error persists, try again later.

Contains bad data.

i- ppli cannot be started from invalid data read with Bar Code Reader.

Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion.

Reception was suspended because the data exceeded the maximum size when downloading the streaming type i-motion data.

Content length exceeds replayable size for i-motion.

Reception was suspended because the data exceeded the maximum size when downloading the normal type i-motion data.

Continue using i- ppli and transmit data?

The number of transmission is extremely large within the specified duration when using i- ppli and i- ppli tried to transmit again after the message *Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?* was displayed. Select *Yes* to use i- ppli successively, *Terminate i- ppli* to quit i- ppli.

Data damaged. Unable to view log.

The log cannot be displayed because the log data of sent or received mail contains an error.

Data damaged. Restore default settings?

The data contains error. Select *Yes* to return to the default setting. Mail cannot be started without restoring the default setting.

Data not supported. Unable to display.

The data cannot be displayed because it cannot be recognized by FOMA terminal.

Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?

Displayed in case the number of transmission is extremely large within the specified duration when using i- ppli. Select *Yes* to use i- ppli successively, *No* to continue i- ppli after terminating i- ppli transmission or *Terminate i- ppli* to quit i- ppli.

Dial callout restricted.

This prohibited operation is unavailable with Keypad Dial Lock on.

Download failed.

Communication was interrupted during reception. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. However, in case the data contains an error, it cannot be downloaded even though you retry. Contact the provider of the data.

Error in image. Does not work correctly.

Flash movie cannot be displayed because of the error in the image data.

Exceeded number of maximum characters. Failed to quote partly.

SMS message exceeded 70 characters (160 characters for the font type of English) for reply, so some characters cannot be quoted.

Exceeds maximum size. Unable to display.

The contents of the attached file beyond the maximum size cannot be displayed.

Exceeds maximum size. Unable to play.

The attached file beyond the maximum size cannot be played.

Failed to clear call cost information.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. ☛P32

Failed to move.

When moving selected items or all items of the data, all data cannot be moved.

Failed to read call cost information.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. ☛P32

Failed to save./Unable to save.

- Cannot be saved due to an error.
- Failed to save because PDF data is too large, etc.

Failed to view message data.

- When deleting or searching mail, the object mail data cannot be referenced because it is used for another processing. Retry later.
- Mail data cannot be referenced in chat mail. Retry later.

File contains multiple data file. Unable to display.

The contents of the attached file containing multiple data cannot be displayed.

Folder is full.

Unable to receive Message R/F because the memory space is insufficient. Please read unread Message R/F, release protection of Message R/F or delete unnecessary Message R/F.

Frame number of this page is not supported.

Cannot display because the number of frames is too many. In the multi-windows mode, it may be displayed when closing the open windows.

i- ppli stand-by display canceled due to security error.

i- ppli standby display has exited due to unpermitted operation.

Inbox full. Unable to retrieve new messages.

Unable to receive SMS because of insufficient storage space in the Inbox of FOMA terminal or UIM. Please read unread mail, release mail protection or delete unnecessary mail.

Inbox full. Unable to retrieve new messages.

Unable to receive all SMS messages because there is insufficient storage space in the Inbox of FOMA terminal or the UIM. Please read unread mail, release mail protection or delete unnecessary mail and execute Check SMS again.

Inbox is full.

Unable to receive i-mode Mail because there is insufficient memory space in the Inbox. Please read unread i-mode Mail, release i-mode Mail protection or delete unnecessary i-mode Mail.

Incoming message data damaged. Restore default settings?

The received data of chat mail contains error. Select *Yes* to return to the default setting. Select *No* to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

Infrared Connection interrupted.

An error occurred during infrared communication. During infrared communications, do not move FOMA terminal pointed at the other terminal's infrared data port before data sending and receiving is complete. ❖P273

Infrared Failed to connect via authentication.

Sending all data was failed because the authentication password is not correct. Enter the same authentication password between sender and receiver.

Infrared No response. Retry data exchange?

After entering into the infrared communication state, 5 or more seconds have elapsed with no other terminals for communications found. Point FOMA terminal at the other terminal's infrared data port with a distance of 20 cm or less and select *Yes*. ❖P273

Infrared No UIM. Unable to start requested software.

Because no UIM is inserted, the specified i- ppli cannot be started even when i- ppli To is set in the data received by infrared communications.

Infrared Unable to switch to data transfer mode.

FOMA terminal is communicating. Processes cannot be performed because switching to data transfer mode is unavailable. Terminate communicating or retry again later.

Input error (205)

Input data for i-mode sites or websites contain error. Check the input data for errors.

Insufficient memory.

Operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory.

Insufficient memory. Unable to edit signature. Delete signature.

When editing the signature is started, memory shortage occurs. Delete the data of signature.

Insufficient memory. Unable to open window.

Windows cannot be opened because the memory is insufficient. Executing may be available by closing the windows opened already or terminating other running functions.

Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay. Change now?

You tried to download a streaming type i-motion file with the i-motion type setting *Normal type*. Select *Yes* to change the i-motion type setting. Select *No* if you don't change the setting. ❖P181

Invalid content. Download failed.

Cannot download because the object contents to be charged are invalid.

Invalid data.

The downloaded data contains an error.

Syntax error. (XXX)

- Dose not support the specified i-mode sites or websites.
- The URL may be incorrect. Make sure that the URL is correct.
- Unable to display because there is an error in the received data.
- Within service area, sending auto send mail was unsuccessful.

Invalid data. Connection cannot be established. (400)

- Cannot be connected because of the error in i-mode sites or websites. The URL may be incorrect. Make sure that the URL is correct.
- Within service area, sending auto send mail was unsuccessful.

Invalid data. Failed to save.

Attached melodies or video/i-motion files cannot be played because of the incorrect data.

Invalid data. Unable to save.

Data received through infrared communications cannot be saved because it is in a format incompatible with FOMA terminal.

Invalid data. Unable to save.

The downloaded data cannot be saved because the data is invalid.

Invalid File. (493)

Cannot be obtained due to an invalid file.

Invalid UIM, incorrect display.

Cannot be displayed correctly because of inserting a UIM different from the one you were using when you stored mail templates. Use the same UIM as the one you were using when downloading or saving.

Invalid UIM, requested service not available.

You tried to use data downloaded from i-mode sites or websites or saved from attachments of mail or Message R/F with a UIM different from the one you used when the data was saved. Insert the same UIM as used when those data were downloaded to use it.

Invalid UIM, requested software failed to start.

The i- ppli to be used together with the UIM used when downloading it from a site, etc. cannot be started. Insert the same UIM as used when the software was downloaded to use it.

Invalid URL.

The entered URL contains error. Check the URL.

Mails could not be sent to following address. (561)

Sending i-mode Mail is failed for some receivers. Pressing  displays the receiver that the transmission failed. Check to see if the address of the receiver is correct and retry transmission at another location with good radio wave condition.

Memory is full. Unable to save.

FOMA terminal does not have enough memory space and SMS cannot be saved. Move SMS to UIM or delete i-mode Mail or SMS.

Memory shortage. Quit application.

The running function is terminated due to insufficient memory.

Message kept in center.

SMS messages have already been sent.

Name too long. Saved with incomplete name.

When registering an item selected from the display of a site, etc. to the phonebook, the number of characters has exceeded the specified value. Pressing  causes the phonebook registration screen to be displayed, with characters exceeding the limit deleted for each item.

New pattern definitions for scanning function available. Please update.

Auto-update of the pattern definition was unsuccessful. Update the pattern definition manually. ◀P379

No content is available. (204)

Could not find data at the specified site.

No requested software.

The i- ppli specified by the mail and external equipment is not stored in your FOMA terminal.

No response. (408)

Communication was disconnected because there was no response from i-mode sites or websites within the specified time. Retry later.

No signature set.

Please retry to operate after registering the signature. ◀P216

No space to attach signature.

- The signature cannot be inserted because of exceeding the maximum characters.
- The signature cannot be inserted in SMS because it is decorated.
- The signature cannot be inserted when *English* is set for *Font type* in SMS Setting. Change *Font type* to *Japanese*. ◀P226

No space to attach file.

Exceeds the maximum number of files attachable to one mail.

Not enough memory. Unable to connect.

Cannot connect because the memory is insufficient. Closing the window opened already or terminating other running functions may make connecting available.

No UIM, requested software failed to start.

The i- ppli to be used together with the UIM used when downloading it from a site, etc. cannot be started. Insert the same UIM as used when the software was downloaded to use it.

Now calling. Unable to record movie.

When using the camera during a call, it cannot be switched to video shooting and voice recording. End the call before switching to video shooting and voice recording.

Number of characters exceeds limit.

i-mode Mail message exceeded 10,000 one-byte (5,000 two-byte) characters for reply. Please send after decreasing the number of characters.

Omakase Lock active.

Operations are disabled because Omakase Lock (Remote Lock) is set. You can answer incoming calls. ◀P131

Out of service area.

Unable to execute because the terminal is in a place where radio waves do not reach or out of the service area.

Outgoing message data damaged. Restore default settings?

The sent data of chat mail contains error. Select *Yes* to return to the default setting. Select *No* to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

Page is not found. (404)

Unable to find i-mode site, etc. Make sure that the URL is correct.

Password is not correct. (401)

The user name or password entered in the basic authentication screen of i-mode sites or websites is incorrect. Please try again.

PIM lock.

This prohibited operation is unavailable with PIM Lock on.

Please wait.

The voice line/packet communication equipment is damaged or the voice line network/packet communication network is so congested. Please try again later.

Please wait for a while (packet)

The packet communication equipment is damaged or the packet communication network is so congested. Please try again later.

PJK blocked.

Inquire at DoCoMo Shops.

Receiving data exceeds maximum size for i-motion

Reception was suspended because the data exceeded the maximum size when downloading streaming type i-motion data.

Receiving data exceeds replayable size for i-motion

Reception or replay has not been completed because the data size exceeded the maximum size when downloading normal type i-motion data or when playback was performed while downloading data.

Receiving messages. Retry later.

i-channel cannot be activated during receiving mail or Message R/F. Retry after receiving.

Receiving messages stopped. Some messages unreceived.

Unable to receive all SMS messages because an error occurred during reception. Please move to another location with good radio reception and execute Check SMS again. ◀P226

Registration is in progress. (554)

User registration with i-mode is in process. Please try again later.

Remotely Controllable services denied.

Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service has not subscribed yet. It is required to subscribe to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.

Replay period has not yet started.

Unable to play because of the term prior to the playback period specified. Please try again after the playback period has started.

Requested software unavailable.

The i- ppli cannot be started because of an error in i- ppli. Starting specified i- ppli by i- ppli To function from a site, mail or an external device is disabled if there is a problem in i- ppli operation settings or start-up conditions.

Root certificate has expired. Connect?

The term of validity of CA certificate is premature or overdue. Select *Yes* to connect or *No* not to connect. ◀P177 This message may be displayed when the date and time have not been set or are incorrect. Set the date and time correctly. ◀P41

Root certificate is not valid.

The certificate in FOMA terminal is invalid. To establish a connection, change the setting. ◀P177

Save unsaved data to phone memory or delete.

Infrared communications cannot end because the number of items to be saved is full in INBOX for infrared communications. Save the data in Inbox into FOMA terminal or delete it. ➡P276

Scheduled software update canceled. Retry update software.

Reservation for updating software is canceled because the battery has not been charged for a long while, etc. Start updating software and operate for reservation again. ➡P375, P376

Self Mode activated.

This prohibited operation is unavailable during Self Mode.

Service is not registered.

- You are not an i-mode subscriber. Apply to use the i-mode service.
- If you have subscribed to i-mode after purchasing FOMA terminal, once turn FOMA terminal power off and then turn on.

Service unavailable.

SMS is not available.

Signature, template and sort settings data damaged.

Restore default settings?

The data of signature, template and sort settings contain the error. Select *Yes* to return to default settings. Cannot be activated without returning to default settings.

Size of this page is not supported.

- Downloading has stopped because the size of i-mode sites or websites was larger than the limit size. Press  to display the data already downloaded normally.
- Reception was interrupted because the data size exceeds maximum size while downloading.

Software ended due to security error.

i-ppli has exited due to unpermitted operation. It is recorded in Security Error History.

Software already updated.

The i-ppli cannot be upgraded because it has already been upgraded to the latest version.

SSL session cannot be established.

SSL communication was interrupted due to an SSL communication error or an error on the server concerning the client authentication.

SSL session failed.

A problem was detected with the authentication process during SSL communication. Connection is suspended.

SSL session was terminated.

Some problem is detected with the site certificate during SSL communication. The message is displayed when you select *No* in the connection confirmation screen and SSL communication is disconnected.

SSL/TLS session cannot be established.

SSL/TLS communication was interrupted due to a SSL/TLS communication error or an error on the server concerning the client authentication.

SSL/TLS session failed.

A problem was detected with the authentication process during or SSL/TLS communication. Connection is suspended.

SSL/TLS session was terminated.

Some problem is detected with the site certificate during SSL/TLS communication. The message is displayed when you select *No* in the connection confirmation screen and SSL/TLS communication is disconnected.

This certificate has expired. Connect?

The term of validity of the site certificate is premature or overdue. To connect, select *Yes*; to stop, select *No*.

This certificate is not valid for this URL. Connect?

CN name (server name) of the site certificate does not match the actual server name. To connect, select *Yes*; to stop, select *No*. ➡P177

This data cannot be saved. Download?

This i-motion file or music data, etc. cannot be saved. Select *Yes* to download; select *No* not to download.

This data may not be replayed.

Video/i-motion file format not supported by FOMA terminal. Or the video file may be damaged.

This site is not certified. Connect?

The site certificate is not supported by FOMA terminal. Select *Yes* to connect or *No* not to connect.

This software contains an error.

Unable to download because the i-ppli data contains an error.

This software contains an error. Unable to download.

Unable to download because the i-ppli data contains an error.

This software is currently unavailable for use.

Using the i-ppli is stopped by IP (Information Provider).

This software is not supported by this phone.

The i-ppli cannot be downloaded because it is not compatible with FOMA terminal.

This UIM cannot be recognized.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. Check if the UIM is installed correctly. ➡P32

This UIM is not supported. Download canceled.

Cannot be downloaded because the version of UIM is not supported.

Time reset. Unable to download data. Set auto time adjustment ON in Date & Time and restart phone.

When you set *Auto time adjust* to *OFF* in Date and Time Setting and set the date and time, the date and time may be deleted in case the battery pack is removed or has not been charged for a long while. Set the date and time and download again.

Time reset. Unable to play data. Set auto time adjustment ON in Date & Time and restart phone.

When you set *Auto time adjust* to *OFF* in Date and Time Setting and set the date and time, the date and time may be deleted in case the battery pack is removed or has not been charged for a long while. Set the date and time and replay.

Time out

The i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later.

Too much data was entered.

Unable to transmit data because too many characters were entered in the entry field of i-mode sites or websites. Please reduce the number of characters and retry transmission.

Transmission failed.

Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or SMS. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry transmission.

Transmission failed. (552)

Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or SMS due to the error of i-mode Center or the SMS Center. Please try to send again later.

UIM full.

UIM does not have enough storage space and SMS cannot be saved. Delete SMS from the UIM (☛P228) or move to FOMA terminal (☛P228).

UIM not inserted. Unable to use.

The UIM is not inserted. Please use your FOMA terminal after inserting the UIM. ☛P32

Unable to acquire remaining data, Delete data.

The data was deleted because the remaining data cannot be downloaded due to the data error.

Unable to call.

A voice/videophone call cannot be made during voice/videophone calls or 64K data communication.

Unable to check new messages.

Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. If the error persists, try again later.

Unable to connect during outgoing call barring active.

Cannot connect because the outgoing call is restricted. Retry to operate later.

Unable to connect to server now. (502)

The equipment of the Data Center is damaged or the Data Center is congested. Retry to operate later.

Unable to display image.

Unable to display because the image contains error. Check the image.

Unable to display message.

Unable to display because there is an error in the received/sent mail.

Unable to display this Chara-den.

Chara-den containing illegal data cannot be displayed.

Unable to download remaining data, Delete data.

The data was deleted because the remaining data cannot be downloaded due to the data error.

Unable to download content for Frame tag.

Downloading is unavailable because the data is specified in the format not supported by Full Browser.

Unable to download. Data exceeds maximum size. (452)

Reception is disabled because the size of i-mode sites or websites exceeds the maximum size.

Unable to enter any more.

The number of characters exceeds the limit. Reduce the number of characters.

Unable to move specified page.

When an i-motion ticker contains a link to a site (Web To), etc., in case the URL contains more than 256 characters or downloading was interrupted, the linked page cannot be displayed.

Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error.

Cannot obtain because the replay restriction data is incorrect.

Unable to play.

Cannot be played because the data of i-motion or melodies is incorrect.

Unable to record.

The movie memo cannot be recorded because the communication of image and sound is disconnected.

Unable to retrieve the requested URL. (504)

Failed to connect to the requested URL due to some cause. Please try again later.

Unable to save.

Cannot be saved due to an data error.

Unable to save specified image.

The image cannot be saved because the image in the site, screen memo or Message R/F contains error.

Unable to send. " " is not available temporarily

The i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later.

Unable to shoot serially.

You cannot shoot continuously because memory or the number of items to be saved in *Image* is full. Continuous shoot is canceled automatically.

Unable to switch to data transfer mode.

FOMA terminal is in data communication. Processing cannot be performed because switching to data transfer mode is unavailable. Terminate the communication or retry the operation later.

Unable to update pattern definitions.

Updating the definition file has failed. Stop all other functions currently running and retry the update in a place with strong radio wave signals.

Unable to use during preview.

The bookmark you have selected cannot be used during preview when selecting the attachment.

Unable to view file. Access to URL is limited. (491)

The specified access count was exceeded while downloading a still image above 10,000 bytes which could not be obtained when having received the mail.

Unsent message data damaged. Restore default settings?

The unsent data of chat mail contains error. Select *Yes* to return to the default setting. Select *No* to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

Unsupported Content.

Operation is unavailable because the contents are not compatible with FOMA terminal.

Unsupported format.

The data cannot be displayed because it cannot be recognized by FOMA terminal.

URL address changed. (301)

i-mode sites or websites forward URL automatically or URL is changed.

URL is too long to register.

Unable to register as a bookmark or a screen memo because the URL exceeds the number of characters that can be registered.

Usage is currently restricted.
Try again later.

Displayed in case extremely large data communication is executed within the specified duration only when using i-mode packet fixed sum service. Connection may be unavailable for a certain period of time, so use i-mode/ Full Browser a little while later.

You have no certificate.
Connect?

The user certificate has not been downloaded. To continue the connection, select *Yes*; to stop, select *No*.

Your certificate has expired.
Connect?

The user certificate has expired. To continue the connection, select *Yes*; to stop, select *No*. ◀P177

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- A written warranty is provided with every FOMA terminal; make sure that you receive it. Store the warranty in a safe place when you have read it and checked that it contains the “shop name/ date” you purchased it. If it does not contain the necessary information, contact the shop where you bought it. The warranty is valid for a period of one year from the date of purchase.
- This product and all accessories are subject to change, in part or whole, for the sake of improvement without prior notice.
- Data registered in the phonebook, etc. may be lost or become corrupted due to failure, repair or other handlings of FOMA terminal. It is recommended that you make a note of the data in the phonebook, etc. When your FOMA terminal is repaired and so on, downloaded information via i-mode or i- ppli (except some data) are not forwarded to a repaired FOMA terminal according to the copyright laws.
 - * In this FOMA terminal, the phonebook data, etc. can be saved in Data Center by subscribing to Data Security Service (which is a pay service and requires a subscription).
 - * If you have a PC (Windows 2000, XP), you can use DoCoMo keitai datalink and FOMA USB Cable (optional) to transfer and store the contents registered in the phonebook, etc. on a PC.

After-Sales Service

When problems occur

Before requesting service, read the section “Troubleshooting”. ◀P364

If the problem still persists, contact “Repairs” on the back of this manual.

If the result of inquiries indicates that a repair is required

Take your FOMA terminal to a repair office designated by DoCoMo. Be sure to check the opening hours of the repair office before you go. Note that you must present the warranty.

In the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired at no charge subject to the conditions of the warranty.
- The written warranty must be presented to receive warranty service. The subscriber will be charged for the repairs without presentation of the written warranty or repairs of defects resulting from misuse, accident or neglect, etc. even during the warranty period.
- The subscriber is charged even during the warranty period for the repair of failures caused by the use of devices or consumable items that are not DoCoMo-specified.

Repairs may not be possible in the following cases:

Repair may not be possible when corrosion due to exposure to moisture, condensation or perspiration is detected in a moisture seal reaction or test, or if any of the internal boards are damaged or deformed. Since these conditions are outside the scope of the warranty, a repair, if at all possible, will be charged.

After expiration of the warranty

All repairs that are requested are charged.

Replacement parts

Basically, FOMA terminal's replacement parts (parts required to maintain product function) will be kept in stock for at least 6 years after termination of production. Please keep in mind that it may not be possible to repair your phone depending on the nature of the required repair because of a lack of parts, etc. It may still be possible to repair your phone depending on the nature of the required repair even after this period. Contact “Repairs” listed on the back of this manual.

Notes

- Do not modify the FOMA terminal or its accessories.
 - Fire, injury or damage may result.
 - In order to prevent interference of radio waves or network breakdown, the FOMA terminal and UIM are manufactured according to technical standards stipulated by law. Do not use FOMA terminals or UIMs that do not meet these standards.
 - If the FOMA is modified (part replacement, modification, painting, etc.) it will be repaired only after the modified parts have been restored to the condition at the time of purchase. However, repair may be refused depending on the nature of modification.
 - Repair of failures or damage caused by modification are charged even during the warranty period.
- Do not remove any inscription stickers attached to your FOMA terminal.

The inscription stickers certify that the FOMA terminal satisfies specific technical standards. Note that if stickers are removed intentionally or are reattached in such a way that confirmation of the sticker's contents is impossible, repair or servicing may be refused because confirmation of whether or not the phone conforms to relevant technical standards cannot be made.
- The function settings, the information of total calls duration, etc. may be cleared (reset) by failure, repair or other handling processes. Should this happen, set up the functions again.
- Magnetic components are used in the earpiece and speaker of the FOMA terminal. Do not allow cash cards or other devices that are vulnerable to magnetism to come into contact with the phone.
- If your FOMA terminal becomes wet or moist, turn the power off and remove the battery pack immediately and bring it to a repair office as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of your FOMA terminal.

Phonebook data or downloaded data

- Maintain a separate record of the data you registered or saved in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo will not accept any liability and responsibility whatsoever for changes or loss of information.
- Data created, imported or downloaded by the subscriber may become corrupted or be lost when changing the model or repairing FOMA terminal. DoCoMo will not accept any responsibility for that. Also, DoCoMo may, at its option, repair FOMA terminal by replacing it.

Regarding this FOMA terminal, the downloaded data in FOMA terminal including images and incoming melodies and the data you have created can be transferred only when repairing (some data cannot be transferred and transferring may be unavailable depending on the degree of malfunctions.)

* It may take some time to transfer or transferring may be unavailable depending on the capacity of the data stored in FOMA terminal.

Diagnostic site of i-mode trouble

You can check your FOMA terminal about whether sending/receiving mail or downloading images/melodies operates correctly.



TOP screen

Test menu list screen

To access “iモード故障診断サイト” (Diagnostic site of i-mode trouble) (only in Japanese)

i-mode site: *iMenu* お知らせ(Notice) サービス・機能(Services/Function) *iモード*(i-mode) *iモード故障診断*(Diagnostic site of i-mode trouble)



QR code for website access

- Packet communication for the diagnosis of i-mode trouble is free of charge.
- Test items differ depending on the model of FOMA terminal. In addition, test items may be changed.
- When checking the operation by test items, read carefully the precautions described on the site before testing.
- When connecting to the diagnostic site of i-mode trouble or executing the test of sending mail, your private information concerning FOMA terminal (model name, mail address, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for the diagnostic site of i-mode trouble). DoCoMo does not use the sent information for purposes other than the diagnosis of i-mode trouble.

- In case there is the possibility of malfunctions after checking, contact “Repairs” indicated on the back of this manual.

Updating software

Software Update

This function checks for the necessity for updating FOMA terminal software and downloads part of the software as required through packet communication*1 to make updates of the software. When software update is required, the information will be posted on the DoCoMo website or お知らせ (Notice) in iMenu.

*1 Packet communication for software update is free of charge.

- Software may be updated in the following 2 methods:
 - Immediate Update :
Update on the spot as desired.
 - Reserved Update :
Reserve a day and time-slot for automatic update of the software in the specified day and time.
- Software cannot be updated in the following cases:
 - During All Lock
 - While executing other functions
 - When the date and time are not set
 - When the UIM is not inserted
 - When the battery is not fully charged
 - When PIN1 code is being entered
 - When PIN1 code is locked
 - When 圏外 is indicated
 - During PIM Lock
 - The power is off
 - In Self Mode on
 - While talking
 - During Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)
 - During packet communication connecting with a PC
 - During 64K data communication
- At the time of updating software, the unique information of your mobile phone terminal (model or serial number, etc.) will be automatically sent to the server (the server for updating software managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo will not use the sent information for any other purpose than software update.

INFORMATION

Software update (downloading or rewriting) may take time. If software update is executed when *ON* is set for PIN1 Code On/Off, the PIN code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.

While software is being updated, making/receiving calls, various communication functions or other functions are not available (Incoming voice calls can be answered while downloading).

If *Movie ringtone* or *Music* has been set as a ring alert, a melody sounds for an incoming call during download instead of Movie ringtone. If you set video/i-motion as an image, the first image is displayed.

Any incoming videophone call cannot be answered during download. Unanswered calls are recorded as missed ones in the received call history.

Even if an alarm clock or any alarm is set while software is being updated, the updating continues without activating the alarm clock or the alarm.

For software update, SSL session is established to the server (our site). Enable SSL certificate in Manage Certificate. Configured as valid by default. ●P177 Software update should be done with battery fully charged and enough battery power ().

It is recommended that software update be executed when good signal quality is obtained, 3 bars of the antenna icon () are displayed and the terminal is not being moved.

- If radio wave signals become weaker during software downloading or downloading has stopped, retry software update in a place with strong radio wave signals.

A displayed icon for the message stored at i-mode Center disappears after software update.

If Receive Option Setting is set to *ON* and mail arrives during software updating, the screen that notifies an arrival of mail in the i-mode Center may not appear after the software update being completed.

Never remove the battery pack while updating software. Update fails.

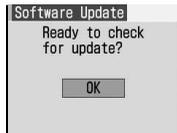
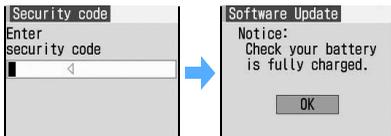
Software update can be done while various data, such as the phonebook entries registered in FOMA Terminal, camera images, downloaded data are retained; however, note that data protection sometimes cannot be secured depending on the conditions of your FOMA terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak). DoCoMo recommends backing up necessary data. (Note that some data such as downloaded data may not be backed up.) When software update has failed, the message *Rewrite failed* appears and all the operations are unavailable. In such a case, please bring FOMA terminal to a repair office designated by DoCoMo.

In case updating is not required, when checking the necessity of software update, a message is displayed indicating update is not necessary, so use as it is.

Software update is available even if Host Selection is set to other than i-mode.

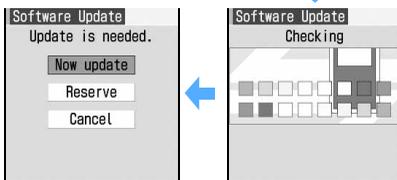
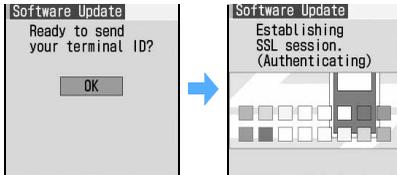
Starting software update

- 1 **Menu** **8** **6** **4**
- 2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Check notice and 



- The terminal security code by default is set to "0000".

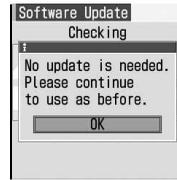
- 3   ▶ Confirm whether software update is required



Selection screen for the update procedure

- Pressing  on the confirmation screen for sending terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

When updating is not necessary:

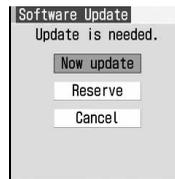


If software updating has been found to be unnecessary as a result of checking for the necessity of updating, the screen as shown on the left is displayed. Press  to use FOMA terminal as it is.

Updating software immediately **Immediate Update**

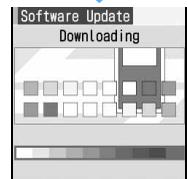
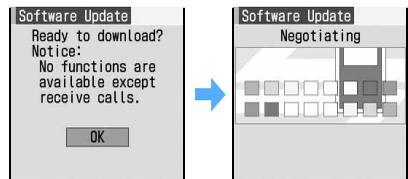
- Immediate update may not be available when the server is busy.

- 1 Display the selection screen for the update procedure



- 2 Select **Now update** ▶ 

Downloading is started and the keys flash.



- Downloading starts in about 5 seconds without pressing .
- Press  to cancel downloading. If downloading is canceled halfway, the data downloaded up to then is deleted.
- After starting downloading, updating process is executed without the operation of selecting the menu.

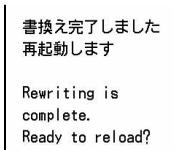
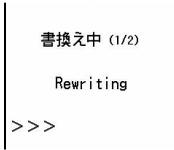
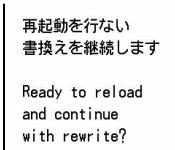
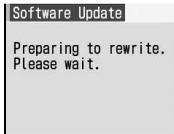
When the server is busy:



- Select **Reserve** and reserve a date and time for update.

3 after completion of downloading

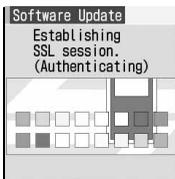
During rewriting, the keys flash.



- Rewriting is started in about 5 seconds without pressing after downloading.
- All key operations are disabled while software is being rewritten. Updating operation cannot be canceled.

4 Automatically reloaded after the completion of rewriting

After reload, wait while communicating again with the server.



5 Press

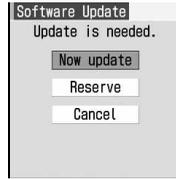
Update is completed and the standby display appears.

Updating software at pre-specified time

Reserved Update

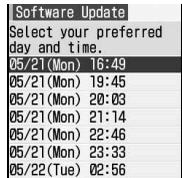
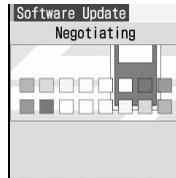
When downloading takes time or the server is busy, you can choose to set the time to start software update in advance by communicating with the server.

1 Display the selection screen for the update procedure P375



2 Select **Reserve**

Inquire the options for preferred day and time by communicating with the server.

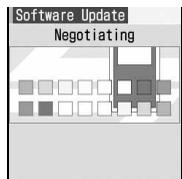
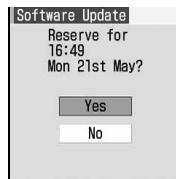


- Available date and time for reservation will be shown by the time of the server.

3 Select preferred day and time

Selecting from the options displayed:

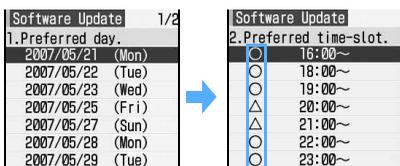
Select preferred day and time **Select Yes**



- If there are more than one option page for preferred day and time, switch to the next or previous page with .

Selecting from other than options displayed:

- ① **Select Others** ▶ **Select preferred day and time-slot**



Availability for reservation at each time-slot will be shown:
 ○ : available
 △ : barely available

- ② **Select preferred day and time-slot**

Connection is made to the server and the options close to preferred day and time-slot are displayed.

- If there are more than one option page for preferred time-slot, switch to the next or previous page with .
- Press  to display the description of the symbol on the left of time-slot.

- ③ **Select preferred day and time** ▶ **Select Yes**

- If there are more than one option page for preferred day and time, switch to the next or previous page with .

4 Press

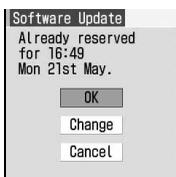
Reservation is completed and the menu is displayed.

-  is shown on the standby display when reservation is made.

Checking/changing/canceling reservation

1    

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Check the contents



- To stop checking:
Select **OK**

Changing reservation:

- ① **Select Change**

A confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID is displayed.

- ② 

The option selection screen is displayed.

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Updating software at pre-specified time".

- Pressing  on the confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

Canceling reservation:

- ① **Select Cancel** ▶ **Select Yes**

A confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID is displayed.

- ②  

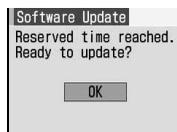
The reservation is canceled and the menu is displayed.

- Pressing  on the confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

When the reserved time arrives

When the reserved time arrives, the screen as shown below is displayed and updating software is started automatically. Before the reserved time, make sure that the battery is fully charged and the handset is in a location where radio waves reach and then show the standby display.

When downloading is completed, rewriting software is automatically started, followed by reload.



- To cancel the software update:  ▶ Select **Yes**

INFORMATION

Note that updating software may not be activated even though the reserved time arrives in case of using the other functions. In case the reserved time arrives while talking or receiving messages, updating software starts after finishing talking or receiving messages. If software update is executed when *ON* is set for PIN1 Code On/Off, the PIN code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.

If an alarm clock or any alarm is set for the same time, the alarm clock or the alarm takes precedence and the software update may not be started.

Protecting FOMA terminal from hazardous data

Virus Scan Function

Update pattern definition first to keep the pattern definition up-to-date.

For the data or program downloaded via a website or received i-mode Mail/SMS, this function detects data that may cause troubles and then deletes it or inhibits activation of applications in order to protect FOMA terminal from viruses.

- Pattern definition is used for checking. Update pattern definition because it is updated whenever a new trouble is detected.
- Virus Scan Function is for preventing the data that cause some problem to mobile phone from invading when viewing websites or receiving mail. Please note that if pattern definition corresponding to specific troubles has not been downloaded to the mobile phone or such pattern definition does not exist, this function cannot prevent the trouble from happening.
- Pattern definition is different depending on the model of mobile phone. Please keep in mind that DoCoMo may stop distributing the pattern definition for the models that have been on the market for 3 years or more.
- When updating pattern definition, your private information concerning the mobile phone (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for the scan function managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo does not use the sent information for purposes other than the scan function.

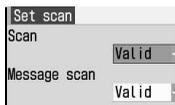
Setting Virus Scan Function

Scanning Setting

If this setting is set to *Valid*, data or program is checked automatically when it is displayed or executed.

Default Valid (all)

- 1 Menu 8 3 6 3
- 2 Select each item ▶ 1 ▶ ☑



Scan:
When setting to *Valid*, in case of detecting the data that may cause troubles, a message is displayed in one of 5 warning levels. ◀P379

Message scan:
When setting to *Valid*, in case SMS contains a phone number or URL, a warning message indicating a phone number or URL is contained appears when the SMS is displayed first.

- In case the missed call notice of mopera mail or Voice Mail is received in SMS, a confirmation screen does not appear.
- To cancel: 2 ▶ ☑

3 Select *Yes*

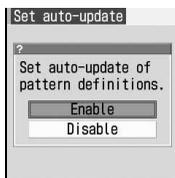
Updating pattern definition automatically

Auto-update Setting

Updating is performed automatically to maintain the latest pattern definition.

- 1 Menu 8 3 6 2

- 2 Select *Enable* ▶ Select *Yes* twice



- To cancel: Select *Disable* ▶ Select *Yes*

- 3 Press ☑

When a new pattern definition is distributed



- When a new pattern definition is distributed, the above screen appears and updating pattern definition is performed automatically. In case of succeeding updating, ☑ is displayed on the standby display. Select an icon and select *OK* after confirming a message.

- In case of failing updating,  appears on the standby display. Update a pattern definition manually after selecting an icon, confirming a message and selecting *OK*.
- To stop updating pattern definition:  ► Select *Yes*

Updating pattern definition Immediately

Update Definition

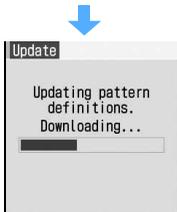
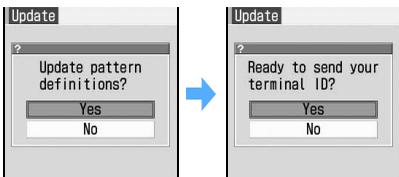
Update a pattern definition manually in case Auto-update Setting is set to *Disable* or Auto-update fails.

- Set the date of FOMA terminal correctly.

1     

2 Select *Yes* twice

The pattern definition is updated.



3 Press 

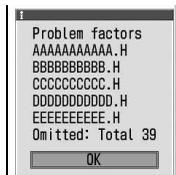
- If pattern definition update has been found to be unnecessary as a result of checking for the necessity of updating, the message meaning that the pattern definition is up-to-date is displayed. Please use FOMA terminal as it is.

INFORMATION

Updating pattern definition is stopped with a voice call arrived. When there is a videophone call or data is received using an external device or the infrared communication function, updating is not interrupted. If the date/time set for an alarm clock or a schedule alarm is reached, the screen for notifying the date and time is displayed during updating of pattern definition and the alarm clock or the alarm sounds, but updating is continued.

Displaying the scan result

When displaying a list of detected problem elements

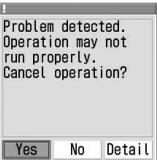


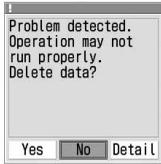
1 Select *Detail* while a warning message is being displayed

The list of the name of problem elements detected by scan is displayed.

- When 6 or more problem elements have been detected, the names of the 6th and subsequent problem elements are omitted and the total count of the detected problem elements is displayed.

Display of the scan result

Warning level/ Message	Handling method
Warning Level 0 	<i>OK</i> : Continues processing of the started application. <i>Detail</i> : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 1 	<i>Yes</i> : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. <i>No</i> : Continues processing of the started application. <i>Detail</i> : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 2 	<i>OK</i> : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. <i>Detail</i> : Lists names of the detected problem elements.

Warning level/ Message	Handling method
Warning Level 3 	Yes : Deletes data that may cause troubles. No : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. Detail : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 4 	OK : Deletes data that may cause troubles. Detail : Lists names of the detected problem elements.

INFORMATION

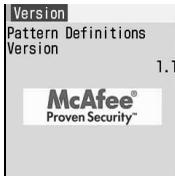
In case some problem is detected through scan in the i- ppli set as the i- ppli standby display and activating i- ppli is stopped, the i- ppli standby display is canceled.

Detail may not be displayed depending on the problem elements.

Checking the pattern definition version

Scan Version

1 Press     



Main specification

Item	FOMA D703i	
Size	130 mm (H) x 49 mm(W) x 9.9 mm (D)	
Weight	Approx. 83 g (with battery pack)	
Continuous standby time	While standing still:	Approx. 400 hours
	While moving:	Approx. 290 hours
Continuous call time	During a voice call:	Approx. 120 minutes
	During a videophone call:	Approx. 80 minutes
Charging time	AC adapter :	Approx. 120 minutes
	DC adapter :	Approx. 120 minutes
LCD (liquid crystal display)	System	TFT 262,144 colors
	Size	2.4 inches
	Pixels	76,800 (240 x 320 dots)
Image device	Type	CMOS
	Size	1/4 inches
	Effective pixels	Approx.1.3 M
Camera	Record pixels (Max.)	Approx.1.2 M
	Zoom (digital)	Up to 10 times
Recording part	Still images to record	Approx. 573*1
	Still image continuous recording	2-6
	Still image file format	JPEG
	Video recording time	Approx.502 seconds*2
	Video file format	MP4
	Playing music	Continuous playing time	AAC file format i-motion: approx. 300 minutes Chaku-Uta Full®: Approx. 450 minutes*3

*1 Image size: 128 x 96 Quality: Standard
File size : 10K

*2 Differs depending on the recording size, quality and images.

*3 Supports the background playing.

- Continuous call time is an estimate of call time of FOMA terminal when it can send or receive signals normally.

- Continuous standby time is an estimate of operation time of FOMA terminal when it is able to receive signals normally. The call/standby time may be reduced to about half, depending on the amount of charge in the battery, the function settings, the ambient temperature and signal conditions (radio waves do not or hardly reach). Using i-mode communication reduces the call (communication)/standby time. Even if you do not make a call or use i-mode, the call (communication)/standby time will be reduced by composing i-mode Mail, or starting downloaded i- ppli software or the i- ppli standby display.
- Continuous standby time (while standing still) is the average operation time of FOMA terminal when it is standing still and able to receive signals normally.
- Continuous standby time (while moving) is the average operation time of FOMA terminal that is standing still, moving and outside the service area when it is able to receive signals normally.
- If you perform data communication or Multiaccess, use the camera or play video/i-motion (including music data), the call (communication)/standby time will be reduced.
- The battery pack can be charged regardless of whether FOMA terminal is turned on or off. However, charging takes longer with the power turned on.

Number of saved, registered and protected items in D703i

Type		Max number of saved/registered items	Max number of protected items
Phonebook	FOMA terminal*1	700	-
	UIM	50	-
Scheduler	Schedule	300	-
	Days off	30	-
	Holidays	5	-
Mail	Received mail*1,*2	1,000	500
	Sent mail*1,*2	200	100
	Unsent mail*1,*2	200	100
	Template*1	100	-
SMS in the UIM*3		20	-
Message R*1		100	50
Message F*1		50	25
Bookmark	i-mode	100	-
	Full Browser	100	-
Screen memo*1		100	50

Type		Max number of saved/registered items	Max number of protected items
i- ppli*4		100	100
Image*1		1,000	-
Music	Music data*1	30	-
	Playlist	20	-
Video/i-motion, sound recorded with Sound Recorder*1		100	-
Melody*1		500	-
Chara-den*1		50	-
PDF data*1		100	-
Machi-chara*1		16	-
Word, Excel, PowerPoint*1		100	-

*1 Depending on the size of data, the actual number of items that can be saved and registered may be fewer.

*2 The total number of i-mode Mail and SMS.

*3 The total number of sent and received SMS. The number of delivered report is not included.

*4 Up to 5 items of Message i- ppli (included in the 100 items, maximum number of i- ppli that can be saved) can be saved. Depending on the i- ppli size, the actual number of items that can be saved may be fewer.

INFORMATION

Because the data saved in FOMA terminal may be lost due to failure, repair or other handlings of FOMA terminal, it is recommended that you maintain a separate record of the important data. Please note that we are not responsible for any lost data.

Depending on the function, the displayed size of data in FOMA terminal may differ slightly.

If you have a PC, you can use the DoCoMo keitai datalink and the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to transfer and save the data such as mail, bookmarks, images and video/i-motion to your PC.

SAR certification information

This model phone FOMA D703i meets the MIC's*¹ technical regulation for exposure to radio waves. The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and through evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)*² averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP*³.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone, FOMA D703i is 1.01 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC) and the test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO):

<http://www.who.int/peh-erm/>

ICNIRP: <http://www.icnirp.de/>

MIC: <http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/index.htm>

TELEC: http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm

NTT DoCoMo: <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/>

MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC:

<http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/mobile/>

*1 Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications

*2 The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

*3 International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

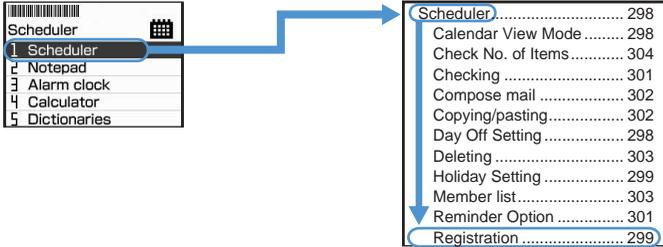
INDEX/Quick Reference Manual

INDEX.....	390
Quick Reference Manual	396

Using INDEX

Use INDEX if you want to search for a page from a function name displayed on the FOMA terminal screen or you have already known a function or service name.

Example When you want to register a schedule



A	
Access Setting	250
Add Address.....	190
Added Service.....	324
Adjust Volume	62
After-Sales Service	372
Alarm Auto Power ON.....	297
Alarm Clock.....	296
Alarm Clock Sound	103
Album	268
Alert Preference	315
Alert/Image by Group.....	85
All Lock	130
Anonymous Caller	139
Answer Machine.....	68
Greeting Message Setting ...	70
Greeting Response Time.....	69
Play/delete messages.....	70
Quick Record Message	68
Any Key Answer.....	61
Arrival call act.....	322, 323
Set arrival act.....	323
AT command.....	328
Attachment	
Attaching.....	194
Auto-play.....	219
Changing/removing.....	195
Deleting.....	204
Display and save from	
Message R/F	176
Display/Play/Save Attachment	
.....	202
Incoming Msg. Attach.	219
Auto Answer.....	314

Auto Power ON/OFF	295
Auto-display	175
Automatic time correction	41
Auto-send.....	197
AV Phone To (☛Phone To)	

B	
Background playing	286, 380
Bar Code Reader	156
Battery Icon.....	119
Battery Level.....	39
Battery pack	35
Bookmark.....	165
Attach to mail	166
Create/delete folders	166
Deleting	166
Display sites	164
Display sites by shortcut....	165
i-mode Shortcut	165
Moving	166
Register from mail	212
Register from site	165
Renaming	166
Sort	166

C	
Cache.....	162
Calculator	310
Calendar (☛Scheduler)	
Call Alert	63
Change image (Incoming Call)	
.....	114
Call Cost	
Call Cost Limit	310

Checking	308
Hide Call Cost Icon.....	310
Reset Call Cost	309
Call Duration	
Checking	308
Call Forwarding Service.....	320
Call Image.....	113
Priority of incoming images	
.....	114
Priority of outgoing images	
.....	113
Call Option	54
Call Ring Alert.....	101
Call Waiting Service.....	319
Caller ID Notification	42
Set for each call.....	54
Caller ID Request Service	321
Caller ID Setting.....	94
Camera	144
Adjust All	156
Attach images to mail.....	147
Auto timer	152
Brightness	154
Color density	154
Continuous shoot	148
File name/format	146
Flicker adjustment	155
Four-frame shooting	148
Frame	154
Image size	155
Macro	152
Movie Camera	149
Number of saved still images	
.....	146
One-shot Message	156

External Device (for videophone)
..... 78

F

Face mark
 Entering 333
 List 353
FirstPass 178
Fixed phrase
 Entering 333
 List 351
 Save Phrase 335
Flash movie displays 162
Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone
with Switch (●Eeaphone/
Microphone with Switch)
Focus Mode 31
FOMA card (●UIM)
Font Size Setting 122
Font Size (for mail) 219
Forward Mail 201, 202
Full Browser 244
 Browser Setting 249

G

Group Search 87
Group Setting 84

H

Headset Key Control 314
Home URL 249
Host Selection 172
 Certificate Host 179

I

i-channel 181
 Channel List 183
 i-Channel Ticker 183
 Reset i-Channel 184
Image
 Adjusting 257
 Attach to mail 252
 Change brightness and tone
 255
 Change size 254
 Clipping 255
 Created animation 253
 Cutting 256
 Deleting 272
 Displaying 252
 Editing 254
 Effects 255
 Frames 256
 Moving/copying 269
 Paste Text 256

Reversing/rotating 255
Save Image 168
Set to standby display 253
Settings 257
Shooting 147
Size limitation 256
Slide show 253
Sort 272
Stamps 256
View/Edit Detail Info 270
Image Display 250
Image & Effect Setting 173
i-melody 169
i-mode 160
i-mode Mail (●Mail)
i-mode password 126
 Change i-mode Password
 164
i-mode Setting 172
i-mode Shortcut 165
i-motion 179
 Setting 181
i-motion (in Data Box) 258
 Deleting 272
 Sort 272
 Use albums 268
i-motion Mail
 Composing 195
Inbox 205
In-car Handsfree 58
Incoming Msg.Attach. 219
Indicator Light 122
Info/Calendar Layout 111
Infrared communication 273
 INBOX 276
 Receive Ir Data 274
 Remote control function 277
 Send Ir Data 273
Infrared Communication Mode
 276
Infrared data port 273
Input Method Setting 338
Input prediction function 332
International call 55
Internet Connection 164
Int'l Call Assist. 56
ISP Connection Communication
 172
i- ppli 230
 Auto Start 238
 Auto Start Info Setting 238
 Check number of items 242
 Create/delete folders 240
 Deleting 241
 Detail Info 234
 Display Light 235
 Download 231

i- ppli To 239
Moving 241
Pre-installed i- ppli 235
Protecting 241
Quitting 233
Security Error History 234
Settings 234
Software in Folder 242
Software Info Display 232
Software Information 242
Sort Software 242
Start Failure History 239
Starting 232
Trace display 233
Upgrade 240
Use Bar Code Reader 242
Use infrared communication
 242
Use the camera 242
Vibrate Effect 235
i- ppli DX 230
i- ppli Standby Display
 Abnormal Exit History 240
 Operation 239
 Setting 110

K

Kana/Kanji Conversion 331
Key Lock 136
 Timer 136
Keylock switch 25
Keypad Dial Lock 133
Keypad Sound 104
KUTEN Code Input 336

L

Light Alert Setting 121
 Priority of lighting 122
Light setting (●Display Light
Setting)
Listen Volume 62
Low Battery Alert 39

M

Machi-chara
 Deleting 272
 Displaying 266
 Downloading 170
 Machi-chara Setting 120
 Settings 267
 Sort 272
 Use folders 268
 View/Edit Detail Info 270
Macro mode switch 152
Mail 186

Add Address	190	Mail Reply Format	218	Set as ring alert	290
Add/delete folders	207	Mail Setting (in FOMA terminal)		Settings	289
Attachment	194	.....	214	Sorting	289
Auto Receive	199	Mail Setting (in i-mode Center)		View/Edit Detail Info	289
Auto-send	197	.....	186	Mute Ring Time Setting	140
Change read/unread status		Mail templates	196	My Document	279
.....	209	Mail To (from mail).....	211	Deleting	272
Check i-mode Message.....	201	Mail To (from site).....	171	Sort	272
Check number of items	208	Mail/Msg Ring Alert	101	Use folders	268
Compose from phonebook		Make calls (☛Phone)		My Menu	163
.....	86	Melo-deco	193	My Picture	252
Compose from schedule ...	302	Melody	267	Deleting	272
Compose Message	189	Attach to mail	267	Sort	272
Copy message text.....	211	Deleting	272	Use album	268
Copying	208	List	105		
Deco-mail	190	Moving	269		
Delete Attachment.....	204	Playing	267		
Delete Mail	210	Saving	169		
Delete Msg. Log	214	Set as ring alert	268		
Display Priority	220	Settings	268		
Display Type.....	219	Sort	272		
Editing	198	Use albums	268		
Folder list screen	205	View/Edit Detail Info	270		
Font Size	219	Member list	303		
Forward Mail.....	201, 202	Memory Status	272		
Inbox/Outbox	205	Menu	28		
List screen	206	Create design	118		
List Setting.....	218	List	340		
Move Mail	208	Setting	117		
Msgs. in Folder.....	208	Submenu	30		
Phone Call	212	Message Alert.....	175		
Protect Mail	210	Message i- ppli.....	231		
Quick Mail.....	198	Message R/F	174		
Quick Reply Setting.....	218	Auto-display	175		
Quick Reply Template	218	Check new message	201		
Received Msg. Log.....	213	Delete Message	176		
Receiving.....	199	Display by Type	176		
Register items in phonebook		Display Priority	220		
.....	212	Displaying.....	175		
Register URL in Bookmark	212	Message Alert	175		
Reply to Mail.....	201	Protect Message	176		
Save Mail.....	197	Receive Message R/F	174		
Search	209	Set ring alert	101		
Search (from phonebook)....	86	Microphone	25		
Search (from schedule)	302	Missed call	51		
Sent Msg. Log	213	Mode Select.....	100		
Set ring alert	101	Multiaccess.....	294		
Sort	209	Combination	358		
View screen	207	Multi-address transmission...	190		
Mail address	186	Multi Number	323		
Display Address	208	Multitask	294		
Mail Alert.....	220	Combination	360		
Mail Group		Music Player	287		
Enter address	189	Deleting	291		
Setting	217	Intro playing.....	289		
Mail Image	115	Playlist	291		
Mail List Setting	218	Save images	290		

N

Name displays	80
Name Search	87
Names and functions of parts	
.....	24
Network security code	126
Network Service	318
Noise Reduction	58
Normal menu	28
Notepad.....	311
Notify Swichable Mode	77
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	
.....	321
Number of saved, registered and	
protected items in D703i.....	381
Number Search	89

O

OFF mode	100
OFFICEED	324
Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)	
.....	131
ON mode	100
One-key Shortcut	237
One-shot Message	156
On-hold	
On-hold while talking.....	47
Response and Hold	64
On-hold Tone	65
Only View	218
Options and related devices	
.....	363
Original certificate	
Download	170
Manage Certificate	177
<i>Other</i> folder (Data Box).....	283
Outbox	205
Outgoing Call (Call Image)	113
Own Number	42
Registering	306

P	
Packet communication	326
Pasting	336
Pause	48
PDF data	
Bookmark/mark.....	282
Deleting.....	272
Displaying	279
Downloading	169
Moving/copying.....	269
Settings.....	283
Sort	272
View/Edit Detail Info.....	270
PDF Viewer	279
Settings.....	283
Personalized silent mode	107
Ph Book No. Search.....	88
Phone	
Call Option	54
Make calls.....	45
Priority of caller ID notification	42
Receive calls.....	59
Switch to videophone call	49
Phone To (from mail)	211
Phone To (from site)	171
Phonebook	80
Alert by Contact	83
Caller ID Setting	94
Change the order.....	92
Check No. of Items	96
Check phonebook details	90
Connection Speed	94
Copy entered information	92
Copy phonebook entry.....	93
Delete Phonebook	93
Display in Japanese syllabary	87
Edit Phonebook	91
Group Setting.....	84
New Entry (to FOMA terminal)	81
New Entry (to UIM)	83
Quick Dial	97
Reject/Accept Call	137
Search	85
Secrecy Search	96
Secret Attribute	95
Secret Code Setting.....	95
Specify seaching method.....	89
View Preference	90
Register from mail.....	212
Register from site (Add to Phonebook)	172
Pictogram	
Entering	333

List	356
Pictogram word	
Entering	333
List	352
PIM Lock	132
PIN Unlocking Key	127
PIN1 Code ON/OFF	128
PIN1 code/PIN2 code	127
Change PIN1/PIN2 Code	128
Play music.....	286
Power ON/OFF	40
Auto Power ON/OFF	295
Predictive conversion	332
Prefix Dialing	57
Priority	
Caller ID notification	42
Incoming image	114
Lighting	122
Mail sorting	215
Outgoing image	113
Ring alert	103
Vibrator	106
Priority Comm Mode	64
Privacy Mode Setting	134
Public mode	
Driving mode	66
Power off	67
PUK (PIN Unlocking Key) ...	127

Q	
Quality Alarm	106
Quick Dial.....	97
Quick Mail	198
Quick Record Message.....	68
Quick Reference Manual	396
Quick Start-up.....	315

R	
Random Display Image.....	110
Ranking Search	88
Reason for no caller ID	60
Receive calls (☛Phone)	
Receive Display	115
Receive Option	200
Setting	217
Received Calls	50
Deleting	50
Received mail (☛Mail)	
Reconnect Alarm	58
Redial	50
Deleting	50
Referer Setting.....	250
Register USSD.....	324
Reject Unregistered Caller....	141
Reject/Accept Call.....	137

Remote Control.....	323
Remote control function.....	277
Reply to Mail	201
Reset	315
Response and Hold	64
Ring alert	101
Priority of ring alert	103

S	
SAR (Specific Absortion Rate)	382
Save Word.....	336
Schedule Reminder	103
Scheduler.....	298
Calendar View Mode	298
Check No. of Items	304
Checking	301
Compose mail	302
Copying/pasting.....	302
Day Off Setting.....	298
Deleting	303
Holiday Setting	299
Member list	303
Reminder Option	301
Registration	299
Search mail	302
Secret Attribute.....	304
When the set time comes	300
Screen Memo	167
Deleting	167
Displaying.....	167
Protecting	167
Renaming	167
Saving	167
Screen View Setting	250
Script Setting	249
Secrecy Search	96
Secret Attribute	
Phonebook	95
Schedule	304
Secret Code Setting.....	95
Secret Mode	137
Security code	126
Security scan (☛Virus Scan Function)	
Select Language.....	40
Self Mode.....	132
Send DTMF	48
Sent mail (☛Mail)	
Service Dialing Number	322
Short Message (☛SMS)	
Shortcut operations.....	29
Show All Names	87
Shutter key.....	25
Shutter Sound.....	104

Signal Level Icon	119
Signature	216
Silent Mode.....	107
Simple menu.....	117
List.....	346
Site	
Connect to SSL page	161
Display URL of site.....	163
Displaying.....	160
Last Visited URL.....	161
Operating.....	162
Reload.....	163
Scrolling.....	163
Slot Input Method.....	337
SMS	188
Check SMS	226
Compose from phonebook	86
Compose SMS	224
Delete Mail	210
Deleting (from UIM)	228
Delivered report.....	188
Display Priority	220
Insert signature.....	224
List screen.....	206
Quick Mail.....	198
Receive SMS.....	225
Save SMS to UIM.....	227
Setting	226
Sort Criteria	214
View screen.....	207
Software Update.....	374
Immediate Update.....	375
Reserved Update	376
Sort Criteria.....	214
Priority	215
Sound Recorder.....	277
Sound Setting	101
Speaker	25
Speakerphone function.....	47
Setting (Videophone).....	75
SSL communication	
Connecting	161
Standby Display Setting.....	108
Clock Display Format	123
Standby time.....	36
Standby Voice Memo.....	307
Status Message	65
Still image (Image).....	
Style Theme.....	120
Sub Address	57
Submenu	30
Symbol	
Entering	333
List.....	355

T

Talking Voice Memo	307
TASK key.....	25
Template.....	196
Downloading	197
Read Template.....	196
Save Template	196
Terminal security code	126
Change Security Code	127
Timed pause.....	48
Timer	295
Troubleshooting.....	364
Two-key Shortcut.....	238

U

UIM (FOMA card)	
Functional differences.....	34
Inserting/removing.....	32
Operation restriction function	33
Register phonebook data	83
Security codes.....	33
Unblock PIN lock	129
Unsent mail (Mail).....	
Unsent messages (folder)	205
URL	
Copying.....	171
Displaying.....	163
Entering.....	164
History	164
Last Visited URL	161
Register in phonebook	172

V

Vibrator Setting.....	105
i- ppli.....	235
Priority of vibrator	106
Video Memo	307
Videophone	44
Brightness/color density	73
Camera Setting	73
Change images (Videophone Image Setting).....	76
Chara-den	71
Connection Speed.....	94
Flicker adjustment	73
Frame	72
Make calls	75
Quality of outgoing/incoming images.....	72
Receive calls.....	59
Scene Mode/Effect.....	73
Screen settings	74

Send camera-off image.....	74
Send still image.....	74
Settings	75
Settings during a call.....	75
Substitute image setting.....	76
Switch outgoing images	72
Switch to voice call.....	49
Zoom	74
Videophone Alert.....	63
Change image (Videophone Receiving)	114
Videophone Dialing (Call Image).....	113
Video/i-motion	
Capture	261
Compose i-motion Mail	259
Custom Edit	261
Deleting.....	272
Edit by Size	262
Edit Ticker	262
Editing	260
Moving/copying	269
Play album data	270
Playing	258
Recording.....	149
Replay restriction	259
Set bookmark.....	259
Set to standby display	260
Settings	263
Sort	272
View/Edit Detail Info	270
Virus Scan Function	378
Auto-update Setting	378
Scan Version.....	380
Scanning Setting.....	378
Update Definition	379
Voice call (Phone)	
Voice Mail Service.....	318
Voice Memo	307

W

Warranty.....	372
Web To (from mail).....	211
Web To (from site).....	171
WORLD CALL	55
WORLD WING	34

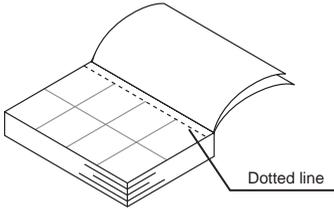
Other

186/184 Call	54
5-touch Input Method	331
64K data communication.....	326

Quick Reference Manual

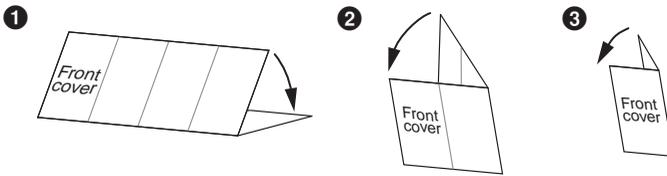
How to use Quick Reference Manual

Use Quick Reference Manual included in this manual as follows:



Cut along the dotted line.
Be careful not to hurt yourself when cutting.

Fold the sheet along the line so that the front cover is on top.



General Inquiries

<DoCoMo Information Center>

(In English)

☎ 0120-005-250 (toll free)

• Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

(In Japanese only)

☎ No prefix 151 (toll free)

• Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

☎ No prefix 113 (toll free)

• Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

☎ 0120-800-000 (toll free)

• Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

• Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
• For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

Registering entries in the phonebook

Registering

- 1
 - Registering entries into the UIM phonebook:

- 2 Enter a name



- 3 Set each item



FOMA terminal phonebook

Registering from the radial data or received call history

- 1 or

- 2 Highlight the entry to register

- 2 Adding to the registered entry:

- 3 (FOMA terminal phonebook) or (UIM phonebook)

- 3 Adding to the registered entry: Select the party to add

- 4 Set each item

- 4 Adding to the registered entry: Select *Overwrite* or *New entry*

Editing the phonebook entries

- 1
 - Switching the phonebook:

- 2 Highlight the entry to edit

• For the UIM phonebook: Highlight the entry to edit

- 3 Edit

- 4 Select *Overwrite* or *New entry*

Searching the phonebook entries

- 1

- Switching the phonebook:

- 2 to
- For the UIM phonebook, to

Character entry

Entering and converting characters (5-touch Input Method)

Example Entering "企業"

- 1 Enter characters in hiragana/kanji mode "き" : twice (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by automatic cursor function.)

3 Switching input mode

- ☐ several times during character inputs
- Switching between two-byte and one-byte katakana/alphanumeric characters: then

Deleting characters

When the cursor is in the text

- Deleting characters at the cursor (for over a second):

Deleting characters at the cursor position and all the characters at the right of the cursor

When the cursor is in the end of the text Deleting character at the left of the cursor

- (for over a second):

Deleting all entered characters

• For the UIM phonebook: Highlight the entry to edit

- 3 Edit

- 4 Select *Overwrite* or *New entry*

Searching the phonebook entries

- 1

- Switching the phonebook:

- 2 to
- For the UIM phonebook, to

Character entry

Entering and converting characters (5-touch Input Method)

Example Entering "企業"

- 1 Enter characters in hiragana/kanji mode "き" : twice (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by automatic cursor function.)

3 Switching input mode

- ☐ several times during character inputs
- Switching between two-byte and one-byte katakana/alphanumeric characters: then

Deleting characters

When the cursor is in the text

- Deleting characters at the cursor (for over a second):

Deleting characters at the cursor position and all the characters at the right of the cursor

When the cursor is in the end of the text Deleting character at the left of the cursor

- (for over a second):

Deleting all entered characters

• For the UIM phonebook: Highlight the entry to edit

- 3 Edit

- 4 Select *Overwrite* or *New entry*

Searching the phonebook entries

- 1

- Switching the phonebook:

- 2 to
- For the UIM phonebook, to

Character entry

Entering and converting characters (5-touch Input Method)

Example Entering "企業"

- 1 Enter characters in hiragana/kanji mode "き" : twice (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by automatic cursor function.)

3 Switching input mode

- ☐ several times during character inputs
- Switching between two-byte and one-byte katakana/alphanumeric characters: then

Deleting characters

When the cursor is in the text

- Deleting characters at the cursor (for over a second):

Deleting characters at the cursor position and all the characters at the right of the cursor

When the cursor is in the end of the text Deleting character at the left of the cursor

- (for over a second):

Deleting all entered characters

• For the UIM phonebook: Highlight the entry to edit

- 3 Edit

- 4 Select *Overwrite* or *New entry*

Searching the phonebook entries

- 1

- Switching the phonebook:

- 2 to
- For the UIM phonebook, to

Character entry

Entering and converting characters (5-touch Input Method)

Example Entering "企業"

- 1 Enter characters in hiragana/kanji mode "き" : twice (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by automatic cursor function.)

3 Switching input mode

- ☐ several times during character inputs
- Switching between two-byte and one-byte katakana/alphanumeric characters: then

Deleting characters

When the cursor is in the text

- Deleting characters at the cursor (for over a second):

Deleting characters at the cursor position and all the characters at the right of the cursor

When the cursor is in the end of the text Deleting character at the left of the cursor

- (for over a second):

Deleting all entered characters

• For the UIM phonebook: Highlight the entry to edit

- 3 Edit

- 4 Select *Overwrite* or *New entry*

Searching the phonebook entries

- 1

- Switching the phonebook:

- 2 to
- For the UIM phonebook, to

Character entry

Entering and converting characters (5-touch Input Method)

Example Entering "企業"

- 1 Enter characters in hiragana/kanji mode "き" : twice (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by automatic cursor function.)

3 Switching input mode

- ☐ several times during character inputs
- Switching between two-byte and one-byte katakana/alphanumeric characters: then

Deleting characters

When the cursor is in the text

- Deleting characters at the cursor (for over a second):

Deleting characters at the cursor position and all the characters at the right of the cursor

When the cursor is in the end of the text Deleting character at the left of the cursor

- (for over a second):

Deleting all entered characters

• For the UIM phonebook: Highlight the entry to edit

- 3 Edit

- 4 Select *Overwrite* or *New entry*

Searching the phonebook entries

- 1

- Switching the phonebook:

- 2 to
- For the UIM phonebook, to

Character entry

Entering and converting characters (5-touch Input Method)

Example Entering "企業"

- 1 Enter characters in hiragana/kanji mode "き" : twice (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by automatic cursor function.)

3 Switching input mode

- ☐ several times during character inputs
- Switching between two-byte and one-byte katakana/alphanumeric characters: then

Deleting characters

When the cursor is in the text

- Deleting characters at the cursor (for over a second):

Deleting characters at the cursor position and all the characters at the right of the cursor

When the cursor is in the end of the text Deleting character at the left of the cursor

- (for over a second):

Deleting all entered characters

• For the UIM phonebook: Highlight the entry to edit

- 3 Edit

- 4 Select *Overwrite* or *New entry*

Searching the phonebook entries

- 1

- Switching the phonebook:

- 2 to
- For the UIM phonebook, to

Character entry

Entering and converting characters (5-touch Input Method)

Example Entering "企業"

- 1 Enter characters in hiragana/kanji mode "き" : twice (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by automatic cursor function.)

3 Switching input mode

- ☐ several times during character inputs
- Switching between two-byte and one-byte katakana/alphanumeric characters: then

Deleting characters

When the cursor is in the text

- Deleting characters at the cursor (for over a second):

Deleting characters at the cursor position and all the characters at the right of the cursor

When the cursor is in the end of the text Deleting character at the left of the cursor

- (for over a second):

Deleting all entered characters

• For the UIM phonebook: Highlight the entry to edit

- 3 Edit

- 4 Select *Overwrite* or *New entry*

Searching the phonebook entries

- 1

- Switching the phonebook:

- 2 to
- For the UIM phonebook, to

Character entry

Entering and converting characters (5-touch Input Method)

Example Entering "企業"

- 1 Enter characters in hiragana/kanji mode "き" : twice (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by automatic cursor function.)

3 Switching input mode

- ☐ several times during character inputs
- Switching between two-byte and one-byte katakana/alphanumeric characters: then

Deleting characters

When the cursor is in the text

- Deleting characters at the cursor (for over a second):

Deleting characters at the cursor position and all the characters at the right of the cursor

When the cursor is in the end of the text Deleting character at the left of the cursor

- (for over a second):

Deleting all entered characters

• For the UIM phonebook: Highlight the entry to edit

- 3 Edit

- 4 Select *Overwrite* or *New entry*

Searching the phonebook entries

- 1

- Switching the phonebook:

- 2 to
- For the UIM phonebook, to

Character entry

Entering and converting characters (5-touch Input Method)

Example Entering "企業"

- 1 Enter characters in hiragana/kanji mode "き" : twice (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by automatic cursor function.)

3 Switch

Videophone

Making videophone calls

- 1 Enter the phone number
- 2 **[OK]**
- 3 Talk with the other party
 - Placing call on hold: **[3]** ▶ **[3]** to cancel
 - Switching the speakerphone on/off: **[M]** **[C]**
 - Switching the image to send: **[OK]**
- 4 **[OK]** when you finish the call

Receiving videophone calls

- 1 A videophone call arrives
 - Holding answer: **[OK]** or **[C]**
- 2 You can talk by **[OK]** or **[C]**
 - Follow the procedure from Step 3 of "Making videophone calls"

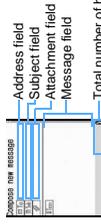
8

1 Mail	1 Read templates	2 Chat mail alert
2 Mail settings	1 Mail alert	2 Signature
3 Reply setting	1 Sort criteria	2 Activate quick reply
4 Reply setting	1 Reply format	2 Reply format
5 Mail group	1 Quick reply template	2 Display settings
6 MessageP&F	1 Display priority	2 Receive option
7 MessageP&F	1 Incoming msg. attach	2 Attachment auto-play
8 Message list	1 Message list	2 Only view
9 Bookmark	1 Bookmark	2
10 Enter URL	1 Enter URL	2 URL history
11 Last visited URL	1 Last visited URL	2
12 MessageP&F	1 MessageP&F	2 i-mode message
13 MessageR	1 MessageR	2 MessageF
14 i-ppii settings	1 i-ppii settings	2
15 Software info disp.	1 Software info disp.	2 Message retrieval
16 i-Channel	1 i-Channel	2 Message alert
17 i-Channel list	1 i-Channel list	2 i-Channel ticker
18 Reset i-Channel	1 Reset i-Channel	2

12

i-mode Mail

Composing and sending i-mode Mail

- 1 **[M]** **[2]**

- 2 Select the address field ▶ Select input method ▶ Enter or select address
- 3 Select the subject field ▶ Enter subject
- 4 Select the message field ▶ Enter message
 - Composing Deco-mail: **[M]** ▶ Select decoration method ▶ Enter characters
- 5 **[OK]**
 - Saving mail: **[Menu]** **[3]**
 - Auto-send: **[Menu]** **[2]**

9

2 i-mode	1 i-mode settings	2 Connection timeout
3 i-mode shortcuts	1 Display light	2 Certificate download
4 Certificate	1 Certificate host	2 Skip password
5 Certificate host	1 Inlog & Effect	2 i-mode
6 Inlog & Effect	1 Host selection	2 Full browser
7 Full browser	1 Home	2 Bookmark
8 Home	1 Go to location	2 URL history
9 Enter URL	1 Last URL	2
10 i-mode settings	1 i-mode settings	2 Cookie set/delete
11 Home URL	1 Home URL	2 Script setting
12 Script setting	1 Script setting	2 Access setting
13 i-mode display	1 i-mode display	2 Screen view setting
14 Referer setting	1 Referer setting	2
15 i-ppii	1 Software list	2 Auto start
16 i-ppii settings	1 i-ppii settings	2 Software info disp.
17 Software info disp.	1 Software info disp.	2 Vibrate effect
18 Vibrate effect	1 Vibrate effect	2 Display history
19 Display history	1 Display history	2

13

File attachments

- 1 Select the attachment field on the mail composition screen
- 2 Select attachment type
 - Shooting and attaching still image: Select **Image** ▶ Select **Activate camera**
 - Recording and attaching video: Select **i-motion** ▶ Select **Activate camera**
 - Recording and attaching sound: **Record voice**
- 3 Select a file
 - Removing attachment: Highlight the attachment field ▶ **[M]** ▶ Select **Yes**

10

4 Phonebook & Logs	1 Phonebook	2 Phonexbox new entry
5 Phonebook	1 Phonebook (UMI) new entry	2 Received calls
6 Redial	1 Ans. Machine & Voice memo	2 Recorded messages
7 Ans. Machine & Voice memo	1 Record voice memo	2 Voice memos
8 Record voice memo	1 Mail logs	2 Received msg log
9 Mail logs	1 Sent msg log	2 Own number
10 Sent msg log	1 My Picture	2 Music
11 Own number	1 i-motion	2 Melody
12 My Picture	1 My Document	2 Chara-den
13 i-motion	1 Meach-chara	2 Other
14 My Document	1 i-ppii	2
15 Meach-chara	1 i-ppii	2
16 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
17 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
18 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
19 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
20 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
21 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
22 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
23 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
24 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
25 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
26 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
27 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
28 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
29 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
30 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
31 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
32 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
33 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
34 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
35 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
36 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
37 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
38 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
39 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
40 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
41 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
42 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
43 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
44 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
45 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
46 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
47 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
48 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
49 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
50 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
51 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
52 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
53 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
54 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
55 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
56 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
57 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
58 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
59 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
60 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
61 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
62 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
63 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
64 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
65 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
66 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
67 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
68 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
69 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
70 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
71 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
72 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
73 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
74 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
75 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
76 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
77 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
78 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
79 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
80 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
81 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
82 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
83 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
84 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
85 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
86 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
87 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
88 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
89 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
90 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
91 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
92 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
93 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
94 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
95 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
96 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
97 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
98 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
99 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2
100 i-ppii	1 i-ppii	2

14

Receiving i-mode Mail

- 1 A mail is received
 - The mail ring alert sounds, the keys light/flash and the reception result screen is displayed
- 2 **[1]** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a mail

Checking for i-mode Mail

- 1 **[M]** (for over a second)

Menu list

Press **[Menu]** and input the number of each item.
Example: Displaying a sent mail **[Menu]** **[1]** **[5]**

1 Mail	1 Inbox	2 Compose message
2 Chat mail	2 Outbox	4 Unsent messages
3 Check new message	2 i-mode message	2 SMS
4 Receive option	4 Message retrieval	2 SMS
5 Compose SMS	2 Compose SMS	2 Received SMS
6 Sent SMS	4 Sent SMS	4 SMS settings

11

7 Stationary	1 Scheduler	2 No-repeat
8 Alarm clock	1 Alarm clock	4 Calculator
9 Dictionary	1 Dictionary	2
10 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
11 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
12 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
13 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
14 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
15 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
16 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
17 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
18 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
19 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
20 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
21 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
22 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
23 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
24 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
25 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
26 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
27 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
28 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
29 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
30 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
31 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
32 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
33 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
34 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
35 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
36 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
37 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
38 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
39 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
40 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
41 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
42 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
43 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
44 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
45 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
46 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
47 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
48 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
49 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
50 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
51 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
52 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
53 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
54 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
55 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
56 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
57 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
58 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
59 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
60 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
61 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
62 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
63 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
64 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
65 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
66 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
67 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
68 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
69 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
70 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
71 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
72 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
73 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
74 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
75 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
76 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
77 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
78 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
79 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
80 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
81 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
82 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
83 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
84 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
85 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
86 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
87 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
88 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
89 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
90 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
91 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
92 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
93 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
94 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
95 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
96 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
97 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
98 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
99 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2
100 i-Mode & MW services	1 i-Mode & MW services	2

15

Cut here

8) Settings & NVF services	
2) Display	2) Color & Action image
3) Video	3) Videophone image
4) Display/light	4) Display/light
5) Brightness	5) Brightness
6) Light alert	6) Light alert
7) Indicator light	7) Indicator light
8) Font & Language	8) Font & Language
9) Style theme	9) Style theme
10) Security & Locks	10) Security & Locks
11) Locks	11) Locks
12) All lock	12) All lock
13) Keypad dial lock	13) Keypad dial lock
14) Privacy mode	14) Privacy mode
15) UIM	15) UIM
16) Scanning function	16) Scanning function
17) Update	17) Update
18) Set scan	18) Set scan
19) Call & Answer	19) Call & Answer
20) Sound & Image	20) Sound & Image
21) Outgoing call	21) Outgoing call
22) Anonymous caller	22) Anonymous caller
23) Call alert	23) Call alert
24) Any key answer	24) Any key answer

16

Key operations for functions

Start operation on the standby display.

Function	Operation procedure
Setting/canceling Public mode (DRIVING mode)	[X] (for over a second)
Setting/canceling Silent Mode	[#] (for over a second)
Data Box menu	[D] (for over a second)
I-mode menu	[I] (for over a second)
I-ppil folder list	[I] (for over a second)
Received Calls	[R] (for over a second)
Activating/canceling Privacy Mode*1	To activate: [P] (for over a second) To cancel: [P] (for over a second) ▶ Enter the terminal security code
Redial	[R] (for over a second)
ON mode/OFF mode	[O] (for over a second)
Phonebook	[P] (for over a second)
Scheduler	[S] (for over a second)
Mail menu	[M] (for over a second)

20

8) Settings & NVF services	
4) Call & Answer	4) Call & Answer
5) Headset	5) Headset
6) Head preference	6) Head preference
7) Master key control	7) Master key control
8) Reflect/Account call	8) Reflect/Account call
9) Specified caller	9) Specified caller
10) Make/Receive call	10) Make/Receive call
11) Priority comm mode	11) Priority comm mode
12) SIM address	12) SIM address
13) Noise reduction	13) Noise reduction
14) Self mode	14) Self mode
15) Videophone	15) Videophone
16) V. phone dialing ring.	16) V. phone dialing ring.
17) Operation	17) Operation
18) Image setting	18) Image setting
19) Notify sensitive mode	19) Notify sensitive mode
20) Indicator ON	20) Indicator ON
21) Check indication	21) Check indication
22) Other	22) Other
23) Date & time	23) Date & time
24) Auto power OFF	24) Auto power OFF
25) Alarm auto power ON	25) Alarm auto power ON
26) Other	26) Other
27) Save word	27) Save word
28) Speech prediction	28) Speech prediction
29) Text input method	29) Text input method
30) DL dictionary	30) DL dictionary
31) Save phrase	31) Save phrase
32) Auto answer	32) Auto answer
33) Unregistered caller	33) Unregistered caller
34) Prefix dialing	34) Prefix dialing
35) External device	35) External device
36) Datasession av. act	36) Datasession av. act
37) Indication OFF	37) Indication OFF
38) Auto power ON	38) Auto power ON
39) Clock display format	39) Clock display format
40) DL dictionary	40) DL dictionary
41) Save phrase	41) Save phrase

17

Function	Operation procedure
Checking for I-mode Mail	[M] (for over a second)
Channel list	[C] (for over a second)
Setting/canceling Self Mode	[S] (for over a second) ▶ Select Yes
Power ON/OFF	[P] (for over 2 seconds)
Setting/canceling Key/Lock	Keypad switch (for over a second)
New Task menu	[N] (for over a second)
Answer Machine/Voice Memo menu	[A] (for over a second)
Activate Still Camera	[C] (for over a second)

*1 Available only when Privacy Mode Setting is made.

21

8) Settings & NVF services	
8) Other	8) Other
9) Font size	9) Font size
10) Quick startup	10) Quick startup
11) Info. & Reset	11) Info. & Reset
12) Call duration	12) Call duration
13) Memory status	13) Memory status
14) Battery level	14) Battery level
15) Delete all data	15) Delete all data
16) NVF Services	16) NVF Services
17) Voice Mail	17) Voice Mail
18) Voice Mail service	18) Voice Mail service
19) Tone/Notification message notification	19) Tone/Notification message notification
20) Notify missed call	20) Notify missed call
21) Hide Voice Mail icon	21) Hide Voice Mail icon
22) Call waiting/forward	22) Call waiting/forward
23) Call waiting	23) Call waiting
24) Chaku-niji	24) Chaku-niji
25) Message display settings	25) Message display settings
26) Caller ID	26) Caller ID
27) Caller ID notification	27) Caller ID notification
28) OFF/CEED	28) OFF/CEED
29) Area display setting	29) Area display setting
30) Stop forwarding	30) Stop forwarding
31) Start forwarding	31) Start forwarding
32) Check fwd setting	32) Check fwd setting
33) Software update	33) Software update
34) Call cost	34) Call cost
35) Confirm	35) Confirm
36) Reset	36) Reset
37) Caller ID request	37) Caller ID request
38) Stop forwarding	38) Stop forwarding
39) Start forwarding	39) Start forwarding
40) Check fwd setting	40) Check fwd setting

18

Network services

Voice Mail Service

Separate application (pay) is required.

1. [Menu] [B] [Z] [1]
2. Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Activate	Yes ▶ Select Yes ▶ Select Yes ▶ Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec)
Deactivate	[1] [3] ▶ Select Yes ▶ Select Yes ▶ When a new voice message arrives, [M] with the number of messages is displayed on the standby display. ▶ Select Yes ▶ Follow the voice guidance

22

8) Settings & NVF services	
7) NVF Services	7) NVF Services
8) Other	8) Other
9) Additional service	9) Additional service
10) Missed-call barring	10) Missed-call barring
11) Dual network	11) Dual network
12) Multi-number	12) Multi-number
13) Arrival call act	13) Arrival call act
14) Int'l call assist	14) Int'l call assist
15) Auto switch	15) Auto switch
16) MusicPlayer	16) MusicPlayer
17) Call number	17) Call number
18) Remote control	18) Remote control
19) English guidance	19) English guidance
20) Service numbers	20) Service numbers
21) Set arrival act	21) Set arrival act
22) Auto assist setting	22) Auto assist setting

19

Call Waiting Service

Separate application (pay) is required.

Activating/deactivating the service

1. [Menu] [B] [Z] [2] [1] ▶ [1] or [2] ▶ Select Yes
2. Answering another call during a call

- Switching the other parties: [B]
- Making another call Enter phone number during a call ▶ [C]
- Switching the other parties: [B]
- Ending a call [2] to end another call
- Call resumption with on-hold person: [C]

Separate application (free) is required.

1. [Menu] [B] [Z] [2] [2]

Call Forwarding Service

23

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Activate	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Select Yes 2 Select Yes 3 Select Yes <p>Enter the forwarding destination phone number (up to 26 digits)</p> <p>Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec)</p> <p>Before selecting the entry field for a phone number, you can set the phone number from the phonebook by pressing [Name], from the redial data by pressing [Redial], or from the received call history by pressing [Call].</p>
Deactivate	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2 Select Yes

Caller ID Request Service

Separate application is not required (free).

Activating/deactivating the service

- 1 **[Menu]** **[3]** **[7]** **[4]** **[2]** **[1]** or **[2]** **[1]** **[2]** Select Yes

Services available from FOMA terminal

Service	Phone No.
Collect calls (calls charged to receiver)	106
Directory assistance for general subscriber phone numbers and Docomo mobile phone numbers (charged) (unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)	104
Telegrams (charged) 8 am to 10 pm	115
Time (charged)	117
Weather (charged) +177	
Police (emergency calls)	110
Fire and ambulance (emergency calls)	119
Emergency calls at sea	118
Disaster Voice Mail Service (charged)	171

24

5 Speakerphone function in operation

- [Speaker]** : During connecting to handsfree compatible device
- [M]** : Mail storage status in i-mode Center
- [R]** : Status of unread mail
- [F]** : Unread Message R status **[P174]**
- [F]** : Unread Message F status **[P174]**
- [M]** : i- ppli/- ppli DX running
- [M]** : i- ppli standby display on
- [M]** : i- ppli DX standby display on
- [M]** : During SSL page display
- [M]** : Auto-send failure mail exists
- [M]** : Auto-send mail exists
- [M]** : Secret Mode is set
- [M]** : i- ppli Auto Start failed
- [M]** : In OFFICEED service area

28

Bottom of the display



- 1 **[Missed]** : Missed calls
- 2 **[Recorded]** : Recorded messages
- 3 **[Voice]** : Voice mail messages
- 4 **[Unread]** : Unread mail
- 5 **[General]** : General silent mode is set
- 6 **[Personalized]** : Personalized silent mode is set
- 7 **[Call alert]** : Call alert volume is set to *silent*
- 8 **[Vibrator]** : Vibrator for incoming voice call is set
- 9 **[Call alert]** : Call alert volume is set to *silent* and vibrator for incoming voice call is set
- 7 **[Public]** : Public mode (Driving mode) is set
- 8 **[Answer]** : Answer Machine is set
- 9 **[Recorded]** : Recorded messages full
- 9 **[PIM]** : PIM Lock is set

29

Reading display

Top of the display



- 1 **[Battery]** : Battery level icon
- 2 **[Signal]** : Signal level icon
- 3 **[i-mode]** : Self Mode is set
- 4 **[i-mode]** : During data transfer connection)
 - [i-mode]** : In i-mode communication (during i-mode connection)
 - [i-mode]** : In i-mode communication (during packet communication)
 - [i-mode]** : During infrared communication
- 4 **[Key Lock]** : Key Lock is set (in gray when Key Lock is temporarily released)
- [Call Cost]** : Total call cost exceeds the maximum limit

27

Emergency contact in case your phone is lost

Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)

Setting/canceling Omakase Lock

0120-524-360

Accepted for 24 hours

Other contact information

Phone number:

Phone number:

Phone number:

* Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

10 Connected to external device via the FOMA USB Cable

- 11 **[Easy]** : Effective Easy Selector Plus keys in Focus Mode
- 12 **[Reading]** : Reading the UIM
- 13 **[Keypad]** : Keypad Dial Lock is set
- 14 **[Alarm]** : Alarm Clock is set
- 15 **[Schedule]** : Schedule alarm is set at the same time
- 16 **[Software]** : Software Update reserved
- 17 **[Result]** : Result of auto-update of the latest pattern definition (success/failure)

26

Bottom of the display



- 1 **[Missed]** : Missed calls
- 2 **[Recorded]** : Recorded messages
- 3 **[Voice]** : Voice mail messages
- 4 **[Unread]** : Unread mail
- 5 **[General]** : General silent mode is set
- 6 **[Personalized]** : Personalized silent mode is set
- 7 **[Call alert]** : Call alert volume is set to *silent*
- 8 **[Vibrator]** : Vibrator for incoming voice call is set
- 9 **[Call alert]** : Call alert volume is set to *silent* and vibrator for incoming voice call is set
- 7 **[Public]** : Public mode (Driving mode) is set
- 8 **[Answer]** : Answer Machine is set
- 9 **[Recorded]** : Recorded messages full
- 9 **[PIM]** : PIM Lock is set

29

28

30

27

31

Cut here

Mobile phone etiquette

When using your FOMA terminal, always be considerate of your environment and those around you.

Turn the power off in the following situations

In prohibited areas

Use of mobile phones in the following places is prohibited. You must turn off your FOMA terminal.

- Airplanes
- Hospitals

You must also turn the power off when in lobbies or waiting rooms of hospitals as there could be people in such areas who could be adversely affected by mobile phone signals.

While driving

Using your FOMA terminal while driving could cause an accident. Stop the vehicle in a safe place before using the phone or use Public mode (Driving mode/power off).

On crowded trains or in other areas where there could be a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator

Operating a mobile phone could interfere with implanted cardiac pacemakers or defibrillators.

When visiting live events, movie theaters, museums or other public places

The ringing of your phone and your telephone conversations could disturb others around you in quiet public places.

Be considerate of your location and those around you with respect to the volume of your speaking voice and your FOMA terminal's ring tone

When using a mobile phone in a restaurant, hotel lobby or other quiet places, always remember to lower your voice.

When using a mobile phone on the street, find a place that does not interfere with passing traffic.

Be considerate of privacy



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Functions convenient for public etiquette

You may select a mode to reject incoming calls, turn off all sounds generated by your FOMA terminal, etc. from many modes to keep from disturbing those around you.

Silent Mode/Customize Silent Mode

Keypad sound, ring tones and all other sounds generated by the FOMA terminal are turned off (Silent Mode). ☛P107

The user is allowed to change Silent Mode operations (Customize Silent Mode). ☛P107

Even in Silent Mode, the shutter sound is heard while shooting.

Public mode (Driving mode/power off)

When a call is received, an announcement informs the caller that you are driving or in an area where use of the mobile phone should be refrained or that you are in an area where the phone should be turned off, and the call is then disconnected. ☛P66, P67

Vibrator

When a call is received, the FOMA terminal vibrates instead of ringing. ☛P105

Answer Machine

When you cannot answer a call, the caller can leave a brief message. ☛P68

You may also use optional services such as Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.

☛P318, P320

Access DoCoMo e-site for procedures to change your address or billing plan and for request of information materials.

From i-mode iMenu ▶ 料金&お申込・設定(Charges & Applications/Setting) ▶
ドコモeサイト(DoCoMo e-site) **Packet communication charges free**

From PC My DoCoMo (<http://www.mydocomo.com/>) ▶ 各種手続き(ドコモeサイト)
(Application procedure (DoCoMo e-site))

- You will need your "network ID" to access e-site from i-mode.
- No packet communication charges are incurred when accessing e-site from i-mode. Accessing from overseas will incur charges.
- You will need your "DoCoMo ID/password" to access e-site from PC.
- If you do not have or you have forgotten your "network ID" or "DoCoMo ID/password", contact the DoCoMo Information Center listed below.
- DoCoMo e-site may not be available depending upon the content of your subscription.
- You may not be able to access some e-site services due to system maintenance, etc.

General Inquiries
<DoCoMo Information Center>

(In English)

 **0120-005-250** (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

(In Japanese only)

 **(No prefix) 151** (toll free)

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

 **(No prefix) 113** (toll free)

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

(In Japanese only)

 **0120-800-000** (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

- Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
- For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.



Do not forget your cellular phone
... or your manners!

When using your portable phone in a public place, do not forget to show common courtesy
and consideration for others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION



Li-ion

To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to an NTT DoCoMo service counter, an NTT DoCoMo agent or a recycle center.



Made from 100% recycled paper.



This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.



* 8 6 0 0 2 2 3 A *

'07.1 (Edition 1.1)

FOMA[®] D703i

Manual for Data Communication

Data communication	1
Before usage	1
Flow of setup for data communication	3
Connecting FOMA terminal to PC	4
Installation of the communication configuration file (driver)	5
Communicating using the FOMA PC configuration software	6
Communicating without using the FOMA PC configuration software	17
AT command	24

■ About Manual for Data Communication

In this manual, the important items which are needed for data communication by FOMA D703i and the method of installing “communication configuration file (driver) for D703i” and “FOMA PC configuration software” are explained.

■ Operations for Windows

In this manual, the contents correspond to Windows XP Service Pack 2.

A part of the operations or screens may differ depending on the environment.

Data communication

The data communication modes available from FOMA terminal and hints on use are explained here.

- FOMA terminal does not support fax communication or the Remote Wakeup.
- Data communication can be executed by connecting FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's PDA, "musea", "sigmarion II" or "sigmarion III". To use "musea" or "sigmarion II", update is required. For details on update, etc., visit the DoCoMo website.
- This FOMA terminal does not support IP connection.

Supported data communication via FOMA terminal

FOMA terminal supports 3 communication modes: packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer.

These communications become available by installing the related software onto a PC from the attached CD-ROM, connecting FOMA terminal to the PC and making required settings.

■ Packet communication

Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which make it suitable for high-speed exchange of relatively small amounts of data such as sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible.

High-speed packet communication provides a maximum reception speed of 384 kbps and a maximum transmission speed of 64 kbps by using access points that support packet communication on FOMA, such as DoCoMo's "mopera U/mopera" Internet connection service. These are offered by the best-effort connection which allows transmission speed to vary with the environment and the rate of congestion.

Note that communications of large-size data such as for viewing and downloading websites containing images will require high charges.

■ 64K data communication

The 64K data communications allow data transfer/reception at stable communication rate of 64 kbps. Communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, which make it suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents. You need to use access points that support FOMA 64K data communication such as DoCoMo's "mopera U/mopera" Internet connection service or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps access points. Note that communicating for long time will require high charges.

■ Data transfer

It is the mode of non-charged communication in which various data including the phonebook, mails and bookmarks are transferred/exchanged.

- Data can be transferred to another FOMA terminal, mobile phone or PC via the infrared communication as well.

Before usage

Operating environment

For data communication, the operating environment of PC is as follows:

Item	Requirements
PC*1	PC/AT compatible computer
OS*2	The Japanese version of Windows 2000 or XP
Memory requirements	Windows 2000: 64 MB or more Windows XP: 128 MB or more
Hard disk capacity	5 MB or more free disk space

*1 USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) is required.

*2 The operation from OS upgrading is not covered by the warranty.

INFORMATION

- Note that utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. Furthermore, operation will not be guaranteed in an environment other than that described above or by upgrading the OS and DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for operation under such conditions.

When the warning screen appears

When the attached CD-ROM is inserted into the PC, the following warning screen may appear. This warning is displayed according to the security setting of Microsoft Internet Explorer, but this will not cause a problem.

Click **はい**(Yes).

- The screen shown below is the case of using Windows XP. It may differ depending on the PC environment.



Required devices

The following hardware and software are required in addition to FOMA terminal and a PC:

- FOMA USB Cable (optional) or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional)
- Attached CD-ROM "CD-ROM for FOMA D703i"

INFORMATION

- Purchase a dedicated "FOMA USB Cable" or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 for a USB cable*1. A USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector does not fit.

*1 In this manual, FOMA USB Cable is used for explanation.

Usage precautions

Internet service provider usage charge

When using the Internet from PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (hereinafter called the provider) is generally required. This charge is paid directly to the provider, and is separate from the FOMA service charge. For more information on usage charges, contact your provider.

- DoCoMo provides 2 Internet connection services: mopera U and mopera.
The mopera U service requires subscription and a monthly fee. It allows you to use broadband Internet connection service, etc. There is also a plan that requires a monthly fee only when you use the service. The mopera service allows you to access the Internet without subscription and monthly fee. You can make a connection with Internet immediately. For details such as on charges, visit the DoCoMo website.

Setting the dialup connection (provider, etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps data communication.

- You cannot connect to access points of PHS 64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS or DoPa.

User authentication during network access

Some dialup connections require user authentication (ID and password) before a connection can be established. If user authentication is required, you must use your communication software or dialup network to enter your ID and password before connection. Your ID and password will be assigned by the provider or network administrator of in-house LAN, etc. For more information, contact your provider or network administrator.

Access authentication when using PC browser

To authenticate FirstPass (user certificate), you must install FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and configure it. For details, see "簡易操作マニュアル(Simple User's Manual)(FirstPassManual.pdf)" in the CD-ROM.

Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication from FOMA terminal, the following conditions must be satisfied.

- The PCs which may use a FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- You must be within the FOMA service area.
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications.
- 64K data communication requires an access point that supports FOMA 64K or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps data communication.

However, even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy, or the signal quality is poor.

Glossary of data communication

- Administrator privilege
A user level that provides complete access to all OS functions in Windows XP and 2000. There must be at least one user that has administrator privileges for each PC. A user that has no administrator privileges is not normally allowed to install/uninstall drivers and software.
- APN (Access Point Name)
String to identify a provider, etc. to connect by packet communication. The APN for mopera U is "mopera.net" and mopera is "mopera.ne.jp".
- cid (Context Identifier)
The registration number when writing packet communication dialup connection (APN) information to FOMA terminal. 10 numbers from 1 to 10 are available for FOMA terminal.
By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid1, and "mopera.net" in cid3.
- W-TCP
A TCP parameter designed to fully utilize TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communications in a FOMA network. This communication setting is essential to enable full use of FOMA terminal capability.

Flow of setup for data communication

The setup work needed to connect FOMA terminal to a PC to perform packet or 64K data communication is as follows:

- ① Install the communication configuration file ◀P5
- ② Connect FOMA terminal to a PC ◀P4
- ③ Check the communication configuration file ◀P5

Install the FOMA PC configuration software ◀P6

(Easy Setup)
Packet communication setup

- mopera U / mopera ◀P8
- Other providers ◀P9

(Easy Setup)
64K data communication setup

- mopera U / mopera ◀P11
- Other providers ◀P12

Execute communication ◀P12 (Disconnect ◀P13)

Set up communications without using the FOMA PC configuration software ◀P17

Connect ◀P23 (Disconnect ◀P24)

Communication configuration file (driver)

Install the communication configuration file on a PC from the attached CD-ROM before connecting FOMA terminal to a PC to perform data communication.

FOMA PC configuration software

When the FOMA PC configuration software (found on the attached CD-ROM) is installed on a PC, a number of settings required for packet communication or 64K data communication via connection between FOMA terminal and PC can be made from the PC by simple operation.

Before installation/uninstallation

- Installing/uninstalling the communication configuration file or the FOMA PC configuration software can only be performed by a user with administrator privileges. Attempts made by other users will result in errors. For details on PC administrator privileges, refer to the instruction manual of the PC or contact your PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.
- Before starting operation, make sure that no other program is running. If there is any active program, save and exit the program before operation.

Connecting FOMA terminal to PC

The connection should be made with the PC and FOMA terminal both switched on.

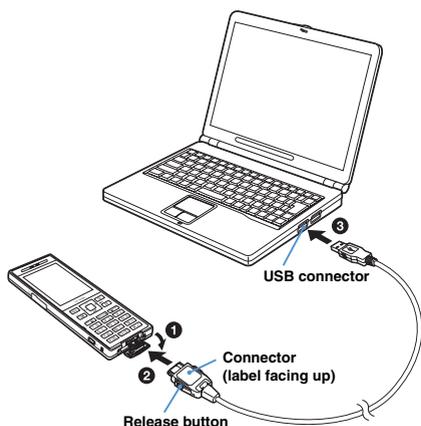
- Be sure to install the communication configuration file (driver) before connection. ➡P5

Connecting to PC

Connect by using the FOMA USB Cable (optional).

- 1 Open the cap on the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal
- 2 Insert one end of the FOMA USB Cable into the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal until it clicks
- 3 Insert the other end of the FOMA USB Cable into the PC USB connector

- When a PC and FOMA terminal are connected,  appears on the screen of FOMA terminal.  does not appear before installing the communication configuration file.
- If you connect FOMA terminal to a PC before installing the communication configuration file, the detecting wizard screen of new hardware will be displayed. In that case, remove FOMA terminal and click キャンセル (Cancel) to exit the wizard.



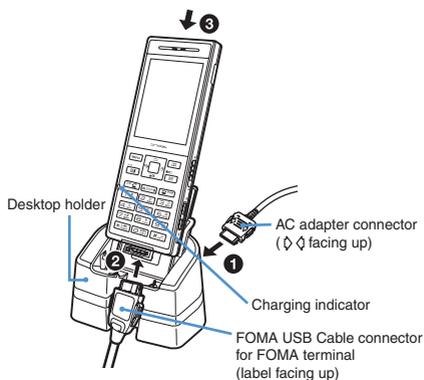
Removing FOMA USB Cable

Pull the connector for PC out from the side of PC. Be sure to press release buttons on both sides of the connector for FOMA terminal. Forcing to pull it out may cause a malfunction.

Connecting while charging

FOMA terminal can be connected using a desktop holder (optional) during the charging. However, charging time becomes longer.

- 1 Connect the desktop holder to the AC adapter
 - Plug the AC adapter into the wall outlet
- 2 Connect FOMA terminal and FOMA USB Cable
- 3 Along with the desktop holder, insert FOMA terminal at an angle as shown in the figure
 - Pull out the FOMA USB Cable in front of the desktop holder when inserting FOMA terminal.
 - Check that the charging indicator lights in red.



INFORMATION

- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable during data communication, or give shock to FOMA terminal and desktop holder. It may cause the interruption of charging or data communication, malfunction or failure of PC or FOMA terminal, or loss of data.
- Starting to charge during data communication may not complete charging. To complete charging, it is recommended that you end the data communication first, and then start charging.

Installation of the communication configuration file (driver)

Installing the communication configuration file

Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation". ◀P3

- Perform Steps 1 to 5 first, and then connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

Example For Windows XP

- 1 Insert the attached CD-ROM into the PC**
The *FOMA D703i CD-ROM* screen appears.



- For the *FOMA D703i CD-ROM* screen, the recommended operating environment is Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later. In case your PC does not satisfy the recommended environment or when the *FOMA D703i CD-ROM* screen does not appear even though CD-ROM is set, operate in the following steps:

- ① Click スタート (Start) and ファイル名を指定して実行 (Specify the file name and execute)
- ② Enter <CD-ROM ドライブ名 (Drive name)>: ¥USBDRIVE ¥D703iin.exe in 名前 (Name) ▶ Click **OK** ▶ Got to Step 5

- 2 Click データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Data link software, configuration software)**
- 3 Click インストール (Installation) of D703i 通信設定ファイル (ドライバ) (D703i communication configuration file (driver))**
- 4 Double-click D703iin.exe**

- 5 Click インストール開始 (Start installing)**

A screen requesting to connect FOMA D703i to the PC appears.

- 6 Connect FOMA terminal to the PC ▶P4**

The communication configuration file is installed.
• Connect FOMA terminal while the power is on.

- 7 Click OK**

- To return to the screen of "FOMA D703i CD-ROM", click 戻る (Return) of Microsoft Internet Explorer.
- Go to "Checking the communication configuration file", and check the name of the device installed.

INFORMATION

- Installation may take a few minutes.
- When Windows rebooting is prompted on the screen, follow the instruction and reboot.
- If a PC and FOMA terminal are connected before the communication configuration file is installed, another driver may be automatically installed. When this happens, performing the operation in Step 2 displays a message saying that the installed driver must be uninstalled. Uninstall the driver following instruction shown on the display and install the communication configuration file.

Checking the communication configuration file

When the PC does not detect FOMA terminal correctly, settings and communication cannot be performed.

Example For Windows XP

- 1 Click スタート, コントロールパネル (Control panel), パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and maintenance) and システム (System)**

The システムのプロパティ (System properties) screen appears.

■ For Windows 2000:

- ① Click スタート, 設定 (Setting) and コントロールパネル
- ② Double-click システム

- 2 Click the ハードウェア (Hardware) tab ▶ Click デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)**

The デバイスマネージャ screen appears.

3 Double-click each device type ▶ Check the name of the installed device

Check that all the device names described in the following list are shown.

Device type	Device name
USB (Universal Serial Bus) Controller	FOMA D703i
Port (COM and LPT)	• FOMA D703i Command Port (COMx)*1 • FOMA D703i OBEX Port (COMx)*1
Modem	FOMA D703i

*1 "x" of COMx varies by PC to be used.

Uninstalling the communication configuration file

Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation". ◀P3

Before uninstalling, make sure that FOMA terminal is removed from the PC.

Example For Windows XP

1 Click スタート、コントロールパネル and プログラムの追加と削除(Add/delete Programs)

The プログラムの追加と削除 screen appears.

■ For Windows 2000:

- 1 Click スタート、設定 and コントロールパネル
- 2 Double-click アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add/delete applications)

2 Select FOMA D703i USB ▶ Click 変更と削除(Update/delete)

3 Check the name of program and click はい

The communication configuration file is uninstalled.

4 Click OK

INFORMATION

- When the installation fails or FOMA D703i USB is not displayed on the screen of プログラムの追加と削除, insert the attached CD-ROM into the PC and on the FOMA D703i CD-ROM screen, click データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Datalink software, configuration software) and インストール (Installation) of D703i 通信設定ファイル(ドライバ)(D703i communication configuration file (driver)) and uninstall the communication configuration file.

Communicating using the FOMA PC configuration software

A number of settings are required when FOMA terminal is connected to a PC to perform packet communication or 64K data communication. The FOMA PC configuration software allows you to easily perform the following settings:

■ Easy setup

Creating a dialup connection for FOMA data communication and W-TCP setup can be performed automatically by following the instructions in the guide.

■ W-TCP setup

Optimize the settings in the PC before performing FOMA packet communication. Optimization of the communication settings using W-TCP setup is required to enable communication capability to maximum extent.

■ Dialup connection (APN) setup

Perform the dialup connection (APN) setup required for packet communication.

Unlike 64K data communication, phone numbers cannot be used as a dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. Set a dialup connection name called APN in FOMA terminal for each dialup connection in advance, and enter the registration number (cid) in the phone number field of dialup connection. By default, "mopera.ne.jp" (APN) is registered in cid 1 to connect to mopera, and "mopera.net" (APN) for cid 3 to connect to mopera U, but the APN for connections to other providers and in-house LAN must be set.

Installing the FOMA PC configuration software

- Uninstall an old version of the FOMA PC configuration software, if already installed, before installing the FOMA PC configuration software (version 3.01). You can display the version from メニュー(Menu) →バージョン情報 (Version information) of the FOMA PC configuration software.
- If the following software (provided with the FOMA terminal released before this model) are installed, uninstall them in advance:
 - W-TCP environment configuration software
 - FOMA data communication configuration software
- Uninstall the FOMA PC configuration software in advance before reinstalling the FOMA PC configuration software.
- Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation" ◀P3

1 Insert the attached CD-ROM into the PC
The *FOMA D703i* CD-ROM screen appears.



• For the *FOMA D703i* CD-ROM screen, the recommended operating environment is Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later. In case your PC does not satisfy the recommended environment or when the *FOMA D703i* CD-ROM screen does not appear even though CD-ROM is set, operate in the following steps:

- ① Click **スタート** (Start) and **ファイル名を指定して実行** (Specify the file name and execute)
- ② Enter **<CD-ROM ドライブ名 (Drive name)>**:
¥FOMA_PCSET ¥setup.exe in **名前 (Name)** ▶
Click **OK** ▶ Go to Step 4

2 Click データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Datalink software, configuration software)

3 Click インストール (Installation) of FOMA PC configuration software

When clicking **インストール** (Installation), the warning screen shown below may appear. This warning is displayed according to the security setting of Microsoft Internet Explorer, but this will not cause a problem.

- In case the screen of **ファイルのダウンロード - セキュリティの警告 (Downloading File - security warning)** is displayed
Click **実行** (Execute).



- In case of the screen of **Internet Explorer - セキュリティの警告 (Security warning)** is displayed
Click **実行する** (Execute).



4 Click 次へ

The FOMA PC configuration software license agreement appears.

5 Read the content of the screen and click はい if you agree to the agreement

6 Check that タスクトレイに常駐する (Reside in task tray) is selected and click 次へ (Reside in task tray) after the setup.

- This is recommended for setting/cancellation of W-TCP communication. (▶P14)
- You can change the setting of resident software after the installation.



7 Check the installation path and click 次へ

8 Check the name of the program folder and click 次へ



9 Click 完了(Done)

FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC configuration software) is started up.

- Settings can be started from this screen.

INFORMATION

- When キャンセル or いいえ (No) is clicked during installation, the confirmation screen to cancel the installation appears. To continue the installation, click いいえ . To cancel, click はい and 完了 .

Setting packet communication by easy setup

Before setup, make sure that FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ◀P4

Starting the FOMA PC configuration software

Example For Windows XP

- 1 Click スタート, すべてのプログラム (All programs) (プログラム (Programs) for Windows 2000), FOMA PC 設定ソフト and FOMA PC 設定ソフト

The FOMA PC configuration software is started up.



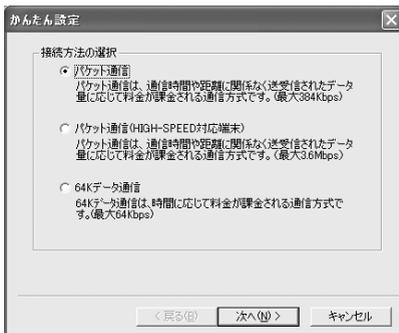
Using moper a U / moper a

- Using other providers ◀P9

Example For Windows XP

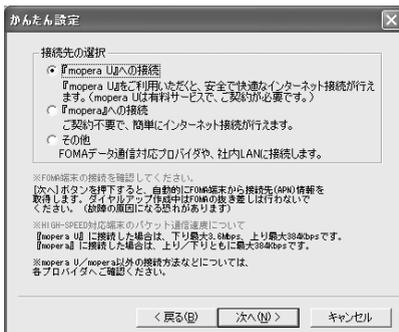
- 1 Start the FOMA PC configuration software ▶ Click かんたん設定 (Easy setup)

2 Select パケット通信(Packet communication) ▶ Click 次へ



3 Select 『moper a U』への接続(moper a U connection) or 『moper a』への接続(moper a connection) ▶ Click 次へ

- When moper a U is selected, a confirmation message to agreement appears. If the subscription is completed, click はい .



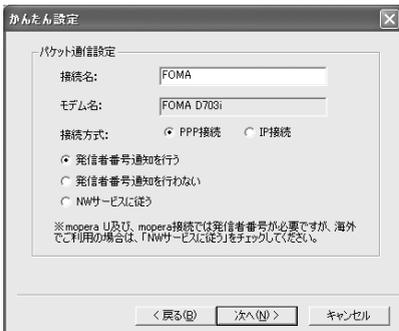
4 Click OK on the FOMA 端末設定取得(Get FOMA terminal settings) screen

Dialup connection (APN) information is obtained from FOMA terminal. Please wait.

5 Set any connection name and each item ▶ Click 次へ

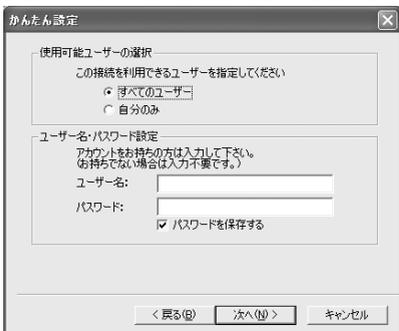
- The following one-byte characters cannot be entered:
¥ / : * ? ! < > | "
- Select the connection procedure depending on your FOMA terminal. This terminal supports only "PPP connection", so select PPP 接続 (PPP connection).
 - moper a U supports PPP connection and IP connection.
 - moper a supports only PPP connection.

- Select if caller ID is notified at dialup connection. Select **発信者番号通知を行う** (Caller ID Notification on) for moper a U and moper a connection.



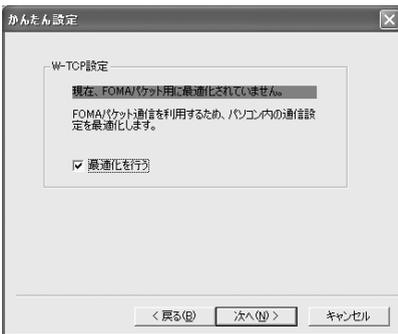
6 Set each item ▶ Click **次へ**

- The entry for **ユーザー名** (User name) or **パスワード** (Password) is not required for connection.
- If you select **すべてのユーザー** (All users) for **使用可能ユーザーの選択** (Select allowable user), all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection.

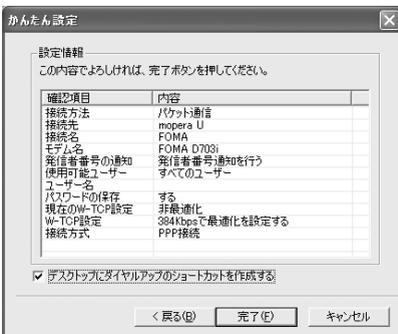


7 Check that **最適化を行う** (Optimize) is selected and click **次へ**

- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.



8 Check the settings and click **完了**



9 Click **OK**

The PC must be rebooted for the changes to take effect. Click **はい** (Yes) when a window prompts you to reboot the PC.

- If optimization of W-TCP setting has already been performed, rebooting is not required.
- Performing communication ◀P12

Using other providers

- Using moper a U / moper a ◀P8

Example For Windows XP

1 Perform Steps 1 to 4 of “Using moper a U / moper a” of “Setting packet communication by easy setup” ◀P8

- Select **パケット通信** (packet connection) for the connection procedure in Step 2.
- Select **その他** (Others) in Step 3 for the dialup connection.

2 Enter any connection name ▶ Click 接続先 (APN) 設定(Set dialup connection (APN))

- The following one-byte characters cannot be entered:
¥ / : * ? ! < > | "
- For Caller ID Notification preferences, follow the instructions given by your provider.



■ Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting):

- Click 詳細情報の設定 (Set detail info) to display the IPアドレス(IP address) and ネームサーバー (Name server) setting screens.
- When dialup information such as address is required, register it based on the information assigned by the provider, etc.

3 Set the dialup connection (APN)

By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid1, and "mopera.net" in cid3. Register a dialup connection (APN) for cid 2 or 4 to 10.

① Click 追加 (Add)

The 接続先 (APN) の追加 (Add dialup connection (APN)) screen appears.

② Set a dialup connection name (APN) of your provider, etc., which supports the FOMA packet communication and the connection procedure ▶ Click OK

The display returns to the 接続先 (APN) 設定 (Set dialup connection (APN)) screen.

- Only one-byte alphanumeric characters, hyphens (-) and periods (.) can be entered for 接続先 (APN).
- This terminal supports only PPP connection, so select PPP 接続 for 接続方式 (connection procedure). For the compatible connection procedure, inquire your provider.



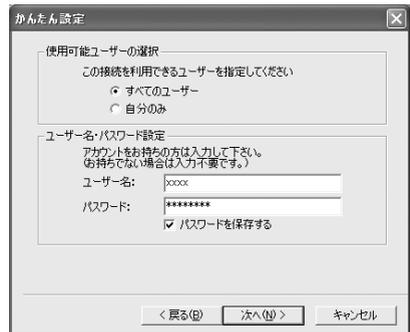
4 Click OK

The display returns to the screen in Step 2. Dialup connection (APN) set in Step 3 and the connection procedure appear in 接続先 (APN) の選択 (Select dialup connection (APN)).

5 Check the dialup connection name (APN) of 接続先 (APN) の選択 and click 次へ

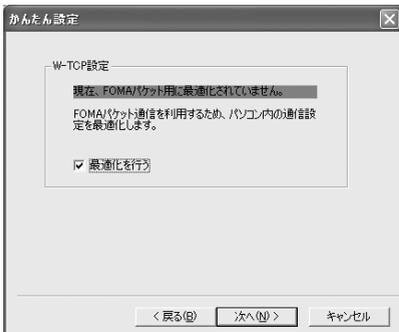
6 Enter the user name in ユーザー名 and the password in パスワード ▶ Click 次へ

- Enter the user name and password assigned by the provider, etc. correctly. Be careful about the upper/lower case of each character.
- If you select すべてのユーザー for 使用可能ユーザーの選択, all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection.

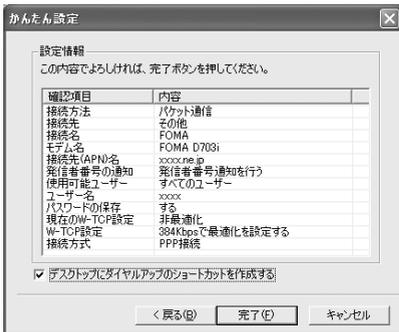


7 Check that 最適化を行う is selected and click 次へ

- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.



8 Check the settings and click 完了



9 Click OK

The PC must be rebooted for the changes to take effect. Click (よし) when a window prompts you to reboot the PC.

- If optimization of W-TCP setting has already been performed, rebooting is not required.
- Performing communication ◀P12

Setting 64K data communication by easy setup

Before setup, make sure that FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ◀P4

Using moper U / moper a

- Using other providers ◀P12

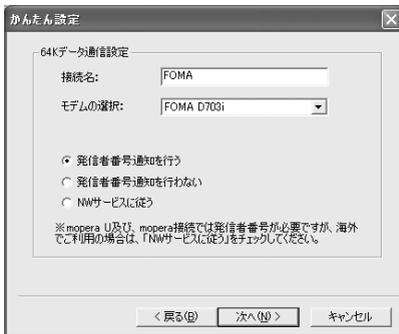
Example For Windows XP

1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of “Using moper a U / moper a” of “Setting packet communication by easy setup” ◀P8

- Select 64K データ通信 (64K data communication) in Step 2 for the connection procedure.
- Select 『moper a U』への接続 (connecting to “moper a U”) or 『moper a』への接続 (connecting to “moper a”) in Step 3.

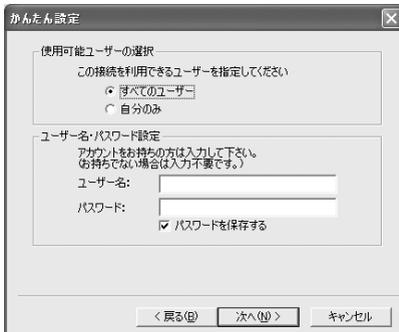
2 Set any connection name and each item ▶ Click 次へ

- The following one-byte characters cannot be entered:
¥ / : * ? ! < > | “ ”
- Check that FOMA D703i is set for モデムの選択 (Modem selection).
- Select if caller ID is notified at dialup connection. Select 発信者番号通知を行う (Caller ID Notification on) for moper a U and moper a connection.

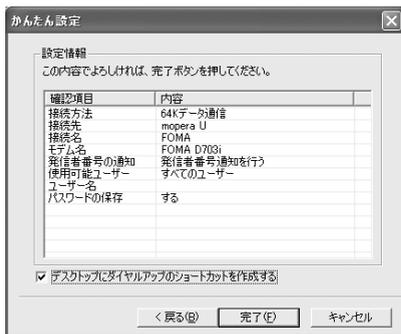


3 Set each item ▶ Click 次へ

- The entry for ユーザー名 or パスワード is not required for connecting.
- If you select すべてのユーザー for 使用可能ユーザーの選択, all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection.



4 Check the settings and click 完了



5 Click OK

- Performing communication ◀P12

Using other providers

- Using mopera U / mopera ◀P11

Example For Windows XP

1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of “Using mopera U / mopera” of “Setting packet communication by easy setup” ◀P8

- Select **64K データ通信** in Step 2 for the connection procedure.
- Select **その他** in Step 3 for the dialup connection.

2 Set each item ▶ Click 次へ

- Register the following items:
 - **接続名** : Optional
 - **モデムの選択** : FOMA D703i
 - **電話番号** (Phone number)
 - Enter based on information given by provider, etc.
 - **Caller ID Notification preferences**
 - Select following the instructions given by your provider.



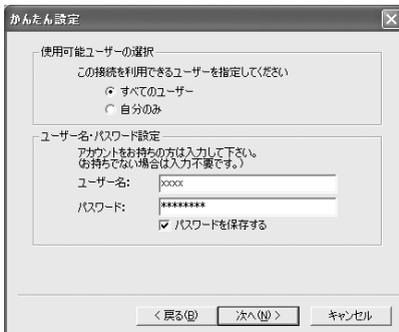
■ Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting):

Click **詳細情報の設定** to display the **IP アドレス** and **ネームサーバー** setting screens.

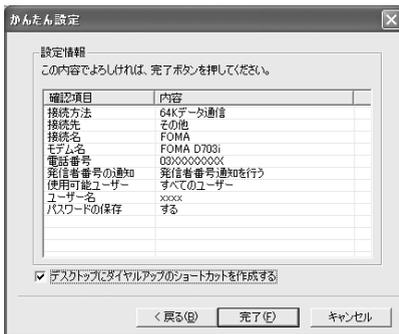
- When dialup information such as address is required, register it based on the information assigned by the provider, etc.

3 Enter the user name in ユーザー名 and the password in パスワード ▶ Click 次へ

- Enter the user name or password assigned by the provider, etc. correctly. Be careful about the upper/lower case of each character.
- If you select **すべてのユーザー** for **使用可能ユーザーの選択**, all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection.



4 Check the settings and click 完了



5 Click OK

- Performing communication ◀P12

Performing communication

Starting communication set with the FOMA PC configuration software and disconnection are explained here.

Example For Windows XP

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC ◀P4

2 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop



• The icon varies depending on the OS.

• When there is no connection icon made on desktop, start from the スタート menu.

■ Starting from the スタート menu of Windows XP:

① Click スタート, すべてのプログラム, アクセサリー (Accessories), 通信 (Communication), and ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)

② Double-click the dialup connection

■ Starting from the スタート menu of Windows 2000:

① Click スタート, プログラム, アクセサリー, 通信 and ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dialup connections)

② Double-click the dialup connection

3 Check each item and click ダイアル (Dial)

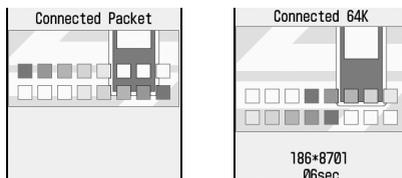
- When mopera U / mopera is selected, the entry for ユーザー名 or パスワード is not required for connection.
- If required by the instructions of a subscribed provider, enter the user name and the password, and then click ダイアル according to the input instruction information.
- The connection established screen may be displayed depending on the OS. Click **OK**.



■ FOMA terminal screen while communicating

FOMA terminal displays a connecting screen when you execute packet or 64K data communication.

The following screens are displayed when a connection has been established:



INFORMATION

- The transmission speed displayed on your PC may differ from actual speed.
- Data transmission is available only with FOMA terminal that was connected when the connection icon was created.
- When connecting FOMA terminal other than D703i, installation of the communication configuration file for your FOMA terminal is needed.

Disconnecting communication

Just exiting the browser may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation:

Example For Windows XP

1 Click in the task tray

2 Click 切断 (Disconnect)



Optimizing packet communication setup

Optimize the PC packet communication setup for FOMA network by means of W-TCP setup. The W-TCP setup is a TCP parameter tuning tool for optimizing TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communication in the FOMA network. To enable communication capability of FOMA terminal to maximum extent, this communication setup is required.

For Windows XP

System optimization can be performed for each dialup connection.

1 Start *FOMA PC 設定ソフト*(P8) ▶ Click *W-TCP 設定*

- Starting from the task tray: Click 

2 Perform the following operations:

- When the system has not been optimized:
The following screen is displayed.



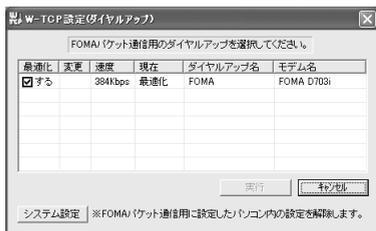
① Select *384Kbps* and click *最適化を行う*

② Select the dialup connection to be optimized ▶ Click *実行* (Execute)

Optimization of the system settings and dialup settings are performed respectively.

- When the system has been optimized:

The following screen is displayed. Change the check box and click *システム設定* (System setting) if changes are to be made.



3 Reboot the PC following the instruction shown on the screen

- The settings take effect after rebooting the PC.

For Windows 2000

1 Start *FOMA PC 設定ソフト*(P8) ▶ Click *W-TCP 設定*

- Starting from the task tray: Click 

2 Click *最適化を行う*

3 Reboot the PC following the instruction shown on the screen

- The settings take effect after rebooting the PC.

Canceling optimization

- Cancel optimization in case of executing 64K data communication or when communicating via other than FOMA terminal.

For Windows XP

1 Start *FOMA PC 設定ソフト*(P8) ▶ Click *W-TCP 設定*

- Starting from the task tray: Click 

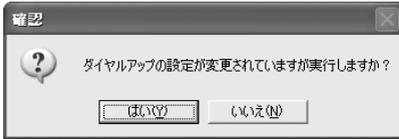
2 Remove the check of the dialup connection to cancel optimization ▶ Click *システム設定* (System setting)

- When the system is optimized for 3.6Mbps, the dialup connection cannot be selected individually. Click *システム設定* (System setting).



3 Click はい(Yes) ▶ Click OK

- Screen appears only when the system is optimized for 384Kbps.



4 Click 最適化を解除する (Cancel optimization)



When optimizing for 384Kbps

5 Click OK

6 Reboot the PC following the instruction shown on the screen

- The settings take effect after rebooting the PC.

For Windows 2000

1 Start FOMA PC 設定ソフト(☛P8) ▶ Click W-TCP 設定

- Starting from the task tray: Click 

2 Click 最適化を解除する (Cancel optimization)

3 Reboot the PC following the instruction shown on the screen

- The settings take effect after rebooting the PC.

Setting dialup connections (APNs)

Set the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.

Up to 10 dialup connections (APNs) can be set, which are to be registered under registration numbers (cid) 1 to 10 for management.

By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is set for cid1 and "mopera.net" for cid3.

- Before setup, make sure that FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ☛P4

- For dialup connections (APNs) other than mopera U / mopera, inquire your provider or network administrator.

Example For Windows XP

1 Start FOMA PC 設定ソフト(☛P8) ▶ Click 接続先 (APN) 設定

The FOMA 端末設定取得 screen appears.

2 Click OK

FOMA terminal is accessed for reading the registered dialup connection (APN) information.

3 Make the dialup connection (APN) settings



- Adding dialup connections (APNs): Click **追加**
- Editing or correcting registered dialup connections (APNs): Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list ▶ Click **編集 (Edit)**
- Deleting the registered dialup connections (APNs): Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list ▶ Click **削除 (Delete)**
 - The dialup connection registered in cid1 and cid3 cannot be deleted. (Selecting cid1 or cid3 and clicking **削除** do not actually delete, but return to the previous status.)
- Saving settings as file: Click **ファイル (File)** and **名前を付けて保存 (Save as...)** or **上書き保存 (Overwrite)**
 - Save the settings as a file to back up the dialup connection (APN) settings registered in FOMA terminal or save the dialup connection (APN) settings during editing.
- Importing settings from file: Click **ファイル** and **開く (Open)**
 - Import settings from a file to edit dialup connections (APNs) saved on the PC or write to FOMA terminal.

- **Importing dialup connection (APN) information from FOMA terminal:** Click **ファイル** and **FOMA 端末から設定を取得 (Import settings from FOMA terminal)**

Access manually to FOMA terminal to import the registered dialup connection (APN) settings.

- **Writing dialup connection (APN) information to FOMA terminal:** Click **FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む (Write settings to FOMA terminal)**

The displayed dialup connection (APN) settings are written to FOMA terminal.

- **Creating dialup connections:**

- ① **Select an added or edited dialup connection (APN) ▶ Click **ダイヤルアップ作成 (Create dialup connection)****
The **FOMA 端末設定書き込み (Write setting to FOMA terminal)** screen appears.
- ② **Click **はい** ▶ Click **OK****
The **パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成 (Create dialup connection for packet communication)** screen appears.
- ③ **Enter any connection name and select the way of notifying caller ID ▶ Click **アカウント・パスワードの設定 (Set account and password)****
- ④ **Enter the user name in **ユーザー名** and the password in **パスワード** ▶ Click **OK****
 - Not required for mopera U / mopera for connection.
 - If you select **すべてのユーザー for 使用可能ユーザーの選択**, all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection.
 - Some providers may request you to enter IP and DNS information settings. Should this be the case, click **詳細情報の設定** in the **パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成** screen, register the required information and click **OK**.
- ⑤ **Click **OK** ▶ Click **OK****
- ⑥ **Click **FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む****
A confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite.
- ⑦ **Click **はい** ▶ Click **OK****

INFORMATION

- Since the dialup connection (APN) setting is information saved in FOMA terminal, re-register the APN when connecting another FOMA terminal (terminal replaced by repair, etc.).
- To continue to use the dialup connection (APN) saved in the PC, save the registration number (cid) of the same APN to FOMA terminal.

Uninstalling the FOMA PC configuration software

Before operation, read “Before installation/uninstallation”. ▶P3

Uninstall preparations

Right-click  in the task tray, and click **常駐させない** (Do not reside) to make W-TCP setup not to reside.

Uninstalling

Example For Windows XP

- 1 **Click **スタート, コントロールパネル and プログラムの追加と削除****

■ **For Windows 2000:**

- ① **Click **スタート, 設定 and コントロールパネル****
- ② **Double-click **アプリケーションの追加と削除****

- 2 **Select **NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC configuration software)** ▶ Click **削除****

- 3 **Check that you have selected the correct program to delete and click **はい****

The uninstallation of the FOMA PC configuration software starts.

■ **Canceling W-TCP optimization:**

- A confirmation screen appears when W-TCP has been optimized.
- Usually, click **はい** and deactivate the optimization.
 - Select whether to reboot immediately and click **完了** when Windows prompts you to reboot the PC.
 - Canceling of W-TCP optimization is performed after the PC is rebooted.

- 4 **Click **完了****

Communicating without using the FOMA PC configuration software

The method of dialup network setup for packet communication/64K data communication without using the FOMA PC configuration software is explained here.

Operation procedures for setup

Install the communication configuration file ◀P5
Connect FOMA terminal to a PC ▶P4

Set the dialup connection (APN)
(This setting is not required for 64K data communication, and for packet communication via mopera U / mopera.)

Set to show/hide caller ID ▶P18 (Set as required.)

Other settings (AT commands) ▶P24
(Set as required.)

Dialup network setup

OS	Settings	
	Dialup connection	TCP/IP
Windows XP	P19	P20
Windows 2000	P21	P22

• For details on settings, inquire your provider or network administrator.

Connect ▶P23 (Disconnect ▶P24)

INFORMATION

- When the message of *既定の Telnet プログラムにしますか?* (Sets the fixed Telnet program?) appears in the process of the operation, click *はい* (Yes) or *いいえ* (No).
- When the screen of *所在地情報* (Location information) appears in the process of the operation, set the dial information of your location and click *OK*. The dial information you have set appears on the screen of *電話とモデムのオプション* (Option of the phone and modem), so click *OK*.

Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication

Communication software to input AT commands is required for making settings. The method of setting using "HyperTerminal" that comes with Windows is explained here.

Default cid1 : mopera.ne.jp
cid3 : mopera.net
cid2, 4 to 10 : not recorded

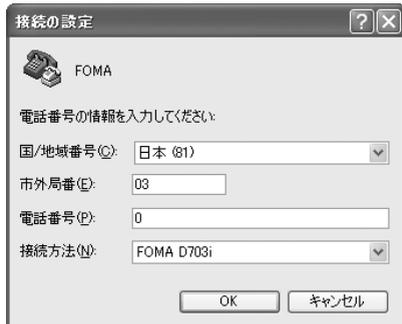
Example For Windows XP

- 1 **Connect FOMA terminal to a PC ▶P4**
- 2 **Click スタート, すべてのプログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal).**
 - For Windows 2000, プログラム is displayed for すべてのプログラム.
- 3 **Enter any connection name in 名前▶ Click OK**



- 4 **Enter a fictional phone number (such as 0) for 電話番号, select FOMA D703i from 接続方法 (Connection procedure) ▶ Click OK**

• Since *市外局番* (Area code) does not effect dialup connection (APN) setting, it is not necessary to change.



5 Click キャンセル when the connection screen appears

6 Enter the dialup connection (APN) ▶ Press

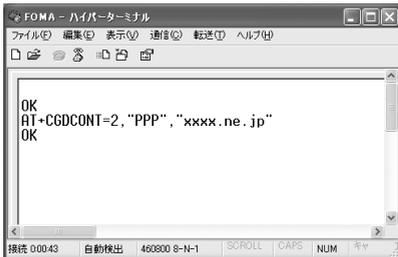


- Enter in the format “AT+CGDCONT =<cid>, “PPP”, “APN””.

<cid> : Enter any number between 2, 4 to 10.

“PPP” : Enter “PPP”.

“APN” : Enter the dialup connection (APN) in quotation marks.



If **OK** is displayed, the dialup connection (APN) has now been set.

■ Resetting dialup connection (APN) settings:

AT + CGDCONT=

Resets all cids.

- The settings are restored to the default settings for <cid> = 1 and 3, and the settings for <cid> = 2, 4 to 10 are cleared.

AT + CGDCONT=<cid>

Resets the specified cid.

■ Checking dialup connection (APN) settings:

AT + CGDCONT?

■ When nothing is displayed even if AT

command is entered: **ATE1**

- For details ◀P27

7 Check that **OK** is displayed and click ファイル and ハイパーターミナルの終了 (End HyperTerminal)

- After 現在、接続されています。切断してもよろしいですか? (Connecting now. Disconnect?) appears, click はい.
- “XXX”と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか? (Save the connection named “XXX”?) appears. Click いいえ.

Dialup connection (APN) and registration number (cid)

The dialup connection (APN) for packet communication can be set for registration numbers between cid1 to 10 in FOMA terminal. By default, “mopera.ne.jp” is set for cid1 and “mopera.net” for cid3. For connecting to other providers or corporate LANs, register the dialup connection (APN) for cid2, 4 to 10.

- For the dialup connection (APN), inquire your provider or network administrator.
- The dialup connection settings can be considered as phonebook registration for packet communication. The comparison between dialup connection settings and the FOMA terminal phonebook entries is as follows:

Dialup connection settings	FOMA terminal phonebook entries
Registration number (cid)	Registration number (Phonebook No.)
APN	Party's phone number

- The registered cids become the connection numbers of dialup connection setting.

Setting to show/hide caller ID

Take care when disclosing your caller ID since it is important information.

- Settings must be “show” for using mopera U / mopera.

Default not set

Example For Windows XP

1 Perform Steps 1 to 5 of “Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication” ◀P17

2 Set to show (186)/hide (184) caller ID during packet communication

Enter in the format “AT * DGPIR=<n>”.

AT * DGPIR=1

When packet communication connection is established, “184” is added to connect to the dialup connection (APN).

AT * DGPIR=2

When packet communication connection is established, “186” is added to connect to the dialup connection (APN).

■ When nothing is displayed even if AT

command is entered: **ATE1**

- For details ◀P27

- 3 Check that OK is displayed and click ファイル and ハイパーターミナルの終了**
- After 現在、接続されています。切断してもよろしいですか? appears, click はい.
 - “XXX”と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか? appears. Click いいえ.

■ Setting to show/hide caller ID by dialup network settings

The dialup network settings can also be used to append “186” (show) or “184” (hide) to the dialup connection number.

If “186” (show) or “184” (hide) is set by both the AT * DGPIR command and dialup network settings, the show/hide caller ID setting is as follows:

Setting made by AT * DGPIR command	Not set	Hide	Show
Dialup network setting (<cid>=#)			
* 99 * * * 3#	Caller ID is sent.	Caller ID is not sent.	Caller ID is sent.
184 * 99 * * * 3#	Caller ID is not sent.		
186 * 99 * * * 3#	Caller ID is sent.		

- To reset the show/hide setting made by the AT * DGPIR command to the default (not set), enter “AT * DGPIR=0”.

Setting for Windows XP

Setting the dialup connection

- 1 Click スタート、すべてのプログラム、アクセサリ、通信 and ネットワーク接続**

The ネットワーク接続 screen appears.

- 2 Click 新しい接続を作成する (Create new connection) in ネットワークタスク (Network task)**

The 新しい接続ウィザード (New connection wizard) screen appears.

- 3 Click 次へ**

A screen for selecting the type of network connection appears.

- 4 Select インターネットに接続する (Connect to Internet) ▶ Click 次へ**

The setup screen appears.

- 5 Select 接続を手動でセットアップする (Set up connection manually) ▶ Click 次へ**

The Internet connection screen appears.

- 6 Select ダイアルアップモデムを使用して接続する (Use dialup modem to connect) ▶ Click 次へ**

The device selection screen appears.

- If there is only one modem installed, the device selection screen is not displayed. Go to Step 8.

- 7 Select モデム - FOMA D703i (COMx)*1 (Modem: FOMA D703i (COMx)) ▶ Click 次へ**

- Check that only モデム - FOMA D703i (COMx)*1 is selected.

*1 “x” of COMx varies by PC to be used.



- 8 Enter any connection name in ISP名 (ISP name) ▶ Click 次へ**



- 9 Enter the number of the dialup connection (one-byte) in 電話番号 ▶ Click 次へ**

■ For packet communication:

Enter “ * 99 * * * <cid>#”.

- For <cid>, enter the cid number registered in “Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication” (P17). Enter “ * 99 * * * 3#” for mopera U and “ * 99 * * * 1#” for mopera.

- For 64K data communication:
Enter the dialup connection phone number.
 - Enter “ * 8701” for mopera U and “ * 9601” for mopera.



10 Set each item ▶ Click 次へ

- When the dialup connection is mopera U / mopera, the entry for **ユーザー名**, **パスワード** and **パスワードの確認入力** is not required for connection. Set other items as required.



11 Click 完了

12 Check the settings and click キャンセル

- Check the settings without connecting to the Internet immediately.

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Select the created dialup connection ▶ Click ファイル and プロパティ (Properties)



2 Check the setting of each item in the 全般 (General) tab

- When multiple modems are installed in the PC, select **モデム - FOMA D703i (COMx)*1** in **接続方法**.
- Check that only **モデム - FOMA D703i (COMx)*1** is selected.
*1 "x" of COMx varies by PC to be used.
- Uncheck () **ダイヤル情報を使う** (Use dial information).



3 Click the ネットワーク (Network) tab ▶ Check the setting of each item

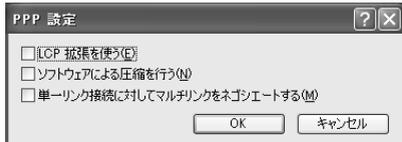
- Set **PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet as 呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類** (Type of dialup server to call).
- Select only **インターネット プロトコル (TCP/IP)** (Internet protocol (TCP/IP)) in **この接続は次の項目を使用します** (Use these items for this connection). Since **QoSパケットスケジューラ** (QoS packet scheduler) can not be changed, leave it as it is.



4 Click 設定

5 Uncheck () all items and click OK

The dialup connection properties screen reappears.



6 Click OK

Setting for Windows 2000

Setting the dialup connection

1 Click スタート、プログラム、アクセサリ、通信 and ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続

The ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 screen appears.

2 Double-click 新しい接続の作成 (Create new connection)

The ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network connection wizard) screen appears.

3 Click 次へ

A screen for selecting the type of network connection appears.

4 Select インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する (Use dialup connection to Internet) ▶ Click 次へ

The start screen of インターネット接続ウィザード (Internet connection wizard) appears.

5 Select インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します (Set the Internet connection manually or connect using local area network (LAN)) ▶ Click 次へ

The Internet connection setting selection screen appears.

6 Select 電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します (Connect to Internet using phone line and modem) ▶ Click 次へ

The modem selection screen appears.

- This screen is not displayed if multiple modems are not installed. Go to Step 8.

7 Check that インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する (Select modem to use for connection to Internet) is set to FOMA D703i and click 次へ

The Internet account connection information screen appears.

- If FOMA D703i is not set, set FOMA D703i.

8 Enter the number of dialup connection (one-byte) in 電話番号 ▶ Click 詳細設定 (Detailed settings)

- Uncheck () 市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う (Use area code and dial information).

■ For packet communication:

Enter “ * 99 * * * <cid>#”.

- For <cid>, enter the cid number registered in “Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication” (▶ P17). Enter “ * 99 * * * 3#” for mopera U and “ * 99 * * * 1#” for mopera.

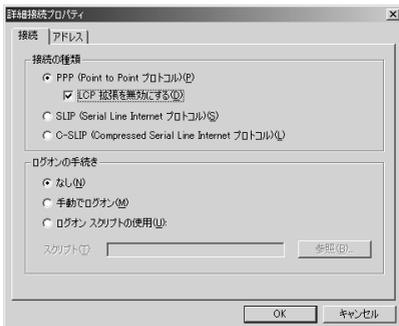
■ For 64K data communication:

Enter the dialup connection phone number.

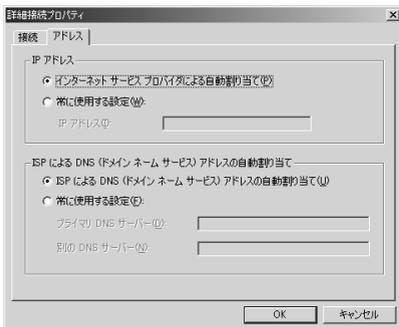
- Enter “ * 8701” for mopera U and “ * 9601” for mopera.



9 Set each item in the 接続 tab as shown below



10 Click the アドレス (Address) tab ▶ Set each item as shown below



11 Click OK

The Internet account connection information screen reappears.

12 Click 次へ

The Internet account logon information screen appears.

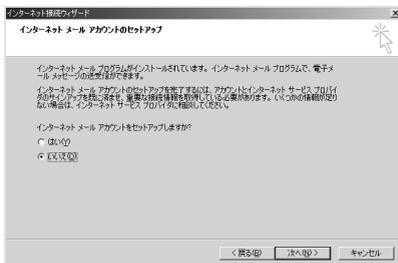
13 Enter the user name in ユーザー名 and the password in パスワード ▶ Click 次へ

- When the dialup connection is mopera U / mopera, the entry for ユーザー名 or パスワード is not required for connection. When a confirmation screen for no entry appears, click はい.

14 Enter any connection name in 接続名 ▶ Click 次へ



15 Select いいえ ▶ Click 次へ



16 Click 完了

The ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 screen reappears.

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Select the created dialup connection ▶ Click ファイル and プロパティ



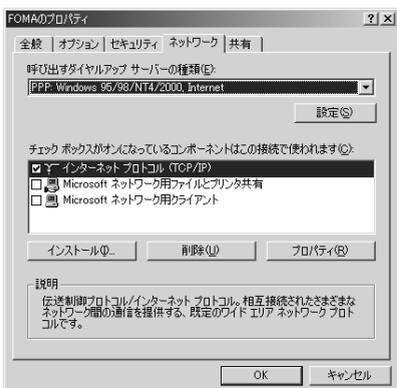
2 Check the setting of each item in the 全般 tab

- If multiple modems are installed in the PC, select **モデム - FOMA D703i (COMx)*1** in **接続の方法** (Connection procedure).
When the modem is changed, all items in **電話番号** are initialized. Re-enter the dialup connection phone number in that case.
- Check that only **モデム - FOMA D703i (COMx)*1** is selected.
*1 "x" of **COMx** varies by PC to be used.
- Uncheck () **ダイヤル情報を使う**.



3 Click the ネットワーク tab ▶ Check the setting of each item

- Set **PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet as 呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類**.
- Select only **インターネット プロトコル (TCP/IP)** for component.



4 Click 設定

5 Uncheck all items () and click OK

The dialup connection properties screen reappears.



6 Click OK

Connecting through dial-up

The method of dialup connection for packet communication/64K data communication is explained here.

Example For Windows XP

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC ◀P4

2 Click スタート, すべてのプログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ネットワーク接続

The ネットワーク接続 screen appears.

■ For Windows 2000:

- ① Click スタート, プログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続

3 Double-click the dialup connection

4 Check each item and click ダイヤル

- The number of dialup connection set for the dialup network is shown in **ダイヤル** or **電話番号**.
- When the dialup connection is mopera U / mopera, the entry for **ユーザー名** or **パスワード** is not required for connection.



Disconnecting communication

Just exiting the browser may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation:

- 1 Click  in the task tray
- 2 Click 切断



AT command

AT commands are commands for setting FOMA terminal functions from a PC. FOMA terminals comply with AT commands and support some extended commands and proprietary AT commands.

About the AT command

■ AT command input format

"AT" must be entered before each AT command. Commands must be entered in one-byte alphanumeric characters. An input example is as follows:

ATD * 99 * * * 3# 

Command Parameter Press Enter key.

AT commands and their parameters (numbers or symbols) must be entered on a single line. Enter all the characters from the first character to the character just before  in a single line. Up to 160 characters (including "AT") can be entered in each line.

■ AT command input mode

To operate FOMA terminal using AT commands, the PC must be in the terminal mode.

Terminal mode is a mode that lets the PC operate as a single communication terminal. Characters entered from the keyboard are sent to the device or line connected to the communication port.

- Offline mode
FOMA terminal in standby status. Usually, FOMA terminal must be in this status to use AT commands to control it.
- Online data mode
FOMA terminal is in the communication mode. If you enter AT commands when FOMA terminal is performing communication, the received characters are sent directly to the communication receiver and may cause the receiver's modem to malfunction. Do not enter AT commands while FOMA terminal is performing communication.
- Online command mode
AT commands allow you to operate FOMA terminal even when FOMA terminal is in the communication mode. These operations make it possible to execute AT commands without interfering with the connection to the communication receiver, and normal communication can be continued after the commands have finished executing.

Switching between the online data mode and online command mode

To switch FOMA terminal from the online data mode to online command mode, you can use either of the following procedures:

- Enter the "+++" command or the code set in the "S2" register.
- Turn the RS-232C*1 ER signal off when set in "AT&D1".

To switch from the online command mode to the online data mode, enter "ATO .

*1 The USB interface emulates an RS-232C signal line, so RS-232C signal control using communication applications is possible.

AT command list

- When AT commands are input, entering “\” may cause “\” to appear depending on the font settings for the PC or communication software in use.
- If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned off, the setting values may not be recorded.
- AT commands that can be used via the FOMA D703i Modem Port are described in this list.

*1 : Returns the setting to default with the AT&F command.

*2 : Stores the command setting into FOMA terminal with the AT&W command and restores it with the ATZ command.

None : Indicates the AT command does not include any display command or test command.

[] : Indicates the parameter can be omitted.

Command	Description & Parameter						
AT%V	Shows the version of your FOMA terminal in the format of “Verx.xx”.						
ex.	Enter	AT%V	Display	None	Test	None	
AT&C [n]	Selects the operational conditions of the circuit CD signal outgoing to DTE. n=0: The circuit CD signal is always on. (when parameter omitted) n=1: The circuit CD signal varies depending on the other party's modem. (default)						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&C1	Display	None	Test	None
AT&D [n]	Determines an action to be taken when the circuit ER signal coming from DTE changes from on to off in the online data mode. n=0: Ignores the ER signal condition (always on). (when parameter omitted) n=1: Switches the mode to the online command mode when the ER signal changes from on to off. n=2: Disconnects the circuit and switches the mode to the offline mode when the ER signal changes from on to off. (default)						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&D1	Display	None	Test	None
AT&E [n]	Selects type of speed display used when connection is made. This command is effective only when the ATX command is other than “n=0”. n=0: Displays communication speed of wireless zone. n=1: Displays communication speed between PC and FOMA terminal. (default)						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&E1	Display	None	Test	None
AT&F [0]	Resets all FOMA terminal state to the default. When executed while receiving a call, it resets FOMA terminal state to the default without affecting the call. When executed during communication, the terminal state returns to default after it disconnects (“NO CARRIER” displayed) the communication.						
ex.	Enter	AT&F0	Display	None	Test	None	
AT&S [n]	Determines the control of the DR signal FOMA terminal outputs. n=0: Always on. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: The DR signal turns on when the line is connected.						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&S0	Display	None	Test	None
AT&W [0]	Writes the current settings into FOMA terminal.						
ex.	Enter	AT&W0	Display	None	Test	None	
AT * DANTE	Shows the signal strength (reception level) in the format of “ * DANTE:m”. m=0: Outside the service area m=1 to 3: Number of antennas displayed on FOMA terminal (m=1:0 or 1)						
ex.	Enter	AT * DANTE	Display	AT * DANTE?	Test	AT * DANTE=?	
AT * DGANSM=n	Specifies whether to reject or accept an incoming packet call. n=0: Sets both the incoming call rejection and the incoming call acceptance off. (default) n=1: Sets the incoming call rejection on. n=2: Sets the incoming call acceptance on.						
ex.	Enter	AT * DGANSM=0	Display	AT * DGANSM?	Test	AT * DGANSM=?	
AT * DGAPL=n [cid]	Specifies dialup connections (APNs) to accept incoming packet calls from them. For an APN, use the cid parameter defined with “+CGDCONT”. n=0: Adds the APN defined with the cid parameter to the call acceptance list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined with the cid parameter from the call acceptance list. When you omit the cid parameter, all cids will be added or deleted.						
ex.	Enter	AT * DGAPL=0,1	Display	AT * DGAPL?	Test	AT * DGAPL=?	
AT * DGARL=n [cid]	Specifies dialup connections (APNs) to reject incoming packet calls from them. For an APN, use the cid parameter defined with “+CGDCONT”. n=0: Adds the APN defined with the cid parameter to the call rejection list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined with the cid parameter from the call rejection list. When you omit the cid parameter, all cids will be added or deleted.						
ex.	Enter	AT * DGARL=0,1	Display	AT * DGARL?	Test	AT * DGARL=?	

Command	Description & Parameter						
AT * DGPIR=n	Specifies whether to notify the caller ID for packet communication. This specification is effective both for incoming and outgoing calls. n=0: The APN is used as it is when a packet communication is established. (default) n=1: Adds "184" to the APN when a packet communication is established. n=2: Adds "186" to the APN when a packet communication is established.						
ex.	Enter	AT * DGPIR=0	Display	AT * DGPIR?	Test	AT * DGPIR=?	
AT * DRPW	Shows the level of power reception in the format of " * DRPW:m", where the value of m ranges from 0 to 75.						
ex.	Enter	AT * DRPW	Display	None	Test	AT * DRPW=?	
+++	Changes FOMA terminal mode from the online data to the online command. The duration of escape guard is fixed to 1 sec.						
ex.	Enter	+++	Display	None	Test	None	
AT+CEER	Shows a disconnection reason of the previous communication. ➤P29						
ex.	Enter	AT+CEER	Display	None	Test	AT+CEER=?	
AT+CGDCONT	Specifies the APN for packet communication. ➤P29						
AT+CGEQMIN	Specifies the criteria for judging whether to approve the QoS (Quality of Service) level provisioned by the network when the packet communication is established. ➤P29						
AT+CGEQREQ	Specifies the QoS level requested to the network when transmission is performed during packet communication. ➤P30						
AT+CGMR	Shows the version of your FOMA terminal with a 16-digit number.						
ex.	Enter	AT+CGMR	Display	None	Test	AT+CGMR=?	
AT+CGREG= [n]	Determines whether to notify the network registration state. Either "inside the service area" or "outside the service area" is notified. n=0: Not notified. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Notified in the format of "+CGREG:n,stat". stat=0: Outside the service area stat=1: Inside the service area (home) stat=4: Unknown stat=5: Inside the service area (visitor)						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CGREG=1	Display	AT+CGREG?	Test	AT+CGREG=?
AT+CGSN	Shows the manufacturer's serial number of FOMA terminal.						
ex.	Enter	AT+CGSN	Display	None	Test	AT+CGSN=?	
AT+CLIP= [n]	Specifies whether to show the caller ID of an incoming 64K data communication on the PC's screen. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the information. If you enter "AT+CLIP?", it shows "+CLIP:n,m". m=0: The network setting that does not show caller ID to the other party when originating a call. m=1: The network setting that shows caller ID to the other party when originating a call. m=2: Unknown						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CLIP=0	Display	AT+CLIP?	Test	AT+CLIP=?
AT+CLIR= [n]	Specifies whether to show your caller ID to the other party when you originate a 64K data communication. n=0: In accordance with the service agreement. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Does not notify the caller ID. n=2: Notifies the caller ID. (default) If you enter "AT+CLIR?", it shows "+CLIR:n,m". m=0: CLIR is not activated. (caller ID always notified) m=1: CLIR is activated. (caller ID always not notified) m=2: Unknown m=3: CLIR temporary mode (default for "not notified") m=4: CLIR temporary mode. (default for "notified")						
ex.	Enter	AT+CLIR=0	Display	AT+CLIR?	Test	AT+CLIR=?	
AT+CMEE= [n]	Specifies the error report format of FOMA terminal. ➤P29 n=0: Shows "ERROR". (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows in the format of "+CME ERROR:xxxx". (xxxx=numbers) n=2: Shows in the format of "+CME ERROR:xxxx". (xxxx=characters)						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CMEE=0	Display	AT+CMEE?	Test	AT+CMEE=?
AT+CNUM	Shows the Own Number data of FOMA terminal in the format of "+CNUM:,"number",type". number: Phone number type=129: Does not show "+81". type=145: Shows "+81".						
ex.	Enter	AT+CNUM	Display	None	Test	AT+CNUM=?	
AT+CR= [n]	Specifies whether to display the communication type (packet communication or 64K data communication) before <i>CONNECT</i> is displayed, during line connection. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the information in the format of "+CR:serv". serv=SYNC: 64K data communication serv=GPRS: Packet communication						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CR=0	Display	AT+CR?	Test	AT+CR=?

Command		Description & Parameter					
AT+CRG=[n]		Specifies whether to use result codes of "+CRING:type" for incoming calls. n=0: Does not use the result code of "+CRING:type". (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Uses the result code of "+CRING:type". The example of codes are as follows: Packet communication: ··· +CRING:GPRS "PPP",,"mopera.net" 64K data communication: ··· +CRING:SYNC					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CRG=0	Display	AT+CRG?	Test	AT+CRG=?
AT+CREG=[n]		Specifies whether to show the "inside/outside the service area" information. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the information. If you enter "AT+CREG?", it shows the information in the format of "+CREG:n,stat". stat=0: Outside the service area stat=1: Inside the service area (home) stat=4: Unknown stat=5: Inside the service area (visitor)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CREG=0	Display	AT+CREG?	Test	AT+CREG=?
AT+GMI		Shows the manufacturer's name of FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMI	Display	None	Test	AT+GMI=?
AT+GMM		Shows FOMA terminal name.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMM	Display	None	Test	AT+GMM=?
AT+GMR		Shows the version of FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMR	Display	None	Test	AT+GMR=?
AT+IFC=[n,[m]]		Specifies the local flow control between the PC and FOMA terminal. n is for setting the DCE-by-DTE control. n=0: Does not use the flow control. n=1: Uses XON/XOFF flow control. n=2: Uses RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. (default) m is for setting the DTE-by-DCE control. If you omit this parameter, the same value as n is assumed. m=0: Does not use the flow control. m=1: Uses XON/XOFF flow control. m=2: Uses RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. (default) If you omit both parameters, "AT+IFC=2, 2" is assumed.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+IFC=2,2	Display	AT+IFC?	Test	AT+IFC=?
AT+WS46=[22]		Specifies the radio network FOMA terminal uses to originate a call.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+WS46=22	Display	AT+WS46?	Test	AT+WS46=?
ATA		Specifies how to handle incoming packet or 64K data communications. For incoming packet communications, you can specify the following: ATA184: Receives an incoming call without the caller ID displayed ATA186: Receives an incoming call with the caller ID displayed					
	ex.	Enter	ATA	Display	None	Test	None
A/		Reexecutes the previous command.					
	ex.	Enter	A/	Display	None	Test	None
ATD		Originates a packet or 64K data communication. · Packet communication: Enter "ATD * 99 * * * cid#". If you omit cid parameter, "cid=1" is assumed. When you enter it in the format starting with "ATD184 * 99", 184 (hide caller ID) is attached to the call outgoing to the APN specified with cid parameter (186 (show caller ID) is treated in the same manner). · 64K data communication: Enter it in the format of "ATD phone number". · Redialing: Enter in the format of "ATDL" or "ATDN".					
	ex.	Enter	ATD phone number	Display	None	Test	None
ATE [n]		Echoes back the characters sent from the PC. n=0: Gives no echo back. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Gives echo back. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATE0	Display	None	Test	None
ATH		Disconnects communication.					
	ex.	Enter	ATH	Display	None	Test	None
ATI [n]		Shows the identification code. n=0: Shows "NTT DoCoMo". (when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows model name of FOMA terminal. n=2: Shows the version of FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	ATI0	Display	None	Test	None
ATO		Switches the mode from the online command to the online data.					
	ex.	Enter	ATO	Display	None	Test	None
ATQ [n]		Specifies whether to show the result code on the PC. n=0: Shows the result code. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Does not show the result code.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATQ0	Display	None	Test	None
ATV [n]		Specifies whether to show the result with numeric codes or text messages. n=0: Shows the result with numeric codes. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the result with text messages. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATV1	Display	None	Test	None

Command		Description & Parameter					
ATX [n]		Specifies whether to detect busy tone and dial tone, and whether to display the communication speed. n=0: Busy tone not detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed not displayed. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Busy tone not detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed displayed. n=2: Busy tone not detected, dial tone detected, communication speed displayed. n=3: Busy tone detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed displayed. n=4: Busy tone detected, dial tone detected, communication speed displayed. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATX1	Display	None	Test	None
ATZ		Resets FOMA terminal settings to those stored in the non-volatile memory with the AT&W command. If you enter this command during receiving a packet or 64K data communication, the settings are reset without affecting the call reception. If you enter it during communication, it disconnects the communication first and resets the settings.					
	ex.	Enter	ATZ	Display	None	Test	None
ATS0= [n]		Specifies the number of ringing signals (RING) which triggers automatic call acceptance on FOMA terminal. n=0: Does not accept calls automatically. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1 to 255					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATS0=0	Display	ATS0?	Test	None
ATS2= [n]		Specifies an escape character. n=0 to 127 (43: Default 0: When parameter omitted 127: To disable the escape processing)					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS2=43	Display	ATS2?	Test	None
ATS3= [13]		Specifies a carriage return (CR) character that indicates the end of AT command's character string (the setting is not changeable). It is attached to the end of the echoed back command string and the result code.					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS3=13	Display	ATS3?	Test	None
ATS4= [10]		Specifies the line feed (LF) character (the setting is not changeable). It follows the CR character when the result code is displayed with text.					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS4=10	Display	ATS4?	Test	None
ATS5= [8]		Specifies a backspace (BS) character that deletes the last character in the input buffer while you are entering an AT command (the setting is not changeable).					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS5=8	Display	ATS5?	Test	None
ATS6= [n]		Specifies the pause period before dialing. This command sets the register but no action will occur. n=2 to 10: 2 to 10 seconds. (5: Default and when parameter omitted)					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS6=5	Display	ATS6?	Test	None
ATS8= [n]		Specifies the comma dialing function (pause time). This command sets the register but the pause time is fixed to 3 seconds. n=0 to 255: 0 to 255 seconds. (3: default 0: When parameter is omitted)					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS8=3	Display	ATS8?	Test	None
ATS10= [n]		Specifies the permissible delay time before automatic disconnection. This command sets the register but no action will occur. n=1 to 255: in 1/10 seconds. (1: default and when parameter omitted)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATS10=1	Display	ATS10?	Test	None
ATS30= [n]		Specifies the time elapsed after the last data transmission to activate automatic disconnection. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=1 to 255: 1 to 255 minutes. n=0: Does not disconnect. (default and when parameter omitted)					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS30=0	Display	ATS30?	Test	None
ATS103= [n]		Specifies a mark to be used to delimit a destination sub-address if attached. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=0: * (when parameter omitted) n=1: / (default) n=2: ¥					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS103=0	Display	ATS103?	Test	None
ATS104= [n]		Specifies a mark to be used to delimit a caller sub-address if attached. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=0: # (when parameter omitted) n=1: % (default) n=2: &					
*1	ex.	Enter	ATS104=0	Display	ATS104?	Test	None
AT¥S		Shows the command settings and the contents of the S register.					
	ex.	Enter	AT¥S	Display	None	Test	None
AT¥V [n]		Selects whether to use the extended result code for connection. This command takes effect when the ATX command parameter is "n=1 to 4". n=0: Does not use the extended result code. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Uses the extended result code.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT¥V0	Display	None	Test	None

Disconnection reason list

■ Packet communication

Value	Reason
27	APN is not present or is incorrect.
30	Disconnected by network.
33	Terminal is not subscribed to packet communication.
36	Normal disconnection

■ 64K data communication

Value	Reason
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Normal disconnection
17	Communication is impossible because remote device is busy.
18	You made a call but did not receive a response within the specified time.
19	A call was made to the other party, but no response.
21	The remote device rejected incoming calls.
63	The service and option of the network are not valid.
65	Unavailable processing speed was specified.
88	You made a call to a terminal or received a call from a terminal with different terminal properties.

Error messages list

No.	Text display	Reason
10	SIM not inserted	No UIM (FOMA card) is set.
15	SIM wrong	A SIM other than UIM (IC card equivalent to UIM) is inserted.
16	incorrect password	Incorrect password
100	unknown	Unknown error

Supplement to AT command

■ Command name: AT+CGDCONT=[parameter]

Sets the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.

Format

AT+CGDCONT=[<cid>[, "PPP" [, "<APN>"]]]

Parameter description

<cid>: 1 to 10

"mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid 1, and "mopera.net" in cid 3.

<APN>: Optional

Example of execution

The command used to register an APN named "abc" (when <cid>=2).

AT+CGDCONT=2, "PPP", "abc"

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGDCONT=

Clears all <cid> settings. However, entry for "<cid>=1" and "<cid>=3" is restored to the default setting.

AT+CGDCONT=<cid>

Clears the specified <cid> settings. However, entry for "<cid>=1" and "<cid>=3" is restored to the default setting.

AT+CGDCONT=?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGDCONT?

Displays the current setting values.

■ Command name: AT+CGEQMIN=[parameter]

Registers the criteria for judging whether to approve QoS provisioned by the network when PPP packet communication is established.

Format

AT+CGEQMIN=[<cid>[,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

Parameter description

<cid> : 1 to 10

"mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid 1 and "mopera.net" in cid 3.

<Maximum bitrate UL>: None or 64

<Maximum bitrate DL>: None or 384

For "Maximum bitrate UL" and "Maximum bitrate DL", the minimum communication speed (in kbps) is set for both upload and download traffic between FOMA terminal and the base station. If the parameter is set to "None (default)", all speeds are permissible. However, if "64" and "384" are set, any connection at a speed less than the above limit is not permitted, and chances are that packet communication will not be connected.

Example of execution

- Command used to permit all speeds both upload and download (when <cid>=2)
AT+CGEQMIN=2
- Command used to permit only 64kbps upload and 384 kbps download (when <cid>=4)
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64,384
- Command used to permit 64 kbps upload and all speeds download (when <cid>=5)
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,64
- Command used to permit all speeds upload and only 384 kbps download (when <cid>=6)
AT+CGEQMIN=6,,384

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQMIN=

Clears all <cid> settings.

AT+CGEQMIN=<cid>

Returns the specified <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQMIN= ?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGEQMIN ?

Displays the current settings.

■ Command name: AT+CGEQREQ=[parameter]

Sets QoS requested to the network when transmission is performed during PPP packet communication.

Format

AT+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]

Parameter description

Only commands that require connection at 64 kbps upload/384 kbps download can be set. The contents are set by default for each cid.

<cid>: 1 to 10

"mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid 1, and

"mopera.net" in cid 3.

Example of execution

(when <cid>=2)

AT+CGEQREQ=2

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQREQ=

Returns all <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQREQ=<cid>

Returns the specified <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQREQ= ?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGEQREQ ?

Displays the current settings.

Result codes

- When the ATV [n] command (P27) is set to "n=1", the result code is displayed in the text display (default). When the command is set to "n=0", the result code is displayed in the numeric display.

■ Result codes

No.	Text display	Meaning
0	OK	Operation performed normally
1	CONNECT	Terminal connected to remote device
2	RING	Incoming call
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected
4	ERROR	Unable to accept command
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dial tone
7	BUSY	Detecting the busy tone
8	NO ANSWER	Completion of connection timed out
100	RESTRICTION	The communication network is busy. Please wait for a while and retry.
101	DELAYED	Redialing restricted

■ Extended result code

No.	Text display	Connection speed between FOMA terminal and PC
5	CONNECT 1200	1,200 bps
10	CONNECT 2400	2,400 bps
11	CONNECT 4800	4,800 bps
13	CONNECT 7200	7,200 bps
12	CONNECT 9600	9,600 bps
15	CONNECT 14400	14,400 bps
16	CONNECT 19200	19,200 bps
17	CONNECT 38400	38,400 bps
18	CONNECT 57600	57,600 bps
19	CONNECT 115200	115,200 bps
20	CONNECT 230400	230,400 bps
21	CONNECT 460800	460,800 bps

INFORMATION

- To retain compatibility with a modem connected via conventional RS-232C on PC, communication speed is displayed, but it differs from the actual connection speed because FOMA terminal is connected to the PC with a FOMA USB Cable (optional).

■ Communication protocol result code

No.	Text display	Meaning
1	PPPOverUD	Connected via 64K data communication
2	AV32K	AV (videophone) connected via [32K]
3	AV64K	AV (videophone) connected via [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected with packet communication

■ Display example of result codes

When "ATX 0" is set

Regardless of the settings of the AT \forall V command (P28), only *CONNECT* is displayed upon completion of connection.

Text display example:

```
ATD * 99 * * * 3#  
CONNECT ("1" in numeric display)
```

When "ATX 1" is set

- When "ATX1", "AT \forall V0" is set (default)

Upon completion of connection, the result code is displayed in the following format: *CONNECT* <speed between FOMA terminal and PC>

Text display example:

```
ATD * 99 * * * 3#  
CONNECT 460800 ("1 21" in numeric display)
```

- When "ATX1", "AT \forall V1" is set*1

The code is displayed upon completion of connection as follows:

Text display example:

```
ATD * 99 * * * 3#  
CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.net/  
64/384 ("1 21 5" in numeric display)
```

Indicates that speed between FOMA terminal and PC is 460,800 bps and the terminal is connected to mopera.net providing a maximum upload speed of 64 kbps and a maximum download speed of 384 kbps.

*1 When "ATX1" and "AT \forall V1" are set at the same time, it is likely that dialup connection will fail.

It is recommended that this function be usually set to default, which is "ATX1" and "AT \forall V0".

